

# The Childhood of Jesus

Jakob Lorber

Revealed by the Lord Jesus-Jehovah by direct dictation to Jakob  
Lorber 1843 - 1844

THE RE-GIVEN GOSPEL ACCORDING TO JAMES

## **PREFACE**

### ***AS REVEALED BY THE LORD HIMSELF AS THE INTRODUCTION FOR THE STORY OF HIS CHILDHOOD BETWEEN JULY 22, 1843 AND MAY 9, 1851, THROUGH THE SAME SPOKESPERSON WHOM HE SELECTED AS THE INSTRUMENT FOR THIS WORK***

01] Throughout the period up to my thirtieth year I lived like any other properly raised boy, then a teenager and then a man. In the course of my life, I first had to awaken the Deity within me according to the Law of Moses, just as every man must awaken Me in himself.

02] As any other respectable man, I had to begin with awakening My faith in God, which I then had to realize with all conceivable self-denial and with ever greater love, so that I could gradually subject myself completely to Divinity.

03] "Thus I, the Lord Himself, was a living example for every man, and therefore any human being can now draw Me to himself - just as I, within a physical body of this earth, drew the Divinity within me - and of his own free will can become completely one with Me through love and faith, since as a divine man I am completely one with the Divinity in all Its infinite fullness."

04] On the question, as to how the Child-wonder Jesus and His divinely spiritual activity as a Child can be linked to His isolated human existence during the years of His youth and manhood, and to His miracles performed during that time if He is to be perceived only as a human being, – a look at a tree from spring to autumn will provide an answer.

05] In spring, the tree blossoms wonderfully and is alive with activity. After the fall of the blossoms, the tree seems to become inactive again. However, towards autumn the tree again appears highly alive: the fruits, certainly wondrous, are flavoured and coloured, more beautifully than the blossoms earlier, and thus ripened, and the blessing bestowed on them is freed of its bonds and falls into the lap of the hungry infant.

06] Man is capable of grasping this parable with the eye of the heart, but never with the eye of worldly reason. The doubtful passages can be explained quite easily - when Jesus' Divinity is not denied but rather upheld by the faith of the heart, for that is a light of love to God - for as soon as one becomes pure in heart, it will be understood that the complete union of God's fullness with Jesus the man did not occur at once, as if suddenly, but - like everything else under God's guidance - only gradually, similar to the successive awakening of the divine spirit in the heart of man, and was completed only upon His death on the cross; although the Divinity in all its fullness already dwelt in the Child Jesus, It manifested itself through miracles only in times of need.

07] The physical death of Jesus is the most profound condescension of God in the tribunal of all matter and thereby establishes an entirely new relationship between the Creator and the created.

08] Only through Jesus' death does God Himself become fully human, and out of this highest divine grace, the created man can become a new child of God, that is, a God, and stand face to face with his creator as his perfect equal and see in Him his God, his Creator and Father, and can talk to Him, recognize Him, and love Him beyond measure, and only thus acquire the perfect everlasting, indestructible life in God, from God and beside God. And thereby, the power (or better: will) of Satan is broken to the extent that he can no longer prevent the complete approach of God to mankind and inversely, of mankind to God.

09] In short: Through Jesus' death, man can now completely fraternize with God, and Satan cannot interfere any longer; which is why the women who visited the grave were told: "Go forth and tell My brothers!" – Satan's reign in the outward form may be still evident, but he can no more put up the once-torn curtain between God and mankind and thus re-establish the old insurmountable gulf between God and man.

10] And from this brief argument on the subject, every man, who can think and perceive inwardly, can now easily understand the infinite benefit of Jesus' physical death. Amen.

## ***CHAPTER 1. - JOSEPH THE CARPENTER. THE CASTING OF LOTS FOR MARY IN THE TEMPLE. GOD'S TESTIMONIAL OF JOSEPH. JOSEPH'S PRAYER. MARY IN THE HOUSE OF JOSEPH.***

- 01] Joseph was busy with the construction of a house in the region between Nazareth and Jerusalem.
- 02] A nobleman was having this house built there to serve as a hostel, as the Nazarenes had no other shelter on their way to Jerusalem.
- 03] And Mary, who had been brought up in the temple, had come into womanhood, and according to Mosaic Law, she had to be given from the temple.
- 04] Messengers were sent out throughout Judea so that fathers could come forward and one among them could be found worthy to take the young maid into his house.
- 05] As such a notice also came to Joseph's ears, he immediately laid his tools aside and hastened to Jerusalem, to the place determined for the meeting.
- 06] After three days, the candidates met in the same place again, and after each candidate for Mary offered the priest a fresh lily stalk, the priest went into the interior of the temple with the stalks and prayed.
- 07] After his prayer, he came out with the stalks and returned them to each man.
- 08] All the stalks immediately became blemished, only the one last handed to Joseph remained fresh and spotless.
- 09] Some of the candidates objected to this test, declaring it biased and thus invalid, and demanded another test which would allow no room for any mischief.
- 10] The priest, annoyed at this, commanded that Mary be fetched, gave her a dove and asked her to step in among the candidates, while at the same time letting go of the dove,
- 11] but just before the release of the dove said to the candidates: "Behold, you who misinterpret the sign of Jehovah! – This dove is a pure and innocent animal and unable to hear our discussion,
- 12] but lives only in the Lord's will and understands only the almighty language of God!
- 13] Hold high your stalks! – The stalk of the candidate, on which the dove released by the young maid perches, and the head of the person on which it sits, will be the one who shall take Mary!"
- 14] The candidates were satisfied with this and said: "Yes, this will be an unmistakable sign!"
- 15] As Mary released the dove at the behest of the priest, it immediately flew towards Joseph, perched on top of his stalk and then flew from there to sit on Joseph's head.
- 16] And the priest spoke: "This is the will of God! Upon you, worthy craftsman, the lot for the virgin of the Lord has unmistakably fallen! So take her in the name of the Lord in your pure house for further care, Amen."

***24 July 1843***

- 17] But when Joseph heard this, he answered the priest and spoke: "See, anointed servant of the Lord according to the Law of Moses, the trustworthy subject of the Lord God Sabaoth, I am already an old man with grown-up sons at home and have been a widower since a long time; I will become an object of ridicule and scorn to the sons of Israel, by

taking this young maid into my house!

18] So let the process be changed once again and let me stay outside so that I am not counted among the candidates!"

19] The priest however held up his hand and spoke to Joseph: "Joseph! Fear the Lord! Do you not know what He did to Dathan, Korah and Abiram?"

20] Behold, the earth was split and they were engulfed because of their rebelliousness! – Do you think He would not do the same to you?

21] I tell you: you have seen and perceived the unmistakable sign of Jehovah, so obey the Lord, who is almighty and just and always punishes those who are stubborn and unfaithful to His will!

22] Otherwise there will be immense fear in your house, whether the Lord will not also bring upon your house, what he did to Dathan, Korah and Abiram!"

23] Then Joseph became afraid and he spoke to the priest in great fear: "Therefore pray for me, so that God may be again merciful towards me, and then give me the virgin of the Lord according to His will!"

24] The priest now went inside and prayed for Joseph in front of the inner sanctum, - and the Lord spoke to the priest:

25] "Do not cause the man, whom I have selected, to be sad; then there is no other more righteous man in Israel, and no man in the whole world, and no one in front of my eternal throne in all the heavens!

26] Go outside and give the virgin that I have brought up Myself to the most righteous man on earth!"

27] Here the priest beat his breast and spoke: "O Lord, almighty one and only God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, be merciful to me, a sinner, for now I realize that You will judge Your people!"

28] Thereupon the priest arose, went out with a blessing in the name of the Lord, gave the maid to the fearful Joseph

29] and spoke to him: "Joseph, you are righteous before the Lord, that is why He has chosen you from among many thousands of men! And so you may go in peace, Amen."

30] And Joseph took Mary and spoke: "May only the holy will of God, my Lord, always be done! Whatever You give, o Lord, is always good; thus I gladly and willingly take this offering from Your hand!! So bless her for me and me for her, so that I am worthy of her before You now, as always; Thy will be done, Amen."

26 July 1843

31] As Joseph spoke thus before the Lord, he felt invigorated in his heart. Thereupon he left the temple with Mary and led her to the region of Nazareth and thereat into his humble dwelling.

32] However, work awaited Joseph, so he did not tarry in his house this time and spoke to Mary accordingly:

33] "Mary, behold, I have taken you from the temple of the Lord, my God, according to his will; however I cannot stay with you now and protect you but must leave you behind, for I must go to take care of the construction of the house that I showed you on the way here.

34] But this does not mean that you will be at home alone and uncared for. I have a closely related resident who is a devout and righteous woman; she will be with you and my youngest son; and the grace of God and His blessing will not leave you.

35] I will soon return home to you, together with my four sons, and I will be a guide to you in the Lord's ways. The Lord God will now watch over you and my house, Amen."

## ***CHAPTER 2 - THE NEW CURTAIN IN THE TEMPLE. MARY'S WORK ON THE CURTAIN.***

01] At the time, a new temple curtain was deemed necessary to cover the old curtain, which was worn and torn.

02] The priests had gone into deliberation, and they spoke: "Let us make a curtain in the temple of the Lord, so that the damaged curtain can be covered.

03] Because today or tomorrow, the Lord may appear, as it is written, – how could we stand before him, if He finds us having neglected the temple?"

04] But the high priest said: "Do not judge so blindly; as if the Lord, whose sanctum is in the temple, would not know about the state of the temple!

05] Then call for me seven immaculate virgins from the tribe of David, and we will come to a solution for dividing the work!"

06] Now the attendants went out to search for the virgins from the tribe of David, but could barely find six, whom they showed to the high priest.

07] But the high priest remembered that Mary, who had been entrusted in the care of Joseph only a few weeks ago, was also from the tribe of David, and told the servants about this.

08] And the attendants went out and told Joseph, who went and brought Mary back to the temple, guided by the temple's attendants.

### ***27 July 1843***

09] As soon as the virgins were assembled in the temple's atrium, the high priest came and led them into the temple of the Lord.

10] And when they were assembled in the temple of the Lord, the high priest spoke:

11] "Hear, o virgins from the tribe of David, who has decreed by the Lord's will that the fine work on the curtain that separates the temple's Holy of Holies must always be done by the virgins from his tribe;

12] and according to his testament, the various tasks must be distributed through the drawing of lots, and may every virgin do the work allotted to her according to her skill!

13] Look, there in front of you is the damaged curtain, and here on the golden table are the various raw materials already prepared for the work!

14] You can see that this work is necessary, therefore let us immediately draw lots, so that we can know who among you will spin the threads of gold, asbestos, cotton,

15] silk, as well as the hyacinth-coloured, the scarlet, and the genuine purple!"

16] And the virgins meekly drew lots according to the prescribed order as the High Priest prayed over them; and it was established how the work would be distributed.

17] And the scarlet and the genuine purple fell to the lot of the virgin Mary, the daughter of Anna and Joachim.

18] The virgin gave thanks to God for such a gracious award and the allotment of such honourable work for His glory, took the work and returned with it to her house, with Joseph leading the way.

19] Upon arrival at home, Mary immediately started the work in joyful spirits; Joseph advised her to work with all possible diligence, blessed her and immediately returned to his

construction work.

20] It was at the same time this took place that Zachariah, while taking care of the smoke offering in the temple, lost his power of speech because of a lack of faith. Therefore a replacement was chosen for him, under whom the drawing of lots for this work had taken place.

21] Mary was related to both Zachariah as well as his replacement, so that she increased her diligence twofold in order to complete the work in a short time, and if possible, be the first one to do so.

22] However she increased her diligence twofold not out of a desire for fame, but in her determination to give great joy to the Lord God by completing her work as soon and as best as she could.

23] At first, she worked on the scarlet that had to be spun with great attention, to prevent the thread being thinner or thicker here or there.

24] The scarlet thread was spun by Mary with great mastery, so that all who came to Joseph's house were amazed at her extraordinary skill.

25] In a span of just three days, Mary had completed the scarlet and immediately began with the purple. As she had to constantly moisten it, she often needed to take the jug and go out with it to fetch water during the work.



### ***CHAPTER 3. - THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE LORD'S BIRTH BY AN ANGEL. MARY'S HUMBLE DEVOTION.***

***28 July 1843***

01] One Friday morning, Mary took the water jug once again and went outside to fill it with water, and oh! – a voice spoke to her:

02] "Greetings to you Mary, full of the Lords' grace! The Lord is with you, oh blessed among women!"

03] She trembled when she heard these words and was quite afraid, as she could not see from where the voice came, and keenly looked to the right and to the left; but she could not discern anyone who could have spoken.

04] Hence she was full of great fear, and hastily took the filled water jug and hurried home.

05] As she arrived trembling, she put aside the water jug, took up the purple, sat down in her chair and diligently continued to spin the purple.

06] But she had hardly regained her composure at work when the angel of the Lord stood before the diligent virgin and spoke to her:

07] "Do not be afraid, Mary, God is greatly pleased with you; and you will conceive by the word of God!"

08] As Mary heard this, she began to ponder on these words, and could not comprehend their meaning; so she spoke to the angel:

09] "How can this happen, I am not married and I have never been with a man, who might then take me as his wife, so that I might become pregnant and bear a child, just as other women do?"

10] The angel however spoke to Mary: "Chosen virgin of the Lord! It will not happen as you think, but God's power will come over you.

11] Therefore the Holy One who will be born of you will be called the Son of the Almighty!

12] When He is born, you shall name Him Jesus; for He will redeem His people from all sins, judgments and eternal death."

13] Mary kneeled before the angel and spoke: "I am only the Lord's maidservant! Let it happen as you have said." And the angel left her, and Mary continued her work.

## ***CHAPTER 4. - MARY'S CHILDLIKE-INNOCENT CONVERSATION WITH GOD AND THE RESPONSE FROM ABOVE.***

***1 AUGUST 1843***

01] Soon after the angel disappeared, Mary praised and glorified the Lord God in her heart:

02] "O who am I, o Lord, that You grant me such grace? –

03] I am to become pregnant without ever having known a man; because I do not even know what differentiates a man from me.

04] Would I then really know what it is: to be pregnant? O Lord! I know nothing of this!

05] Do I even know what it is, when one says: 'Look, a woman gives birth'? – O Lord! Be merciful to me; I am a maidservant of just fourteen years and have only heard of all this - but actually know nothing about it!

06] Oh, what will happen to me, a poor maiden, when I am pregnant - and do not know, what this condition is!

07] What will the father, Joseph, say when I tell him, or when he notices, that I am pregnant?!

08] However there cannot be anything bad in being pregnant, especially when a maidservant such as Sarah was once chosen for it by the Lord Himself?

09] Then I have often heard in the temple how delighted the women are when they are pregnant!

10] So there must be something really good and blissful about being pregnant, and I will surely also rejoice, when it is given to me from the Lord that I will be pregnant!

11] But when, when will this happen, and how? – Or has it already happened? Am I already pregnant, or will it happen later?

12] O Lord! O eternal Saint of Israel, give me, your poor maidservant, a sign, as to when this will happen so that I may exalt and glorify You for it!"

13] At these words, a luminous whiff of air wafted towards Mary and a soft voice spoke to her:

14] "Mary! Do not trouble yourself in vain; you have conceived, and the Lord is with you! – Do your work, and complete it, for no more work of such quality will be done for the temple!"

15] Here Mary kneeled, prayed to God and praised Him for such grace. – After she had praised the Lord, she arose and took up her work.

## ***CHAPTER 5. - THE HANDING OVER OF MARY'S COMPLETED TEMPLE WORK. MARY AND THE HIGH PRIEST. MARY VISITS HER RELATIVE ELIZABETH.***

***2 AUGUST 1843***

01] In a few days, Mary had also completed the purple, arranged it, then took the scarlet and laid it to the purple.

02] Then she thanked God for the grace that enabled her to complete the work so well, bound the spun yarn in pure linen and set out with it to Jerusalem.

03] She went alone to the building site at which Joseph was working; however, from there onwards, Joseph again accompanied her to Jerusalem and thereat to the temple.

04] Upon arrival, she immediately handed over the work to the High Priest.

05] He visually examined the scarlet and purple, found the work exceptionally good and praised and greeted Mary with the following words:

06] "Mary, such proficiency does not lie naturally within you; however the Lord has worked through your hand!

07] Therefore God has made you great; you will be blessed by the Lord God from among all women on earth, for you are the first to deliver her work to the temple."

08] Mary however spoke to the High Priest in great humility and gladness of heart:

09] "Honourable servant of the Lord in His holy shrine! O do not praise me too highly, and do not elevate me above the others; for the credit of this work cannot be given to me, but to the Lord alone, who guided my hand!

10] Therefore let all praise, all honour, all glory and all my love and worship be to Him alone!"

11] And the High Priest spoke: "Amen, Mary! Immaculate virgin of the Lord, you have spoken well before the Lord! – So leave again in peace; the Lord be with you!"

12] Thereupon Mary arose and went with Joseph to the building site, where she partook of some refreshment consisting of bread, milk and water.

13] A half day's journey away from the building site, across a small mountain range, lived an aunt of Mary, named Elizabeth.

Mary wanted to visit her and requested Joseph for permission.

14] Joseph promptly agreed and sent his eldest son along as a guide, who was to accompany her until Elizabeth's house was within view.

## ***CHAPTER 6. - THE WONDERFUL RECEPTION OF MARY BY ELIZABETH. HUMILITY AND WISDOM OF MARY. MARY RETURNING HOME TO JOSEPH.***

### ***3 AUGUST 1843***

- 01] On arrival at Elizabeth's house, being in a rather timid frame of mind, she knocked on the door, in accordance with Jewish custom.
- 02] As Elizabeth heard the timid knocking, she wondered: "Who knocks so very softly?
- 03] It must be a neighbour's child; for it cannot be my husband, who is still mute in the temple and awaiting his redemption!
- 04] My work however is important; shall I put it aside on account of a mischievous child of neighbour?
- 05] No, I will not do so, for I have work to do for the temple, which is of greater importance than a child's naughtiness, who probably just wants to tease and make fun of me again.
- 06] Therefore I will continue to work and let the child knock for a good bit of time."
- 07] Mary knocked once more, and the baby in Elizabeth's womb leaped for joy, and the mother heard a soft voice coming from the region of her leaping baby, and the voice said:
- 08] "Mother, go, go quickly; for it is the mother of my and your Lord, of my and your God, who is knocking at the door and comes to you in peace!"
- 09] Elizabeth, as soon as she heard this, threw down everything she was holding, ran to open the door for Mary,
- 10] gave her blessings according to custom, embraced her with open arms and said to her:
- 11] "O Mary, blessed are you among women! Blessed are you among all women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb!
- 12] O Mary, purest virgin of God! – Why do I deserve such grace, that the mother of my Lord and my God should come to me?!"
- 13] Mary, however, who did not grasp the meaning behind these words, spoke to Elizabeth:
- 14] "O dear aunt! – I have just come to pay you a friendly visit; how is it that you speak of things about me that I do not understand? – Am I then really pregnant, that you call me a mother?!"
- 15] Elizabeth however replied to Mary: "As you knocked at the door for the second time, the baby in my womb leaped for joy and spoke to me and greeted you in advance!"
- 16] Then Mary looked up to the heavens and thought about what the archangel Gabriel had said to her, although she still did not understand any of these things, and spoke:
- 17] "O great God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, what have You done to me? Who am I that all people of the earth bless me?
- 18] Elizabeth however spoke: "O Mary, chosen by God, come into my house and fortify yourself; let us talk and jointly praise and glorify God with all our might!"

### ***4 AUGUST 1843***

- 19] And Mary soon followed Elizabeth into her house and ate and drank and refreshed

herself, and was happy in spirit.

20] Elizabeth asked Mary many things about her life in the temple as a ward of the Lord, and how all things had happened.

21] Mary however said: "Dearest aunt, blessed by the Lord! – I think that these things are too lofty for us to comprehend, and it would be unwise for us women to discuss things that the Lord has put upon the sons of Aaron.

22] That is why I believe that we women should leave divine matters to God and to those He has given responsibility for these matters, and not ponder over them.

23] If we love God above all and obey His commandments, we will be living according to our status; whatever is beyond it, should be left to men who are called and chosen by the Lord.

24] Dear relative, I believe that is right, so release me from gossip from the temple; for the temple will not become any better or worse for it. When the Lord deems it proper, He will castigate the temple and reform it at the right time."

25] Elizabeth recognized Mary's great humility and modesty and said to her:

26] "Yes, virgin of God, full of grace! With such convictions you must surely find great mercy before God!

27] Only a highly innocent person can speak as you do; - and whoever lives thus, surely lives righteously before God and the entire world."

28] Mary however spoke: "Righteous living is not for us, but the Lord's, and is a grace!

29] Whoever believes that he lives righteously, he surely lives least righteously before God; however he who constantly confesses his fault before God, he is the one who lives righteously before God.

30] I do not know how I live, my life is a pure grace of the Lord, which is why I can do nothing but love, praise and glorify Him with all my might! – If your life is like mine, then do the same me, and the Lord will be more pleased than if we carry on talking about the conditions in the temple."

31] Elizabeth recognized that Mary was a divine spirit, and therefore stopped her questions about the temple and devoted herself to praising and glorifying God in His will. –

### **5 August 1843**

32] Thus Mary spent three full months with Elizabeth and helped her with the housework just like a maidservant.

33] In the meantime, Joseph had completed his construction and was back at home with his sons, working on his small, merely leased, property.

34] One evening, he spoke to his eldest son: "Joel, make my pack animal ready for tomorrow morning. I must go and fetch Mary!

35] The maiden has already been away from my house for three months, and I do not know how she is faring.

36] Although she is with the wife of the mute High Priest, one cannot know whether their house is free from all the temptations of he who enticed Eve!

37] So I will go there tomorrow and bring the maiden back, so that in time there can be gossip about me by the sons of Israel, and the Lord will not punish for my lack of care for the maiden."

38] And Joel went and did as Joseph had requested; but Joel had barely completed the

task, when Mary already stood at the forecourt, greeted Joseph and requested his permission to enter his house.

39] Joseph, completely taken by surprise at Mary's appearance, immediately asked her: "Is that really you, o unfaithful one of my house?"

40] And Mary spoke: "Yes, it is I, but not unfaithful to your house; and I would have returned much earlier but did not dare walk alone in the wooded mountains, - and you also did not send any messenger for me! Thus I had to stay away this long!

41] However, three Levites visited Zachariah's wife, and when they returned home to Jerusalem, they took me along with them, brought me to the border of your property, blessed me and your house and then continued on their way, and I hastened back to you, my dear father Joseph!"

42] Although Joseph would have willingly rebuked her for her long absence, he could not bring himself to do so, as firstly, Mary's voice had deeply touched his noble heart, and secondly, he recognized his own culpability, as he had not fetched Mary through a messenger for such a long time.

43] He thus allowed the maiden to come to him, so that he could bless her, and the maiden sprang to him and cuddled him, just as the most innocent children tend to cuddle their parents or other benefactors.

44] Joseph was deeply touched and was full of great joy and spoke: "I am a poor man and already quite old, but your childlike

love makes me forget my poverty and my age! The Lord has given you to me for great happiness, so I will go and work with joy to provide you, my little child, with a decent livelihood!"

45] At these words tears dropped from his eyes. Mary nimbly dried his wet cheeks and thanked God for giving her such a good foster father.

46] During this time, it seemed to Joseph that psalms were being sung in front of his house. — —

## ***CHAPTER 7. - JOSEPH'S PREMONITIONS AND PROPHECIES. MARY'S CONSOLATION. THE BLESSED SUPPER, THE VISIBILITY OF MARY'S PREGNANCY.***

**7 AUGUST 1843**

01] Joseph was filled with lofty premonitions and spoke to Mary: "Child of the Lord! You have brought great joy into my house, and my soul is filled with lofty premonitions!

02] But I also know, that the Lord always painfully afflicts those whom He loves, so let us always beg Him to be ever-merciful and compassionate towards us!

03] It is even possible that the Lord wants to renew the decayed Ark of the Covenant through you and me?!

04] If something like this lies ahead, then woe betide me and you; it will be a very difficult task! – But let us not talk of it anymore!

05] Whatever has to come, will surely come, and we cannot prevent it; but when it comes, it will seize us with omnipotent hands, and we will tremble before the will of Him, who has set the foundations of the earth!"

06] Mary did not understand any of this and therefore comforted the distressed-looking Joseph with the words:

07] "Dear father Joseph! Do not be distressed about the Lord's will; because we know that He only wants the best for His children! – If the Lord is with us, as He was with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and as he always was with those who love Him, how can suffering and harm afflict us?"

08] Joseph was satisfied with this consolation and thanked the Lord in his heart with all his might, for giving him such a comforting angel in Mary, and said thereupon:

09] "Children, it is already late evening; so let us chant the hymn of praise, eat our supper and then retire for the night!"

10] And so they did. And Mary hastened and brought the bread, and Joseph distributed it; however all wondered as to how good the bread tasted this time.

11] Joseph said: "The Lord be praised! Whatever he blesses always tastes good and has the best flavour!"

12] And Mary remarked most affectionately to Joseph: "See, dear father, you should thus not fear the afflictions of the Lord; for they are also the most precious blessings!"

13] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, yes, you immaculate daughter of the Lord, you are right! I will most patiently bear whatever the Lord burdens me with; for He will not make the burden too heavy and too difficult for me, because He is after all a father full of goodness and mercy - even in His zeal! And may His holy will always be done!"

14] Thereupon the devout family retired for the night and worked at home during the following days. –

15] Mary's body, however, grew bigger every day; as she noticed this, she tried to hide her pregnancy from Joseph and his sons as much as she could.

16] After some time, however, it was not possible to hide it anymore, and Joseph began to be suspicious and secretly consulted with his friends in Nazareth about Mary's strange condition.

## ***CHAPTER 8. - THE DOCTOR'S VIEW. JOSEPH INTERROGATES MARY. MARY'S EXPLANATION.***

**9 AUGUST 1843**

01] Joseph's friend was a knowledgeable person; for he was a doctor, who knew about herbs and often aided the midwives during difficult childbirths.

02] He went with Joseph and secretly looked at Mary, - and after observing her, he spoke to Joseph:

03] "Listen to me, brother from Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, a great misfortune has befallen your house, - for look, the maidservant is highly pregnant!

04] However you are also to blame; for look, it is now the sixth moon since you were away at your construction site! – Tell me, who was there to keep an eye on the maidservant?"

05] But Joseph replied: "At the time, Mary was confined to the house for nearly three weeks, and that only in the beginning when she arrived; afterwards she spent three full months with her relative Elizabeth!

06] Now already two moons have past since she is under my constant supervision, and I have never seen anyone who visited her openly or secretly!

07] And in the time of my absence she was, in any case, in very good hands; my son, who accompanied her to Elizabeth's house, gave me his solemn promise that he, except in an emergency, would not even touch her garment during the whole journey!

08] So I know with great certainty that Mary went undefiled from my house; whether the same can be said of Zachariah's house is quite another matter!

09] Could something have happened between her and an attendant of the temple? – May the Lord protect me from having such a thought; for the Lord would have made such a thing known long ago through the High Priest's unfailing wisdom!

10] But I know now what I will do to get at the truth in this matter. – You, friend, may leave in peace, and I will conduct a thorough investigation in my house!"

11] Joseph's friend soon left the house; Joseph, however, immediately turned to Mary and spoke to her:

12] "Child! With what face shall I look up to my God? What shall I now say about you?

13] Have I not received you as a pure virgin from the temple, and have I not faithfully guarded you with my daily prayer and through the trustworthy people in my house?

14] I implore you therefore to tell me who it is who dared to betray me and bring such a terrible shame on me, a son of David, and to you, who are also descended from the same house!

15] Who has seduced and defiled you, a virgin of the Lord?! – Who could have spoilt your purest mind? – And who was it that turned you into a second Eve?!

16] For the story of Adam is repeated on me in real life, as the serpent has apparently beguiled you, just as it did Eve.

17] Now answer my question! Go and take hold of yourself; for you will not succeed in deceiving me!" – In grief, Joseph threw himself down on his face upon a sack full of ashes and wept.

18] Mary trembled with great fear, began to weep and sob and was unable to speak, so



great was her fear and sadness.

19] Joseph then arose from the sack and spoke to Mary in a somewhat subdued voice:

20] "Mary, child of God, who He protected Himself, why have you done this to me? – Why have so profoundly degraded your soul and forgotten your God?!"

21] How could you do such a thing, you who were brought up in the Holy of Holies and who received her food from the hand of the angels and have always had the radiant servants of God as companions?! – O speak, and do not be silent before me!"

22] Here Mary gathered courage and spoke: "Father Joseph, you justly hard man! I tell you: As God lives, I am pure and innocent and till this hour have never known a man!"

23] Joseph asked: "Then how did it happen that you became pregnant?"

24] And Mary replied: "I am still merely a child and do not comprehend God's mysteries! Just listen to me, and I will tell you what happened to me! As a just God lives over us, what I say is true!"

**CHAPTER 9. - MARY'S NARRATION OF THE MYSTERIOUS HOLY  
OCCURRENCES. JOSEPH'S DISTRESS AND WORRY AND HIS DECISION TO  
SECRETLY REMOVE MARY. AN ANGEL OF THE LORD APPEARS TO  
JOSEPH IN A DREAM. MARY REMAINS IN THE HOUSE OF JOSEPH.**

**10 AUGUST 1843**

01] And Mary told Joseph everything that occurred to her; what she encountered as she was still working on the purple, and then ended her story with this solemn declaration:

02] "That is why I say to you, father, once again: As God lives, the Lord of the heavens and earth lives, I am pure and do not know a man and I also know as little of God's mystery that I must carry under my heart, to my great anguish!" –

03] Here Joseph suddenly became silent and was extremely frightened; for Mary's words deeply pierced his troubled soul, and trembling, he got confirmation of his secret premonition!

04] He began to ponder to and fro as to what he should do, and spoke to himself:

05] "If I conceal her irrefutable transgression from the world, as it is now, even when I do not recognize it as a transgression, I will be considered an evildoer against the law of the Lord and will not escape a certain punishment!

06] If, on the other hand, I expose her as a consummate sinner before the sons of Israel, with what she is carrying under her heart, being - according to her unambiguous declaration - originating from an angel,

07] I will be considered by God as one who delivers innocent blood to the tribunal of death?!

08] What shall I do with her then? – Should I leave her secretly, i.e., should I secretly send her away from me and conceal her in the mountains near the Greek border? – Or shall I wait for the day of the Lord so that he will then tell me what I should do?

09] But if tomorrow or the day after tomorrow someone comes to me from Jerusalem and recognizes Mary, what then? – Yes, it would be best if I secretly send her away and take care of her secretly without anyone besides my children having any knowledge of this!

10] In time, the Lord will surely reveal her innocence, and then all would be salvaged and won; and may this happen in the name of the Lord!"

11] Thereupon Joseph told this in private to Mary, who acquiesced to Joseph's honourable intentions and prepared herself, and then proceeded to retire for the night, as it was already late evening.

12] Joseph sank under his multifarious thoughts in slumber; and behold, an angel appeared to him in a dream and spoke to him:

13] "Joseph, do not be anxious about Mary, the purest virgin of the Lord! – For that which she carries under her heart has been created by God's Holy Spirit, and when He is born, you shall name him Jesus!" –

14] At this point Joseph awoke from slumber and praised the Lord God that He had shown him such mercy.

15] However, as it was already morning, Mary came to Joseph ready for the intended journey and indicated to him it might be time to leave.

16] Joseph put his arms around the maiden, pressed her to his heart and spoke to her:  
"Mary, pure one, you will remain with me; for the Lord today gave me a powerful  
testimonial of you, for He who will be born shall be named Jesus!"

17] By this Mary immediately realized that the Lord had spoken to Joseph, for she heard  
the same name that the angel had given to her, although she had made no mention of this  
earlier to Joseph!

18] And Joseph carefully watched over the maiden and provided her with everything she  
needed in her condition. – –

## ***CHAPTER 10. - THE ROMAN CENSUS. JOSEPH'S NON-PARTICIPATION IN THE COUNCIL IN JERUSALEM. THE TRAITOR ANNAS.***

**11 AUGUST 1843**

01] Two weeks after this event a great council was held in Jerusalem, since it had been heard from some Romans residing there, that the Emperor was going to count and register all the Jewish people.

02] This news was a great shock to the Jews, for whom counting people was forbidden.

03] Therefore the high priest called a large assembly, at which all the elders and the craftsmen, such as Joseph, were to attend.

04] Joseph however, had undertaken a trip into the hills to collect timber and was away for several days.

05] Since the messenger from Jerusalem who had come to see Joseph in order to deliver the invitation to the great assembly was not able to meet him, he informed his eldest son to notify Joseph immediately upon his return.

06] Joseph already returned home the next day. His son, Joses, informed him immediately about the news from Jerusalem.

07] But Joseph said: "Since I have been climbing around in the hills for five days and I am very tired, my legs will not carry me any further if I do not rest for a few days. So this time I am not compelled to follow Jerusalem's summons.

08] Besides, this assembly is worthless, since the mighty Roman Emperor, who now wields his power even over the lands of the Scythians, will take little notice of our advice and will do whatever he pleases! That's why I will stay put at home!"

09] But after three days a certain Annas came from Jerusalem, who was an important scribe there, and said to Joseph:

10] "Joseph, you who are skilled in the crafts and the scriptures and who are from the tribe of David! – I must to ask you, why you did not come to the assembly?"

11] Joseph turned to Annas and said: "See, I was in the hills for five days and did not know that I had been called.

12] When I came home and received the news from my son Joses, I was too tired and weak to be able to travel to Jerusalem at once! – Besides, I anyhow recognized at first glance that this whole assembly would be of very little use, if at all."

13] While Joseph was telling this, Annas looked around and unfortunately discovered the highly pregnant virgin.

14] At this, he left Joseph without a word, and hurried as fast as he could to Jerusalem.

15] Arriving completely out of breath, he hurried to the high priest and told him:

16] "Listen to me, and do not ask me why David's son did not come to the assembly; for I discovered scandalous horrors in his house!

17] See, Joseph, to whom both God and you bore witness by entrusting him with the care of the virgin, has failed in front of both God and you so profoundly and coarsely that it is beyond words!"

18] The high priest was appalled by Annas' message and asked shortly: "Why, how come? – Tell me the whole truth or you will die this very day!"

19] Annas said: "See, the virgin Mary, who as God bore witness left the temple of our Lord to be placed in his care, has been most thoroughly dishonoured by him. Her advanced pregnancy is a living proof of it!"

20] But the high priest said: "No, Joseph would never do such a thing! – Can God fail in bearing witness?!"

21] But Annas said: "So send your most trusted servants there and you will be convinced of the virgin's state of advanced pregnancy. However, if she is not, you can have me stoned to death right here!"

***CHAPTER 11. – THE HIGH PRIEST'S DOUBT CONCERNING MARY'S  
CONDITION. THE INTERROGATION OF MARY AND JOSEPH IN THE  
TEMPLE. JOSEPH'S LAMENT AND QUARREL WITH GOD. THE DEATH  
SENTENCE OF JOSEPH AND MARY AND THEIR DEFENCE THROUGH A  
DECREE OF GOD. MARY BECOMES JOSEPH'S WIFE.***

**16 AUGUST 1843**

01] However, the high priest reflected for a while and then said to himself: "What shall I do? Since the choice was made for the virgin, Annas has become very jealous and one should never listen to the advice of a jealous man.

02] If however Mary's condition is confirmed and I would have acted indifferently in this situation, what would the sons of Israel say and in what way would they hold me accountable?

03] I want to send the servants to Joseph secretly, so that if this horrible situation should be confirmed, they shall immediately bring the virgin here together with Joseph!"

04] Thus it was decided and settled. The high priest secretly called trusted servants and informed them of what had taken place in Joseph's house, and then sent them to Joseph with instructions about what they were to do if the situation should be confirmed.

05] In a great hurry, the servants went to Joseph and discovered the situation just as the high priest had told them.

06] The oldest of them said to Joseph: "Look, we were sent here from the temple, to ascertain to for ourselves the condition of the virgin, since malicious rumours about her have come to the ears of the high priest.

07] Unfortunately we have found these sad speculations confirmed; therefore do not let this turn violent, and follow us,

together with Mary, to the temple, where you shall hear the just decision from the mouth of the high priest!"

08] And, without any argument, Joseph followed the servants with Mary to the court in the temple.

09] As he appeared before the high priest, the astonished high priest asked Mary in a serious tone:

10] "Mary! Why did you do this to us and why did you degrade your own soul so profoundly ?

11] You have forgotten the Lord, your God, – you, who were brought up in the sanctum and who received your daily bread out of the hand of angels,

12] and who has constantly heard his songs of praise, and who has amused yourself, and has played and danced in front of God's face! – Speak, why did you do this to us?"

13] But Mary had to weep bitterly and, beneath bitter sobbing and weeping, spoke: "As truly as God, the Lord of Israel, exists, as truly am I pure and have never known a man! – Ask Joseph, the one chosen by God!"

14] And then the high priest turned to Joseph and asked him: "Joseph, I beseech you in the name of the eternal living God, tell me openly, how did this happen? Did you do such a thing?"

15] And Joseph said: "I tell you by all that is for you and I holy, as truly as the Lord, my God, lives, as truly I am untainted in front of this virgin, as in front of you and in front of God!"

16] And the high priest replied: "Do not bear false witness, but speak the truth in front of God! – And I tell you: You took your wedding into your own hands, you did not inform the temple and you did not first bow your head beneath the hand of the everlasting Almighty, so He might have blessed your seed! – Therefore, tell us the truth!"

### ***18 AUGUST 1843***

17] Joseph fell silent upon hearing such words from the high priest and was unwilling to reply at all; for he was so bitterly and unjustly accused by the high priest.

18] Since Joseph stood in deep silence before the high priest, not wanting to utter a word, the high priest opened his mouth again and said:

19] "Return the virgin to us again, as you have received her from the temple of the Lord, when she was as pure as a rising sun on a bright morning!"

20] Dissolving into tears Joseph stood there and said after an enormous sigh:

21] "Lord, God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, what did I a poor old man do so badly in your eyes, that you now punish me so strongly?!"

22] Take me from the world; as it is too hard to suffer such a disgrace as a just man in front of You and the whole world!

23] You punished my father David, when he had sinned at Urias.

24] I however, have never sinned against anyone and have laid hands neither on a human being nor an animal, and I have always respected the law impeccably. O Lord, why do you punish me now?

25] O show me that I have sinned in your eyes and I will happily suffer punishment by fire! – But if I have sinned in your eyes, then the day and the hour in which I was born shall be cursed!"

26] The high priest became embittered about Joseph's speech and spoke his mind in great agitation:

27] "Fine then, since you dispute your great sin in front of God, I will let you both drink of the accursed water of God the Lord; then your sin will be revealed before your eyes and the eyes of all people!" –

28] Immediately, the high priest took the accursed water, and let Joseph drink of it, and then sent him, according to the law, into the mountains near Jerusalem.

29] Likewise, he also gave such water to the virgin and sent her into the mountains as well.

30] However after three days they both returned absolutely unharmed, and all the people were surprised that no sin was revealed upon them.

31] The high priest, exceedingly astonished, then said to them; "Well, since the Lord our God did not want to reveal your sin, I also do not want to judge you, but instead declare you as innocent and unmarried.

32] However as the virgin is already pregnant, she shall become your wife as a penance, since she became pregnant unbeknownst to me, and she should never be given another husband, even when she would become a young widow! So be it! – And now leave in peace from here."

33] Now, Joseph took Mary and went with her to his home and was full of joy and praised his Lord. His joy was even greater now that Mary had become his rightful wife.



## ***CHAPTER 12. - AUGUSTUS' COMMANDMENT FOR THE ASSESSMENT AND CENSUS OF ALL INHABITANTS. NEW SORROW AND CONSOLATION.***

### ***19 AUGUST 1843***

01] Joseph then spent two months very contentedly in his house with Mary, who was now his wife, and he worked to support Mary.

02] However, after this time passed and Mary's delivery drew closer, a new blow occurred which caused Joseph great concern.

03] The Roman Emperor Augustus gave orders throughout his lands, whereby all people of his empire should be assessed and counted, in order to be classified for tax and recruitment purposes.

04] And as the Nazarenes were not excluded from this commandment, Joseph was forced to go to Bethlehem, David's city, where the Roman registration commission was set up.

05] Upon learning of this order, for which he had already been called to an assembly in Jerusalem, he said to himself:

06] "My God and my Lord, this is a hard blow for me at this time as Mary's delivery is so close!

07] What shall I do now? – I have to register my sons in any case, as they are unfortunately eligible for military service for the Emperor. But what, in heaven's name, O Lord, shall I do with Mary?!

08] I cannot leave her at home; for what would she do when her time would come?

09] If I take her with me, who can say that her time will not come on the way, and what would I then do with her, as she herself is more a child than a strong woman?

10] And even if I finally manage to present her to the Roman officials, how shall I have her registered?

11] As my wife, even when, until now, no one except myself and the high priest know anything?

12] Indeed, I am almost embarrassed in front of the sons of Israel, for they know that I am an old man over seventy years old! – What will they say if I register her as my rightful wife, a barely fifteen-year-old child who also happens to be highly pregnant?!

13] Or should I register her as my daughter? – But the sons of Israel know where Mary comes from, and that she could never be my daughter!

14] If I register her as a virgin of the Lord who was entrusted to me, what would some there say to me, not knowing that I have defended myself in the temple, upon seeing Mary highly pregnant?

15] Yes, I know what I will do now: I will wait for the day of the Lord! On this day, the Lord, my God will do what He thinks best and that will be for the best. And so be it then!"

**CHAPTER 13. - AN OLD FRIEND FORTIFIES AND BLESSES JOSEPH.  
JOSEPH'S TRAVEL ARRANGEMENTS FOR HIS FIVE SONS. THE  
CONSOLING TESTAMENT FROM ABOVE. THE HAPPY DEPARTURE.**

**21 AUGUST 1843**

01] Still on the same day an old wise friend from Nazareth came to Joseph and said to him:

02] "Brother! See, the Lord leads his people through many deserts and steppes! – Those who willingly follow where he leads, will reach the right place!

03] We were disgraced in Egypt and cried under Babylon's chains but the Lord freed us again!

04] Now the Romans sent their eagles over us; it is the Lord's will! – So we will do what He wants; for He surely knows why He wants it like this!"

05] Joseph well understood what his friend had told him and, as the friend blessed him and left, Joseph spoke to his sons:

06] "Listen to me! The Lord wants, that all of us go to Bethlehem; and so we have to accept His will and do what He wants.

07] You, Joel, saddle the she-ass for Mary and take the saddle with the backrest; and you Joses, bridle the ox and harness it to the cart, in which we will carry our food!

08] You three, Samuel, Simeon and James load the cart with stable fruits, bread, honey and cheese, and take enough to cover our needs for fourteen days; for we do not know when we will be called, and when we will be free, and what could happen to Mary on the way! So put fresh linen and napkins on the cart as well!"

09] The sons went and ordered everything as Joseph had requested.

10] After they had prepared everything as Joseph had told them, they came back and showed it to Joseph.

11] Joseph then kneeled down with his entire house, prayed, and delivered himself and his family into the hands of the Lord.

12] As he came to the end of these prayers and praises, he heard a voice seemingly from outside the house, which spoke to him:

13] "Joseph, faithful son of David, who was a man after God's heart!

14] When David left to fight the giant, the hand of the angel, placed at his side by the Lord, was with him, and see, your father was a mighty victor!

15] But with you now is He Himself, who has been eternally, who created heaven and earth, who in Noah's time let it rain for forty days and nights, and who let drown all men hostile to Him,

16] who then gave Isaac to Abraham, who led your people out of Egypt and spoke terribly with Moses in the Sinai!

17] See, He is now truly in your house and will also go with you to Bethlehem; therefore do not be afraid, because He will not allow a hair on your head to be touched!"

18] Joseph, upon hearing such words, became joyful, and he thanked the Lord for this grace and immediately prepared everything for the journey.

19] He took Mary, and placed her as softly and comfortably as possible on the pack animal, and then took the reins in his hand and led the she-ass.

20] The sons took charge of the loaded cart and followed the trotting she-ass.

21] After some time Joseph gave the reins to his oldest son; and he walked at Mary's side, since she sometimes became weak and could not hold herself properly in the saddle.

## ***CHAPTER 14.- MARY'S VISION OF THE TWO PEOPLES. THE FIRST SIGNS OF LABOUR, SHELTER IN A NEARBY CAVE.***

**23 AUGUST 1843**

01] Thus, the devout group of travellers came within six hours of Bethlehem and rested there in the open.

02] Joseph looked at Mary and found that she seemed full of pain, and mortified he thought to himself:

03] "What can it be? Mary's face is full of pain, and her eyes are filled with tears! – Maybe her time is nearing?"

04] Then Joseph again looked closer at Mary, and, to his great surprise, saw her laughing!

05] He then asked her: "Mary, tell me, what is happening to you? – For in one moment I see your face full of pain, but then in the next moment you are laughing and radiating with joy!"

06] And Mary said to Joseph: "See, I just saw two peoples in front of me; the first one cried and then I was forced to cry with them.

07] But the other moved in front of me laughing and was full of happiness and joy; and I had to laugh with them and join in their joy! – This is all that appeared as pain and joy on my face."

08] As Joseph heard this he felt calm again, since he knew that Mary often had visions, and he let them break camp to continue their journey and they proceeded towards Bethlehem. –

09] But as they came closer to Bethlehem, Mary suddenly spoke to Joseph:

10] "Listen to me, Joseph! – That which is inside me starts to press strongly; therefore let us rest!"

11] Joseph was startled by Mary's sudden outcry, for he now saw that the moment he had most feared had arrived.

12] So he let them stop immediately. Then Mary spoke again to Joseph:

13] "Take me down from the she-ass; for That which is in me presses strongly and wants to come out! And I do can not resist Its pressure any longer!"

14] But Joseph said: "But for the Lord's sake! You can see that there is no shelter here – where shall I bring you?"

15] However, Mary said: "Look, over there in the hill is a cave; it can be hardly a hundred steps away! Take me there; it is impossible for me to go any further!"

16] Thereupon Joseph steered his cart there and in this cave, which the shepherds used as a stable in time of need, to his great joy he found some hay and straw, which he promptly used to prepare a provisional bed for Mary.

***CHAPTER 15. – MARY IN THE CAVE. JOSEPH SEARCHING FOR A  
MIDWIFE IN BETHLEHEM. JOSEPH'S WONDERFUL EXPERIENCES.  
NATURE'S TESTIMONIAL. JOSEPH'S MEETING WITH THE MIDWIFE.***

**24 AUGUST 1843**

01] As soon as the bed was prepared, Joseph brought Mary into the cave, and she lay on the bed and found some relief in this position.

02] As Mary was thus lying relieved on the bed, Joseph said to his sons:

03] "You two eldest take care of Mary and care for her properly in case she needs it, especially you Joel, who have gained some knowledge in this regard from my friends in Nazareth!"

04] He ordered the other three to take care of the ass and the ox and to keep the cart in the cave which was quite large.

05] After Joseph had organised everything properly, he said to Mary: "Now I will go up on the hill to look for a midwife in my father's town as quickly as I can, and then I will bring her here to help you!"

06] After these words Joseph immediately left the cave, since it was already quite late in the evening and one could already pick out the stars in the sky.

07] And here we will tell about his extraordinary experiences after leaving the cave, in the same words he used to his sons upon his return to the cave with the midwife, and Mary had already given birth.

08] And Joseph's words were: "Children! we are on the threshold of great events! – Now I start to understand what the voice was telling me the night before our departure; indeed, if the Lord was not with us – albeit invisibly – such marvels as I have seen could not possibly have happened!

09] Listen to me! – As I stepped out and went on my way, it seemed to me as if I went and yet did not move; – and I saw the rising full moon and the stars both rising and setting, and see, everything stood still, and the moon did not leave the horizon and the stars did not want to set at all!

10] Then I saw flocks upon flocks of little birds sitting on the branches of trees; their heads were all facing in this direction, and they were shivering as when large earthquakes are approaching, and they could not be chased away from their perches neither by shouting nor by throwing stones.

11] And I looked around again on the ground and, not far from me, saw a group of workmen who were sitting around a bowl filled with food. Some of them kept their hands motionless in the bowl, and were unable to take the food out of it.

12] And those who had already lifted a morsel from the bowl, kept it near their mouth and were not able to open their mouth to eat it; and all faces were turned upwards as if they saw great things in the sky!

13] Then I saw sheep being driven by the shepherds; but the sheep just stood there motionless, and the shepherd's hand, which he lifted to hit the tarrying sheep, remained frozen in the air and he could not move it.

14] Again I saw a whole herd of bucks who held their snouts over the water but could not drink, for they were as if completely paralyzed.

15] I also saw a stream which had a steep drop down the hill, and look, the water stood still and did not flow down into the valley! – And everything on the ground was like this, as though it had no life and no motion.

16] Thus, as I stood there or walked, and did not know whether I was standing or walking, see, I finally saw life once again!

17] For a woman came down the hill towards me, and when she reached me, she asked: "Man, where are you going so late?"

18] And I spoke to her: "I am looking for a midwife; since over there in the cave is someone who needs to give birth!"

19] The woman replied and said: "Is she from Israel?" – And I replied to her: "Yes, my lady, she and I are from Israel; David is our father!"

20] But the woman went on and asked: "Who is she who wants to give birth in the cave? Is she your wife or a relative or a maidservant?"

21] And I replied to her: "Since a short time – only before God and the high priest - my wife. However, she was not yet my wife when she became pregnant, but had been given from the temple by the witness of God, into the care of my house, since she had earlier been raised in the Holy of Holies!

22] But do not be surprised about her pregnancy; for That which is inside her has been conceived by the holy spirit of God!" – The woman was astonished and said to me: "Man, tell me the truth!" – But I said: "Come, look, and be convinced with your own eyes!" – – –

**CHAPTER 16. - THE VISIONS NEAR THE CAVE. THE MIDWIFE'S DREAM  
AND HER PROPHETIC WORDS. THE MIDWIFE WITH MARY AND THE  
CHILD. SALOME, HER SISTER, DOUBTS MARY'S VIRGINITY.**

**25 AUGUST 1843**

01] The woman agreed and followed Joseph to the cave; and when they arrived there, the cave suddenly became enveloped in a thick white cloud, so that they could not find the entrance.

02] The midwife was greatly surprised at this phenomenon and said to Joseph:

03] "This day, my soul experienced something extraordinary! – I had a most wonderful vision this morning, where everything formed itself just as I now have seen it in reality, as I still see it and as I will see more of it!

04] You are the same man, who came towards me in my vision; and I also saw the whole world standing still in the middle of its activities, and I saw the cave, how a cloud covered it; and I spoke with you as I have just now spoken.

05] And I even saw something more marvellous in the cave, as my sister Salome arrived, who was the only one to whom I confided my vision this morning!

06] Therefore, I say now also in front of you and God, my Lord: Israel has experienced a great salvation! A saviour came, sent from above, in the time of our greatest need!"

07] After these words of the midwife, the cloud quickly drifted out of the cave and light of such power flowed out of the cave towards the midwife and Joseph that their eyes were unable to bear it, and the midwife said: "So everything is true, which I saw in the vision! – Oh man! you fortunate one, here is more than Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses and Elijah!"–

08] After these words were spoken, the light became more and more bearable and the Infant became visible just as it took to the mother's breast for the first time.

09] The midwife now entered the cave with Joseph and looked at the Infant and its mother, and when she found everything so perfectly resolved, she said:

10] "Truly, truly, this is the saviour celebrated by all the prophets, he who will be free of bonds even in the womb, to signify that he will lift all the restrictions of the law!

11] But since when did anyone see a newly born child reach already for its mother's breast!?

12] This evidently shows, that this Child, when becoming a man, will judge the world by love and not by the law!

13] Listen, you fortunate husband of this virgin, everything is in the best of order; therefore, let me leave the cave, for I it now starts to weigh heavily on my breast since I feel I am not pure enough to bear the holy proximity of my and your God and Lord!"

14] Joseph was completely taken aback upon hearing these words of the midwife. – And she hurried out of the cave into the open.

15] As she stepped out of the cave, she met her sister Salome outside, who knew about her vision and had followed her, and immediately said to her:

16] "Salome, Salome! come and see my morning vision confirmed in reality! – In the fullest truth the virgin has given birth to what human wisdom and nature may never understand!"

17] Salome said: "As truly as God exists, I cannot believe that a virgin gave birth until I will

have examined her with my own hands!"



**CHAPTER 17. – THE DOUBTING SALOME'S REQUEST TO MARY.  
SALOME'S TESTIMONIAL OF MARY'S UNTOUCHED VIRGINITY. GOD'S  
JUDGMENT. THE ANGEL'S INSTRUCTIONS TO SALOME. SALOME'S  
RECOVERY.**

**26 AUGUST 1843**

01] After Salome had said this, she entered the cave and said:

02] "Mary, my soul is preoccupied with a big conflict; therefore I ask you to prepare yourself, that I examine you with my experienced hands, and that we shall see how your virginity appears!"

03] Mary willingly agreed to the demands of the unbelieving Salome, got ready and allowed herself to be examined.

04] However, when Salome touched Mary's abdomen with her searching hand, she raised an enormous howl and she shouted very loudly:

05] "Woe, woe for my Godlessness and my great disbelief, that I wanted to test the everlasting God! – for look, look here! – my hand burns in the fire of the Divine wrath over woeful me!!!"

06] After these words she threw herself on her knees in front of the Infant and said:

07] "O God of my fathers ! You almighty Lord of all magnificence! Remember me, that I also am a seed of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob!

08] Do not make a fool out of me in front of the sons of Israel, but give me back my healthy limbs!"

09] And look, thereupon an angel of the Lord stood next to Salome and said to her: "God the Lord has heard your entreaty; go to the Infant and carry It, and through this you will experience a great salvation!"

10] As Salome heard this, she kneeled in front of Mary and asked her for the Infant.

11] Mary willingly gave her the Infant and said to her: "May it serve your salvation according to the saying of the angel of the Lord; may the Lord have mercy upon you!"

12] Salome took the small Child in her arms and held it as she kneeled, and as soon as she had the Child in her arms, she said:

13] "O God! You almighty Lord of Israel, who rules and reigns from eternity! – In all the fullness of truth, a king of kings is born here in Israel, who will be mightier than David was, the man after God's heart! I shall laud and praise You forever!"

14] After these words Salome was soon fully healed again, and she returned the Child to Mary with the most heartfelt contrition and left the cave vindicated.

15] As soon as she was outside, she wanted to scream out aloud about the greatest miracle of all miracles and had already begun to tell her sister about what had happened to her.

16] But suddenly a voice came from above and said to Salome: "Salome, Salome! Do not tell anyone what extraordinary events have happened to you; for the time will come, when the Lord will show Himself through words and acts!"

17] At this point Salome fell silent and, according to Mary's wish, Joseph stepped out to ask the two sisters to come back into the cave so that nobody should notice what marvel had

happened there. – And both humbly returned into the cave.

## ***CHAPTER 18. - THE HOLY FAMILY'S NIGHT'S SLEEP IN THE CAVE. THE ANGEL'S SONGS OF PRAISE IN THE MORNING. THE ADORATION OF THE SHEPHERDS. THE ANGEL'S WORDS OF EXPLANATION TO JOSEPH.***

**28 AUGUST 1843**

01] When all had gathered in the cave, Joseph's sons asked their father (viz Joseph):

02] "Father, what shall we do now? Everything is taken care of! Our bodies are tired from travelling; can we not lay down and rest?"

03] And Joseph spoke: "Children! you see what an infinite grace came to all of us from above; and to this end you shall stay awake and praise God with me!

04] For you also saw, what Salome experienced in the cave since she was disbelieving; henceforth, we shall not be sleepy when the Lord visits us!

05] Go to Mary and touch the Infant; who knows if your eyelids may not become strengthened as if you would have had a long and refreshing sleep!"

06] Joseph's sons went and touched the little Child; and the Child smiled at them and stretched Its little hands out to them, as if It recognized them as brothers.

07] Thereupon everybody was greatly astonished and they said: "Indeed, this is no ordinary child! For who has ever experienced, that someone was greeted so ecstatically by a new- born child?

08] Besides, we now also feel strengthened in all our limbs, as if we had never made a journey, and were at home on a morning with our bodies totally rested!"

09] Thereupon, Joseph replied: "See, so my advice was good. However, now I notice that it is starting to get quite cool; therefore bring the ass and the ox here! The animals will lay around us and will give us some warmth through their breath and perspiration; and we shall also lay close to Mary!"

10] And the sons did as he said. And as they brought the animals close to Mary, they immediately laid down on the main part of Mary's bed and breathed diligently over Mary and the Infant and it warmed them quite well.

11] The midwife said: "Indeed, this can not be insignificant in front of God, even the animals serve, as if they had reason and sense!"

12] Salome said: "O sister! The animals here seem to see more than us! – While we hardly dare to think, the animals already worship the One who created them!

13] Believe me, sister, as truly as God exists, as truly as the promised Messiah is here in front of us; for we know, that never during the birth of even the greatest prophets have such marvels occurred!"

14] But Mary spoke to Salome: "God the Lord showed great mercy in that you behold That before which my soul trembles!

15] Keep silent just like the angel of the Lord advised you; for otherwise you could be the cause of our bitter end!"

16] Salome solemnly promised to keep her silence forever and the midwife followed her sister's example.

17] And now everything in the cave became quiet. In the first hour before sunrise, mighty songs of praise were heard outside of the cave.

18] Immediately, Joseph sent his eldest son to see what it was and who was singing outside so powerfully in praise of the Lord.

19] Joel went out and saw that every space in the skies was filled from top to bottom with uncountable myriads of shining angels. Astonished, he hurried back to the cave to tell everyone what he had seen.

### **29 AUGUST 1843**

20] All were greatly astonished at Joel's report and went out to convince themselves of its truth.

21] After having witnessed such glory of the Lord, they returned to the cave and bore witness to Mary as well. And Joseph said to Mary:

22] "Listen you purest virgin of the Lord, the fruit of your loins is indeed conceived of the holy spirit of God, as all heaven now proves!

23] But what will happen to us, now that all the world will now surely come to know of what happened here? For not only we, but all other men now see the evidence shining for us through all the heavens – for I have just seen many shepherds, and how they turned their faces heavenward!

24] And they sang with the same voices along with the mighty choirs of angels, which now – visible to everybody – fill all the heavens from top to bottom all the way down to the earth!

25] And their song sounded like that of the angels: "Descend, o heavens, upon the righteous! May peace be with all people on earth who are of good will !" – And: 'God in heaven shall be honoured in Him, who comes in the name of the Lord!'

26] Look, oh Mary, the world will see and hear such things; therefore they will come here and they will follow us, and we will have to flee over hill and dale!

27] So I think that we should move from here as soon as possible and, as soon as I have been registered – which should already happen this morning –, we should return to Nazareth and from there over to the Greeks, some of whom I know quite well. – Don't you agree with me?"

28] Mary said to Joseph: "But you can see that I cannot leave this shelter today; therefore let us trust in the Lord! He has led us and protected us so far; so He will surely continue to lead and truly protect us ever so faithfully!

29] If He wants to reveal us to the world, tell me: where shall we flee, where His heaven would not be able to discover us?!

30] Therefore His will shall be! – Whatever He wants will be right. Look, here on my breast rests the One, whom all this concerns!

31] And this One will stay with us, so the great glory of God will also not leave us, wherever we would want to flee!"

32] Mary had hardly finished speaking, when behold, two angels were already standing in front of the cave as leaders of a group of shepherds, and they made it known to the shepherds that the One, for whom their songs of praise were meant, was born here.

33] And the shepherds entered the cave, and kneeled in front of the Infant and worshiped It; and the angels came also in bands and worshiped the Infant.

34] But Joseph, together with his sons, looked astonished towards Mary and the small Child and said: O God, what is this? – Did You Yourself assumed flesh in this Child?

35] For how could it be possible then, that He is even worshipped by Your holy angels? If

you are present, O Lord, then what is with the temple now – and with the Holy of Holies?!"

36] And an angel stepped towards Joseph and said to him: "Do not ask and do not worry yourself; for the Lord has chosen the earth as the scene of His mercy, and has now visited His people, as He has foretold through the mouths of His children, His servants and prophets!

37] What now takes place in front of your eyes, is according to His will, as He is holy, most holy!"

38] At this point the angel left Joseph, and went back to worshiped the little Child, who smiled with open hands at all the worshippers.

39] As the sun rose, the angels disappeared; but the shepherds stayed and inquired with Joseph, about how all these events could possibly have happened.

40] But Joseph said: "Listen, as miraculously as the grass grows out of the ground, so also did this miracle occur! Now who knows, how the grass grows? – Just as little am I able to tell you about this wonder, too! God wanted it this way; this is all, that I can tell you!"

***CHAPTER 19. – JOSEPH'S CONCERNS ABOUT THE REGISTRATION. THE  
MIDWIFE'S REPORT TO THE ROMAN CAPTAIN CORNELIUS. THE  
CAPTAIN'S VISIT TO THE CAVE. JOSEPH AND CORNELIUS. CORNELIUS'  
PEACE AND JOY BEING NEAR THE CHILD JESUS.***

**30 AUGUST 1843**

01] The shepherds were satisfied with this answer and did not ask Joseph any further, and they left them and then brought various refreshments as offering to Mary.

02] When the sun had already been shining on the earth for an hour, Joseph asked the midwife:

03] "Listen to me, my friend and sister from Abraham, Isaac and Jacob! – See, the registration greatly worries me and I wish nothing else than to get it over with!

04] But I do not know where in the town it is taking place, so leave Salome here with Mary, but lead me and my sons to the Roman captain who conducts the registration!

05] Maybe we will be received immediately, for we will surely be the first to arrive there?"

06] And the midwife said to Joseph: "Gracious man, listen to me! – The captain, Cornelius from Rome, lives in my house, which is one of the first in the town.

07] And he has his office there as well. Although he is a pagan, he is otherwise a good and righteous man; I will go and tell him everything, except for the miracle, and I believe that everything will be solved!"

08] Joseph was pleased by this proposal, as he anyhow felt a great timidity towards the Romans, and especially regarding the registration; therefore he asked the midwife to do as proposed.

09] So the midwife went and found Cornelius, who was still young and liked to sleep late in the morning, still in his bed, and she informed him of all that was necessary.

10] Cornelius got up immediately, threw his toga on and said to the landlady: "Woman, I believe everything you say; but I still want to go there with you, as I feel a strong urge to do so!

11] According to your story it is not far from here, and I will be back in time at my workplace! So lead me there now!"

12] And the midwife was pleased about this, and brought the honest, young captain with whom she was well acquainted, to the cave, where he stood in front and said to her: "O woman, how easy it is to visit my Emperor in Rome, and yet how hard it is to step into this cave!

13] That has to be something exceptional! – Tell me, if you know any reason; for I know that you are an upright Jewess!"

14] The midwife said: "Good captain of the great Emperor! Just wait for one moment out here in front of the cave; I will go inside and bring you the answer!"

15] And she went and told Joseph, that the good captain himself was waiting in front of the cave, and that he would like to enter, but for some inexplicable reason he did not dare to do so.

16] As Joseph heard this, he was moved and said: "O God, how good are You, that you even turn into joy that of which I was most afraid! – Therefore all praise and all honour

shall be yours alone!"

17] After these words, he hurried out of the cave and threw himself at Cornelius' feet, saying: "Upholder of the great Emperor, have mercy on this old man! See, my young wife, who was given to me by lot in the temple, gave birth here last night, and I just arrived here yesterday, therefore, I was not able to report myself to you immediately!"

18] And Cornelius said, while lifting up Joseph: "O man! do not worry, everything is well! But let me step inside and see how you are settled!"

19] And Joseph led Cornelius into the cave. When he looked upon the Infant, and saw how It smiled at him, he was astonished at such behaviour and said: "By Zeus, that is rare! I feel like a newborn, and never have I felt such peace and joy inside me! – Indeed, today I shall have a holiday, and remain your guest."

**CHAPTER 20. – CORNELIUS' QUESTIONS ABOUT THE MESSIAH.  
JOSEPH'S EMBARRASSMENT. THE CAPTAIN'S QUESTIONS TO MARY,  
SALOME AND THE MIDWIFE. THE ANGELS' WARNING OF THE  
BETRAYAL OF THE DIVINE SECRET. CORNELIUS' PREMONITION OF THE  
DIVINITY OF THE CHILD JESUS.**

**31 AUGUST 1843**

01] But Joseph, who was very happy about this, spoke to the captain: "Upholder of the great Emperor's power, what can I, a poor man, offer you for your great friendship? – What can I serve you in this humid cave?"

02] How can I treat you in accordance with your high position? – Look, here in my cart are all my belongings, partly brought from Nazareth, but partly a present from the local shepherds!

03] If you're able to take some of it, may each bite fed to your mouth be a thousand times blessed!"

04] But Cornelius said: "Good fellow, worry not about me; see, here is my landlady, who will take care of the kitchen and we shall all have enough for only one small coin adorned by the emperor's head!"

05] And the captain gave a gold coin to the midwife and told her to arrange for a good lunch and dinner and for better housing, as soon as the woman in childbed would be able to move.

06] But then Joseph said to Cornelius: "Oh splendid friend! Please, do not go to any trouble or expense for us; because for the few days we shall spend here, we are – praise the Lord, God of Israel! - Well taken care of!"

07] The captain then said: "Good is good, but better is better! Therefore just let it happen and let me make a happy sacrifice to God as well; see, I honour the gods of all peoples!"

08] I also want to honour your God, because ever since I saw His temple at Jerusalem I am pleased by Him. He must be a God of great wisdom, that you have learned such great skill from him?"

09] But Joseph spoke: "Oh friend! If it would be possible for me to convince you of the one and only nature of our God, how much I would like to do it for your eternal well being!"

10] But I am weak and ignorant and am not able to do so. But just look into some of our books and read them, you know our language well, and you will find things which will amaze you!"

11] And Cornelius said: "Good fellow, I have already done what you have now kindly advised me to do, and I have found truly astonishing things therein!"

12] Among other things I discovered a prediction, in which the Jews are promised a new eternal king. Tell me, do you know, after interpreting such prediction, when this king will come - and from where?"

13] After some moments of embarrassment, Joseph said: "He will come from the heavens as the son of the everlasting God! And his Kingdom will not be of this world, but of the world of the spirit and truth!"

14] And Cornelius spoke: "Well, I understand you, but I have also read that this king shall



be born to a virgin in a stable, near this town! – How can this be understood?"

15] But Joseph spoke: "Oh good man, you have a keen perception! - I cannot tell you anything else than this: Go and see the maid with the new born Child; there you will find what you want to find."

### ***1 SEPTEMBER 1843***

16] And Cornelius went and looked with sharp eyes at the virgin and the Infant, in order to discover, from her and the Child, the future king of the Jews.

17] He also asked Mary how she had become pregnant at such an early age.

18] And Mary replied: "Honest man, as truly as God exists have I never known a man!

19] But it so happened nine months ago, that a messenger of the Lord came to me and taught me in a few words that I would become pregnant from the spirit of God.

20] And it happened so: I became pregnant without ever having known a man; and look, before you is the fruit of the Divine promise! As God is my witness, this has happened so!"

21] Now Cornelius turned to both of the sisters and said: "What do you say to this story? Is this a fine deception of this old man, a good pretext for blind, superstitious people to escape legal punishment under such circumstances?

22] For I know that Jews have set the death penalty for such cases! – But should there be anything more serious to it - which would be worse than in the first case, because then the emperor's law has to be applied severely, to make short work of any agitator?! Oh speak truth, so that I know what to think of this extraordinary family!"

23] But Salome spoke: " Listen to me, oh Cornelius, I plead to you by all your great imperial authority! There will be no need for you to take any serious steps with regard to this poor, yet infinitely rich, family!

24] You can believe me, for I stand for the truth with my life: all the powers of the heavens are at the disposal of this family, like your arm to you, of this I am truly convinced."

25] Now Cornelius was taken aback even more and asked Salome: "Even the powers of Rome's holy Gods, Rome's heroes, weapons and invincible power? – Oh Salome! what are you talking about?!"

26] But Salome said: "As you have said, so it is! – This is my conviction; in case you may not believe it, you might go outside and look at the sun! It is already shining for four hours today, and look, it is standing still in the east and does not dare to move on!"

27] And Cornelius went outside, looked at the sun, came back and said in astonishment: "Indeed, you are right, if this is in connection with this family, then even the god Apollo obeys them!

28] Zeus must be here as well, the mightiest of all gods and the time of Deucalion and of Pyrrha seems to come again; but if that is the case, then I have to report such an incident to Rome immediately!"

29] When these words were spoken, two mighty angels appeared; their faces were radiant like the sun and their clothes like a flash of lightning. And they spoke: "Cornelius! – Be silent about all you have seen, even to yourself – otherwise you and Rome will perish this day!"

30] Cornelius was then overcome by great fear. The two angels disappeared; but he went to Joseph and spoke: "Oh man! – Here is infinitely more than a future king of the Jews! Here is the One, whom all heaven and hell obeys! Therefore let me go from here; for I am not worthy of being so close to the presence to God!"

## ***CHAPTER 21. - JOSEPH'S WORDS ON THE FREE WILL OF MAN AND HIS ADVICE TO CORNELIUS. THE CAPTAIN'S CARE OF THE HOLY FAMILY.***

**2 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] And Joseph, himself quite astonished by Cornelius' remarks, said to him: "This wonder is so great that I do not even know how to tell you!

02] But you can believe me when I tell you that great and mighty things are behind it; for all the powers of God's eternal heaven are not be set in motion for insignificant matters!

03] With regard to this wonder, no man is inhibited in his free will and can do whatever he wants; for that is what I have understood from the commandments given to you by the two angels of the Lord!

04] For behold, the Lord through his omnipotence could bind our will in this instance, just as He binds the will of the animals, and we would then have to act according to His will!

05] He does not do that, however. He only gives us free commandment from which we can learn that we can want and act on our own, that is His holy will.

06] So you too are not bound in the slightest, not even with one fibre of your body, and can therefore do whatever you want! If you wish to be my guest today, then stay; however, if you do not wish or dare to do this, you are likewise completely free to decide.

07] If you would ask for my advice, I would definitely give it and say to you: O friend, stay! – For you will not be in better hands anywhere else in the whole world than here under the visible protection of all the heavenly powers!"

08] And Cornelius said: "Yes, just man before the Gods and before your God, and before all men, your advice is good, and I will follow it and stay with you until tomorrow!

09] I will now leave with my landlady for a short while, to make arrangements so that all of you can be provided - despite this cave - with better shelter."

10] And Joseph said: "Good man, do as you wish! The Lord God will reward you some day!"

11] Hereupon the captain went to town with the midwife and first had it announced that the day was an official holiday, then took thirty warriors, gave them bedding, tents and firewood and told them to carry it all to the cave.

12] The midwife took an appropriate amount of food and drink with her and had some more brought after her.

13] On arrival at the cave, the captain immediately had three tents set up: a spacious one for Mary, one for himself, Joseph and his sons and one for the midwife and her sister.

14] And in Mary's tent he had a new and rather soft bed set up and provided the tent with other necessary facilities. He also suitably equipped the other tents, got his men to quickly build a stove, laid some wood on it himself and made a fire to warm the cave, which was quite cold at this time of year.

***CHAPTER 22. - CORNELIUS WITH THE HOLY FAMILY IN THE CAVE.  
THE SHEPHERDS AND THE CAPTAIN. THE NEW ETERNAL SPIRITUAL  
SUN. CORNELIUS' FAREWELL. JOSEPH'S WORD OF THANKS ON THE  
GOODNESS OF THE HEATHEN CAPTAIN.***

***4 SEPTEMBER 1843***

01] Thus Cornelius looked after the devout family and stayed the whole day and the whole night with them

02] In the afternoon, the shepherds came again to worship the Infant, and brought various offerings.

03] However, as they saw tents and the Roman captain in the hut, they wanted to flee from him in great fear;

04] for there were many fugitives from the Roman registration among them, who were in great fear of the penalty that could be imposed on such fugitives.

05] The captain went to them and spoke: "Do not fear me, for I will abate your punishment; but bear in mind that the will of the Emperor must be fulfilled, and therefore come tomorrow, and I will register you as gently and mildly as possible!"

06] As the shepherds now learnt that Cornelius was such a mild person, they overcame their shyness and let themselves be registered on the following day.

07] After his talk with the shepherds, the captain asked Joseph, whether the sun would never leave the morning this time.

08] And Joseph replied: "This sun, which rose on the earth today, never! But the natural sun will set in a few hours after running its normal course according to the Lord's will."

09] Such was Joseph's prophetic speech that he himself hardly knew and understood anything of what he had said!

10] But the captain asked Joseph: "What are you saying? – Look, I have not understood the meaning of your words; so speak to me in a more comprehensible way!"

11] And Joseph spoke: "A time will come in which you will warm yourself in the holy rays of this sun and will bathe in the stream of its Spirit!"

12] I do not know what else to tell you and hardly understand myself what I have just said; in time, when I am no more, the magnificence of the eternal truth will be revealed to you."

13] And the captain did not ask Joseph anything more and kept these profound words in his soul.

14] On the following day, the captain greeted the entire family and assured them that he would take care of them as long as they stayed there, and keep them in his heart all his life.

15] Subsequently, he went about his business and gave the midwife another coin to provide for the family.

16] And when the captain had left, Joseph spoke to his sons: "Children, how is it that a heathen is better than many a Jew? – Is it possible that here the words of Isaiah are fitting, when he said:

17] 'Behold, my servants shall rejoice in good spirits; you, however, shall scream in anguish and howl in sorrow!'" – And the sons of Joseph replied: "Yes, father, this passage

is explained and understood in its entirety here."

**CHAPTER 23. - CORNELIUS' AFFECTIONATE CARE. THE ANGEL'S  
INSTRUCTIONS TO JOSEPH REGARDING THE DEPARTURE TO  
JERUSALEM AND THE PRESENTATION IN THE TEMPLE. MARY'S  
DREAM. THE SENTRY IN FRONT OF THE CAVE.**

**5 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] So Joseph spent six days in the cave and was visited daily by Cornelius, who diligently saw to it that the family would not lack anything.

02] During the early morning of the sixth day, an angel appeared to Joseph and spoke: "Obtain a pair of turtledoves, and depart for Jerusalem on the eighth day!

03] Mary shall sacrifice the turtledoves according to the law, and the Child must be circumcised and bear the name that has been indicated to you and Mary!

04] Return to this place after the circumcision, and stay here until I tell you when and where you shall go from here!

05] You, Joseph, will prepare to leave earlier; but I must tell you: you will not be able to leave this place one heartbeat earlier than it is the will of Him, who is with you in the cave!"

06] After these words the angel disappeared, and Joseph went to Mary and notified her of the angel's words.

07] And Mary said to Joseph: "I am a maidservant of the Lord at all times, so may His will be done unto me!

08] And I had a dream today, and in this dream all happened as you disclosed now; so just get me the pair of turtledoves, and I will confidently leave here on the eighth day to go to the city of the Lord."

09] Soon after the angel's appearance, the captain came once again for a morning visit, and Joseph notified him as to why he would have to go to Jerusalem on the eighth day.

10] And the captain instantly offered Joseph all his facilities and wanted to give him a guide to lead him to Jerusalem.

11] But Joseph thanked him for his magnificent good will and spoke: "See, it is the will of my Lord God that I go into Jerusalem, just as I came to this place!

12] And so I will make the short journey in the same way, so that the Lord does not punish me for disobedience of His will.

13] However, as you wish to do something for me on this occasion, please provide me with two turtledoves, which have to be offered to the temple, and take care of this dwelling place for me!

14] For I will come back to this place on the ninth day and remain here as long as the Lord demands!"

15] And Cornelius promised Joseph to offer all that was requested, and thereupon departed, and himself brought Joseph a cage full of turtledoves, from which Joseph could select the most beautiful ones.

16] Subsequently, the captain returned to his duties and, in the meantime, left the cage of turtledoves in the cave until evening, till the time he himself went to fetch it back.

17] On the eighth day, after Joseph had departed for Jerusalem, Cornelius placed a guard in front of the cave, who prevented all from entering or leaving it, with the exception of the

two eldest sons of Joseph who were left behind and Salome, who provided them with food and drink; for the midwife had also travelled to Jerusalem.

## ***CHAPTER 24. - THE CIRCUMCISION AND NAMING OF THE INFANT AND MARY'S PURIFICATION. THE PRESENTATION OF THE CHILD IN THE TEMPLE BY THE MOTHER, THE DEVOUT SIMEON AND THE CHILD JESUS.***

**6 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] On the afternoon of the eighth day - according to present calculation, at around the third hour - the Infant was circumcised in the temple and received the name Jesus, the name given by the angel before He was even conceived in the womb.

02] And since in the extreme case of Mary's proven virginity the time for her purification could be considered as fulfilled, Mary was immediately purified in the temple.

03] Therefore Mary took the Infant on her arm soon after the circumcision and carried Him into the temple, so that she, together with Joseph, could present Him to the Lord according to the Law of Moses.

04] For it is written in God's law: "Every kind of firstborn must be consecrated to the Lord."

05] And hence a pair of turtledoves or a pair of young pigeons should be sacrificed!"

06] And Mary offered a pair of turtledoves and laid them on the offering table; and the priest took the offering and blessed Mary.

07] There was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon, who was most devout and god-fearing and waited for the consolation of Israel; for the Holy Spirit was upon him.

08] And it had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen Jesus, the one anointed by God, the Messiah of the world."

[024.09] And, prompted by an inner urge, he came into the temple, where Joseph and Mary were still present with the Child Jesus and doing all that the law required.

10] As he saw the Infant, he immediately went to the parents and entreated them to let him take the Infant into his arms for a short while.

11] The most devout parents gladly agreed to this old, most devout man whom they knew well.

12] And Simeon took the Infant into his arms, most fervently praised God and then spoke:

13] "Lord! Now allow Your servant to go in peace, according to Your word;

14] for my eyes have now seen the Saviour, whom you promised to the fathers and the prophets.

15] This is the One, whom You prepared in the presence of all peoples!

16] A light of revelation to the pagans, and the glory of Your people Israel."

17] Joseph and Mary were surprised themselves about Simeon's words; for they still did not understand the things he had said about the Child.

18] Simeon returned the Infant to Mary, blessed both of them and said to Mary:

19] "Behold, this Child is set for the fall and rise of many in Israel; and for a sign that will be opposed!

20] A sword will pierce even your own soul, so that thoughts from many hearts may be revealed!"

21] And although Mary did not understand Simeon's words, she kept them deep in her heart.

22] And Joseph also did the same and mightily praised God for it in his heart. — —



***CHAPTER 25. - THE PROPHETESS HANNAH IN THE TEMPLE AND HER  
TESTIMONIAL OF THE CHILD JESUS. HANNAH'S WARNING TO MARY.  
THE PROVISIONAL ACCOMMODATION OF THE HOLY FAMILY WITH A  
RICH ISRAELITE.***

***7 SEPTEMBER 1843***

01] At this time, there was also a prophetess in the temple, called Hannah; she was a daughter of Phanuel, from the tribe of Asher.

02] She was already quite old and was so devout, that during her youth she had retained her virginity for seven years after her marriage because of her love of God.

03] In her eightieth year she became a widow, and immediately went to the temple and never left it.

04] There, at her own will, she served only the Lord God, with prayers and fasting almost throughout the day and night.

05] At that particular time, she was already four years in the temple and she now came over, praised the Lord God, and the Holy Spirit spoke through her to all those who awaited the Saviour of Jerusalem.

06] When she ended her prophetic words, she requested to hold the Infant, cuddled him and honoured and praised God.

07] Afterwards she returned the Infant to Mary and spoke to her: "Fortunate are you, o virgin, to be the mother of my Lord.

08] However, do not desire praise because of it; for only He, who suckles at your breast, is worthy to be honoured, praised and worshipped by us all!"

09] After these words the prophetess turned back, and Joseph and Mary, after spending close to three hours in the temple, went out and searched for accommodation with a relative.

10] As they came there, however, they found the house locked; for at this time, the relative was in Bethlehem for the registration.

11] Joseph did not know what he should do; for firstly, it was the dead of night, as is wont in the season of short daytime, and besides, there were almost no houses open at this time, as it was the day before the Sabbath.

12] It was too cold to stay overnight in the open, as there was hoarfrost on the fields and, moreover, there was a cold wind blowing.

13] As Joseph thought to and fro and appealed to the Lord for help in this difficulty,

14] behold, a young, distinguished Israelite walked up to Joseph and asked him: "What are you doing this late with your luggage in the lane? Are you not also an Israelite - and do not know the custom?"

15] Joseph said: "I am from the tribe of David! I was in the temple and offered a sacrifice to the Lord; but the early night came upon us very suddenly, and now I cannot find accommodation and have greatly concerned about my wife and her Child!"

16] And the young Israelite said to Joseph: "So come with me; I will rent you a room in an inn for a penny or its equivalent!"

17] And Joseph, together with Mary, who was on the pack animal, and with his three sons,

followed the Israelite to a magnificent house and were lodged in a small, low room.

**CHAPTER 26. – THE REBUKE OF THE INN PROPRIETOR NICODEMUS.  
JOSEPH'S JUSTIFICATION SPEECH. THE TESTIMONIAL OF THE MIDWIFE.  
A SIGN OF CLEMENCY FOR NICODEMUS, WHO RECOGNIZES THE  
LORD.**

**9 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] In the morning, as Joseph was getting ready for departure to Bethlehem, the young Israelite came and demanded the rent money.

02] But as he entered the small room, he was overcome by such great fear, that his lips could not utter a sound.

03] Joseph went up to him and said: "Friend! Look, what do you see on me that has the value of a penny? – Take that, as I do not possess any money!"

04] The Israelite now recovered somewhat and said with a trembling voice: "Man from Nazareth, only now do I recognize you! – You are Joseph, the carpenter, and you are the same one to whom Mary, the virgin of the Lord, was given by lot from the temple nine moons ago!

05] Here is the same virgin! – How have you cared for her, that she is now a mother in her fifteenth year? – What has happened?

06] Truly, you are not the father! For men of your age and your godliness, recognized throughout Israel, would never do such things.

07] However, you have grown-up sons; can you vouch for their innocence? Have you always kept an eye on them and observed all their thoughts, actions, everything they did?"

08] Joseph, however, retorted to the young man: "Now I have recognized you; you are Nicodemus, a son of Benjamin from the tribe of Levi! How is it that you propose to examine me, while it is not your role to do so? – The Lord has examined me on this matter in the holy shrine and on the mountain of damnation and vindicated me before the highest court; what blame do you still want to put on me and my sons?

09] Go to the temple and investigate in the highest court, and you will get a proper testimonial of my whole house!"

10] These words deeply pierced the heart of the young, rich man, and he said: "But for the Lord's sake, if it is so, tell me, how it happened that this virgin has given birth! – Is it a miracle, or is it natural?"

11] Here the midwife who was present went to Nicodemus and spoke: "Good man! Here is the rent for the inadequate lodging! But do not hold us up here any longer; for we must reach Bethlehem today itself!

12] Only consider what it was that was given shelter in your house for a penny! – Truly, truly! Your most splendid rooms, adorned with gold and precious stones, would have been inadequate for the Glory of God, who stayed in this small room, which is, at best, suitable for convicts!

13] Go there and touch the Infant, so that the thick veil in front of your eyes is lifted and you can see who has visited you! – As the midwife I have the ancient right to permit you to touch the Infant."

14] At this, Nicodemus went there and touched the Infant; and as he had touched Him, he got a glimpse of his inner vision, so that he saw the glory of God.

15] He immediately fell down before the Child, worshipped Him and spoke: "What mercy, what love and what compassion must be in You, o Lord, that You visit your people!

16] What should I do to my house and what to myself, now that I have not recognized the glory of God?!"

17] To this the midwife said: "Remain in all this, as you are; but keep an innermost silence on what you have seen, otherwise you will be subject to the tribunal of God!" – Thereupon Nicodemus returned the penny, went out weeping and hereafter adorned the small room with gold and precious stones. – And Joseph immediately went on his journey.

**CHAPTER 27. - THE RETURN OF THE HOLY FAMILY TO BETHLEHEM.  
THE WARM RECEPTION IN THE CAVE BY THOSE WHO HAD STAYED  
BEHIND. A MANGER AS THE INFANT'S COT. A GOOD REST IN THE  
FROSTY NIGHT.**

**11 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] The eminent travellers once again arrived in Bethlehem in the evening, one hour before sunset, and settled in the familiar cave.

02] The two sons who had stayed behind, Salome and the captain came to meet them with open arms and asked those who had returned how the journey had been.

03] And Joseph narrated everything they had encountered, declaring in the end, that he, together with all the fellow travellers,

had not eaten anything during that day; for the extremely limited supplies were barely sufficient for the weak Mary.

04] As the captain heard this, he immediately went to the back of the cave and came back with various food stuffs that were permitted to the Jews and spoke to Joseph:

05] "May your God bless this for you, and may you bless this according to your custom, and may all of you be strengthened and restored on this!"

06] And Joseph thanked God and blessed the food and then, in good spirits, ate together with Mary, his sons and the midwife.

07] However, carrying the Infant the whole day had become difficult for Mary, so she said to Joseph:

08] "Joseph, see, if only I had a small place beside me on which to lay down the Infant, so as to give my arms a little rest, then I would be well taken care of, and the Infant could grow in strength with a restful sleep!"

09] Before the captain was scarcely even aware of Mary's wish, he immediately leapt into the back of the cave and hurriedly brought forth a manger that was meant for the sheep (and which looked like a present-day feeding trough in front of the inns in the countryside).

10] Salome immediately took the best straw and fresh hay, placed it inside the little crib, then covered it with a clean cloth and thus made a soft bed for the Infant.

11] Mary wrapped the Infant in fresh linen, pressed Him to her heart, kissed Him and then gave the Infant to Joseph, so that he could kiss him and then also to all the others. She then laid the Infant in the rather inadequate little bed for the Lord of the heaven and the earth!

12] The Infant slept quite peacefully, and Mary could now eat in peace and fortify herself from the meal that the most kind- hearted captain had prepared.

13] After the meal, Mary spoke again to Joseph: "Joseph, let my bed be made ready, for I am extremely tired from the journey and would like to rest!"

14] Salome said: "O mother of my Lord, look, this has already been taken care of; come and see!"

15] And Mary arose, took the Infant and had the crib carried into her tent and went to rest; and this was Mary's first whole night's sleep since giving birth.

16] And the captain made sure that the stove was lit diligently and white stones were

warmed and put around Mary's tent, so that the Infant would not suffer from cold; for it was a cold night, in which the water in the open air had turned into solid ice.

***CHAPTER 28. – JOSEPH WANTS TO LEAVE FOR NAZARETH. THE  
CAPTAIN'S ADVICE TO WAIT. THE NEWS ABOUT THE PERSIAN CARAVAN  
AND OF HEROD'S SEARCH FOR THE CHILD. MARY'S FEARLESSNESS  
AND TRUST IN GOD.***

***12 SEPTEMBER 1843***

01] The next morning, Joseph said: "Why should we stay here any longer? Mary feels strong again, so we want to leave for Nazareth, where we have good accommodation!"

02] However, as Joseph prepared to leave, the captain, who had had some work in the city before daybreak, returned once again and spoke to Joseph:

03] "God-worthy man! – You want to leave for the journey home; but I would like to dissuade you from it today and tomorrow!

04] See, I have just got information from my men, who arrived early today from Jerusalem, that three enormous Persian caravans have entered into Jerusalem!

05] Three main leaders, who are Magi, have made specific inquiries with Herod about the newborn King of the Jews!

06] Herod, as a Roman tenant sovereign from Greece who knows nothing of this, turned to the high priests, so that they could reveal the birthplace of the newly Anointed to him.

07] They announced to him that such an event would occur in Judea, and particularly in Bethlehem, for it was written in the Scriptures!

08] Herod then dismissed the priests and, together with all his servants, went to the three leaders and revealed to them what he had learnt from the high priests,

09] and then suggested to the three to conduct a diligent search for the newly Anointed of the Jews, and if they should find the Child, to return to him immediately, so that he too could go there and pay homage to the Child.

10] But do you know, my dearest friend Joseph, that I do not trust the Persians, and least of all do I trust the most tyrannical Herod?!

11] These Persians are believed to be Magi and are said to have found out about the birth through a strange star. This I will not dispute in the least; for such great miracles have taken place during the birth of this Infant, that similar events could have occurred in Persia as well.

12] However, in this matter it is also the most unfortunate circumstance; for evidently it involves this Child. If the Persians find Him, then Herod will also find Him!

13] And we will need to put up a big fight to elude this cunning old fox!

14] So, as I said before, you must stay at least three more days at this remote place. Within this period I will certainly be able to get the king-seekers to change their direction; because you see, I have command over twelve legions of soldiers here! – For your peace of mind, I will not say anymore. You now know the essentials; therefore stay! I will now go away again and return to you around noon!"

***13 SEPTEMBER 1843***

15] Joseph, who, together with his family, was intimidated by this news, stayed and waited in all humility in the Lord's Will, to see what this strange providence would lead to.

16] And he went to Mary and told her what he had just learnt from the captain.

17] Mary spoke: "The Lord's will be done! What bitter events have we already encountered - and the Lord has transformed them all into honey!

18] The Persians will certainly not harm us, if they are really supposed to come to us; and if they are hired to use any force upon us, well, through God's grace we have the protection of the captain!"

19] And Joseph said: "Mary, all this is right! I do not fear the Persians so greatly; but the grey-bearded Herod, this rapacious animal in human form, - it is him I fear, and even the captain dreads him!

20] For if it is ascertained, perhaps by the Persians, that our Infant Son is the newly-anointed King, then our only recourse would be a despicable flight!

21] For then even our captain, out of Roman political considerations would, for his own well-being, have to become an enemy. He will have to pursue us instead of helping us, if he does not want to be regarded as a traitor to his emperor!

22] And he has surely also realized this for himself, as he expressed his significant doubts about Herod to me.

23] That is why, I assume, he is making us wait here for three more days! If all goes well, he will certainly remain our friend;

24] if not, he has us at hand to deliver us to Herod's cruelty, and moreover, will receive a great honour from his emperor for so cleverly removing the Jewish King, who could have one day endangered the state, from this world!"

25] Hereupon Mary said: "Joseph! Do not needlessly frighten yourself and me! – Look, we drank the accursed water, and nothing happened to us! Why then should we be afraid, since we have, on account of this Child, seen and confirmed so much of the glory of God?!

26] Let it happen as it should, I tell you: The Lord is mightier than the Persians, Herod, the Roman emperor and the captain together with his twelve legions! Thus be calm, as you see that I am calm!

27] Incidentally, I am confident, that the captain will do his utmost before he is forced to become our enemy!"

28] Thereupon the good, devout Joseph again felt reassured and went forth and awaited the captain. He let his sons heat the cave and boil some fruits for Mary, for himself and the sons.



**CHAPTER 29. – THE FRIGHTENED JOSEPH'S PETITION TO THE LORD.  
THE PERSIAN CARAVAN IN FRONT OF THE CAVE. THE ASTONISHED  
CAPTAIN. THE TESTIMONIAL OF THE CHILD BY THE THREE WISE MEN:  
A KING OF KINGS, A LORD OF LORDS, THE EVERLASTING LORD!  
THEIR WARNING AGAINST HEROD.**

**14 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] Noon had approached, but the captain was late this time, and Joseph counted the seconds in fearful anticipation; but the captain did not appear.

02] Hence Joseph turned to the Lord and spoke: "My God and my Lord, I beg you not to let me feel so greatly frightened; for look, I am old and quite weak in all my limbs!

03] Therefore give me strength by telling me what to do, so that I do not disgrace myself before all the sons of Israel!"

04] As Joseph prayed thus, behold, the captain arrived almost breathless and spoke to Joseph:

05] "My most highly respected man! – Just at this moment, I have returned from a march with an entire legion to a place that is one-third the distance towards Jerusalem, so that I could espy something of the Persians,

06] and have posted spies everywhere, but have not discovered anything until now! However, rest assured, for when they come, they will have to encounter the sentries I have posted!

07] It shall not be too easy for them to break through anywhere and reach this place, before I have interrogated them and judged their plans! – So I will immediately go back and reinforce the sentries; in the evening I will be with you!"

08] Now the captain hurried off and Joseph praised God and spoke to his sons: "Now set the food on the table, and you, Salome, ask Mary, whether she would like to eat with us at the table, or wants us to bring it to her tent?"

09] Mary, however, came out of the tent with the Infant in very happy spirits and spoke: "As I am strong enough, I will eat with you at the table; only fetch the little crib for the Baby!"

10] Joseph was overjoyed to hear this and placed the best food in front of her; and she praised the Lord God and ate and drank.

11] She had hardly finished eating, however, when a loud noise came from the entrance of the cave. Joseph sent Joel to check what was happening.

12] As Joel looked out of the door (for the cave was timbered at the exit), he saw a whole caravan of Persians with laden camels and spoke anxiously:

13] "Father Joseph! For the Lord's sake, we are lost! – For look, the notorious Persians are here with many camels and numerous attendants!

14] They are pitching tents and setting up camp in a wide circle, completely encircling our cave, and three leaders adorned with gold, silver and precious stones, are unpacking golden sacks and seem to prepare themselves to approach the cave!"

15] This news made our good Joseph almost speechless; with great effort he brought out the words: "Lord, be merciful to a poor sinner like me! – Yes, now we are lost!" – Mary took the Child and hurried into her tent and said: "Only when I am dead, will you be able to take

Him from me!"

16] Joseph then went to the door, accompanied by his sons, and furtively looked out to see what the Persians were doing.

17] When he saw the big caravan and the pitched tents, he was doubly alarmed, and in his great distress, began to beseech the Lord most fervently for assistance just this once.

18] As he implored thus, behold, the captain arrived in full armour, led by a thousand soldiers, and lined up the soldiers on both sides of the cave.

19] He went forth and interrogated the three Magi, as to the motive for their arrival and the manner in which they - completely undetected by him - had reached this place.

20] And the three spoke with one voice: "Do not consider us enemies, for you can see that we do not carry arms, either openly or concealed!

21] We are astronomers from Persia, and we have an old prophecy in which it is written, that during this time a King of Kings will be born to the Jews, and His birth will be indicated by a star.

22] And whoever saw the star should make a journey and follow the mighty star; for they will find the Saviour of the world at the place where the star comes to a stop!

]23] And look, the star has halted above this stable, surely visible to everyone even in broad daylight! – This led us to this place; it is here, however, above this stable, that it remains standing, and without hesitation we have reached the spot in which the living Wonder of Wonders can be found, a newly-born Child, a King of Kings, a Lord of Lords from eternity!

24] We must see, worship and pay the greatest homage to Him! – Therefore, do not want to get in our way; for surely no evil star has led us here!"

25] At this, the captain looked for the star and was highly astonished by it; for firstly, it stood quite low in the sky, and secondly, it was almost as bright as the natural light of the sun.

26] As the captain had ascertained all this, he spoke to the three men: "Good, I am convinced from your words and from the star, that you have come here for an honest purpose; however, I do not understand why you went first to Herod in Jerusalem! – Did the star also show you that path?

27] Why did your miracle guide not lead you here straightaway, as obviously this place was the intended one? – I demand an answer on this from you, otherwise you will not enter the cave!"

28] The three men said: "The great God will know the reason! It must have surely been His plan; for none of us ever thought of going even close to Jerusalem!

29] And you may entirely believe us when we say that we did not at all like the people of Jerusalem, and least of all, the sovereign Herod! However, as we were already there and the attention of the whole city was on us, we had no option but to indicate our intention!

30] The priests informed us through the sovereign, who requested us to bring him news about the discovered King, so that he too could come and pay homage to the new King."

31] The captain said: "You will never do this; for I know the intention of this sovereign! You might rather remain here as captives! – I will now go inside and confer with the father of the Child about you."

**CHAPTER 30. – THE STAR OF THE THREE WISE MEN AND THE OLD PROPHECY OF THE PERSIAN ASTRONOMERS. THE ADORATION OF THE LORD, THE CREATOR OF INFINITY AND ETERNITY, IN THE CHILD BY THE THREE WISE MEN. THEIR NAMES: CASPAR, MELCHIOR AND BALTHAZAR. THE ACCOMPANYING SPIRITS: ADAM, CAIN AND ABRAHAM. THEY PAY HOMAGE TO THE LORD AND OFFER HIM GIFTS.**

**16 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] As the good Joseph heard all this, his troubled heart was relieved; and as he heard that the captain would come to him, he made himself ready to receive him.

02] And the captain entered, greeted Joseph and spoke to him: "My most highly respected man!

03] See, the people from the East, now waiting outside, have arrived here through miraculous providence. – I have strictly examined them and have found no malice in them!

04] They wish to pay homage to the Child according to the promise of their God, and so I am of the opinion that you can allow them to enter without the least fear, whenever it is convenient for you."

05] And Joseph spoke: "If it this so, then I will praise and glorify my God; for He has once again taken a heavy stone from my heart!

06] However, Mary was somewhat afraid earlier, when the Persians began to camp around the cave; so I must first check how she feels about this, so that an unprepared entry of these guests does not frighten her even more than she already is."

07] The captain approved of Joseph's circumspection and Joseph went to Mary and informed her of everything he had heard from the captain.

08] And Mary spoke in very happy spirits: "Peace be unto all men on earth, who are faithful and good in heart, and who allow their will to be guided by God!

09] They should come when it is indicated to them by the Lord's spirit, and shall reap the blessings of their devotion! – For I do not have the slightest fear of them!

10] However, when they enter, you must stay close to me; for it is not proper that I receive them all alone!"

11] Joseph said: "Mary, when you have the strength, then get up with the Child, take the crib and lay Him in it, and then the guests can enter and honour the Child!"

12] And Mary immediately carried out Joseph's wishes, and Joseph then spoke to the captain:

13] "Well, we are ready; so if the three men wish to enter, you can tell them that we have made all preparations to receive them in our indigence!"

14] And the captain went out and announced this to the three men. – The three men immediately fell down upon the ground, praised God for this permission, then took the golden sacks and proceeded reverently to the cave.

**18 SEPTEMBER 1843**

15] The captain opened the door, and the three men entered into the cave with great

reverence; for at the moment of their entry, a powerful light emanated from the Child.

16] As the three wise men were a few steps away from the crib in which the Infant lay, they immediately fell down upon their faces and worshipped Him.

17] They remained in this bent position for one hour before the Child, gripped by the deepest reverence; then they slowly arose and knelt, while lifting their tear-filled faces to see the Lord, the Creator of infinity and eternity.

18] The names of the three men were: Caspar, Melchior and Balthazar.

19] And the first, accompanied by the spirit of Adam, spoke: "Give God the honour, the praise, the glory! Hosanna, hosanna, hosanna God, the Trinity, in all eternity!"

20] Here he took the gold-adorned bag, which had thirty-three pounds of the finest frankincense, and handed it over with great deference to Mary with the words:

21] "Take without shyness, o mother, this humble testimonial of That, which will always fill my entire being! – Take this poor external tribute, for every thinking creature is eternally indebted to his almighty Creator from the bottom of his heart!"

22] Mary took the heavy bag and gave it to Joseph, and the donor got up, went and stood at the door, knelt again and worshipped the Lord in the Child.

23] And immediately the second man, a Moor, who was accompanied by the spirit of Cain, raised a somewhat smaller bag, albeit of the same weight, that was filled with the purest gold, and handed it to Mary with the words:

24] "I offer that what is worthy of the King of the spirits and the men on earth, the smallest sacrifice for you, o Lord of everlasting glory! – Take it, o mother, who has given birth to Him, who all the angels' tongues will never be able to express!"

25] Here Mary accepted the second bag and handed it over to Joseph. – And the wise man who made the offering went to the first wise man and did as he did.

26] Then the third man got up, took his bag, which was filled with the finest gold myrrh, one of the most valuable spices of that time, and handed it over to Mary with the words:

27] "The spirit of Abraham is accompanying me and is now seeing the day of the Lord, to which he had looked forward with such great joy!

28] I, Balthazar, make a small offering that is worthy of the Child of all the children! – Take it, o mother of all mercy! – However, I hold a better offering in my heart; it is my love, – this shall eternally be my truest offering to this Child!"

29] Here Mary took the heavy bag, also weighing thirty-three pounds, and handed it over to Joseph. – The wise man then got up and went to the first two, worshipped the Infant and after completing his prayer, went out with the other two men to where their tents were pitched.

**CHAPTER 31. – MARY INDICATES GOD'S GUIDANCE OF MERCY.  
JOSEPH'S HONESTY AND LOYALTY. THE THREE BLESSED GIFTS OF  
GOD: HIS HOLY WILL, HIS MERCY AND HIS LOVE. MARY'S, THE  
CAPTAIN'S AND THE INFANT'S FINEST TESTIMONIAL FOR JOSEPH.**

**19 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] As the three wise men had left and had returned to their tents for rest, Mary said to Joseph:

02] "Look, look now, you fearful, anxious man, how marvellous and good the Lord, our God, is, how fatherly He cares for us!

03] Who could have imagined such a thing even in a dream! Out of our dread He has brought about such a blessing and has transformed all our great fear and worry into such great joy!

04] Precisely from those whom we feared were after the life of the Child, did we find out that they offered Him only glory, in the way we are only and always indebted to God, the Lord!

05] In addition, they have given us such bounteous presents, that we can buy a most respectable place in the country from its sale, where we can provide the godly Child with the best possible upbringing according to the Lord's will!

06] O Joseph! – Today I will first thank, praise and glorify the most loving Lord all night long; for He has forestalled our poverty to the extent that we can now manage very well! – What do you say to that, dear father Joseph?"

07] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, Mary, our God is infinitely good to those, who love Him above all else and direct all their hopes to Him alone; – however, I believe that these gifts are meant for the Child, and not us, and so we do not have the right to make use of them as we like.

08] The Child is called Jesus and is the Son of God Most High; so we must first ask the all-possessing father what should be done with these treasures!

09] And we will do whatever He orders us to do with them; I will not touch them all my life without His will and I would rather earn your and my blessed livelihood in the most arduous manner!

10] I have until now supported you and my sons with the manual work that is blessed by the Lord; so I hope to continue doing that with the help of the Lord!

11] That is why I am not looking at these gifts, but only at the will of the Lord and His mercy and love.

12] These are the three greatest, at all times mightily blessed gifts of God to us; His holy will is the most exquisite frankincense, His mercy is the purest and heaviest gold, and His love is the most fragrant myrrh!

13] We may use these three treasures extravagantly without fear at all times; however, we should not touch this frankincense, gold and myrrh in the golden sacks without the first three principal treasures, that have paid us the most abundant dividends until now.

14] So, dear Mary, this is what we should do, and I know, that the Lord will look upon us with great pleasure; his pleasure is our greatest treasure!

15] What do you think, fairest Mary, am I right or not? Is this not the right decision with regard to these treasures?"

16] Here Mary was touched to tears and praised Joseph's wisdom. And the captain fell on Joseph's neck and spoke: "Yes, you are a true man according to the will of your God!" – The Infant smiled at Joseph, raised a tiny hand as if He blessed the foster father, the most devout Joseph.

**CHAPTER 32. - THE ANGEL AS ADVISER OF THE THREE WISE MEN.  
THE DEPARTURE OF THE WISE MEN TO THE ORIENT. JOSEPH'S  
IMPATIENCE. CORNELIUS' SOOTHING WORDS TO JOSEPH. JOSEPH'S  
HINTS ON THE POWER AND GOODNESS OF GOD.**

**20 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] The three wise men now gathered in one tent and discussed what they should do next.

02] Should they keep their word to Herod, or should they break their word for the first time?

03] And in the event that they would have to return to their country by another route, the question was which route would bring them safely back.

04] And one of them asked the others: "Will the miraculous star that led us to this place, also lead us back home by a new route?"

05] As they conferred with each other, behold, an angel appeared among them and spoke to them: "Do not fear uselessly, for the way has already been paved!

06] As straight as the sun's rays fall upon the earth at noon, just that straight you will be led to your country tomorrow, and this route will not pass through Jerusalem!"

07] Thereupon the angel disappeared and the three wise men retired for the night. Early in the morning, they left the place and soon arrived in their country via the shortest route, and they announced the great glory of God to all and awakened the true faith in the united God in them.

08] In the same morning, Joseph asked the captain how much longer he still had to stay in this cave.

09] The captain said to Joseph in the friendliest possible manner: "My most highly respected man! Do you then suppose that I am keeping you here as a prisoner?

10] What an idea! – How can I, a worm in the dust before the power of your God, ever hold you prisoner!? – What my love for you does, see, is not captivity!

11] As far as my power is concerned you are free at any hour and can go wherever you want! – However, you are not as free of my heart; for it wants to keep you here for all time, because it loves you and your little Son with indescribable strength!

12] Be patient for a few more days; I will immediately send scouts into Jerusalem and find out what the cunning old devil plans to do, now that the Persians have not kept their word!

13] I will then know what to do and will protect you against any persecution from this ruthless tyrant.

14] For you can believe me when I say that Herod is the greatest enemy of my heart, and I will strike him, wherever and whenever I can!

15] I am, of course, only a captain and am myself a subordinate to a higher-ranked general, who resides in Sidon and Smyrna and commands twelve legions in Asia.

16] However, I am not a common centurion, but a patrician, and according to my title, also have command over the twelve legions in Asia! So if I want to deploy any of the legions, I do not need to first make a request in Smyrna, but as a patrician I only need to command and the legion would have to obey me! Therefore you can count on me if Herod should appear!"

## **22 SEPTEMBER 1843**

17] Joseph thanked the captain for this most kindly care, sat down and then spoke:

18] "Listen to me, honourable friend! – See, you had previously made the most careful plans to deal with the Persians; but of what use were they in the end?!

19] The Persians arrived unseen by all your thousand eyes and had already set up camp, before you even discovered them!

20] See, if my Lord, my God, had not guarded me, where would I be now, even with your help? The Persians could have strangled me, together with my entire family, long before you appeared!

21] Therefore I say to you as a friend with the utmost gratitude: human help is worthless; for men are nothing before God!

22] If, however, the Lord God wishes to help us, and God alone can help, we need not take too much trouble; for in spite of many efforts on our part, everything will happen only according to the Lord's wishes, and never according to ours.

23] Therefore refrain from laborious and dangerous reconnaissance in Jerusalem, through which firstly, only little relevant information can be obtained, and secondly, a harsh fate could be the consequence for you, on my account!

24] This night, the Lord will surely indicate to me what Herod will do, and what I must do; therefore, along with me, you should not worry at all and let the Lord prevail over me and you, and all will be right."

25] As the captain heard Joseph's speech, his emotions were greatly roused, and it caused him pain that Joseph had refused his help.

26] Joseph spoke: "Good, dearest friend! It pains you because I have dissuaded you of taking care of my future welfare.

27] But if you look at the matter in a clear light, you will necessarily agree with me!

28] See, which one of us has ever carried the sun and the moon and all the stars across the skies? Which one of us has ever commanded the winds, storms and strikes of lightning?

29] Who has dug a bed for the mighty sea, and which one of us has marked out the paths of the great rivers?

30] Which bird have we taught the swift flight and when have we arranged their plumage? When have we made their throats with which they can make such melodious sounds?

31] Where is the grass which grows from the living seeds created by us?

32] See, the Lord does all this every day! – As His mighty and wonderful reign reminds you at every moment of His infinitely loving care, how can you wonder when I most amicably point out to you that before God all human help sinks back in the dust of insignificance?"

33] These words put the captain again in a positive mood; but, nevertheless, he secretly sent scouts to Jerusalem to find out what was happening there.



## ***CHAPTER 33. - THE PREPARATION FOR THE FLIGHT TO EGYPT. THE PROVISIONS OF THE LORD. JOSEPH DISCUSSES WITH CORNELIUS.***

**23 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] During this night, an angel appeared in a dream to Joseph as well as to Mary, and spoke:

02] "Joseph! Sell the treasure and buy yourself some pack animals; for you and your family must flee to Egypt!

03] See, Herod has erupted in fury because he was deceived by the wise men and has resolved to kill all the children from one to twelve years of age!

04] The wise men were to inform him where the new King had been born, so that he could have sent his thugs to kill the Child, who is the new King.

05] We angels of heaven were instructed by the Lord, before He came on earth, to keep a most attentive watch over you and guard your safety!

06] Hence I have now come to you to tell you what Herod will do, since he cannot be certain that he can seize the One.

07] The captain himself must pay his dues to Herod, if he does not want to be betrayed by him to the emperor; therefore you shall start your journey tomorrow itself!

08] You can also inform the captain about this, and he will help you with your prompt departure! – So let this be done in the name of Him, who lives and suckles on Mary's breast!"

09] Here Joseph awoke, as also did Mary, who immediately called Joseph in a frightened voice and then narrated her dream to him.

10] At that moment, Joseph saw the angel's face in Mary's narration and said: "Mary, do not worry, before noon we will be on our way over the mountains - and in seven days in Egypt!

11] As dawn is already coming now, I will go out at once and make preparations for a quick departure."

12] Joseph went with the three eldest sons, took the treasure and carried it to a money-changer, who bought up everything for a fair price.

13] Afterwards, led by a servant of the money-changer, Joseph went to a trader in pack animals, and immediately bought six mules and returned well-equipped to the cave.

14] There, the captain already awaited him and immediately related to him the most atrocious and despicable news that he had received from Jerusalem.

**25 September 1843**

15] Joseph, however, did not wonder at the Captain's narration, but spoke in a tone which revealed his faith in God:

16] "Honoured friend! What you tell me now, all that and many more details of Herod's decision, has been revealed to me last night by the Lord, just as I had foretold you yesterday!

17] See, you yourself have to pay tribute to him; for he wants all the children from a few weeks up to twelve years, in and around Bethlehem and in the city, be strangled, so that he can also get my child!

18] Therefore I must flee from here today itself, and go wherever the Lord leads me to escape Herod's atrocity.

19] So I request you to show me a safe route to Sidon; for I must leave in one hour!"

20] As the captain heard this, he became most angry about Herod and swore indefatigable vengeance against him, saying:

21] "Joseph, I swear by the daybreak and the sun in the horizon, I swear by your God that is living, I swear as a noble

patrician from Rome that I would rather be crucified, than allow this ruthless tyrant to commit such atrocity with impunity!

22] I will lead you over the mountains myself under adequate cover; and when I know you are in safety, I will hastily return and quickly send a messenger to Rome, who will inform the emperor of all that Herod is planning to do.

23] I will do everything I can think of to thwart the plan of that monster."

24] And Joseph replied: "Good and honourable friend! If you can do something, then at least protect the children between three and twelve years! This will be within your power!

25] But you will not have the power to protect the infants from the time of birth until their second year!

26] You will be able to offer protection to the older children not by force, but only by wisdom!

27] The Lord will guide you in this wisdom! Therefore do not think too much about what you will do; for the Lord will guide you in secret!"

28] The captain spoke: "No, no, the blood of children will not flow; I would rather use military force!"

29] Joseph spoke: "See, what can you do, now that Herod leaves Jerusalem with an entire Roman legion – will you enter into battle against your own forces? – Hence act according to the Lord's guidance, so that you can, in an amicable way, save the three-to twelve-year-old children!"— Thereupon the captain gave in to Joseph.

***CHAPTER 34. - THE DEPARTURE FOR THE FLIGHT. JOSEPH'S REQUEST TO SALOME. THE FAREWELL FROM THE CAPTAIN. THE DEPARTURE. THE LETTER OF SAFE-CONDUCT GIVEN BY CORNELIUS TO CYRENIUS. JOSEPH'S ITINERARY. THE ADVENTURE WITH THE ROBBERS. JOSEPH'S ARRIVAL IN TYRE AT CYRENIUS' RESIDENCE. CYRENIUS' WORDS OF CONSOLATION AND HIS HELP.***

***26 SEPTEMBER 1843***

- 01] After this discussion with the captain, Joseph spoke to his sons: "Rush out and get the animals ready!
- 02] Saddle the six newly-bought mules and the old, tried one for Mary! Take along as much food as you can; we will, however, leave the ox with the cart to the midwife as a keepsake and as payment for her attentiveness towards us!"
- 03] So the midwife took possession of the ox with the cart and was not required for further work.
- 04] Salome, however, asked Joseph whether she might go along with him.
- 05] And Joseph spoke: "That is up to you; you know that I am poor and cannot pay you if you work for me as a maidservant!
- 06] However, if you have the means and can take care of your food and clothing along with me, you may follow me!"
- 07] Salome spoke: "Listen, son of the great King David! My means will suffice not only for me, but also for your entire family for a hundred years!
- 08] For I am richer in worldly goods than you can imagine! Wait for only one hour and I will be ready to travel, laden with treasure!"
- 09] Joseph spoke: "Salome, see, you are a young widow; you must also bring along your two sons!
- 10] This entails a lot of work for you, and I do not have one minute to lose; for Herod will reach this region in three hours, and his forerunners and runners will already be here in one hour!
- 11] Hence you can see, that it is impossible for me to wait for your preparations!
- 12] I think it would be better if you stayed, so that I am not delayed because of you; if, however, the Lord's will makes me return to this place, I will again settle in Nazareth.
- 13] Since you wish to be of service to me, please go to Nazareth occasionally and lease out my property for another three to seven years, so that it does not fall into the hands of strangers!"
- 14] And Salome relinquished her demand and contented herself with this assignment.
- 15] Afterward Joseph embraced the captain and blessed him - and then called out to Mary to sit on her animal, together with the Infant.
- 16] As everything was now ready for their departure, the captain spoke to Joseph: "My most highly respected man! – Will I ever see you again! – And this Child with the mother?!"
- 17] And Joseph spoke: "It will be barely three years before I, and the Child with His mother,

will greet you once again! Rest assured on this; – now let us depart, Amen." –

18] Here Joseph mounted his animal, and his sons followed his example; and Joseph seized the reins of Mary's animal and led it out of the cave, all the while praising the Lord.

19] As all were outside, Joseph saw a crowd of people from the city hastening to see the newborn Child, for they had heard about the departure of the Child from the midwife who had returned to her home, and through the money-changer.

20] But this crowd of onlookers was most inconvenient to Joseph; he thus requested the Lord to take him away from this contemptible gawking crowd as soon as possible.

21] And behold, a dense fog descended over the entire city at that moment, and it was not possible for anyone to see more than five paces.

22] This annoyed the crowd and it returned to the city, and Joseph, led by the captain and Salome, was able to reach the next mountain range unseen.

23] As he reached the border between Judea and Syria, the captain gave Joseph a letter of safe-conduct addressed to the regional governor Cyrenius, who was appointed over Syria.

24] Joseph accepted it gratefully, and the captain spoke: "Cyrenius is a brother to me; I need say no more, so travel safely and return in the same manner!" Thereupon the captain turned back, together with Salome, and Joseph continued on his way in the name of the Lord.

25] At around noon, Joseph had reached the summit of the mountain, at a distance of twelve hours from Bethlehem. The summit lay wholly within Syria, and was also called Coelesyria by the Romans in those days.

26] Joseph had to make this rather long detour, as no safe way led from Palestine to Egypt.

27] His itinerary was as follows: on the first day, he came near the small town of Bostra. He stayed there overnight, praising the Lord. That is where the robbers came to steal from him.

28] However, when they saw the Infant, they fell on their faces, prayed to Him, and then fled into the mountains in great fear.

29] The next day, Joseph again crossed a big mountain range and arrived in the region of Panea, a small border town between Palestine and northern Syria.

30] From Panea, he arrived in the province of Phoenicia on the third day and came to the region of Tyre, where he handed over the letter of safe-conduct to Cyrenius, who had some duties in Tyre during that time.

31] Cyrenius received Joseph in a most friendly manner and asked him what he could do for him.

32] Joseph spoke: "That I might reach Egypt safely!" – And Cyrenius said: "Good man, you have taken a long detour; for Palestine is much closer to Egypt than Phoenicia! Now you will still need to wander through Palestine – and must go from here to Samaria, then to Joppe, from there to Ascalon, from there to Gaza, from there to Gerasa, and only from there can you go to Elusa in Arabia!"

33] Joseph was sad when he realized how far he had gone astray. However, Cyrenius took pity on Joseph and spoke: "Good man, your distress pains me. You may be a Jew and an enemy of the Romans; but since my brother, my all, has so much love for you, I too will do something in friendship.

34] See, a small but safe ship will leave from here to Ostracine tomorrow! This ship will take you there in three days; and once you are in Ostracine, you will be already in Egypt! – I will give you a letter of safe-conduct, which will allow you stay and buy some supplies in Ostracine without hindrance. For today, however, you are my guest; please have your luggage brought in!"

***CHAPTER 35. – THE HOLY FAMILY IN CYRENIUS' HOUSE. JOSEPH'S  
CONVERSATION WITH CYRENIUS. CYRENIUS, THE CHILDREN'S FRIEND,  
AND THE CHILD JESUS. INNER AND OUTER EMPIRICAL TESTIMONIAL  
OF THE DIVINITY OF THE CHILD JESUS.***

***28 SEPTEMBER 1843***

01] And Joseph went out and led his family to the front of Cyrenius' house, and the latter immediately ordered his servants to take care of Joseph's animals,

02] and led Joseph, Mary and the five sons into his exquisite chamber, in which everything was adorned with precious stones, gold and silver.

03] A number of statues, well-moulded out of Corinthian ore and about a foot high, stood on a white, finely-polished marble table.

04] And Joseph asked the governor as to what these statues represented.

05] The governor said in a friendly manner: "Good man, see, these are our gods! We have to keep them and buy them from Rome by law, even when we do not believe in them.

06] I consider them merely as works of art, and that is the only value these statues of gods have for me; otherwise, I would only look at them at all times with the most deeply-rooted contempt!"

07] Hereupon Joseph asked Cyrenius: "Listen, if you think that way, you are a man without god and without religion! Does that not trouble your conscience?"

08] And Cyrenius spoke: "Not in the least; for if there is no other god than what is in this mineral, then every human being is more of a god than this dumb mineral, in which no life exists. I believe, however, that somewhere there is a true God, who lives eternally and is almighty; that is why I despise such old nonsense!"

09] Cyrenius, who was also very fond of children, approached Mary, who was holding the Child in her arms, and asked the mother, whether she had not become tired from constantly carrying the Child.

10] And Mary spoke: "O mighty Lord of the land! I am definitely very tired; but the love for my Child lets me forget all my tiredness!"

11] And the governor replied to Mary: "See, I am very fond of children, and although married, have not been blessed, by nature or by God, with offspring; therefore I am in the habit of adopting the children of others - even those of slaves - in the place of my own child!

12] However, I am not saying that you too should give me yours; for it is, after all, your life!

13] But I request you to let me hold the Child in my arms, so that I may hug and caress Him a little!"

14] As Mary found so much kindness in the governor, she spoke: "Whoever has a heart such as yours can take my Infant in his arms!"

15] Here Mary gave the Infant to the governor for a cuddle, – and as the governor took the Infant in his arms, the sweetest emotion he had ever experienced took hold of him.

16] And he carried the Infant back and forth in the room – and came near the table with the statues of gods.

17] This approach cost the statues their existence, for they melted away like wax on red-

hot iron.

18] This terrified Cyrenius and he spoke: "What has happened? – The hard ore has melted away so completely, that not a trace of it is left! – You wise man from Palestine, explain this to me! – Are you a magician?"

**CHAPTER 36. – JOSEPH IN A SHARP INTERROGATION AND HIS REPORT  
ON THE NATURE AND THE BIRTH OF THE CHILD JESUS. CORNELIUS'  
LETTER. JOSEPH'S ADVICE TO KEEP SILENT. CONTRADICTIONS AND  
DOUBTS. JOSEPH'S VEHEMENT JUSTIFICATION BEFORE THE 'PUBLIC  
PROSECUTOR'**

**29 SEPTEMBER 1843**

01] Joseph was himself most surprised and so spoke to Cyrenius: "Listen to me, powerful guardian of the land! It cannot be unknown to you, that according to the law of my people, every magician is to be burnt alive.

02] Consequently, if I were a magician, I would not have lived as long as I have; for I would have fallen into the hands of the high priests in Jerusalem long ago!

03] Therefore I can say nothing else than that this phenomenon is surely influenced by the great holiness of this Child!

04] For even during the birth of this Child there were signs that terrified everyone: all the heavens stood open, the wind was silent, the brooks and rivers stood still, the sun halted at the horizon;

05] the moon did not move, not for three hours; even the stars did not change their position; the animals did not eat or drink, and everything that usually stirs or moves fell into a deathlike repose; I myself was walking and had to remain standing!"

06] As Cyrenius heard such things from Joseph, he spoke to him: "So it is this strange Child, about whom my brother has written with the words:

07] 'Brother, I have some news for you: Near Bethlehem, a Child has been born to a young Jewish woman, and great miraculous powers emanate from this Child; I would like to believe that He is a divine Child!

08] But his father is such a highly sincere Jew, that I cannot bring myself to make further investigations!

09] If you happen to come to Jerusalem shortly, it might be of interest to you to visit this man in Bethlehem! – I keep on thinking that the Child is a disguised young Jupiter or at least Apollo. Come and judge for yourself! –

10] Look, good man, I already know much of the matter; but what you just told me is totally unknown to me. Therefore tell me if you are the man, about whom my brother reported from Bethlehem?"

11] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, mighty lord, I am that man! It is good of your brother that he did not disclose more about the Child!

12] For he had received word from heaven to keep silent on all that had occurred! – Truly, if he had told you more, the same

would have happened in Rome, what just happened in front of your eyes with the statues of the gods that stood there on the table!

13] You and your brother will remain unharmed if you remain silent; for you will therefore be blessed by the Lord, the everlasting living God, the Creator of heaven and earth!"

14] These words evoked in Cyrenius a great respect for Joseph and such a fear of the Child, that he immediately returned the Child to Mary.



30 September 1843

15] After that he turned to Joseph once more and spoke to him: "Good, honest man, listen carefully to what I have to say to you;

16] for I have a good idea, and I would like you to hear it and concern yourself in this matter!

17] See, if this Child is of divine descent, then you, as his father, must also be such; for *ex trunco non fit Mercurius*, and grapes do not grow on thorns! – Neither can a godly Child be born of an ordinary man!

18] You, however, appear to be a very ordinary man, just as your five other sons, who are standing behind you; indeed, the young mother herself, although a good Jew, does not appear to possess anything godlike!

19] As we know from tradition, an almost supernatural beauty and great wisdom are the prerequisites of the women, who are supposed to have submitted to the gods, – for which, however, one has to have a most strong faith, which I do not possess in the least!

20] Moreover, I have to point out something else to you, and that is, that you, with your godlike Child arrived here instead of in Egypt. This was evident in your sadness and embarrassment when I indicated to you how far you had erred from the way to Egypt!

21] Can your God - or the Gods of Rome - be ignorant of the shortest route from Bethlehem to Egypt?

22] See, these are glaring contradictions, which increase the more one looks into the matter! Furthermore, you have threatened us with the destruction of Rome, if I or my brother would betray the Child!

23] Why should the Gods threaten the weak mortal, as if they were afraid of him? – They only need to step onto the earth, and all have to blindly obey their mighty will!

24] See, the matter of your declaration appears to me to be a weak excuse to pull the wool over my eyes, so that I cannot recognize you for what you really are, either a Jewish magician, who is going to Egypt to ply his trade for a living, because he feels unsafe in his homeland, –

25] or a clever spy, bribed by the tyrannical Herod, to espy the waterfront fortresses of Rome?!

26] Of course, I have the letter of safe-conduct written by my brother and the letter I mentioned to you, – however, I have not spoken to my brother, and hence these documents could be fake; for I know that my brother's writing can be imitated!

27] I now consider you to be both, that is, a magician and a spy! Now justify yourself thoroughly, otherwise you will be my prisoner and not escape lawful punishment!"

28] During this speech Joseph saw Cyrenius in the eye and said: "Send a messenger to your brother Cornelius, give both letters, and ask your brother to testify, whether my conduct is as despicable, as your bad opinion of me implies!

29] And I demand this of you now; for my honour is justifiable before the Eternal God, and should not be trampled on by a pagan! – For while you are a patrician from Rome, I am no less than a descendant of the great king David, before whom the world trembled, and as such I do not let a pagan dishonour me!

30] I will not leave your side until you have restored my honour to me; – for the honour, which God has given me, cannot be taken away by a gentile!"

31] Cyrenius was taken aback by these forceful words; for, as the governor, who had

command over life and death, he had never heard anyone speak to him thus! – Therefore he thought to himself: Unless this man is aware of his extraordinary power over me, he would not be able to speak to me in such a manner! – I must thus talk to him in a very different manner. –

**CHAPTER 37. – CYRENIUS' GENTLER EXPLANATION AND JOSEPH'S  
RESPONSE. THE HONOUR, THE TREASURE OF THE POOR, THE  
RECONCILIATION MEAL. GOOD ADVICE FROM JOSEPH. CYRENIUS'  
PUNISHED CURIOSITY. THE STORY OF THE INFANT'S CONCEPTION.  
CYRENIUS' WORSHIP OF THE INFANT AND THE AFFIRMATION OF THE  
TRUTH.**

**2 OCTOBER 1843**

01] After this exchange, Cyrenius turned again to Joseph and spoke: "Good man, you need not get so angry! – For you must acknowledge that as a governor, I have the right to sound out a person to determine their state of mind?!"

02] It must be clear to you that I have to take a closer look at people of your type than at those, who insignificantly roam around like flies, and thus I could not spare you from such an interrogation,

however much I would have liked to, you only need to look at the table that was rid of its decorations.

03] I did not mean to insult you, on the contrary, it was a mark of honour that I looked upon you so meaningfully and spoke to you as is my right as governor.

04] For look, I am only interested in learning the complete truth about your origin, because I regard you as very significant!

05] And therefore I deliberately had doubts about you, so that you had to fully reveal yourself to me!

06] However, your language showed me that you are a person who cannot be deceived! And thus I require neither a second message from my brother, nor a higher authentication certificate from anywhere else; for now I see that you are a completely honest Jew! – Tell me, is there a need for anything more than that?"

07] And Joseph spoke: "Friend, see, I am poor; and you are a powerful lord! – My wealth consists of my faith and love to my God and complete honesty towards everyone!

08] But you are, besides your loyalty towards your emperor, also very wealthy in worldly goods, which I do not have. If someone tramples on your honour, you still have the worldly goods.

09] What is left to me, if I lose my honour? – You can buy your honour with the treasures of the world; with what can I buy mine?

10] Hence the poor man becomes a slave, when he once loses his honour and freedom to a rich person; if, however, he has additional secret wealth, he can buy back his honour and freedom.

11] You had threatened to make me your prisoner; tell me, would I have not lost all my honour and freedom?

12] And was I not right to defend myself, when I was confronted by you, governor of Syria and co-governor of the coast of Tyre and Sidon?"

13] Cyrenius spoke: "Good man! Now I entreat you - let us entirely forget this incident!

14] See, the sun is approaching the horizon! My servants have prepared a meal in the

dining hall; come there with me and fortify yourselves, – for I have not asked for Roman food to be prepared, but for food that your people are permitted to eat! So follow me without ill feelings towards me, now your friend!" –

15] And Joseph, with Mary and the five sons, followed Cyrenius into the dining hall, and were astonished at the extent of the indescribable splendour of the dining hall itself, as well as of the magnificence of the tableware, which were, for the most part, made of gold, silver and precious stones.

16] However, as the splendid vessels were decorated with images of several pagan Gods, Joseph spoke to Cyrenius:

17] "Friend, I see that all your tableware is decorated with images of your gods! – You already know the power emanating from my Child!

18] See, when I sit down at the table with my wife and her Child, you will lose all your valuable dishes and pots in one instance!

19] So I advise you to either place entirely undecorated dishes or very common earthenware, otherwise I cannot vouch for your gold and silver!"

20] As Cyrenius heard this from Joseph, he became very frightened and followed Joseph's advice. – The servants immediately brought the food in undecorated earthenware dishes and hid the golden and silver vessels.

21] However, Cyrenius was gripped by curiosity and he wanted to know, whether the Child's vicinity to a magnificent gold goblet would have the same ruinous effect as the previous occurrence to the figures of ore.

[037.22] And in fact, Cyrenius had to pay for his curiosity with the sudden loss of the valuable goblet.

23] After he lost the goblet, he was frightened and stood there as if he had received an electric shock.

24] He spoke only after a while: "Joseph, you great man, you advised me well, and I thank you for it!

25] I myself will be doomed if I move from this place until I understand from you, who this Child is that such a power dwells in Him!"

26] Here Joseph turned to Cyrenius and briefly narrated to him the story of the Child's conception and birth.

27] And Cyrenius, when he heard Joseph speaking about this in a firm voice, immediately fell before the Child and worshipped Him.

28] And see, at that moment, the destroyed goblet stood, having the same weight but without decorations, on the floor in front of Cyrenius; Cyrenius got up and now could not help himself bursting into joy and bliss.

**CHAPTER 38. – CYRENIUS' PAGAN SUGGESTION TO BRING THE INFANT  
PRODIGY TO THE IMPERIAL COURT IN ROME. JOSEPH'S FINE  
RESPONSE WITH REFERENCE TO THE LORD'S HUMBLENESS.  
PROPHETIC WORDS OF THE SPIRITUAL SUN OF LIFE.**

**4 OCTOBER 1843**

01] In this blessed mood, Cyrenius spoke to Joseph: "Listen to me further, you great man! – If I were now the emperor of Rome, I would cede the throne and the emperor's crown to you!

02] And if the emperor Augustus knew about this, as I now do, – for this Child, he would do the same! For even though he thinks highly of himself as the most powerful emperor on earth, I also know that he places, far above himself, a much higher value on everything divine.

03] If you wish, I can write to the emperor and assure you in advance, that he will allow you to go to Rome with the greatest honour and build the greatest and most magnificent temple for the Child, as an unambiguous Son of the Highest God!

038,04] And he will elevate Him in the temple ad infinitum and throw himself at the feet of the Lord, whom the elements and all the gods obey!

05] That such is the case with the Child, is something I have been convinced of twice, for not even Jupiter can protect himself from Him and no one can survive His power!

06] As I said earlier, if you wish, I will send a messenger to Rome today itself! – In truth, this would create a boundless sensation and will somewhat disparage the proud clergy, who, in any event, does not know anymore how to expediently cheat and deceive mankind!"

07] Joseph said to Cyrenius in reply: "Dear, good friend! – Do you really think that the honour of Rome is of any consequence to Him, whom the sun, moon, stars and all the earthly elements have to obey!

08] If He had wished to be honoured as an idol by the whole world, then He would have descended upon earth in all His eternal and infinite divine majesty! – Thereby the whole world could also have been destroyed!

09] He has instead chosen the humbleness of the world, so as to fill it with bliss, as is written in the Book of Prophets; and so forget about the messenger to Rome!

10] If you wish to see Rome destroyed, then do as you like! – For look, He has come for the fall of the world's great and powerful, and to redeem those who are wretched, to be a consolation to those who are unhappy and to resurrect those who are dead!

11] I steadfastly believe this in my heart, – but have only revealed my belief to you; no one else will hear this from me!

12] It will be well if you keep these words as the most sacred within your heart until the time, that a new sun of life rises in you!"

13] These words pierced Cyrenius' heart as arrows and completely convinced him, to the extent that he was immediately ready to give up all his prestige and become humble.

14] However, Joseph said to him: "Friend! Friend! – Remain as you are; for the power in the hands of persons of your type is a blessing of God to the people! – For look, what you are is determined neither by you, nor by Rome, but solely by God!

Therefore remain as you are!" – And Cyrenius praised the unknown God and then sat at the table and ate and drank in happy spirits with Joseph and Mary.

**CHAPTER 39. – CYRENIUS' MODERATION IN FOOD AND DRINK**  
**JOSEPH'S EXPRESSION OF THANKS AND HIS POSITIVE IMPACT ON**  
**CYRENIUS. JOSEPH'S WORDS ON DEATH AND EVERLASTING LIFE. THE**  
**NATURE AND VALUE OF MERCY.**

**5 OCTOBER 1843**

01] Although the Romans were accustomed to lengthy feasts, Cyrenius was an exception to this.

02] When he did not need to arrange such feasts now and then in the honour of the Roman emperor, his meals were short affairs; for he believed in the philosophy that says: "Man does not live to eat, but eats to live, – and that does not require feasts that go on for days."

03] And so even the sanctified meal was short in duration and only as long as necessary for strengthening the body.

04] After the brief meal, Joseph thanked the Lord for the food and drink and blessed the host for it.

05] The host was deeply moved by this and said to Joseph: "O how much greater your religion is over mine! – And how much closer you are to the almighty God than I am!

06] And how much better a human being you are than I can ever be!"

07] To this Joseph replied: "Noble friend, you are worried about what the Lord has just now given you!

08] I tell you: Remain as you are; however, in your heart submit yourself only to God, the eternal Lord, and try to do good in private to all men, and so you will be as close to God as my ancestors Abraham, Isaac and Jacob!

09] See, the almighty God has visited you in the form of this Child; you have carried Him in your arms! – What more do you want? I tell you, you are saved from eternal death and you will henceforth never again see, feel, or taste death!" –

10] At this Cyrenius jumped in joy and spoke: "Good fellow! – What are you saying?! – I will not die?!"

11] Oh tell me, how is such a thing possible?! – See, until now no man has ever escaped death! – Shall I thus really be included in the band of the immortal gods, as I now live?!"

12] Joseph spoke: "Noble friend, you have misunderstood me; I will tell you what occurs at your earthly end. So listen to me briefly!

13] If you had died without this grace, then severe illness, pain, sorrow and doubt would have killed your spirit and your soul, in conjunction with your body, and after this death you would have nothing left than a tormenting, spiritless consciousness of yourself.

14] In that case you would resemble someone over whom his own house has collapsed and who is almost buried alive and thus must feel death while still alive and experience death as bitter in his despair, because he cannot help himself.

15] However, if you die now in this grace of God, then only your physical body will be painlessly taken away from you, and you will awaken in an eternal perfect life, in which you will not anymore ask: "Where is my earthly body?!"

16] And when the Lord calls you from this life, you will, according to your spiritual freedom,

be able to get rid of your body just as if you would take off an old and inconvenient garment!"

17] These words made the most powerful impression on Cyrenius. He fell before the Child and spoke: "O Heavenly Lord! So leave me then in such grace!" The Child smiled at him and raised a tiny hand over him. –



**CHAPTER 40. – CYRENIUS' DEEP RESPECT FOR MARY. THE GREATLY  
COMFORTING WORDS OF MARY. CYRENIUS' CONGRATULATIONS TO  
JOSEPH. JOSEPH'S WORDS ON THE REAL TRUTH.**

**6 OCTOBER 1843**

01] Afterward Cyrenius stood up and spoke to Mary: "O you most fortunate of all women and all the mothers on earth! – Tell me, what do you feel in your heart, now that you are fully convinced that the Lord of the heaven and the earth is resting in your arms!"

02] Mary said: "Friend, how can you ask me what your own heart is telling you?"

03] See, we walk the same earth that God created, we continually tread on His wonder with our feet, – but still there are millions and millions of people, who prefer to bow before the creations of their hands than before the true living God!

04] If God's great creations do not inspire men, how can a child wrapped in swaddling clothes achieve this?

05] Therefore there will only be a few who will recognize the Lord in the Child! – Only those who, like you, are of good will.

06] And those with good will don't need to come to me, so I might tell them what I feel in my heart.

07] The Child will manifest Himself in their hearts and will bless them and allow them to feel what the mother feels when she carries the Child! –

08] Fortunate am I, yea most fortunate, to carry this Child in my arms!

09] But in the future, greater and more fortunate still will those be who carry Him alone in their hearts!

10] Carry Him indestructibly in your heart also, and you will receive that of which my husband Joseph assured you!"

11] As Cyrenius heard these words from Mary, his amazement about her wisdom knew no bounds.

12] He said to Joseph: "Listen, you most fortunate of all men on earth! Who would have sought such deep wisdom from your young wife!?"

13] In truth, if there ever was a Minerva, she should conceal herself as far away as possible from her, this fairest and dearest mother!"

14] Joseph spoke: "See, any man can be wise in his way through God; without Him, however, there is no wisdom on earth!

15] This also explains the wisdom of my wife. 16] Just as the Lord has spoken through the mouths of animals, why should He not do the same through the mouths of men?!

17] However, let us leave this for now, it is time to plan tomorrow's departure!"

18] Cyrenius said: "Joseph, do not worry; for it has been taken care of long ago; I myself will accompany you up to Ostracine." –

***CHAPTER 41. - JOSEPH'S PREDICTIONS ABOUT THE MASSACRE OF THE CHILDREN. CYRENIUS' WRATH AGAINST HEROD. THE HAPPY SEA VOYAGE TO EGYPT. JOSEPH'S BLESSINGS AS PAYMENT FOR THE FERRY TO THE SAILORS AND TO CYRENIUS.***

***9 OCTOBER 1843***

01] Then Joseph spoke to Cyrenius: "Noble friend, your intention is good; but you will hardly be capable of carrying it out!

02] Look, in this very night, letters from Herod will reach you, in which you are urged to seize all male children from one up to two years alongside the sea shore and send them to Bethlehem, so that Herod can kill them there!

03] You may be able to oppose Herod, but your poor brother has to put on a brave political face, not to expose himself to the bite of this most poisonous of all snakes.

04] Believe me, while I am here with you, there is a massacre going on in Bethlehem and a hundred mothers are tearing their clothes in despair because of the most cruel loss of their children!

05] And all that is happening because of this one Child, of which the three magi of Persia predicted that he shall become a King of the Jews!

06] But Herod took him for a worldly king, that's why he wants to kill him and wants to inherit the rule of Judea himself and fears that this One will take it away from him, – whereas this Child only came into this world to redeem mankind from eternal death!"

07] When Cyrenius heard this, he jumped in fury against Herod and spoke to Joseph:

08] "Listen to me, you man of God! This monster will not force me to become his tool! – This day I will depart with you and in my own ship of thirty oars you will find a good place to rest!

09] I will give the order to my most trusted and by all the gods sworn men about what they have to do with all those messengers who will arrive here with these letters addressed to me.

10] See, according to our secret laws, they have to be kept in custody until I come back here!

11] The letters have to be taken from them and have to be sent after me unbeknownst to Herod's messengers, so that I may be aware of their content.

12] But I know already what these letters will contain and I do know as well how long I will be absent. If other messengers follow later, they will be kept in the tower until I come back!

13] And so let your family be ready now to travel and we will immediately embark on my safe ship!"

14] Joseph was happy with the situation and within one hour they were accommodated in the ship along with Joseph's pack animals. A good wind blew from the north and the journey went smoothly.

***10 OCTOBER 1843***

15] The journey took seven days and all the boatmen swore that they had never rowed through these waters with so little trouble as this time.

16] But what they found even more miraculous this time was that – according to their belief – Neptune was very hard to please within his element, because he was arranging his creatures on the bottom of the sea and meeting in council with his servants!

17] Cyrenius said to the astonished boatmen: "Listen, there are two kinds of ignorance: one is free, the other imposed!

18] Would you be held in the free one, then you could be helped; but if it is you are held in the imposed one, sanctioned by law, one cannot help you,

19] and so you may as well stick to the belief that Neptune has lost his tripod and does not dare to punish us with his scaly hands for all the crimes we have committed against him!"

20] Hereupon Joseph asked Cyrenius: "Is it not common that boatmen get wages? Please tell me and I shall pay them as it is proper, so that they will not speak badly of us!"

21] But Cyrenius said: "Do not worry, because these men are under my command and have their wages, – therefore do not be concerned about that!"

22] Joseph replied: "That is sure and true, – but they are also human beings like us and we should deal with them as such!

23] If their ignorance is imposed, they should dedicate their outer self to that, but their spirit shall be liberated by my offering!

24] So let them come over here that I may bless them and they may realize in their hearts that also for them the sun of redemption and grace has risen!"

25] At this moment Cyrenius called the boatmen and Joseph spoke the following words to them:

26] "Listen to me, you faithful servants of Rome and of your master! – You have lead the ship faithfully and diligently and good wages should be given to you by me, for whom this journey was made!

27] Yet I am poor and have neither gold nor silver, but I receive the grace of God in abundance, which is the grace of that God whom you call the 'Unknown'!

28] May this grace be poured into you by the great Lord, so that you become alive in spirit!"

29] After these words everybody had a blissful feeling and started to praise and hail the unknown God.

30] Cyrenius was astonished at the effect of the blessings of Joseph and let himself also be blessed by him.

## ***CHAPTER 42 - THE EFFECT OF THE BLESSING OF MERCY ON CYRENIUS. JOSEPH'S HUMBLE CONFESSION AND HIS ADVICE TO CYRENIUS. THE ARRIVAL IN OSTRACINE (EGYPT).***

**11 OCTOBER 1843**

01] Cyrenius was also overcome by a great feeling of bliss and he spoke: "Hear, my most respectable man! – I now have the same feeling as I had when I held the Infant in my arms.

02] Are you then of the same nature with him? – Or how is it, that I feel the same bliss?"

03] Joseph said: "Noble friend! – Such power does not emanate from me, but only from the Lord of heaven and earth!

04] It runs through me only at such occasion in order to flow over to you as a blessing; but I myself do not have such power all the time, for it is God alone who is all in all!

05] Therefore always honour this one and only true God and the fullness of His Blessings shall never leave you!"

06] And Joseph continued: "And now, friend, look, we have reached the shore with the help of the almighty Lord, but it seems to me that we are still far away from Ostracine!

07] Which way is it then, so that we may go there? – For the day is drawing to a close! What shall we do? Shall we proceed further or stay here until tomorrow?"

08] And Cyrenius spoke: "Look, we are at the entrance to the great bay, in whose innermost angle on our right lies Ostracine as a rich city of commerce!

09] In less than three hours we should reach there; but when we arrive at night, we will have difficulties to find accommodation! I would suggest we spend the night here on the ship and go there tomorrow."

10] But Joseph spoke: "If it is only three hours away, then we should not spend the night here! Your ship may stay here, so that you do not cause any stir in this city, – but I will secretly go to the place of my destination!

11] For if the Roman garrison would discover the ship of a governor of Rome, they would have to receive you with all honours,

12] and I would have to share with you all your honours, whether I wanted to or not, which would be very unpleasant for me.

13] That is why I would prefer to continue our journey forthwith! – My pack animals have rested sufficiently and could bring us to Ostracine in a short time!

14] My sons are strong and nimble afoot; they can walk while you and your servants may take five of the animals. Like this we would reach the nearby city with ease!"

15] Cyrenius accepted Joseph's advice, handed the ship over to the care of his faithful boatmen, took four servants with him, mounted the pack animals and promptly moved to the town together with Joseph.

16] After two hours they reached the town. But as they entered the town, they were asked by the gatekeeper for their letters of safe-conduct.

17] But Cyrenius revealed himself to the commanding officer, who made his soldiers salute him and made immediate arrangements for his lodging.

18] And so our travel party was well received in the city without the least delay and were

given the finest accommodation.

## ***CHAPTER 43. - THE PURCHASE OF A COUNTRY HOUSE FOR THE HOLY FAMILY BY CYRENIUS.***

**12 OCTOBER 1843**

01] The next morning Cyrenius immediately sent a messenger to the commander of the military garrison and conveyed to him that he should come to see him as soon as possible, but without any ceremony.

02] The commander met Cyrenius and spoke: "Noble representative of the great emperor in Coelesyria and supreme commander of Tyre and Sidon, let me hear your wishes!"

03] And Cyrenius spoke: "My most revered commander! First I wish that there are no honours given to me, for I am here incognito.

04] Secondly, I would like to now from you, if there is a small house for sale or for rent either here in the city itself or some mansion not too far way from the city.

05] For I want to buy something like that for a very highly esteemed and honourable Jewish family.

06] For reasons well known to us, this family had to flee from Palestine, pursued by the 'great' Herod and is seeking shelter now under our Roman tolerance and forever firm justice.

07] I have carefully investigated all the circumstances of this family and have found them pure and without blemish! – It is easy to understand that under such conditions they can hardly survive under Herod and it is understandable as well that this monster of a ruler of Palestine and parts of Judea is Rome's biggest enemy!

08] I believe you will understand what I am saying? – This is the reason why I want to buy something nice and useful for this family here.

09] Please do me a favour and tell me if you hear of anything! I cannot stay here for long because important matters are waiting for me in Tyre, therefore everything has to be settled today!"

10] And the commander spoke to Cyrenius: "Your Highness! That is no problem at all; I have built myself a rather nice villa half a mile out of town together with a fruit orchard and three beautiful cornfields.

11] But I cannot spend enough time there to take sufficient care of it. It is all in my own possession; if you want it, I can sell it to you with everything that goes with it for a hundred pounds and it can be held without payment of taxes."

12] When Cyrenius had heard this he shook hands with the commander, had his servants bring the money and promptly paid the commander in cash unseen, then had himself led to the place by the commander, unseen by Joseph, to examine what he had bought.

13] When he saw the villa he liked it very much and he told his servants, to remain in the mansion until he would return with the family.

14] He then went with the commander into the city and after letting him draw up the parchment scroll of ownership, took his leave from him and went full of joy to Joseph.

15] Joseph immediately said to him: "Good and dear friend, I have to thank God for His blessings upon you which made you bestow so much of your friendship on me until now!

16] I am saved now and had a wonderful accommodation here last night! – But I have to stay here; what will the future be like – where will I live, how will I sustain myself? – See, I

will have to look after that right away."

17] And Cyrenius said: "Well my most esteemed friend, just have your family pack and come with me bag and baggage, and we will look for something a few hundred yards outside the city, since my enquiries have shown that there is nothing available in town!" – Joseph happily agreed with this and did as Cyrenius had asked.

## **CHAPTER 44. – JOSEPH WITH THE HOLY FAMILY IN THE NEW HOME. CYRENIUS AS A GUEST. JOSEPH'S AND MARY'S GRATITUDE.**

**13 OCTOBER 1843**

01] When Cyrenius arrived at the newly bought villa together with Joseph and his family, Joseph said to Cyrenius:

02] "Noble friend, this is what I like; an unpretentious villa, a decent fruit orchard full of dates, figs, pomegranates, oranges, apples and pears, cherries,

03] grapes, almonds, melons and a lot of vegetables! And next to it a meadow and three cornfields that are surely part of it!

04] Indeed, I don't want anything shiny and ostentatious, but this practically designed villa, which is very similar to my leased property at Nazareth in Judea, I would like to either rent or buy!"

05] At this moment Cyrenius pulled out the ownership paper and handed it over to Joseph with the words:

06] "May the Lord, your and now also my God, bless it for you! With this I hand over to you the tax-free, full ownership of this villa!

07] Everything you see enclosed by thick bushes and a palisade fence belongs to this villa! Behind this residential building there is a spacious stable for donkeys and cows! You will find two cows; donkeys you have anyway enough for your own needs.

08] If you would like to return to your native country after some time you may sell this property and buy yourself something somewhere else!

09] In one word – you, my great friend are now in full possession of this villa and can do with it whatever you like.

10] But I myself shall stay here today, tomorrow and the day after tomorrow so that Herod's wicked messengers will have to wait for me even longer!

11] And only for this short time will I make use of this villa out of my great love for you!

12] I would only need to say one word and the whole palace of the emperor would be at my disposal, – first of all, because I hold the emperor's full authoritative power,

13] and secondly because I am a close relative of the emperor!

14] But I avoid this out of respect and love for you, but especially for the Child whom I consider without question to be the son of the highest God!"

15] Joseph was so moved about this gesture that he could not talk but only weep in gratitude.

16] Mary hardly fared better, but she regained her composure faster, went to Cyrenius and expressed her gratitude by placing the Child in Cyrenius' arms. And Cyrenius, utterly moved, spoke: "Great God and Lord, is a sinner worthy enough, to carry You in his hands? – So then be gracious and merciful to me!"



## ***CHAPTER 45. - THE INSPECTION OF THE NEW HOME. MARY'S AND JOSEPH'S WORDS OF GRATITUDE. CYRENIUS' INTEREST IN THE HISTORY OF ISRAEL***

**14 OCTOBER 1843**

01] After recovering from this great surprise Joseph inspected everything with Cyrenius.

02] And Mary, who took the Child again from Cyrenius' arms, joined them and was overjoyed by the grace of the Lord who had taken so much care of her material needs.

03] After everything had been inspected and they had returned to the residential building, Mary, still full of joy, spoke to Joseph:

04] "O my dear and beloved Joseph! I am so happy that the Lord has taken so much care of us!

05] Yes, it almost feels to me as if the Lord has reversed the entire old order!

06] Once He took the children of Israel out of Egypt into the promised land of Palestine, then called Canaan.

07] But now He has again made Egypt into the promised land and fled with us or rather led us here Himself, from

where He once redemptorily led our fathers through the desert into the promised land, which was overflowing with milk and honey."

08] And Joseph spoke: "Mary, you are not altogether mistaken with your serene remark;

09] but I am of the opinion, that your statement suits only the present situation.

10] It looks to me, as if the Lord has done with us now what he once did to the sons of Jacob, when the great famine had broken out in the land of Canaan!

11] The people of Israel then remained in Egypt until Moses came; but Moses took them home again through the desert.

12] And I believe, that the same thing will happen to us; we too will not be buried here and will surely return to Canaan at the right time!

13] At the time our fathers were taken home, surely a man like Moses had to be awakened first; but we already have the Moses of Moses in our midst!

14] And so I believe it will happen as I have spoken."

15] Mary kept all these words in her heart and agreed with Joseph.

16] Cyrenius had listened as well to this conversation and indicated to Joseph that he wanted to hear more about the ancient history of the Jews. –

## ***CHAPTER 46. - THE COMMON SUPPER AND JOSEPH'S NARRATION ABOUT THE STORY OF CREATION, HUMANITY AND THE JEWISH PEOPLE. CYRENIUS' CAUTIOUS REPORT TO THE EMPEROR AND ITS POSITIVE EFFECT.***

16 October 1843

01] Joseph then ordered his sons to look after the animals and to check the foodstuffs.

02] And they went and did all according to Joseph's will, fed the animals, milked the cows,  
03] went into the pantry and found a large supply of flour, bread, fruits and several pots full of honey.

04] For the commander was an expert beekeeper according to the traditional school in Rome praised by a Roman poet in those days.

05] And soon they brought bread, milk, butter and honey to Joseph in the living room.

06] Joseph looked at everything, thanked God and blessed all the food, and had a table set to which he invited Cyrenius.

07] The latter gladly fulfilled Joseph's wish as he was a great lover of milk and honey-bread.

08] During the meal, Joseph briefly explained to Cyrenius the story of the Jewish people along with the story of creation and of mankind

09] and described it all so precisely and consistently, that it became very clear to Cyrenius that Joseph had surely told the authentic truth.

10] Although he was very pleased on his part, he was also saddened about his people in Rome whom he well knew to be in disgraceful darkness.

11] Therefore he spoke to Joseph: Exalted man and now greatest friend of my life!

12] Look, I have made a plan! – All what I have heard from you now, I shall report to my near blood brother, the emperor Augustus, but only as if I had heard about it accidentally from a Jew unknown to me.

13] Your name and your the place where you live will not be mentioned in the least; for why should the best man in Rome, the emperor Augustus, my brother, have to die eternally?"

14] This time Joseph agreed and Cyrenius wrote, still in Ostracine, for three days, and sent the document by a special ship to the emperor in Rome, with the sole signature: Your brother Cyrenius.

15] Upon reading this news from Cyrenius the eyes of emperor were opened; he began to respect the Jewish people and even gave them an opportunity to be admitted as Roman citizens for a small tax.

16] At the same time all preachers of paganism were exiled from Rome on one pretext or another.

17] For similar reasons the otherwise popular poet Ovid was exiled from Rome, without anyone knowing why. Likewise the priesthood had a hard time under Augustus.

## ***CHAPTER 47. - CYRENIUS' DEPARTURE AND HIS CARE FOR THE HOLY FAMILY. THE TERRIBLE NEWS BROUGHT BY THE WITNESSES OF THE MASSACRE OF THE INNOCENTS. A LETTER OF CYRENIUS TO HEROD.***

**17 OCTOBER 1843**

01] On the fourth day Cyrenius took his leave, after he had impressed upon the commander the importance of giving protection to this family at any occasion and without fail.

02] But as he was leaving the entire family wanted to accompany him to the sea, where his ship had dropped anchor.

03] Cyrenius declined this amicably and spoke: "Dearest exalted friend, please stay here in peace!

04] One cannot know what kind of messengers have caught up with my ship – and with what news!

05] Although you are completely safe now, there is a certain cleverness needed on my part here so that none of the spies come to know why I visited Egypt in January this time!"

06] Joseph understood Cyrenius very well, remained at home and blessed his benefactor in the forecourt of his house.

07] Then Cyrenius went away with his four servants, promising to visit Joseph again soon and reached his ship quickly by foot.

08] When he arrived, he was received with great rejoicing, but later on other messengers turned up who were wailing pitifully.

09] For many parents fled the coast of Palestine from the persecution of Herod, the child murderer, and narrated in great

agitation the horrors of Herod's actions in Bethlehem and the entire southern part of Palestine, with the help of the Roman soldiers.

10] Hereupon Cyrenius immediately sent a letter to the governor of Jerusalem and another one to Herod himself, in the same spirit!

11] The letter read briefly as follows: "I, Cyrenius, a brother of the emperor and highest governor of Asia and Egypt – command in the name of the emperor to stop your cruelties immediately;

12] failing which I shall regard Herod as a downright rebel and will punish him according to the law, according to what he deserves and according to my justified anger!

13] The governor of Jerusalem is to investigate his cruelties in detail and inform me about it without delay, so that this ruthless tyrant shall not evade a just punishment for his deeds!

14] Written on my ship 'Augustus' at the coast of Ostracine, in the name of the emperor, his highest deputy in Asia and Egypt and special governor in Coelesyria, Tyre and Sidon – Cyrenius vice Augusti."

## ***CHAPTER 48. - THE EFFECT AND OUTCOME OF THIS LETTER, THE PLOY OF HEROD. CYRENIUS' SECOND LETTER TO HEROD.***

**18 OCTOBER 1843**

01] The governor of Jerusalem and Herod were terrified by Cyrenius' letter, ceased their cruelties and sent messengers to Tyre, trying to explain to Cyrenius the important reasons behind their actions.

02] They painted the legation of the in any case devious Persians in the most lurid colours and even claimed having discovered very important, secret leads that none other than Cyrenius' brother Cornelius played a leading part in this secret, typically Asian conspiracy!

03] Because it has been ascertained that Cornelius had taken this new King of the Jews under his protection.

04] And because of this, Herod was now thinking of sending messengers to Rome, unless Cyrenius would give him guarantees.

05] Therefore Cyrenius was to subject Cornelius to the strictest investigation, failing which a report would be sent to the emperor immediately and irrevocably!

06] Cyrenius, who received this countermeasure when he was back in Tyre again, was initially taken aback by it.

07] But he quickly regained his composure and, inspired by the Divine Spirit, wrote the following lines to Herod:

08] "How does the secret law of Augustus read as regards the discovery of a possible conspiracy? – It reads thus: 'When someone discovers any kind of secret intrigue, he shall remain calm and immediately and in all detail report it to the highest authority of state of the country!'

09] Neither a special governor and still less, a liege lord, shall hold the sword without an explicit order of the highest authority of state who should first investigate the matter thoroughly.

10] For nowhere can an untimely attack do greater damage to the state than in such a case;

11] because when this makes the conspiracy withdraw and hide its plans by even more fiendish tricks, it will not miss its objectives when it comes to the surface in more favourable circumstances!"

12] This is the most wise law in this matter, in the words of the emperor himself!

13] Did you act accordingly? – My brother Cornelius has done so! He has immediately seized the supposed new King of the Jews,

14] has handed him over to my command and I have since long given orders for his proper disposal according to the powers vested in me over Asia and Egypt.

15] My brother has presented to you all that, but he spoke to deaf ears!

16] As true rebels you have carried out the massacre of the innocents against all representations of my brother and have even boldly called upon me to support you! – Is that the what you call carrying out the imperial law?

17] But I tell you, the emperor has already been informed and has empowered me to dismiss the governor of Jerusalem, although he is a relative of mine, and to impose on Herod a fine of ten thousand pounds in gold.

18] The deposed governor is to appear before me within five days and Herod is to pay his fine here in full within 30 days, failing which he loses his right of tenure. Fiat! Cyrenius vice Augusti."

**CHAPTER 49. – THE EFFECT OF THE SECOND LETTER, THE ARRIVAL  
OF HEROD AND THE GOVERNOR IN TYRE. THE RECEPTION BY  
CYRENIUS. THE EXCITEMENT OF THE FRIGHTENED PEOPLE.  
MARONIUS PILLA IN FRONT OF CYRENIUS.**

**19 OCTOBER 1843**

- 01] Eventually this letter of Cyrenius instilled tremendously fear in the governor of Jerusalem as well as in Herod.
- 02] Therefore Herod and the governor, named Maronius Pilla, quickly made their way to Cyrenius.
- 03] Herod, in order to bargain about his fine, and the governor to back his post.
- 04] When they arrived with their big entourage, the people were horrified, for they thought that Herod would carry out his cruelties here as well with the agreement of Cyrenius.
- 05] Hence they ran to him and, out of breath, begged and cried for mercy and compassion!
- 06] Initially, Cyrenius was appalled at this, for he did not understand the reason,
- 07] but then collected himself and asked the people what was wrong, what had happened that made them cry before him in desperation.
- 08] And the people cried out: "He is there, he is there, the most cruel of the cruel, who has killed thousands of innocent children all over Palestine!!!" – – –
- 09] Only then did Cyrenius grasp the cause of their fear, and consoled them, whereupon the people calmed down and went away while he prepared himself to receive the pair.
- 10] The people had hardly left the residence of Cyrenius, when the two reported their arrival.
- 11] Herod was the first to appear before Cyrenius, bowed deeply before the imperial eminence and asked for permission to speak.
- 12] Cyrenius spoke very excitedly: "Speak, you, for whom hell is too good, to give you a name! – Speak, you most evil outcast from the lowest hell! – What do you want from me!?"
- 13] Herod turned pale from these thunderous words of Cyrenius, and spoke with a trembling voice: "Lord of the magnificence of Rome! – Too unaffordable is the fine dictated by you, therefore please release me from half of it!
- 14] For let Zeus be my witness, that what I have done, I have done full of just zeal for Rome!
- 15] I admit I have acted cruelly, but it was not possible otherwise, as the glittering Persian delegation had obviously prompted me to do so, by deceiving me and breaking their word!"
- 16] But Cyrenius spoke: "Come up with something better, you wicked liar to your own advantage! I know everything! Acknowledge the dictated penance at once or your head will be cut off from your trunk here on the spot!"
- 17] Now Herod acknowledged his penance and this under the threat of losing his letter of tenure, which was handed out to him again only after he had paid the penalty.
- 18] Cyrenius then told him to leave and summoned Maronius Pilla.
- 19] But he, having learned about Cyrenius' mood from the antechamber, stood before

Cyrenius more dead than alive.

20] But Cyrenius spoke: "Pilla, get hold of yourself, for you were forced to do as you did! – You must give me important clues, that's why I called you! – No penance awaits you, except the one of your heart before God!"

**CHAPTER 50.- THE INTERROGATION OF THE GOVERNOR BY  
CYRENIUS. THE GOVERNOR'S PLEA TO BE EXCUSED. CYRENIUS'  
QUESTION OF CONSCIENCE TO MARONIUS AND HIS CONFESSION AND  
CONVICTION.**

**20 OCTOBER 1843**

01] After the address of Cyrenius, Maronius Pilla felt as if a huge stone was lifted from his chest; his pulse started to beat normal again, and he was soon able to talk to respond to Cyrenius.

02] When Cyrenius saw that Maronius Pilla had recovered, he asked him as follows:

03] "I tell you, give me the most conscientious answer to what I will ask you! Any excuse will incur my just displeasure! So listen to my question!

04] Tell me, do you know the family, whose firstborn Child is supposed to be the so-called new King of the Jews?"

05] Maronius Pilla replied: "Yes, I know them personally, according to the announcement of the Jewish priests in Jerusalem! – The father is called Joseph and is an excellent carpenter known all over Judea and half of Palestine and lives near Nazareth.

06] His honesty is known in the whole country and in all of Jerusalem. Eleven moons ago he had to take a matured girl out of the Jewish temple, by casting lots, I believe.

07] This girl had probably worshiped Venus a bit too early during the absence of this honest carpenter and became pregnant. After that this man had a lot of trouble with the Jewish priesthood.

08] To this extent this case is well known to me; but as for the delivery by the girl – whom this man had married just before, in order to escape the disgrace which he could expect from his compatriots – a lot of mystical tales have spread among the people, and the whole matter is still unclear!

09] People say she has delivered in a stable, during the registration in Bethlehem, that much I could find out.

10] Anything more than that is wholly unknown to me; and I communicated as such to Herod!

11] But he thought that Cornelius had wanted to take this family, of which the Persians had made him suspicious, and hide them among the people, in order to contest his feudal throne. For he knows very well, that your brother is not his friend!

12] That is why he resorted to this eccentric cruelty, to thwart Cornelius' plan rather than to get hold of this new king.

13] He carried out this infanticide more in revenge against your brother than from fear of this new king. That is all I can to tell you about this strange incident!"

14] Cyrenius spoke further: "Until now I could gather from your words that you have told me the truth, but at the same time, it has not escaped my attention that you also wanted to whitewash Herod before me!

15] But I tell you, as I have written, the deed of Herod can not be excused in any way!

16] For I will tell you why Herod has perpetrated these inhuman cruelties.

17] Listen! Herod himself is the most tyrannical man the earth has ever nurtured.



18] If he could, and only had the required power, he would do even today to us Romans, including Augustus, what he has done to those innocent children! – Do you understand me?

19] He has carried out this infanticide only because he was of the opinion that by doing us Romans a great and respectable favour and show himself as a true Roman patriot, the emperor would award him my office in addition;

20] he would thus have one third of the whole Roman might at his disposal and, being the representative of the emperor as I am, make himself free and totally independent from Rome, and become the sole sovereign of Asia and Egypt.

21 October 1843

21] Do you understand me?! – That is this monster's plan, which I know well; and as I know him, so does Augustus now!

22] I ask you now, with your head as pledge for the truth which I expect from you, didn't you know anything about this plan of Herod as he had forced you to be his disgraceful tool?

23] Talk! But keep in mind that each untrue, evasive syllable will cost you your life! For in this matter I know each and every detail!"

24] Hereupon Maronius Pilla turned into a corpse again and stammered: "Yes, you are right, I also knew what Herod was up to.

25] I was afraid of his wicked spirit of intrigue and therefore had to do what he asked me to do, so that the basis for a still greater intrigue might be destroyed for him.

26] But I did not know him through and through as I know now through you; for if I had, he would not be alive anymore today!"

27] And Cyrenius spoke: "Well, in the name of the emperor I will spare your life, but I will not reappoint you to your office until your soul is healed from a strong illness! – You will be cared for here with me and your post will for now be seen to by my brother Cornelius; because I never trust you! Therefore you will stay here until you are sound and healthy again!"

## ***CHAPTER 51. - THE CONFESSION OF MARONIUS PILLA. CYRENIUS AS THE WISE JUDGE.***

**24 OCTOBER 1843**

01] When Maronius Pilla heard this judgment from Cyrenius, he spoke with a trembling voice:

02] "Pity on me, for all is betrayed! – I am a Republican and such has been openly presented to the emperor, – pity on me, I am lost!"

03] Cyrenius spoke: "I knew very well what sort of characters you are and for what reason you had allied yourself with Herod in the murder of the innocents.

04] That is why I acted as I did!

05] Indeed, if you would not have been a descendant of the first house of Rome like me, I would have had your head cut off without mercy,

06] if not nailed on a cross! But I have pardoned you because firstly, you were more misled into this move by Herod and because you are one of the first Patricians of Rome along with me and Augustus Caesar.

07] But you will not be restored to your office as long as Herod is alive, and as long as you are not completely healed!

08] And the condition of your being here will be fulfilled by the work I will give you which you will carry out without any argument, and you will be under my strict observation!

09] In the spring I will make an official visit to Egypt – and you will accompany me!

10] There a wise old man lives outside the town; I will let him examine you he will tell you all about your illness!

11] There it will show instantly to what extent all your statements can be trusted!

12] Prepare yourself well; for there you will find more than the oracle of Delphi!

13] For there you will be put in front of a judge whose sharp eyes make iron flow like wax! – So prepare yourself well; for my declaration stands"

## ***CHAPTER 52. - CYRENIUS' JOURNEY TO EGYPT AND HIS ARRIVAL IN OSTRACINE. JOSEPH AND MARY'S DECISION TO WELCOME CYRENIUS. THE FIRST WORDS OF THE INFANT.***

**25 OCTOBER 1843**

01] The said spring soon arrived, for in this region, it starts already in the middle of February.

02] But Cyrenius scheduled his trip to Egypt only for the middle of March, which month the Romans usually chose for military affairs.

03] By the middle of March, Cyrenius had his ship equipped again and on the fifteenth, he promptly embarked on his journey to Egypt together with Maronius Pilla.

04] This time, the journey took five days.

05] On this occasion, Cyrenius let himself be received with all honours in Ostracine; because he had to undertake major military inspections and visitations this time.

06] This required that he be received with all honours.

07] His arrival therefore caused a great sensation in Ostracine, word of which also reached the villa we all know about.

08] Therefore Joseph sent two of his oldest sons to the town, to find out exactly what had caused all the excitement in the city.

09] The two sons hurried and came back soon with the good news that Cyrenius had arrived in the town, and where he was staying.

10] When Joseph heard this he spoke to Mary: "Listen, we have to visit this great benefactor immediately and the Infant should not stay behind!"

11] And Mary, overjoyed about this, spoke: O dear Joseph, that goes without saying, for after all the Infant is the true darling of Cyrenius!"

12] Mary promptly dressed the by now considerably grown Child in new clothes she had made herself and asked the Child with all her motherly love and innocence:

13] "Well, my loveliest Son, my dearest Jesus, are You coming with us to visit dear Cyrenius?"

14] The Child smiled cheerfully to Mary and distinctly spoke the first word, and the word was:

15] "Mary, now I follow you until one day you follow Me!"

16] These words created such an elevated mood in the Joseph's entire house, that Joseph almost forgot about the planned visit to Cyrenius.

17] But the small Child Himself admonished Joseph not to postpone his plan; for Cyrenius would have many things to do this time for the welfare of the people.

**CHAPTER 53. - JOSEPH AND MARY'S FEAR AND THOUGHTS OF  
ESCAPE AT THE PARADE GROUND. THE MEETING OF CYRENIUS AND  
MARONIUS PILLA. THE END OF THE MILITARY PARADE AND THE  
RETURN HOME OF THE HOLY FAMILY ACCOMPANIED BY CYRENIUS.**

**26 OCTOBER 1843**

01] Joseph and Mary immediately set out on the short trip; and their oldest son accompanied them showing them the shortest way to the fortress where Cyrenius was staying.

02] But when they arrived at the main square, it was filled with soldiers and it was not easy to reach the entrance of the fortress.

03] And Joseph spoke to Mary: "Beloved wife, look, what is impossible for us human beings, will remain impossible!

04] So, it is now utterly impossible to reach the fortress through all these rows of soldiers, so should we just turn back and wait for a more favourable time!?

05] Also the Infant looks quite anxiously at all these rows of warriors! He could easily get frightened and become sick afterwards and it would be our fault; so let us turn back!"

06] But Mary spoke: "Beloved Joseph! See, if my eyes do not deceive me, then that man who is just passing in front of the last row with a shining helmet on his head, is Cyrenius!

07] Let us wait a little until he comes our way. Perhaps he will see us and will then surely give us sign as to what we have to do or whether we should come to him or not!"

08] Joseph spoke: "Yes, beloved wife, you are right and obviously it is Cyrenius himself!

09] But look carefully at the face of the other warrior who walks right next to him! If that is not the infamous governor of Jerusalem, my name is not Joseph!

10] What is he doing here? – Are we the reason for his presence? – Has Cyrenius then shamefully handed us over to Herod?

11] The good part is, that he does not know or you personally, so we can still save ourselves by a new flight deeper into Egypt.

12] If he would know me or you, we would already be lost; for he is now only twenty paces ahead of us and could get hold of us immediately!

13] Therefore, let us withdraw as fast as possible because if Cyrenius sees us, and he will still know us for sure, we'll be done for!"

14] At this Mary got frightened and wanted to flee back at once. But the pressure of the crowd did not permit an escape; for curiosity had led so many people to the square, that it was as good as impossible to pass through.

15] Joseph therefore said: "What is impossible is impossible, let us surrender to the Divine will! The Lord will surely not leave us this time either!

16] Let us put our heads closely together as a precaution, so that at least Cyrenius will not recognize us by our faces!"

17] On this occasion Cyrenius came very close to Joseph and pushed him a bit out off the way. But Joseph could not move because of the pressing crowd; so Cyrenius looked a bit closer at this stubborn man and promptly recognized Joseph.

18] When he saw Joseph and Mary and the Child who was smiling at him, his eyes filled with tears joy; yes, he was so overjoyed that he could hardly speak.

19] But he regained his composure quickly, took Joseph's hand, pressed it on his heart and spoke:

20] "My exalted friend! – You are looking at my affairs!

21] Forgive me that I have not yet been able to visit you; but the review has finished just now! I will immediately let the troops withdraw their barracks,

22] then I will give a short order for tomorrow to the commander, quickly change my clothes and be here with you and escort you to your house!"

23] Still full of joy he now turned to Mary and the Child and asked, while caressing the Infant:

24] "O You my life, You my all, do You still remember me, do You love me, my loveliest Child!?"

25] And the Child raised his hands widely towards Cyrenius, smiled at him gently and spoke clearly:

26] "O Cyrenius! I know you well and love you, because you love Me so much! – Come, come to Me; for I have to bless you!"

27] This was too more than Cyrenius' heart could bear; he took the Child in his arms, pressed Him to his heart and spoke:

28] "Yes! You, my life, with You on my arms I shall give the command for a long peace between the nations!"

29] Thereupon he called the commander to him, informed him that he was fully satisfied and ordered him to let the troops withdraw and to provide for them for three days (i.e. out of Cyrenius' own pocket), and invited the commander and some other captains for a good meal to Joseph's villa.

30] And together with Joseph and Mary, he set out, as he was, carrying the Child himself and escorted by the increasingly wondering Maronius Pilla, towards the villa and immediately had a festive meal prepared by his servants. -This caused a sensation in the city; for all people got inflamed with love for Cyrenius, as they recognized in him a great lover of children. –

**CHAPTER 54. - JOSEPH'S ANXIOUS QUESTION TO CYRENIUS ABOUT  
THE PRESENCE OF MARONIUS PILLA. CYRENIUS SOOTHING ANSWER.  
THE ARRIVAL AT JOSEPH'S VILLA.**

**27 OCTOBER 1843**

01] Joseph felt fine with everything now and he praised God in his heart for this happy turn of events which had caused him such concern.

02] Nevertheless, the presence of Maronius bothered him a little; for he had still no idea what this friend of Herod was actually doing here.

03] While on the way he approached Cyrenius unnoticed and asked him softly:

04] " Most noble friend of men! – This warrior who walks in front of you, is he not Maronius of Jerusalem?

05] If it is him, this friend of Herod, what is he doing here then?!

06] Has he somehow gotten wind of me and does he want to seek me out and capture me here?

07] Most noble friend! Do not leave me any longer in this frightening uncertainty!"

08] But Cyrenius took Joseph's hand and said to him, also in a low voice:

09] "My dearest and most exalted friend! Do not in the least fear this the man, who is actually merely the former governor of Jerusalem!

10] For still today you will convince yourself that he has much more reason to fear you than you have to fear him!

11] See, he is not a governor in Jerusalem anymore but, as you see him, my prisoner instead, and he will not take up his office unless he is completely healed!

12] I have taken him with me precisely on your account, because when I interrogated him regarding the atrocity in Palestine,

13] he claimed to know you and Mary personally. But as it turns out now, he neither knows you nor your wife Mary!

14] And that is very good grist for our mill.

15] He does not know that you are here, that's why you should not give yourself away!

16] For he expects to meet only a very wise man here, who will turn him inside out,

17] and this man is none other than you yourself! That is why I have taken him with me, so that he may come to know the wise man in you and be tested for his own good.

18] He is already terribly afraid of you in advance and, looking at his pale appearance, he surely thinks that you are the man I have mentioned to him!

19] From these few words, you can be at ease for now; what follows will make everything very clear to you!"

20] Joseph was very happy to hear this from Cyrenius, and secretly told Mary and his eldest son how they were to behave in front of Maronius so that nothing of Cyrenius' plan would be revealed. And they cautiously reached the villa where, as said, the meal was prepared. –

**CHAPTER 55. - THE BANQUET IN JOSEPH'S VILLA. MARY'S HUMILITY  
AND AFFECTIONATE QUARREL WITH CYRENIUS. THE DIVINE, COUNTER-  
PHILOSOPHICAL WISDOM OF THE HOLY CHILD.**

**28 OCTOBER 1843**

- 01] The meal was prepared and the invited guests had come together; and Cyrenius, still enticing the Child which played with him and also caressed him, handed the Child back to Mary and gave the sign for the meal to begin.
- 02] Everyone sat down at the table, but Mary, having no appropriate dress, went with the Child in a side room and sat at the table with Joseph's sons.
- 03] But Cyrenius soon noticed this, quickly followed the mother and spoke:
- 04] "Dearest mother of This my Life, what do you want to do?
- 05] You and your Child are most important to me; you are the Queen of our gathering, and now you are the very one who does not want to take part in the festive meal which I had organized here just for you!?
- 06] Oh look, that can't be! So please come and sit at my right, and next to me at my left sits your husband!"
- 07] But Mary spoke: "O see, dear sir, I have very poor clothes; how will they look next to all your splendour!?"
- 08] But Cyrenius spoke: "O dear mother! – If my golden clothes, which have no value to me, are confusing you, then I will throw them off and change it for a common sailor's frock, so that I will not miss you at my table!"
- 09] As Mary was convinced of Cyrenius' great humility, she returned and took her place next to Cyrenius at the dinner table, with the Child in her arms.
- 10] While all of them were now sitting at the table, the Child constantly looked at Cyrenius and smiled at him, while Cyrenius in turn could not take his eyes from Him out of pure love.
- 11] For a short time he endured it, but then his love for the Child became more than he could bear,
- 12] and he asked the little One: "Tell me, my Life, wouldn't You want to come again in my arms?"
- 13] And the Child smiled sweetly at Cyrenius and spoke very distinctly:
- 14] "O my beloved Cyrenius! – I come to you very gladly, because you love Me so much! – That is why I love you so much too!"
- 15] Cyrenius immediately stretched out his arms towards the Child, took Him and caressed Him fervently.
- 16] And Mary said to the Child in jest: "Now do not mess up Lord Cyrenius!"
- 17] But Cyrenius said, deeply touched: "O dear mother! How I wish, that I was clean enough to be worthy of carrying this Child in my arms!
- 18] He can never dirty me, but only clean me!"
- 19] Here he turned to the Child again and spoke: "My Child, yes, I am still very impure, unworthy to carry You, is that not so?"

20] But the Child spoke very clearly again: "Cyrenius, whoever loves Me like you do, is pure, and I love him as he loves Me!"

21] And Cyrenius, quite enchanted, went on asking the Infant: "But how is it my Child, that you can speak so clearly and sensibly being just a few months old? Has Your mother taught You this?"

22] The Child smiled tenderly, sat up on Cyrenius' arms and spoke like a little lord:

23] "Cyrenius, this is not a matter of age or learning, but of the greatness of one's spirit! – The body and the soul have to learn, but the spirit already has everything in itself from God!

24] Now my spirit is full of the power of God; see, that is why I can talk so soon!"

25] This answer amazed Cyrenius as well as the entire dinner party and even the commander said: "By Zeus, this Child already now puts to shame all our wise men with His answers!

What are Plato, Socrates and a hundred other wise men in comparison! What will this Child achieve when he is an adult?" – And Cyrenius spoke: "Surely more than all our wise men including all our gods!"



## ***CHAPTER 56. – MARONIUS' HIGH OPINION OF THE INFANT AND CYRENIUS' CONTENTMENT WITH MARONIUS.***

**30 OCTOBER 1843**

01] After these miraculous words from the Infant, Cyrenius turned to the evermore paling Maronius and said to him:

02] "Maronius Pilla, what do you say to this Child? Have you ever seen or heard anything like it?

03] Is it not obviously more than our myth of Zeus, who was suckled by a she-goat on an island?

04] Or much more than the doubtful tradition of the founders of Rome, the foster children of a she-wolf?

05] Speak, what do you think? For that is why you accompany, so you should hear, see and learn something and then give me your opinion about it!"

06] Maronius Pilla pulled himself together as well as he could and spoke:

07] "High commander of Asia and Egypt, what should a poor wretch like me say here, where the wisest men on earth would fall silent and the wisdom of Apollo and Minerva will be hammered thin on the glowing anvil of Vulcan?

08] Here I can only say: The gods had the pleasure to put an all-wise God out of their midst on earth; and Egypt as the old soil most favoured by all gods, a land which does not know snow or ice, has to be the fatherland of this God of all Gods!"

09] And Cyrenius said while smiling a little: "You are not mistaken, in a way;

10] but see, you only seem to have erred in that you called this Child a child from the midst of all the gods!

11] For look, on both sides of me sit the father and mother of this Child and these are people like you and me!

12] How could a Godchild from the midst of the gods appear out of them?

13] Besides, the lofty inhabitants of Olympus would certainly have done the dirty to themselves, as the Child's superior wisdom would quickly finish them off!

14] Therefore I ask you to reconsider, otherwise you risk that all the gods attack you together for such a display and will put you alive before Minos, Aeacus and Rhadamanthys and then place you at the side of Tantalus!"

15] Maronius caught his breath and after a while he spoke: "Consular Imperial Highness! I believe the court of the three judges of the underworld has almost withered away, and, as it appears to me, the gods have also strongly cleaned out their Olympus!

16] If we could have wise men only, who surely did not derive their wisdom from puddles, we would soon learn to live without the advice of our gods!

17] Indeed, the words of this miraculous Child already mean more to me now than three Olympi full of freshly baked gods!"

18] And Cyrenius spoke: "Maronius! – If you say this in all sincerity, then all is forgiven you; but we will have to discuss it a bit further; but nothing more for now!"

**CHAPTER 57. – THE CLOSING OF THE BANQUET. THE INTERROGATION  
OF MARONIUS PILLA BY THE HOLY FAMILY THROUGH CYRENIUS.  
MARONIUS' ADMISSION OF HIS WHITE LIE.**

**31 OCTOBER 1843**

01] After finishing the meal, which never took more than two hours with Cyrenius, the commander and the centurions returned again to the town under strict orders not to pay any more tribute to him on this day.

02] When everybody had left, Cyrenius took Maronius to task cor ad coram.

03] He therefore questioned him in the presence of Joseph and Mary, who again carried the Infant in her arms:

04] "Maronius! When I interrogated you back in Tyre about Herod, you swore to me that you personally knew that honest carpenter Joseph from the region of Nazareth;

05] and also a certain Mary, whom this carpenter is supposed to have taken out of the temple as his wife, or merely into his care!

06] So, while we are sitting here enjoying ourselves with our host, give me a closer description of it!

07] For I have learned in recent days that this family is here in Egypt now and is a total different one than the one my

brother has handed over to me, which is still kept safely in my custody.

08] For in spite of your hideous association with Herod, you might have enough feeling for justice and human compassion to acknowledge that it would be absolutely cruel, to keep innocent people in prison, wherever they may be!

09] Therefore, give me a good description of this notorious couple, so that I can search for them here and can arrest them; for our laws of state strictly necessitate this!

10] I am entitled to demand this from you even more so, because you have admitted yourself to know this family personally and their proper seizure has to be in my greatest interest!"

11] Maronius caught his breath again and did not know what to say; because he had never seen Joseph or Mary before.

12] After a while he said with a very stammering voice:

13] "Consular Imperial Highness! I plead for your kindness and leniency but finally I have to admit and swear by Zeus and all other gods that I do not know the aforementioned Joseph and that certain Mary!

14] My confession in Tyre was only an unfounded excuse, in a conscious attempt to mislead you.

15] But now I am convinced that it is not possible to deceive you, likewise I have changed my will and I have told you the whole truth"

16] Here Cyrenius made a sign to Joseph, who wanted to say something, to be silent for now, and said to Maronius:

17] "I see, if that is how we stand here, I think it's necessary to review and discuss all this a little further; for only now I recognize in you a very dangerous enemy of the state! – So you are now answerable to me under oath to each of my questions!"

## ***CHAPTER 58. – MARONIUS PILLA'S DEFENCE AND GOOD DECISION. JOSEPH AS ARBITRATOR. CYRENIUS' NOBLE VERDICT.***

**2 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] Thereupon Maronius said to Cyrenius: "Consular Imperial Highness! How should I still be under suspicion of the state as a follower of Herod?
- 02] For I realize now, that this ruthless tyrant strives to hold absolute sway over Asia!
- 03] Should I assist him in this? – How could this be possible? – With a handful of people from Jerusalem, Herod couldn't do much more than target the children of the Jews!
- 04] And this atrocity caused him such a setback that he will surely refrain from a similar operation for good!
- 05] But I was only a tool of necessity and had to act according to the tyrant's will, because he threatened me with Rome!
- 06] Now that I know very clearly from you how matters stand, and having no power in my hands and not wanting it anymore,
- 07] I do not see how and in what way I could still be seen as a danger for the state?
- 08] Keep me with you as an eternal hostage of my loyalty to Rome, and you will make me happier than if you would appoint me again as the governor of Palestine and Judea!"
- 09] This utterance from Maronius appeared to be straightforward and without ambiguity.
- 10] Therefore Cyrenius spoke to him: "Well, my brother, I believe what you have said; for I now hear a lot of sincerity in your words!
- 11] But there is still one thing missing for confirmation of the truth of your words and that is the judgment of that wise man, which I had mentioned to you in Tyre.
- 12] And see, this man, this oracle of oracles stands here before us!
- 13] This man sees through you into your innermost thoughts; so let 's ask him now what he thinks of you!
- 14] And his verdict shall be done to you! If he suggests that you be restored as governor of Jerusalem, you will be reappointed still today;
- 15] but if, for very wise and good reasons, he does not, you will remain my hostage!"
- 16] Now the matter was put before Joseph, who said: "Most noble friend Cyrenius! From my perspective, Maronius is now purified and you can give him back his post without hesitation!
- 17] For we are all in the hands of the almighty, eternal God; what power can oppose us?"
- 18] Cyrenius raised his hand and spoke: "I swear to you, Maronius Pilla, by the living God of this wise man, that from now on you are restored as governor of Jerusalem!"
- 19] But Maronius said: "Give this office to someone else and keep me as your friend with you; for this would make me much happier!"
- 20] And Cyrenius spoke: "So be my associate in office, as long as Herod lives, and then only as high commander of the entire Jewish land!" – And Maronius gratefully accepted.

**CHAPTER 59. - JOSEPH'S QUESTION ABOUT HEROD. MARONIUS  
PILLA'S ANSWER. THE CROWN OF SUFFERING AND THE TERRIBLE END  
OF HEROD.**

**3 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Afterwards Joseph spoke to Maronius: "By the grace of my God and my Lord I have seen that there is no more ill will remaining in you,

02] so tell me your views on this, how Herod's heart is disposed to act against the children, whom he murdered because of the new King of the Jews?

03] Was it not softened by the innocent blood of the children, from the mothers' lamentations?

04] What would he do, if he would receive news that among those many massacred children, he had missed the right one?

05] When he would come to know that the right Child still lives safely somewhere in Judea or Palestine?"

06] Maronius looked baffled at Joseph and after a while he said:

07] "True and most wise man! I can say nothing but this:

08] If you would use your wisdom in the most unsavoury way and would demand ten thousand pounds of gold from Herod for revealing with certainty the right child to him;

09] indeed, you would receive this enormous amount of gold in advance!

10] For gold means nothing to this ruthless tyrant compared to his lust for power.

11] Although he has enough gold to build houses with it, he barely appreciates it; but if he could secure the throne he would throw all his gold into the sea and would kill a world full of people for it!

12] See, in the beginning he also wanted to bribe me with gold, diamonds, rubies and large pearls;

13] only my genuinely Roman patrician virtue kept the old bloodhound strictly at bay!

14] But this inflamed his anger even more and he threatened me with Rome on the basis of his supposed patriotism!

15] So then I had to do what he wanted as there was no way out for me; for he gave me a document by his own hand, according to which he himself would take up the entire responsibility vis-a-vis Rome.

16] For this reason I was forced to act as you surely know.

17] But you may rest assured that, to this hour, nothing good is to be expected from his heart!

18] I don't think I need to tell you more of this king all furies, this living head of Medusa, because you are a wise man!"

19] And Joseph spoke: "The one eternal God shall bless you for your words!

20] Believe me, you will see: God the eternal righteous One, will still on this earth put a crown on the head of this detestable man who is so bloodthirsty for it, and the whole world will be amazed!" -

21] Hereupon the Infant raised His hand high and spoke again very distinctly: "Herod,

Herod! – I have no curse for you, but you shall wear a crown in this world, which will become a great torment to you, and more painful than the burden of paying gold to Rome!"

22] At the time the Infant spoke these words in Egypt, Herod was covered with lice and his servants had their hands full with cleaning him from these lice, which kept on multiplying themselves, and this eventually led to his death. – –

**CHAPTER 60. – CYRENIUS' WRATH AT HEROD AND THE SOOTHING  
WORDS OF THE CHILD JESUS. THE CHILD'S QUESTION: "WHO HAS THE  
LONGEST ARM?"**

**4 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] When Cyrenius had heard all this from Maronius Pilla and the statements of Joseph and the Infant, he was positively appalled, and said:

02] "O you eternal powers of a most high ruler of infinity! Don't you have any lightning anymore to hurl on this monster of a vassal of Rome?

03] O Augustus Caesar, my good brother! – What fury has blinded your eyes at the time you entrusted this monster, this scumbag from the lowest Tartarus, from the true Orkus, with Palestine and Judea?

04] No, no, this is too much to bear! – Maronius! – Why didn't you say anything about this to me when Herod stood trial before me in Tyre?

05] By order of court martial I would have had his Medusa head cut off on the spot!

06] And for long a worthy vassal would be in the place of this monster from Greece!

07] But what can I do now? He has fulfilled his penance; I cannot impose another one on him, I cannot punish him further!

08] But behold, you old bloodhound, hyena of hyenas, you will be pursued in a manner all furies have never dreamed of!"

09] Maronius, Joseph and Mary trembled in front of Cyrenius' wrath; for they did not know what he intended to do.

10] Nobody dared to ask him a question now; because he was much too excited.

11] But the Infant was not afraid of Cyrenius' powerful voice, and looked him calmly in the face all the time.

12] And when Cyrenius' storm had somewhat subsided, the Infant spoke:

13] "O Cyrenius! Listen to Me! – Come to Me, take Me in your arms and carry Me outside into the open air, I will show you something there!"

14] These words were a balsam on the troubled heart of Cyrenius and he immediately went over to the Infant with open arms, and filled with love, he took Him tenderly and carried Him into the open air accompanied by Joseph, Mary and Maronius Pilla.

15] Out in the open the Child asked Cyrenius:

16] "Cyrenius, who has the longest arm, you or Me? Measure yours against Mine!"

17] Cyrenius was taken aback by this question and he did not know how to answer the Child; for obviously he saw that his arm was three times as long as both arms of the Child combined.

18] But the Child spoke again: "Cyrenius! Do you see that your arm is much longer than Mine?

19] But I say to you that my arm is much longer than yours!

20] Do you see a high pillar adorned with an idol there in the far distance?

21] Reach out with your arm, tear it down and crush it with your fingers!"

22] Cyrenius, even more baffled now, spoke after a short pause: "O my Child, my Life, that is surely only possible for God!"

23] The Child stretched out His arm towards the pillar which was a good thousand paces away, and the pillar crashed down and quickly turned into dust

24] Thereupon the Infant spoke: "So do not worry in vain about Herod; for My arm reaches much further than yours! Herod has his reward; but you must forgive him as I have forgiven him. It is better for you, because he too is a blind son of the earth!" These words took away all of Cyrenius' anger and he secretly began to worship the Child in all seriousness. —

**CHAPTER 61. – MARONIUS PILLA'S SHOCK AND JOSEPH'S QUESTION.  
MARONIUS' PAGAN CONFESSION. JOSEPH'S SIMPLE EXPLANATION.  
CYRENIUS' WARNING TO BE CAREFUL**

**6 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Maronius Pilla was so shocked at this marvellous phenomenon, that he trembled all over his body like the leaves of an aspen tree in a big storm.

02] But Joseph saw Maronius' great distress, stepped to his side and said:

03] "Maronius Pilla! Why are you trembling so much? Has anyone hurt you?"

04] And Maronius replied to Joseph: "O man, for you who are unequalled in this world it is easy, for you are a God whom all the elements must obey!

05] But I am only a weak mortal human, whose life is in your hands, just like that pillar!

06] You can destroy me and the whole world instantaneously with your thoughts!

07] How could I not tremble in front of you, since you are surely the mighty ancient father of all our gods, if they really exist somewhere?

08] That pillar was already dedicated to Jupiter Stator since time immemorial; all storms and strikes of lightning withdraw from it in great awe!

09] And now even your underage Child has destroyed it! – But if your Child is capable of this, what powers must exist in you?

10] Let yourself be worshiped by me, a most unworthy earthworm!"

11] But Joseph spoke: Listen friend and brother Maronius, you are highly mistaken here!

12] I am no more than you, and just a mortal being myself! – If you can be silent on your life in front of the world, I would like to tell you something!

13] But if you cannot be silent, you will endure the same as that pillar!

14] And so, if you want and if you dare to, listen to me now!"

15] But Maronius pleaded to Joseph on his knees not to tell him anything, for he could let a word slip accidentally and would then be lost.

16] But Joseph spoke: "Do not worry, the Lord of heaven and earth never punishes anybody through a mischance!

17] Therefore you may listen to me without fear; what I will say to you will not harm you but save you eternally!"

18] And Cyrenius, who worshiped the Child and still caressed it in his hands, turned to Joseph and said:

19] "My best and dearest friend! Let Maronius be as he is now; I will prepare him myself today and tomorrow you can give him the higher initiation!"

20] To this Joseph agreed and he returned to the house along with the others.



**CHAPTER 62. - CYRENIUS AND JOSEPH IN A LOVING COMPETITION  
ABOUT THE WELFARE OF A HUMAN SOUL. JOSEPH'S WORDS ON  
HUMAN AND BROTHERLY LOVE. WHY A HUMAN BEING HAS TWO  
EYES, TWO EARS BUT ONLY ONE MOUTH.**

**7 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] In the evening Cyrenius spoke to Joseph: My friend, my divine brother! I am so sorry, that I cannot stay overnight with you!

02] And how sorry I am, that I have to dedicate half of the day tomorrow to take care of some state affairs!

03] But at around three in the afternoon I will come back to you together with Maronius, and after my ordinary initiation, you shall give him the holy higher one!

04] Because you see, I am very concerned that this otherwise very knowledgeable man will be saved by the holy teachings of your God, which I consider the only true and living one!"

05] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, lofty friend, that is only fair and proper, as nothing is more pleasing to the Lord than that we treat our enemies with love and care for their temporal as well as their eternal well being!

06] If we consider each sinner as an errant brother, then we shall also be considered by God as his ignorant children,

07] but otherwise only as malicious creatures, who will always be subjected to his judgments and shall die like ephemerids!

08] For look, therefore the Lord has given us two eyes and only one mouth, so that we shall look at everyone with one eye as human beings but with the other one as brothers!

09] If human beings are failing before us, we should keep the brother eye open and close the human eye;

10] but if brothers are failing before us, we should close the brother eye and direct the human eye to ourselves, and should look at ourselves as failing human beings, even against our failing brothers.

11] But with the one mouth we should altogether profess one God, one Lord and one Father, so that He will accept us as His children!

12] Because God has also two eyes and one mouth; with the one eye he looks at His creatures and with the other one at His children!

13] When we look at each other with the brother eye, our Father looks at us with the Father eye;

14] but if we look at others with the human eye, God looks at us only with the Creator eye and His only mouth announces His love to His children but His judgment to His creatures!

15] Therefore it is only fair and proper that we care for our brother Maronius!"

16] Here Joseph blessed Cyrenius and Maronius; both of them went to the city with their entourage, – and Joseph took care of his household.

**CHAPTER 63. - JAMES ACTING AS A NURSEMAID AT THE CRADLE OF  
THE INFANT; HIS CURIOSITY AND HIS REPRIMAND BY THE CHILD.  
JAMES' FOREBODING ABOUT THE INFANT'S INNER BEING.**

**8 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] In the evening Mary put the tired Infant into the cradle which Joseph had made when they came to Ostracine.
- 02] As usual, Joseph's youngest son acted as nursemaid, and rocked the Infant to sleep.
- 03] And Mary went into the kitchen, to prepare the evening meal.
- 04] Joseph's son hoped that the Infant would soon fall asleep, because he wanted to join his brothers in watching the lighting of a triumphal arch, not far from the villa, that had been built in honour of Cyrenius.
- 05] He rocked the Child diligently and sang and whistled while doing so.
- 06] But the Infant did not seem to fall asleep. When he stopped the rocking, the Child immediately started to move about, indicating to the brother that He was not asleep yet.
- 07] This sent James almost into despair, because outside it was brightening up already with all the burning torches.
- 08] He therefore decided to leave the Child alone for a little while, even when He was not yet asleep, in order to have a look at the spectacle.
- 09] But when James raised himself, the Infant spoke: "James, if you leave Me now, you will fare badly!
- 10] Am I not worth more than this silly spectacle outside and your vain curiosity?
- 11] Look, all the stars and angels are in envy of the service you do to me, and you have no patience with Me and want to leave Me? –
- 12] Truly, if you do that you are not worth to be My brother!
- 13] Just go, if the spectacle of the world is dearer to you than!
- 14] See, the whole room is full of angels, ready to serve Me, if your small and easy task is too much of a burden for you!"
- 15] This speech took away James' desire to leave the room in an instant;
- 16] so he remained beside the cradle, asked the Infant for forgiveness and continued to rock Him diligently.
- 17] And the Infant spoke to James: "Everything is forgiven you; but do not get tempted by the world another time!
- 18] For I am more than the world, all heavens and all men and angels!"
- 19] These words shocked James to the core; for he gradually became aware Who was there within the Child.
- 20] Now Mary and Joseph and all the others came into the room and set down at the table; and James promptly told them what happened to him.

***CHAPTER 64. - JOSEPH'S SPEECH ABOUT THE LOVE FOR GOD AND  
THE LOVE FOR THE WORLD. HIS REFERENCES TO DAVID, SOLOMON  
AND CYRENIUS. THE STRONG EMOTIONS OF JOSEPH'S SONS AND THE  
BLESSING BY THE INFANT JESUS.***

***9 NOVEMBER 1843***

01] When James had finished his narration, Joseph spoke to James:

02] "Yes, so it is and has always been now and will always be; one must love God more, even in the smallest thing, then all the splendours of the world!

03] For what can all the glaring splendours of the world give to a man?

04] David himself had to flee before his own son and Solomon had to experience the bitter disgrace of the Lord, because he was too much attached to the splendours of the world!

05] But with every second, God gives us a new life; how should we not love Him in the smallest thing more than all the world, which is transitory and full of rubbish and waste!

06] And among us we are all convinced that our Infant is a gift from above and is called the Son of God.

07] Hence it is not a small part of God and therefore it is fair, that we love Him more than all the world!

08] Look at the pagan Cyrenius! – It is not because of us that he treats us the way he does, but because of the Infant; for according to his concepts, his heart tells him that a highest entity of God is in close connection with our Child, and therefore he fears and loves Him.

09] If such is done by a pagan, how much more should we be doing, knowing fully well where this Child came from and who is His father. –

10] Therefore our whole attention should be focussed on this Child continuously; for the Child is more than we and all the world!

11] Take me as an example and see how many sacrifices I, an old man, have already made for this Child of God!

12] But I made these with ease and with great love, because I love God more than all the world!

13] Have we ever lost anything by that? – O no! We still have gained after every sacrifice!

14] Therefore all of you should think and do the same and you will never lose anything, but only gain greatly all the time!

15] And this Child is of such a tender nature, that it is a true joy to be with Him!

16] Only very rarely does He cry! He is never sick and when you tease Him he looks around so lively and happy and all the time smiles to everyone so warmly, that one is moved to tears by it.

17] And now that He has suddenly started to speak so marvellously, one would just like to squeeze Him out of love!

18] Therefore, my children, consider well who this Infant is and nurse Him with the utmost care!

19] For otherwise He could punish you accordingly, in case you would value Him, our

highest treasure, less than all those empty follies of the world!"

20] This speech made all the five sons cry and all stood up from the table and surrounded the cradle of the Child.

21] But the Child looked at His brothers very tenderly, blessed them all and spoke: "O brothers, become like Me if you want eternal happiness!" – And the brothers cried and did not eat that night.

**CHAPTER 65. - JOSEPH CALLS FOR PEACE AT NIGHT. THE CHILD'S  
WAKE- UP CALL BECAUSE OF AN APPROACHING STORM. THE  
OUTBREAK OF THE STORM. THE ARRIVAL OF THE FLEEING CYRENIUS.**

**10 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Joseph's sons did not want to leave the cradle anymore; for they had completely fallen in love with their little divine Brother!

02] But since it had become rather late, Joseph said to his sons:

03] "You have now sufficiently shown that you love the Infant!

04] It is late in the night and tomorrow morning will be an early day, so, in the name of the Lord, go to sleep now!

05] The Child is asleep now, so put the cradle carefully near the mother's bed and go to your bedroom!"

06] Joseph had hardly uttered these words when the Infant opened His eyes and spoke:

07] "You should all stay here tonight and reserve the bedroom for some foreigners who will come here later to take shelter,

08] because a heavy storm will strike this region soon, the like of which has never been seen here before!

09] But none of you should be afraid, for not a hair on anyone's head will be touched!

10] Do not lock the doors, so that the refugees may come in the house!"

11] This prediction of the Child frightened Joseph, and he ran outside immediately to check from where the thunderstorm would come.

12] But as he stood outside, he did not see a single cloud; the sky was clear and no wind was stirring.

13] A deathly silence descended over the whole region and there was no single sign of an approaching storm.

14] Therefore Joseph immediately returned, praised the Lord and said:

15] "The Infant must have dreamed something, for there is no sign of any storm!

16] The sky is clear on all sides and no wind is stirring. From where should a storm then come?!"

17] Joseph had hardly spoken these words, when there was a sound like a thousand thunders; the earth shook so violently that several houses and temples in the city collapsed.

18] Soon afterwards a tremendous storm started to rage, driving the waves of the nearby sea into the city; and all the people, awoken by its violence, ran outside to higher ground outside the town.

19] And Cyrenius himself, together with Maronius and his whole entourage, came fleeing to Joseph in the villa and told him briefly about the horrible scenes which the earthquake and the storm had effected.

20] But Joseph calmed him down by telling him right away what the Infant had said to them earlier. – Cyrenius started to breath more easily, and the roaring of the storm did not frighten him anymore; for he felt safe and secure.

**CHAPTER 66. – THE RAGING STORM. THE SLEEPING CHILD. CYRENIUS' CONCERN. THE INFANT: "STORMS ARE NECESSARY...". A GOSPEL OF NATURE AND THE FAITH IN GOD.**

01] When Cyrenius had collected himself, he went to the cradle and looked at the Child, his breast filled with great thoughts.

02] But the Child slept peacefully and was not in the least affected by the terrible raging of the storm.

03] But a while later the storm was tearing so violently at the building that Cyrenius was afraid it would collapse.

04] Therefore he spoke to Joseph: "Exalted friend! Due to the increasing strength of the storm, I think we should leave this building!

05] For a powerful whirlwind can easily seize even this solid building and bury us beneath the rubble!

06] Let us therefore escape early, because we cannot be sure that something similar will be happening here as happened in the city!

07] Hereupon the Child suddenly opened His heavenly, divine eyes, instantly recognised Cyrenius, and spoke very clearly to him:

08] "Cyrenius! – When you are with Me, you do not have to be afraid of the storm;

09] for the storms as well the whole world are in the hands of God!

10] The storms are necessary and have to chase away the evil of hell incarnate!

11] But those who are around Me cannot be touched by it; for even the storms know their master and do not work without purpose!

12] For the One, who is full of love, wisdom and power holds their reins in His hand.

13] Therefore be without fear here with Me, My friend Cyrenius, and rest assured that not even a hair on anyone's head will be touched!

14] For these storms know exactly who is at home here.

15] Look, just this evening people have accorded fiery honours to you, who are only a human being after all!

16] But here the storms are honouring somebody who is more than just a human being! – Do you think that is unfair?

17] Look, this is a song of praise from nature, honouring its Lord and Creator! Is that not fair?

18] O Cyrenius, the air that blows at you, also understands the One who created it, that is why it can praise Him!"

19] These words of the Infant, who soon fell asleep again, made all of them silent and Cyrenius bowed down at the cradle and secretly worshiped the Child.

**CHAPTER 67. - THE TERRIBLE MESSAGE OF THE SPECIAL  
MESSENGERS. THE BLOODY DEMAND OF THE PAGAN PRIESTS.  
CYRENIUS DIVIDED BETWEEN HEART AND WORLD. THE INFANT'S  
ADVICE.**

**13 OCTOBER 1843**

- 01] The next hour was a bit more calm and no one seemed to be too concerned anymore about the raging and raving of the storm outside.
- 02] But after another hour, special messengers came to Joseph's house to see Cyrenius and told him:
- 03] "High and noble man! Unbelievable things are happening:
- 04] Fire is erupting from the earth at several places;
- 05] the hurricane is driving flying pillars of fire back and forth, destroying everything in their path!
- 06] Nothing is too solid or strong enough to withstand its terrible power!
- 07] The priests have said: All the gods together have become enraged and want to destroy us all!
- 08] And so it is, for one can hear the distinct barking of Cerberus and the furies are dancing all over the place! Vulcan has pointed his funnels to the upper world!
- 09] Its powerful Cyclops are purposely smashing the houses and mountains!
- 10] And Neptune has united all his powers into one!
- 11] He raises the sea just like mountains and wants to drown us all!
- 12] Unless large human sacrifices are instantly offered to the enraged gods, we will all be finished!
- 13] A thousand youths and a thousand virgins have been chosen by the priests as a sacrifice; and we have been sent to you in a hurry to receive your authorization!"
- 14] This message terrified Cyrenius and he did not know what to do now.
- 15] For state political reasons, he did not dare oppose the priests' call,
- 16] but to sanction the sacrifice was even more impossible to his heart than to contradict the priests.
- 17] He therefore turned to the Infant, who had just awakened and he asked Him for advice in this dreadful matter.
- 18] And the Infant spoke: "Be calm! For in a minute the storm will be over and those who wanted to slaughter people will be no more! Therefore be calm, my Cyrenius!"

**CHAPTER 68. - CYRENIUS' ANSWER TO THE MESSENGERS. THE  
THREE BLOODTHIRSTY ARE BENT ON A SACRIFICE. CYRENIUS' WISE  
DECISION. THE TORMENT OF THE TWO THOUSAND VICTIMS.**

**14 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Meanwhile, the special messengers were still waiting for Cyrenius to sanction the sacrifice.

02] But Cyrenius arose from the cradle and spoke to the messengers:

03] "Go to the priests and get me the list of those youths and virgins chosen for the sacrifice,

04] for I have to be sure, that the choice is just!"

05] The special messengers ran off while the storm had completely settled down.

06] Upon arrival in the city, they were terrified to see that the house of the priests had been turned into a huge pile of

rubble, under which with the exception of three lesser priests, all higher priests had been buried.

07] They therefore quickly returned to Cyrenius and told him what had happened to the priests.

08] And Cyrenius, although now convinced about the correctness of the Child's statement, did not know what to do and wanted to ask the Child for advice again.

09] But at this moment the three remaining lesser priests appeared;

10] and they hurriedly asked what should be done, as a new earthquake had buried all the pious servants of the gods in their palace, while they were ready for the great sacrifice.

11] "The thousand youths and the thousand virgins were ready for the sacrifice exactly at the place where Jupiter's pillar stood, which was now completely destroyed!

12] Shall the sacrifice be done now or at the rising of the sun!?

13] Under no circumstances can it be cancelled because then the gods will surely get even more angry because of the ingratitude and treachery of men!"

14] And Cyrenius responded to the three lesser priests:

15] "Under no circumstances should the sacrifice be made today, and tomorrow morning not before I myself give the order for it under penalty of death!"

16] After that the three lesser priests left Cyrenius and went to the place where the poor victims cried and moaned in fear

of torture and death, and raised their hands to the gods, begging them to be spared.

17] Cyrenius could hardly wait for the next morning to come; for he felt sorry for the terrified victims having to endure such a horrible night! --



**CHAPTER 69. – THE FEARFUL NIGHT OF THE YOUNG HUMAN VICTIMS.  
THE THREE FIENDISH SERVANTS OF GOD. AN OUTRAGED CYRENIUS  
BRINGS IN HIS VERDICT: FREEDOM TO THE VICTIMS, DEATH TO THE  
THREE PRIESTS!**

**15 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] When the three lesser priests arrived at the place of sacrifice, they immediately announced to the guardians as well as to the poor young victims, that the predestined and irrevocable sacrifice would take place only on the next morning and would be absolutely final because the eminent Cyrenius himself had given the order.

02] The effect that this message had on the two thousand victims does not need further description for those who know from historical tradition how such victims were tortured and killed in different ways to appease the various gods.

03] (For some people, it would be too much of a shock to hear of the thousand different methods of torture; therefore we want to ignore them.)

04] But for that we want to visit the place of sacrifice in the early morning together with Cyrenius, Maronius and Joseph, and have a look around! –)

05] Very early the next morning, in bright and clear weather, the three aforementioned men went to the place of sacrifice.

06] Still far away, Cyrenius was embittered to hear the terrible outcries of the youths to be sacrificed.

07] He hurried forward to bring this scene of horror to an end as soon as possible.

08] When he reached the site he was appalled by the three lesser priests' inhumanity, as they eagerly awaited Cyrenius' order to commence the slaughter.

09] Cyrenius immediately called the three priests and asked them: "Tell me, are you not feeling sorry for these marvellous youths when they are going to be murdered in the most brutal way? – Don't you have any compassion in yourself?"

10] And the priests spoke: "Where the gods feel, there is no place for human feelings!

11] For the gods, the life of men is nothing – and often only an abomination. We, as their servants on earth, are tuned to feel just like them, so there can be no mercy within us,

12] but rather joy and ecstasy when we are able to serve the gods punctually!

13] So we happily look forward to the slaughter of these sacrifices, even rarely demanded by the gods!"

14] This declaration was such a powerful blow to Cyrenius' heart, that he started to tremble from the anger he felt at these priests.

15] But he collected himself and spoke to the priests: "Now what if Zeus himself would be here and offer these victims their life back? – What would you do?"

16] And the priests replied: "Then the sacrifice would have to be carried out even more determinedly, because this would only be a test of our priest servant's zeal!

17] If we would have mercy on the chosen victims, Zeus would regard us as evil-doers and destroy us with lightning and thunder!"

18] But Cyrenius asked the priests further: "What then have these other high priests done

before the gods, that they have been so cruelly killed in their palace?

19] And the priests replied: "Do you not know then that an inexorable Destiny reigns beyond all gods and their priests?!"

20] That is why the priests have been killed, as the gods were excited before that; it cannot kill the gods, but only the here and there still mortal priests!"

21] "All right", said Cyrenius, "today, after midnight, Fate came to me and gave me the order to spare the life of all the youths and to sacrifice you for them instead, as certain as my name is Cyrenius and my brother Julius Augustus Caesar rules as the highest consul and emperor in Rome! – What do you have to say to that?!"

22] This terrible message caused the priests to turn pale with fright and brought the other victims back to their senses. – Cyrenius promptly proclaimed the freedom of all the victims, and had the priests tied up and prepared for execution. –

## ***CHAPTER 70. - JOSEPH'S ATTEMPT AT MITIGATION. CYRENIUS' WRATH AT THE THREE CONDEMNED PRIESTS. THE PLEA FOR MERCY BY THE CONDEMNED.***

**16 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Joseph now went over to Cyrenius and asked him: "Most respected, beloved friend! Are you absolutely serious about killing these three idolatrous priests?"

02] And Cyrenius, full of anger at these three heartless human tigers, spoke to Joseph:

03] "Yes, my exalted friend! I want to set an example here, so that all people realize that there is nothing more I punish more severely than complete lovelessness!

04] For a man without love and compassion is the greatest evil on earth.

05] All rapacious animals are like lambs to him, and the furies of hell are hardly poor students compared to him!

06] Therefore it is the first and highest duty of a true ruler of the people to eradicate monsters like this from the face of the earth!

07] Priests should teach the people about love; they should set a good example for everyone!

08] When these principal teachers and leaders turn into furies, what will become of their pupils?

09] Therefore away with such beasts! – I am now only considering the most agonising kind of death; once I have decided, the staff shall be broken over them immediately!"

10] Joseph did not dare to argue with Cyrenius any more, for too serious and too powerful were the words he had spoken.

11] After a while the priests fell down in front of Cyrenius and begged for mercy, assuring that they would change their lives and even be ready to lay down their priesthood.

12] To obtain clemency they appealed to the law of the priests, which had prompted them to act like this and not otherwise.

13] But Cyrenius spoke: "Do you villains think I do not know the laws of the priests?!

14] Listen, the special law of sacrifice states: 'When people have apparently been unfaithful to the gods because of their excesses, and the gods strike them with war, hunger and plague, then the priests should urge them to mend their ways.

15] If the people take this to heart, the priests should bless them and, to reconcile with the gods, oblige them to bring a certain amount of gold, livestock and grain before the priests, who will then make a smoke offering with it!

16] Should the people be persistent and stubborn, which would mock the priests, they should get hold of them with their children, lock them up in underground chambers and teach them discipline and order for seven months!

17] If the blasphemers repent, they shall be freed and can go; if not, they shall be killed by the sword – and then be put into the fire to atone the gods!

18] Is this not the old and wise law of sacrifice? – Was there war, hunger and plague here? – Were these beautiful youths unfaithful to the gods? Did you teach them for seven months? – No!!! – Only your craving for honour and lust made you want to

kill them; and therefore you have to die as the greatest blasphemers against your own laws!" – -

**CHAPTER 71. - JOSEPH'S GENTLE OBJECTION TO CYRENIUS  
REFERRING TO THE COURT OF THE LORD. CYRENIUS' YIELDING. THE  
APPARENT SENTENCE TO DIE ON THE CROSS FOR THE THREE PRIESTS,  
AS A MEANS OF CORRECTING THEIR LIFE.**

**17 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] After this statement of Cyrenius, Joseph again went over to him and spoke:
- 02] "Cyrenius, my noble friend and brother! – I believe you should leave the punishment of these three, apparently malicious, idolatrous priest, to the Lord;
- 03] for believe me, no one does a good service to the Lord and the almighty God of heaven and earth, by killing even the greatest of miscreants!
- 04] So leave the just punishment of these three safely to the Almighty, and the Lord will bless you by the penalty which he will surely impose on them, if they do not repent and make a complete about face!
- 05] If they show true remorse and convert to the only true God, they still can become noble human beings!"
- 06] These words from Joseph caused Cyrenius to think about what he should really do.
- 07] After a while he decided to at least expose the three to a strong fear of death as a reprisal for the fear they had instilled in the poor youths.
- 08] Therefore he spoke to Joseph: "My dearest and most exalted friend and brother! I have considered your advice well and I will follow it!
- 09] But right now I cannot do it like that! – I must break the threatened staff over these three and sentence them to a most torturous death!
- 10] After they will have suffered the fear of death for twenty-four hours, you can ask me to spare them and cancel the death penalty in a loud voice and in front of all the people;
- 11] and I will evidently respond to your plea and will grant these three villains their life!
- 12] I think this is the right thing to do, for look, I cannot pardon them immediately, because I recognized them as offenders against the law of the priests!
- 13] According to the law, they must be given the death sentence; after this has been done, they can be pardoned rather than executed.
- 14] So let me act on this immediately!"
- 15] Joseph accepted this and Cyrenius called the judges, the lictors and the bailiffs and spoke:
- 16] "Bring me three iron crosses and chains; fix the crosses into the ground and make a fire around the crosses for twenty-four hours!
- 17] When they have reached the right red-hot temperature, I will come and shall have the three blasphemers mounted on the burning crosses! – Fiat."
- 18] Then Cyrenius took a staff, broke it and threw it under the feet of the three and spoke:
- 19] "Now you have heard your sentences! Therefore prepare yourselves; for you deserve such a death! Fiat."
- 20] This sentence hit the three like a thousand strikes of lightning and they started to howl

and moan and called on all gods for help.

21] Then they were put under guard and the bailiffs went straight to the jail and fetched the tools of torture. But Cyrenius, Joseph and Maronius went straight home after this.

***CHAPTER 72. - MARY'S DOUBTS ABOUT THE OMNIPOTENCE OF THE CHILD JESUS. JOSEPH'S REASSURING NARRATION. WHY THE MIGHTY LION OF JUDEA FLED FROM HEROD. THE BLISS OF THE MURDERED CHILDREN. PILLA'S MATURITY.***

***18 NOVEMBER 1843***

01] When Cyrenius, Joseph and Maronius Pilla were approaching the villa, Mary, who carried the Child on her arms, came to meet the three very anxiously and quickly asked Joseph:

02] "Joseph, my dearest husband! O tell me what happened to these youths!

03] For when sacrifices of this kind always take place during such elemental storms that occur frequently, then we too are not safe with our Child!

04] He might have great powers, but in spite of that we still had to flee from Herod out of Palestine!

05] I have come to the following conclusion: in certain cases the Child does not yet have enough power; therefore it is up to us to protect Him from all great dangers!"

06] And Joseph spoke to Mary: "My dear wife, entrusted and married to me by the Lord himself, do not fear!

07] For look, not one hair on the heads of the youths, destined for this shameful sacrifice, has been touched!

08] Our dear Cyrenius has given them their freedom immediately, and instead, condemned the three priests, who came here yesterday and who requested Cyrenius' approval for the slaughter, to the most painful death on the burning cross!

09] But, between you and me, this is only how it appears! – For tomorrow morning, they will be pardoned instead of receiving the death sentence!

10] And this lesson will make sure that they will never propose a similar idolatrous sacrifice again!

11] Therefore my beloved wife, do not worry, just consider: the Lord who has led us safely so far will neither hand us over to the power of the pagans in the future!"

12] After these words from Joseph, Mary was entirely at ease again and her face brightened up.

13] And the Infant smiled into His mother's face and spoke to her:

14] "Mary! – If someone had tamed a lion and was carried around by it like a gentle beast of burden,

15] do you think it would be sensible to fear the elusive rabbit while on the mighty back of the lion?"

16] Mary was astonished about the deep wisdom of these words, but did not understand them.

17] So the Infant spoke again to Mary, and that with a very serious face:

18] "I am the mighty lion of Judea who carries you on his back; then how can you fear those who I can blow away with one breath like loose chaff?

19] Do you really think I have fled from Herod, to save Myself from his wrath?

20] O no! – I only fled because I wanted to spare him; for had he seen My face, he would have been finished forever! –

21] See, the children who were slaughtered for Me, are already happily inside My Kingdom – and are around me daily and praise Me and recognize the Lord in Me completely and eternally!

22] See Mary, that is how it is! Therefore you should be silent about Me as you were told; but you should know for yourself, Who He is, whom you shall call the 'Son of God' and whom you have already called like that!"

23] These words shook Mary to the core; for she now fully realized that she was carrying the Lord in Her arms!

24] But Maronius, who stood behind Mary, had also heard the Child's words, and he fell down before Him.

25] Only now Cyrenius spotted Mary; for up to now he was engaged in a conversation with one of his secretaries.

26] He now quickly rushed to the Child and greeted and caressed Him. And the Infant did the same and said: "Cyrenius!

Raise up Maronius, for he has received enough treatment; he may recognise Me now! – Do you understand what I am saying?!"



## ***CHAPTER 73. – CYRENIUS' DECREE: CANCELLATION OF THE MILITARY EXERCISES. DEPARTURE FOR THE CITY AND THE CHILD JESUS' PLEA IN FAVOUR OF THE CONVICTED THREE.***

**20 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] When the entourage had arrived at the villa, Cyrenius immediately sent an adjutant to the commander of the city and gave him the order that today and the following day, no parades or marches should take place.
- 02] For such was the Roman custom at special occasions, that during certain manifestations, such as a lunar or solar eclipse, a strong thunderstorm,
- 03] fiery meteors, comets, the sudden appearance of an insane person, an epileptic seizure,
- 04] as well as special days of execution – the custom of the Romans ordained that no matters of state were to be conducted at the same time.
- 05] Because the Romans, who were otherwise quite down to earth, considered such days as days of misfortune or special days of the gods, which the people had to respect and not use for their own private affairs.
- 06] Although Cyrenius' did not care much about such hollow custom, he nevertheless had to respect it because of the people, who still firmly adhered to such follies.
- 07] When the adjutant had left, Cyrenius spoke to Joseph: "Most noble brother and friend! Let a breakfast be prepared! – After breakfast we will all go to the city together and see what damage the storm has done there!
- 08] On this occasion we will surely meet the poor and unfortunate inhabitants of this place, and we can try to help them in any possible way.
- 09] Then we will visit the harbour and see how the situation looks with the ships, and assess if and how they are damaged.
- 10] There will be a lot of work for your sons and I will appoint them immediately as the chief contractors, as there is a particular lack of builders in this town.
- 11] For in terms of architecture, Egypt is now far from what it was a thousand years ago, at the times of the old pharaohs."
- 12] Joseph promptly complied with Cyrenius' request and a simple breakfast was prepared, consisting of bread, honey, milk and some fruits.
- 13] After the meal Cyrenius and his table companions arose and wanted to go to the city according to his plans;
- 14] but the Infant called Cyrenius to Him and spoke: "My Cyrenius! You are moving to the city to help the ailing people and your greatest wish is that I can be with you!
- 15] Yes, I want to go with you, but you have to listen to Me and follow My advice!
- 16] Look, those who suffer the most are probably those three who are condemned to twenty-four hours of fear of death!
- 17] And added to that! – I do not enjoy the great pain of those wretched ones; therefore we go there first and help these unfortunate ones! Only after that we will visit the less unfortunate ones in the city and in the harbour!
- 18] If you do this, I will come with you; if not I will stay at home! – For look, I am also a

Master in My own way and can do what I want, without relying on you! But if you follow My advice, I will surely remain with you!

**CHAPTER 74. - CYRENIUS AT THE CROSSROADS. THE INFANT'S  
ADVICE. MARONIUS AS EXPERT ON ROMAN LAW. THE PARDON FOR  
THE THREE PRIESTS AT THE PLACE OF SACRIFICE, THEIR DEATH FROM  
JOY AND THEIR REAWAKENING THROUGH THE CHILD JESUS.**

**21 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] When Cyrenius had heard all this from the for him highest 'cradle Orator' as he sometimes called Him, he was taken aback and did not know anymore what he should do now.
- 02] For on the one hand he felt himself too exposed as a fickle general and governor in front of the people,
- 03] but at the same time he had too much respect for the proven power of the Child!
- 04] For a moment his thoughts went back and forth and after a while he spoke as if to himself:
- 05] "O Scylla, o Charybdis, o myth of Hercules at the crossroads!
- 06] Here stands a hero between two abysses; if he avoids one he inevitably falls in the other!
- 07] What shall I do now? – Where should I turn? – Should I appear irresolute in front of the people and act according to the will of this powerful Child?
- 08] Or should I act according to my own anyhow very mild decision?"
- 09] Here the Infant called Cyrenius and spoke smilingly: "My dear friend, you are stirring hollow eggs and hollow nuts together!
- 10] What is Scylla, what is Charybdis and what is the hero Hercules before Me? – Follow Me, and you will not have anything to do with all these trivialities!"
- 11] And Cyrenius, recovering from his fickleness, spoke to the Infant:
- 12] "Yes, my Life, my little Socrates, Plato and Aristotle in the cradle! – It is You I want to please, come what may!
- 13] Let us go to the place of sacrifice and convert our sentence into mercy!
- 14] Now Maronius also approached Cyrenius and said very gently:
- 15] "Imperial Consular Highness! – I completely agree with the Infant's advice; for just now I remembered that in priestly matters, the death penalty may never be imposed upon the priests without the consent of the Pontifex Maximus in Rome,
- 16] unless they are agitators against the state, which these here are not, but just blind fanatics for their cause!
- 17] Therefore I highly approve of the Infant's advice; following this advice can only benefit you, but never harm you!"
- 18] Cyrenius was pleased with this remark of Maronius and he set off immediately with the entire predetermined group of people.
- 19] Upon arrival at the place of sacrifice, he found the three priests almost lifeless, out of fear for a most torturous death.
- 20] Only one of them still had so much presence of mind that he struggled to his feet

before Cyrenius and pleaded to him for a more merciful death.

21] But Cyrenius spoke to him and the two others: "Look at the Child, whom this mother is carrying in her arms, He will give you back your life! And thus I also give it back to you, and annul the verdict!

22] Therefore rise and be free! Fiat! – And all of you, guards, judges, lictors and bailiffs, leave! Fiat!"

23] This declaration of mercy caused the death of the three priests, but the Infant held his hand over the three and they awoke back to life again, and cheerfully followed their little saviour! –

**CHAPTER 75. – THE TOUR OF THE CITY AFTER THE STORM. THE  
POSITIVE IMPACT OF THE HURRICANE. CYRENIUS' FOOLISH INTENTION  
TO THROW AWAY HIS SWORD. THE HOLY CHILD'S WISE WORDS ABOUT  
THE SWORD AS A SHEPHERD'S STAFF.**

**22 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Now the entire company quickly moved away from the place of sacrifice, and went into the city, accompanied by the three pardoned priests.

02] When the crowd arrived in the city's great square, and stood in front of the huge pile of rubble of the great temple and of the still greater palace of the priests,

03] Cyrenius threw his hands up above his head and spoke with a loud voice:

04] "How different it looks now! – Yes, only the power of God can bring this about!

05] It does not take much time, only a nod of the Omnipotence is sufficient to turn the whole earth into dust!

06] O people! – Do you want to fight with the One who rules over the elements and follow His nod?

07] Do you want to be judges where the Omnipotence of God commands, and rule, where a little nod of the eternal ruler demolishes you?

08] No, no! – I am a fool, that I still carry my girded sword, as if have any power!

09] Away with you, you useless thing! There in this rubble heap is the best place for you! – You shall be my true sword instead! You! – whom the mother carries in her arms!" – –

10] Now Cyrenius suddenly loosened his sword and his belt of honour from his body and appeared determined to throw them into the rubble heap.

11] But the Infant, present at his side in Mary's arms, spoke to him:

12] "Cyrenius! Do not do, what you intend to do, for indeed, he who carries the sword like you carries it justly!

13] He who uses the sword as a weapon should throw it away from him;

14] but he who uses it as a shepherd's staff, shall keep it; for then it is the will of Him, whom heaven and earth must obey eternally!

15] You are a shepherd for those who are written in the book of your sword;

16] therefore gird yourself again with just honour, so that your people recognize you as their shepherd!

17] If your herd would consist of pure lambs, you would not require a staff!

18] But there are many rams among them; therefore I would rather give you yet another staff than take that one from you!

19] That is the truth! Besides God there is no power; but when God entrusts you with power, then you should not throw away from you what is under God's judgment!"

20] After these words, Cyrenius immediately girded his sword again in silent adoration of the Child. – But the three priests were completely taken aback by the wisdom of the Child!

## ***CHAPTER 76. – THE ASTONISHMENT OF THE THREE PRIESTS ABOUT THE WISDOM OF THE CHILD AND OF JOSEPH. JOSEPH'S MYTHOLOGY OF THE GODS.***

**24 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] The three priests approached Joseph with the greatest respect, and asked him how this Child had come to such a marvellous wisdom and how old He already was.

02] And Joseph spoke to them: "Dear friends, do not ask too soon about that; because a premature answer could cost you your life!

03] Follow us and leave your many gods behind and believe that there is only one true God of the heaven and the earth and believe that this one true God is the One whom the people honour and pray to in Jerusalem, so you will find out within yourself and from this Child, where His wisdom comes from!"

04] But the priests spoke: "O man, you are speaking in a strange language!

05] Are then our main gods Zeus, Apollo, Mercury, Vulcan, Pluto, Mars und Neptune, Juno and Minerva, Venus and others merely a product of human imagination?"

06] And Joseph replied: "Listen to me, friends! All your gods originated from the imagination of your forefathers, who will surely have known the one God very well!

07] But they were rare poets and singers at the courts of the old kings of this land and personified the properties of the one true God in proper analogies!

08] For them, Jupiter represented the goodness and kindness and love of the father from eternity, Apollo the wisdom of the father, and Minerva the power of that wisdom.

09] Mercury signified the omnipotence of the one God through his almighty will.

10] Venus represented the splendour, the beauty and the eternal youth of the Deity.

11] Vulcan and Pluto represented the absolute power of the one God over the whole earth.

12] Mars represented the earnestness of God, the judgment and the death for the condemned.

13] Neptune represented the active spirit of the one God in all the waters, and how He gives life through it.

14] So the old Isis, like Osiris, represented the divine, inviolable Holiness, which is the divine love and eternal wisdom!

15] And so all the other gods represented nothing but the attributes of the one God in corresponding images!

16] And that was a very commendable representation; for one knew that all this only signified the one God in his many different manifestations.

17] But with time, egoism, self-love and lust for power have blinded and deluded the people.

18] They lost the spirit and nothing remained for them than the outward form and they became pagans, which means that they became coarse materialists and lost the one God, and only gnawed at the outer, empty, misunderstood images just like dogs, gnawing at bones on which no meat is left! – Do you understand me?"

19] The three looked at each other with big eyes and spoke: "Truly, you have more

knowledge about our religion than we do! – Where did you learn all this?"

20] And Joseph spoke: "Be patient, the Child will reveal it to you! Therefore follow us, and do not turn back again!"

**CHAPTER 77. - CYRENIUS AND THE THREE PRIESTS. THE EXCAVATION  
OF THOSE BURIED ALIVE. THE CHILD'S MARVELLOUS COOPERATION.  
THE REAWAKENING OF THE SEVEN APPARENTLY DEAD CATACOMB  
GUIDES.**

**25 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] The three priests did not ask anything more now; for in Joseph, they recognized a man who seemed to be deeply initiated into the old mysteries of Egypt, which was otherwise only the case with the high priests of this land.

02] But Cyrenius turned around and asked the three priests, how many of them had died here.

03] And the three spoke: "Most powerful governor! We cannot tell you the exact figure;

04] but there certainly were more than seven hundred buried here, without counting the novices of both sexes!"

05] "Good", said Cyrenius, "we will soon see for ourselves in this matter!"

06] Then he asked Joseph, if it were not advisable to dig out the buried alive!

07] And Joseph replied: "That is certainly our strict duty; for there could be still novices alive here and there within the catacombs, and it is our strict duty to rescue them!"

08] When Cyrenius heard this, he immediately called two thousand workers, who promptly started to remove the rubble.

09] Within a few hours, seven bodies were found, and these were none other than the catacomb guides.

10] And Cyrenius said: "Truly, I feel sorry for these people; for without their help we cannot do much in this underground labyrinth with countless passages and ducts!"

11] But the Infant said to Cyrenius: "My Cyrenius! Regarding the catacombs, nothing of much use will be discovered here;

12] for they lie unused for several centuries and are full of mud and all kinds of vermin!

13] These seven guides in the catacombs were only guides in the nominal sense; none of them had in fact ever entered a catacomb before.

14] And look, so that you can believe what I say, I tell you also that these seven guides are not completely dead, but are lying there benumbed and can be brought back to life!

15] Have them massaged on their temples, chest, neck and hands and feet by strong women and they will quickly awaken from their benumbed state!"

16] And Cyrenius asked the Infant: "O You my Life! If You would touch them, wouldn't they surely awake?!"

17] But the Infant spoke: "Do as I told you; for I cannot do too much, otherwise I will bring a judgment rather than a blessing to the world!"

d18] Although Cyrenius did not understand these words, he followed the advice of the Infant.

19] He immediately sent for ten strong maidens to massage the seven guides.

20] After a few minutes the seven awoke and asked the bystanders what had happened to



them and what was going on here.

21] And Cyrenius immediately sent them to a good inn; but the people were amazed about this awakening and accorded great respect to the virgins.

## ***CHAPTER 78. – A WORK OF COMPASSION. THE INTELLIGENT STORM. CYRENIUS' FOREBODING. THE VISIT TO THE HARBOUR.***

**27 NOVEMBER 1843**

- 01] After this they dug further and Cyrenius gave the order for all the dead bodies that were not too much mutilated to be laid face down at a designated place covered with mats;
- 02] only the highly mutilated should either be immediately cremated or buried eight feet deep at the common burial ground.
- 03] It should be attempted to awaken the less mutilated as had been done with the seven.
- 04] And if one or the other could come back to life, he should be brought immediately to the inn with the other seven!
- 05] After this order was given, Cyrenius left with his company, to have a look at other parts of the city.
- 06] But to his great astonishment he found that none of the civilians' houses had been damaged in the least;
- 07] whereas there was not one temple to be found which did not lay in ruins, except one small, locked temple with the inscription: "To the unknown God!"
- 08] When the entourage accompanied by a crowd of people had marched through the whole city – not insignificant with a population of eighty-thousand people – Cyrenius called Joseph to him and spoke:
- 09] "Listen, most exalted friend and brother! Somehow I really feel like laughing when I look at the strange effects of the earthquake and the storm!
- 10] Just look over there! Along this road before us are houses of such poor construction; dry stones without mortar – and rather asymmetrically at that – that form a wall.
- 11] One should think that such walls are hardly strong enough to resist a quake caused by the hoof beat of a horse of above-average weight!
- 12] But you see, these ant buildings are still standing! Not one of them has been damaged in the least,
- 13] while among these really no more than temporal structures, the temples solidly built to last for millennia have turned into heaps of rubble one by one!
- 14] What do you think of this most peculiar phenomenon? – Does it not make sense to say that the earthquake as well as the storm have acted in a very intelligent way?!
- 15] Indeed! To my utmost joy I have to confess and tell you:
- 16] If your little Son has not used His almighty fingers to play a bit with the temples, accompanied by the storm, my name is not Cyrenius!"
- 17] But Joseph spoke: "Keep entirely to yourself what you believe and talk to nobody about it – because it seems to be so!
- 18] But let us go to the harbour now, as I want to see if there is some work for me to be done there!" – And Cyrenius promptly followed Joseph's advice and went to the sea shore.

## ***CHAPTER 79. - THE LIMITED DAMAGE AT THE HARBOUR. THE RETURN HOME. THE DETOUR ON THE ADVICE OF THE INFANT. THE REASON FOR IT.***

**28 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] Upon arrival at the sea shore, where the harbour was built partly by nature and partly by the skill of men, Cyrenius was equally surprised.

02] For there was no damage to be seen anywhere, except that all mythological ornaments on Cyrenius' most splendid ship were destroyed.

03] Therefore Cyrenius spoke to Joseph: "My most respected friend, the circumstances are such that your sons might have little to do!

04] Look, not one ship has suffered any damage, except that the idols, particularly on my ship, have apparently fallen into the water,

05] but I do not mind about that and in fact welcome it; for never again will I have them installed on my ships!

06] All praise and honour to your God for that!

07] But for all that I will reward your sons for some small repairs on the ships here and there and do as if they had done a major job!"

08] And Joseph spoke to Cyrenius: "O friend and brother, do not care about the earnings of my children!

09] See, it is not because of the money, I just would have been happy to help you with some reconstructive works together with my sons; but the Lord has helped you, and it is better that way, because you will now hardly need me.

10] We have seen everything now and since it is already late afternoon, I think we better go home and if necessary come back tomorrow to have a look at anything that remains!"

11] And Cyrenius spoke: "That is also my opinion; for I feel so very sorry for the poor mother. So let's try to reach home as soon as possible!

12] I will immediately send for a stretcher to carry her home along with the Infant!"

13] The Infant who was behind Cyrenius rose up immediately and spoke:

14] "Surely you will do that; for this mother has become very tired carrying Me all the time!

15] But while going home you should avoid passing by that certain square of the priests!

16] For if I would be carried through there by my mother with now almost a hundred people who were buried alive lying on the mats,

17] they suddenly would all become alive, which would be a judgment for you and all the people, and harmful for everyone!

18] So they will be awakened during the night by means of human aid under My secret influence!

19] In this way, the appearance of a miracle will be avoided and you and all the people will be saved from a judgment eternally killing the spirit!"

20] Cyrenius followed this advice to the letter and with much joy in his heart; the litter was brought immediately and Mary took her place inside with the Child.

21] And Cyrenius chose a different route, by which the entire company, including the three

priests, reached Joseph's villa quickly and comfortably.

**CHAPTER 80. – JOSEPH'S DOMESTIC PRECAUTIONS. THE INFANT'S JOY  
ABOUT JAMES. "THOSE WHOM I LOVE, I CAN TEASE AND PINCH AND  
TUG!" JAMES' HAPPY AND ENVIABLE MISSION.**

**29 NOVEMBER 1843**

01] After arriving in the villa, Joseph immediately went to his sons, who were busy with the preparation of lunch, and spoke to them:

02] Very good my sons, you have anticipated my intentions; but we will have three more guests tonight, namely the three priests who were to die this morning!

03] We shall treat them especially well, so that they become our friends in the recognition of our Father in heaven,

04] who has chosen us as his children by the covenant He made with our fathers!

05] But you James, you go out and meet your exhausted mother and relieve her from our dearest Infant,

06] and put Him to bed immediately; for He is very tired and longing for the cradle!"

07] James promptly ran towards Mary, who was just stepping out of the litter, and took the Infant away from her arms with the greatest love and joy.

08] And the Infant showed the same great affection to James; He jumped on his arms and smiled and pinched and tugged him wherever He could grasp him with his little hands.

09] And the three priests, having the greatest respect for this Child, were amazed and happy to see something truly childlike in this Child.

10] One of them went over to James and asked him in good Hebrew:

11] "Tell me, is this miraculous Child of all children always so cheerful, or one might say, naughty even, as normal children usually are when they are two or three years old?"

12] The Infant immediately responded Himself in place of James:

13] Yes, yes, My friend! – Those whom I love, I also tease and pinch and tug; but that happens only to those who love Me like My James does – and who I love as I love My dear James!

14] But I don't cause anyone any harm in this way! – Is it not true, My dear James, that it does not hurt you, when I tug and pinch you like that?"

15] And James, who was always easily moved to tears, spoke: "O You my divine and dearest little Brother, how could you hurt me?"

16] And the Infant replied to James: "James, My brother, you truly love Me!

17] And I love you so much, that in all eternity you will never realise how much I love you!

18] See, My dear brother James, the heavens are wide and endless, and they contain innumerable gleaming worlds of light, like the earth contained in a drop of dew!

19] And these worlds carry countless numbers of happy beings of your kind; but none of them is happier than you, My dearest brother! – You will not understand Me just yet; but in time, you will understand Me quite well! – I do not want to sleep now with all the people keeping watch around Me! – But I want to stay with you!"

20] This speech broke James' heart again and he wept of loving joy; but the inquiring priest almost sank into the ground out of sheer awe and respect for this Child!

**CHAPTER 81. - CYRENIUS' DESIRE TO BE TWEAKED AND PINCHED BY  
THE HOLY INFANT. THE INFANT'S REPLY. A PROMISE FOR ROME.  
MARY URGES THEM TO KEEP THE INFANT'S MISUNDERSTOOD WORDS  
IN THE HEART.**

**1 DECEMBER 1843**

01] Cyrenius, who had heard these words of the Infant as well, went over to the Infant immediately and asked Him lovingly:

02] "O You my Life! You surely do not love me so much, because You never tweaked and pinched me while I held You in my arms?"

03] But the Infant replied: "O Cyrenius! Do not be concerned about that; for look, all the troubles that you had to bear because of Me was in fact my tweaking and my pinching and that's why I love you so much!

04] Do you understand now, what I have told you?

05] I will also tweak and pinch you more often – and out of my love for you I will be really mean to you!

06] But listen, because of this, you do not have to be afraid of Me, for nothing will befall you, as it has been up to now; do you understand Me, My dear Cyrenius?"

07] Cyrenius, full of the deepest respect in his heart for the Child, was very touched, and said:

08] "Yes, yes, You who are my Life, I do understand You well and I know that what great things You have told me!

09] But nevertheless I would like it if You would also tweak and pinch me a bit as you do with Your brother!"

10] And the Infant said to Cyrenius: "O my dear friend, do you really want to be more childish than I am?

11] Do you believe that I would love you more because of that?

12] O, look, here you are greatly mistaken; for it is impossible for me to love you more than I love you already!

13] Indeed, you will never be able to understand or grasp the greatness and the strength of My love for you!

14] Mark my words, less than a century will pass before Rome will move into My fortress in great numbers!

15] In fact, the time has not yet come, but believe Me, you are already standing on the threshold which will soon be crossed by many!

16] Understand this! – However not physically, but spiritually in My future kingdom forever!"

17] The child's words made a great impression on everyone present, and Cyrenius did not know what he should make of it.

18] So he turned to Mary who was standing next to him, and asked her if she had understood what the divine Infant had said.

19] Mary said, "O friend! – Were this an ordinary human child, then we humans would

understand Him;

20] but He is of a higher nature, and we cannot understand Him! However, if we carry all His words in us, in the course of time they will be revealed in their true light!"

***CHAPTER 82. - CYRENIUS' QUESTION TO JOSEPH AND HIS REPLY  
CONCERNING THE LIFTING OF THE VEIL OF ISIS. MARONIUS' GOOD  
EXPLANATION. THE MEAL THE RESPECT OF THE THREE PRIESTS.***

***1 DECEMBER 1843***

01] Now Joseph came out of the villa again, and invited the party to the meal which had already been prepared.

02] But Cyrenius, who was full of strongly conflicting thoughts, called Joseph over to him and told him what the Infant had said and what Mary had commented,

03] and so he asked the good Joseph how such words should be understood.

04] But Joseph responded to the somewhat agitated Cyrenius:

05] "O friend and brother, do you not know of the myth which tells of the man who once wanted to lift the cloak of Isis?"

06] And Cyrenius, very surprised at this unexpected question, said:

07] "O exalted friend, of course I know the myth very well; the man perished miserably! But what are you trying to tell me therewith in response to my question?"

08] And Joseph replied to Cyrenius: "Dearest friend, nothing other than: there is more here than Isis!

09] That's why you should follow my wife's advice, and you will fare well forever!"

10] But Maronius Pilla was also present and said at this occasion:

11] "Your Consular Imperial Highness! I usually feel at a loss regarding these matters, but this time it seems to me that I have understood the wise man perfectly!"

12] And Cyrenius replied to him: "I'm happy for you, that you are so convinced of it!

13] But for the moment I can not make that claim for myself.

14] My brain is usually not so dumbfounded really, but this time it does not render me due assistance!"

15] And Maronius said: "For my part, I understand it so: Do not reach for things which are too far away; since for this your hand is too short!

16] Of course it would be quite an honour to be a happy Phaeton,

17] but what can a poor mortal do when the sun has paved its way too far above him!?

18] He simply has to satisfy himself with its light, and leave the honour and power of leading the sun to those beings who surely have longer arms than he, the poor mortal!

19] And how long the invisible arm of this Child is, we have convinced ourselves of yesterday!

20] You see, your Consular Imperial Highness, have I not understood, in essence, what this wise man said?"

21] And Cyrenius agreed with Maronius, pacified his heart and cheerfully accompanied Joseph into the villa and fortified himself at the frugal meal.

22] The three priests however, hardly dared to open their eyes, since they thought that the Child was either Zeus or even Fate Itself.



## ***CHAPTER 83. – THE THREE IDOLATROUS PRIESTS' BLINDNESS, AWE AND IMPULSE TO FLEE. THE INFANT JESUS' WISE RULES OF BEHAVIOUR FOR JOSEPH AND CYRENIUS.***

**2 DECEMBER 1843**

01] When the meal was over and everybody had risen from the table, one of the priests stepped up to Joseph and very humbly asked:

02] "Uranus, or at least Saturn as the father of Zeus! For surely that's what you are in person, even though you formerly endeavoured to hide your divinity from us in the town,

03] but you did this, so as to test whether we would really recognize you or not.

04] Only for a while did we misjudge you, and for that we ask your forgiveness for our uncouth blindness!

05] But the earlier sayings of your Child kindled a light in us all, and now we know exactly where we are!

06] O make us happy, by telling us how we might offer a sacrifice to you, to your divine wife and to your Child, who is surely, through your Almighty Being, the rejuvenated Zeus?!"

07] But Joseph was astonished by this sudden change in the three priests, to whom – when earlier in the town – he had clearly and comprehensively explained the error of their paganism.

08] So he reflected on what he should say to them now. – But at that moment the Infant called for Joseph,

09] and as He arrived there in James' arms, He immediately said to Joseph:

10] "Leave the poor fellows and do not rebuke them; for they are blind and sleep and dream!

11] But keep them here for a few days and my brothers will yet awaken them from their sleeping and dreaming! When they will see how you yourselves are praying to God, then they will drop their Uranus, their Saturn and their Zeus!"

12] These words had a very calming effect on Joseph, and he immediately made the suggestion to the three priests, that they live under his roof in the meantime, until an arrangement for their livelihood could be made.

13] But the three priests, who out of sheer awe hardly dared to breathe, trusted themselves even less to refuse this proposal, since they actually had no clue where they stood.

14] They accepted the proposal, but muttered amongst themselves:

15] "Ah! – How happy we would be, if only it would be possible to run away and crawl into one of the last corners of the world!

16] But apparently we have to remain here in the face of the supreme Gods. O what torture this is for us undeserving beings!"

17] But Cyrenius noticed the muttering amongst the three, stepped towards them and thereupon wanted to confront them.

18] But the Infant said: "My Cyrenius, stay back for it is not unknown to Me what is going on in these three.

19] Their plan is the fruit of their blindness and of their foolish dread and it leads to nothing else, than an escape from us to one of the farthest corners of the earth.

20] See, that is all there is to it, and you do not need to get so worked up about it!

21] Here in this house you can leave the judgment to Me, and be assured that no injustice will be done to anyone!"

22] And Cyrenius was satisfied with this and went back outside with Joseph; and the three priests proceeded to their assigned room.

## ***CHAPTER 84. – THE LEGEND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE TOWN OF OSTRACINE. CYRENIUS' GLOOMY PERSPECTIVE ON THE TEMPLE OF THE GODS.***

***4 DECEMBER 1843***

01] Joseph and Cyrenius, having gone outside, began to discuss a number of issues, while Mary took care of the Infant inside the house.

02] and Joseph's sons concerned themselves with putting the household in order, while Cyrenius' servants assisted them.

03] After several discussions of lesser importance between Joseph and Cyrenius accompanied by Maronius Pilla, an important point was raised, and this was expressed by Cyrenius thus:

04] "Exalted friend and brother! – See, the town and all the territory which falls under the control of the town, surely represents eighty thousand people!

05] Among them, there are only very few of your belief and your religion.

06] To my knowledge, they have been mostly idol worshippers for thousands of years.

07] They have all of their pagan temples in this ancient town, of which the myth says that they were built during the wars of the gods with the Giants of the Earth, and even built by Zeus himself as a symbol of the victory over these Giants.

08] Mercury had to collect the bones of the Giants and immerse them in the ocean; this, it seems, is how this land came into being.

09] Then for an entire month, Zeus let it rain sand and ashes and occasionally large and heavy stones, over these Giants' bones.

10] Thereupon Zeus ordered the old Ceres to make this land fertile and, in its centre and not too far from the ocean, build a fortress and a city as a symbol of the great victory;

11] then Zeus himself would bring forth a people from the earth, who should inhabit this land and this town for all time. –

12] So you can easily gather from my story that it is precisely these people, more than any other on this earth, who are still convinced that they live in the very town built by the gods themselves,

13] which is also why you see crumbling buildings everywhere, since no human being dares to repair any creation of the gods, for fear of sinning against them.

14] It is also particularly suggested, that the old Ceres, with the help of Mercury and Apollo, built the temples with her own hands. –

15] That is both the myth and the strong belief of these otherwise good-natured people, who, in spite of their poverty, are very hospitable and exceptionally honest.

16] But what can be done if the people were to demand the reconstruction of the temple?

17] Should one reconstruct the temple for them or not, – or should one convert it to your doctrine?

18] And if one does that then what will the neighbouring peoples say who also visit this town once in a while,

since it has been more of a ruin than an actual city since a long time!?"

## ***CHAPTER 85. - JOSEPH'S ADVICE ABOUT TRUST IN GOD AND THE PROPHECY OF THE END OF OSTRACINE.***

***4 DECEMBER 1843***

01] And Cyrenius continued: "O friend, in truth, it is difficult to give a good advice here!

02] If you can give any advice from the living heart of your truly divine wisdom, please share it with me!

03] For indeed, the more I think about this issue, the more critical and entangled it gets!"

04] And Joseph replied to Cyrenius: "Listen to me, most noble friend! It is very easy to help you out of this predicament!

05] I will give you a good piece of advice, which will show you what is the right thing to do on this occasion.

06] See, in your heart you are now a part of my living faith and you love and honour with me the one and only true God!

07] But I tell you: As long as you are anxious, God will not do anything for you!

08] But if you surrender all you worries to Him, and only concern yourself with finding out how to recognize and love this true God more and more,

09] then He will begin to help you in everything, and all that appeared to you as crooked today will be straight tomorrow!

10] Therefore let this city be cleared of debris only in those places where people are still buried beneath it, which is now being done.

11] But let all the other temples under whose debris you will only find at most a few crude, worthless, broken idols remain as ruins!

12] For what the elements have destroyed, is seen by these blind people to be the work of the gods themselves.

13] That is why none of them will take the initiative to rebuild these temples,

14] since they are afraid that this is against the will of the gods, and could draw a great retribution upon them.

15] And there are no priests left who, on the basis of a fictitious decree by the gods would have taken it up to their own advantage through the hands and the means of the people, –

16] and the ones that are still there will never build temples for idols!

17] So, you need not worry; the Lord of heaven and earth will bring about what is best for you and for all people!

18] Anyhow, more towns will suffer a similar fate in our time; they will be buried here and there, so no one will notice it when this old town becomes a complete ruin within ten years!"

19] This speech of Joseph consoled Cyrenius, and he cheerfully returned to the house with Joseph.

## ***CHAPTER 86. – CYRENIUS' RETURN TO OSTRACINE WITH HIS SERVANTS. MARY IN PRAYER. JOSEPH'S CONSOLING WORDS.***

**5 DECEMBER 1843**

- 01] Upon reaching the dining room, Cyrenius asked Joseph: "Dear friend, my All, just now a great idea came into my heart and mind!
- 02] Regarding the issue we discussed outside, and about which you spoke such fine and heartening words to me, what do you think, wouldn't I be able to quiet my mind
- 03] if I were to ask the three priests who are present here for their opinion?"
- 04] And Joseph said: "If my word is not enough for you, – you are the master here and you can do what you want to reassure yourself,
- 05] although in my opinion, there isn't much to gain from talking to these priests, as long as they mistake me for Uranus or Saturn and the Infant for the rejuvenated Zeus!
- 06] If you to ask them about the issue which concerns you, they will obviously refer you to me and the Infant!"
- 07] When Cyrenius heard such words from Joseph, he renounced his wish and replied:
- 08] "Now things are clear; my mind is at peace and from now on I can calmly devote my time to my affairs of state again.
- 09] It is already getting late; so I will return to the town with my servants!
- 10] But tomorrow afternoon I will be back; and should I be in need of your advice before that I will request you to come to me in the morning!"
- 11] At this point Joseph blessed Cyrenius and Maronius, and Cyrenius went over to the cradle and kissed the sleeping Infant softly.
- 12] Then he arose and went out with tears in his eyes.
- 13] As he went he glanced back at least a hundred times towards the villa, which now meant more to him than all the treasures of the world.
- 14] And for as long as Joseph was still able to see Cyrenius' entourage, he sent him one blessing after another.
- 15] Only when there was nothing more to be seen of Cyrenius did Joseph return to the house and to Mary, who – as usual at this time – was deeply engrossed in her prayers.
- 16] But as soon as she sense Joseph near her, she got up and said: "Dear husband, indeed, I have become a different person today! – Oh world, oh world! – It holds no gain for man!"
- 17] And Joseph replied: "My most faithful wife, you are right; but I believe that as long as the Lord is with us, we will not lose anything in the world either! So be in good spirits, for tomorrow the same old sun will rise for us splendid and fresh!
- Eternal glory to the Lord alone, Amen."

**CHAPTER 87. - MARY AS A MODEL OF FEMALE HUMILITY. THE SONG  
OF PRAISE AND THANKS BY JOSEPH AND HIS SONS. THE POSITIVE  
EFFECT ON THE THREE IDOLATROUS PRIESTS.**

**6 DECEMBER 1843**

01] And Mary, who never spoke much and unlike most women never insisted on having the last word, was satisfied in her heart with Joseph's short and simple reassurance.

02] She then went to rest, and Joseph consecrated her to the Lord in his heart.

03] But Joseph went to his sons and said to them: "Children, the evening is splendid and beautiful; let us go outside!

04] There, in the great holy temple of God, we shall strike up a song of praise and shall thank the Lord for all the infinite blessings he has bestowed on us and our fathers since the beginning of the world!"

05] Joseph's sons immediately dropped everything and followed their father.

06] And he led them up to a small unobstructed hill about a hundred paces away from the villa as part of Joseph's land, with a height of some twenty fathoms.

07] But the three priests noticed the move and believed that the gods were going to Olympus for the night, to hold a general council with all the gods.

08] And so they quickly left their rooms and crept very quietly and furtively after Joseph.

09] Having reached the hill, they eavesdropped under a dense leafy fig-tree, in an attempt to overhear what the supposed gods at Olympus would decide.

10] But how astonished they became among themselves, when they heard the supposedly pre-eminent gods worship and sing praises to one God with power and fervour.

11] And the following passages of a psalm of David had a particularly strong effect on them, which were as follows:

12] "Lord, you have been our dwelling place in all generations. Before the mountains were brought forth, before You had formed the earth and the world, from everlasting to everlasting, You are God.

13] You turn man back to dust; and say, 'Turn back, O children of men!'

14] For a thousand years in Your sight are but like yesterday when it is past, and like a watch in the night.

15] You sweep them away; they are like sleepers; they are like short lived grass in the morning.

16] In the morning it flourishes, and fades; by evening it is withered and dry.

17] For we are consumed by Your anger, and by Your wrath are we terrified!

18] You have set our iniquities before You, our secret sins in the light of Your countenance!

19] For all our days pass away in Your wrath; we spend our years like a tale that is told.

20] The days of our years are seventy; or if, because of strength, they are eighty years, yet their pride is but trouble and wretchedness; for it is soon cut off, and we fly away!

21] Who knows the power of Your anger? According to Your fear, so is Your wrath.

22] So teach us to number our days, that we may get a heart of wisdom.

23] Return, O Lord! How long? And relent concerning Your servants!

24] O satisfy us in the morning with Your loving kindness; that we may rejoice and be glad all our days!

25] Make us glad as many days as You have afflicted us, and as many years as we have seen evil!

26] Let Your work be visible to Your servants, and Your glory to their children!

27] And let the beauty of the Lord our God be upon us; and establish the work of our hands upon us; O prosper it, the work of our hands!"

28] When the three had heard these songs very clearly, they promptly returned to their room.

29] And one said to the other two: "Indeed, those who pray like this to a God, and even acknowledge His wrath and ire over them, cannot be Gods!"

30] And another one said: "That would be the least of it, but that this prayer has touched our souls is where the problem lies!

31] Be quiet now; the worshippers are coming back! Tomorrow we will assess this matter more seriously, but for now be quiet, for they are coming!"

***CHAPTER 88. - THE GOLDEN DAYBREAK. JOSEPH AND HIS SONS AT  
WORK IN THE FIELD. JOEL STRUCK DOWN BY A POISONOUS SNAKE  
BITE. THE HOMECOMING AND THE HYSTERIA IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE  
INFANT'S WORDS OF CONSOLATION. JOEL'S REAWAKENING.***

***7 DECEMBER 1843***

01] Joseph now instructed his sons to complete their usual duties and then retire.

02] But he himself retired immediately as he had already begun to feel a tiredness in his body.

03] And so this day, rich in experiences, came to an end.

04] The next day, our Joseph was up as usual long before sunrise, and awakened his sons to go to work.

05] For he said: "The early bird catches the worm. Whatever we do then is more blessed than all the work throughout the rest of the day!"

06] And so, with the exception of James who was to remain with the Infant, he went straight to a field with the four older sons and started the cultivation work.

07] The eldest son was the most diligent one, and wanted to outdo the other three.

08] But see, as he drove his spade so eagerly into the soil, he suddenly lifted a very poisonous snake from the ground!

09] And the snake moved quickly and bit him in the foot.

10] Hereupon the three younger brothers rushed over to him and beat the snake to death, but all the same their brother's foot swelled up visibly, he was overcome by dizziness and soon breathed his last.

J.01\_088,11] Joseph and the three younger brothers began to lament and they besought God, that He may bring Joel back to life.

12] And Joseph cursed the snake and said to the three: "Never again shall a snake crawl on this ground!"

13] Now lift up your brother and carry him home; for it must thus have pleased the Lord that He took away my son and heir!"

14] And the three weeping brothers lifted Joel up and carried him home, and Joseph tore his robe and followed them while lamenting.

15] Upon reaching home, Mary, scared by the wailing, soon came towards them with the Child, followed by James.

16] As they noticed the lifeless Joel and Joseph in his torn robe, they both cried out in anguish.

17] The three priests also came over quickly and were quite horrified upon seeing the corpse.

18] And one of them said to Joseph: "Only now do I fully believe you, that you are only human after all; for if you were a God, how could your children die and how would you not raise them from the dead right away?!"

19] But the Infant said: "You are all wrong. Joel is merely dazed and asleep, but he is not dead!"



20] Bring a sea onion, place it on him over his wound and soon he will get better!"

21] James quickly brought such an onion and placed it on Joel's wound;

22] and in a few moments, he came to and asked all of them what had happened to him.

23] And those around him promptly told him everything and praised God for his recovery, and the three priest developed a great respect for the Child, – but even more so for the onion.

***CHAPTER 89. - JOSEPH'S SACRIFICIAL VOW. THE OBJECTION OF THE INFANT JESUS AND HIS ADVICE ON THE SACRIFICE MOST PLEASING TO GOD. JOSEPH'S OBJECTION AND HIS WEAKENING BY THE INFANT.***

***9 DECEMBER 1843***

01] Then Joseph and his entire family went straight to the bedroom and praised and honoured God loudly for almost an hour;

02] and he also made a vow, by which he committed himself to bring a sacrifice to the Lord upon his next visit to Jerusalem.

03] But the Infant said to Joseph: "Listen to Me! – Do you really think that this will please the Lord?

04] For you are greatly mistaken, – see, God takes pleasure neither in burnt offerings nor in the blood of animals or in flour, oils and grains,

05] but only in a repentant, remorseful and humble soul that loves Him above all else!

06] But should you have something to spare, then give to those who are naked, hungry and thirsty, and in this way you will bring a real sacrifice to the Lord!

07] Therefore I release you from your vow and your duty to the temple, because this in My full power!

08] But I Myself will one day keep your vow in Jerusalem in such a way that the whole earth will be satiated for eternity!" – – –

09] Joseph took the Infant in his arms, kissed Him and then said to Him:

10] "My dearest little Jesus, Your Joseph thanks You for this from the bottom of his heart and recognizes the entire sacred truth of Your marvellous utterance;

11] but see, God, Your and all our Father, has still ordained such through Moses and the prophets and holds us, his children, to it!

12] O tell me: do You, my little Son, although of divine, holy and miraculous birth, really have the right to revoke the laws of the great Father who lives eternally in His heavens?"

13] And the Infant replied: "Joseph, even if I would tell you who I am, you would still not believe Me, for you only see a human being in Me!

14] But I tell you nevertheless: wherever I am, there is also the Father; but wherever I am not, the Father is not.

15] But now I am here and not in the temple; so how is the Father supposed to be in the temple? – !

16] Do you understand this? – See, wherever the love of the Father is, there is also His heart; and the love of the Father is within Me and therewith also His heart!

17] But nobody carries his heart outside himself, and neither does the Father; wherever His heart is, there He is as well! – Do you understand such things?"

18] These words filled Joseph and Mary as well as their five sons with a profound, sacred sense of foreboding; and they went outside and praised the Father who was so close to them in their hearts. And Mary started with the preparation for the morning meal.

**CHAPTER 90. – THE MORNING MEAL THE CUSTOM OF ABLUTION. THE  
THREE PRIESTS' RESISTANCE TO JOSEPH'S INSTRUCTIONS AND THE  
INFANT'S LESSON IN OBEDIENCE. THE PRIESTS' SIGNIFICANT  
QUESTION AND JOSEPH'S EMBARRASSMENT.**

**11 DECEMBER 1843**

01] The morning meal was soon ready, for it consisted of nothing else than a pot of simmered milk, some honey and thyme, and bread.

02] Mary brought it to the table herself and called Joseph, the five sons as well as the three priests to the table.

03] And soon Joseph appeared with the Child in his arms, gave Him to the mother and went over to the table.

04] He immediately struck up his song of praise to the Lord; and when he finished the song, Joseph asked, as per his custom, if everyone had washed.

05] And Mary, the five sons and the Infant said: "Yes, all of us are washed quite well!"

06] And Joseph replied: "Then you may also eat! But how is it with you three, did you wash yourselves as well?"

07] And the three priests said: "It is not our custom to wash ourselves with water in the morning, but only in the evening.

08] In the morning we anoint ourselves with oil, so that the heat of the day does not bother us."

09] And Joseph said: "That may well be; if I would visit you in your house, I would do the same as you.

10] But since you are now in my house, you should follow my custom; for it is better than yours!"

11] But the priests asked to be spared this custom. 12] And Joseph felt like letting the priests off,

13] but the Infant said: "Indeed, every bite shall turn to stone in their stomachs, if they do not clean themselves with water before sitting at the table where I am present!"

14] Upon hearing these words, the three priests immediately broke their custom, asked for water, and washed themselves.

15] After they had washed themselves, Joseph called them back to the table;

16] but the priests refused and did not dare, for they were frightened of the Child.

17] But the Infant said: "If you refuse to sit at the table and not eat this consecrated morning meal with us now, you will die!"

18] And the priests immediately came to the table and ate, concealing their great awe of the Child.

19] Once the morning meal had been consumed, Joseph got up again and expressed his gratitude to God.

20] Thereupon the priests asked him: "Which God are you thanking? – Is this Child not the first true God? – Then how can you thank any other?"

21] This question astonished Joseph and he did not know how to respond.

22] But the Infant said: "Joseph! – do not concern yourself in vain; for what the three have said will come to pass! But do not worry now; for you pray nevertheless to one God and Father!"

## ***CHAPTER 91. – LOVE AS THE TRUE PRAYER TO GOD. JESUS AS THE SON OF GOD. THE PAGAN THOUGHTS OF THE THREE PRIESTS AND THE CHILD'S RIPOSTE.***

***12 DECEMBER 1843***

01] Joseph kissed the Infant and said: "Yes indeed, if the Father's heart would not be in You, You would never be able to express such words!

02] For where in the whole world will exist a child of Your age, who is able to speak such words of itself; words that have never before been spoken by a wise man!

03] Therefore tell me if I should worship you wholly as my God and Lord?"

04] Joseph's question to the Infant surprised all the people present.

05] Smiling gently, the Child said to Joseph: "Joseph! Do you really know how man should pray to God?

06] See, you do not know it fully, so I will tell you.

07] Listen! Man shall pray to God in spirit and in truth, but not just with their lips as the children of the world do, who think that they have served God simply by moving their lips for a while.

08] And if you want to pray in spirit and in truth, then love God in your heart, and do good to all your friends and enemies, and in this way your prayer will be just before God!

09] So if someone only moved his lips for a while from time to time in front of God and during this exercise had thought about so many worldly things that meant more to him than all his loose prayers, more even than God himself – tell me, can this really be considered a prayer?

10] Indeed, millions of such prayers are heard by God, as when a stone hears the voice of someone who cries out!

11] But if you pray to God out of love, you would never need to ask if you should worship Me now as the most holy God and Father.

12] For he who prays to God, also prays to Me; for the Father and I are one love and one heart!"

13] These words brought everybody to a clear understanding, and they now knew why Jesus should be called a Son of God.

14] Joseph's breast was filled with sheer heavenly delight.

15] Mary secretly rejoiced over the Infant and kept all such words in her heart, as did Joseph's sons.

16] And the three priests said to Joseph: "O most exalted wise man of all time!

17] We would like to have a confidential talk with you alone on that hill where yesterday evening you prayed with your sons in a manner so splendid and uplifting to your God!"

18] But the Infant interrupted their talk right away and said:

19] "Do you believe that the reach of My ears is too limited and does not extend to your mouths on the hill? – O how mistaken you are; for My ears reach just as far as My hands! So just have your discussion here in front of Me."

## ***CHAPTER 92 - THE DISCLOSURE OF THE BLINDNESS AND FOLLY OF THE THREE PRIESTS. ABOUT BUILDING TEMPLES IN ONE'S HEART AND THE TRUE SERVICE TO GOD.***

**13 DECEMBER 1843**

01] The three priests however became very embarrassed and did not know what they should do; for in the presence of the Child they did not dare to reveal their concerns to Joseph.

02] The Infant looked at them and said to them with a very firm voice:

03] "Would you not like to make an idol out of Me as well?

04] You would like to construct a temple on that hill over there, install a carving after Me on a golden altar and then make a sacrifice to this carving according to your tradition.

05] Just try to do something like this, and in truth I tell you, the first one who makes a step towards it and stretches out a finger for it, will be a dead man!

06] If you want to construct a temple to Me, then build a living temple in your hearts;

07] for I am alive and not dead, and thus I want living temples rather than dead ones!

08] And as you already believe that the fullness of the Deity lives in Me in the flesh, am I Myself not enough of a living temple for you? – Why should there be a carving and a stone temple of Me as well?

09] What is more significant, Me – or such a nondescript temple and a carving of Me?

10] So if the living one is with you and among you, what good will a dead one do then?

11] O you blind fools! – If you love Me, doesn't this then mean more than the construction of a thousand stone temples

for Me, where for a thousand years you would move your lips in front of carved pictures of Me while dressed in decorated coats?!

12] And if a poor man would come to you, naked and hungry and thirsty,

13] and you would say: 'See, this is a half God, for thus do these high beings appear;

14] let us make an image of him and then put it in a temple so that we can worship it!' –

15] Tell Me, if you were to do this, would the poor man be helped by this, even if you were to make his picture out of pure gold?!

16] Would it not help the poor man more, if you would clothe him with love and then provide him with food and drink?

17] Is God not more alive than any man on earth, in that everything receives life from Him?

18] Should God, who created the sun and gave you your eyes to see with, be slightly blind?!

19] Or should He who made you your ear be deaf, and He who gave you your senses be numb?

20] See, how foolish it would be to think and speak like that!

21] God is the most perfect life Himself and thus the most perfect love; how then do you want to worship and honour Him as a dead entity? –

22] Think of this, so that your blindness may be healed."

23] This speech knocked the three priests to the ground; they recognized the divine truth and did not speak anymore for the rest of the day.

***CHAPTER 93. - THE ALL-ROUND POSITIVE EFFECT OF THIS LECTURE.  
THE DOMESTIC LIFE OF THE HOLY FAMILY. THE BLIND BEGGAR AND  
HER DREAM. THE HEALING OF THE BLIND THROUGH THE CHILD'S  
BATHWATER.***

***14 DECEMBER 1843***

01] After they expressed their greatest esteem, the three priests returned to their assigned room and stayed there until sunset.

02] They did not talk, but each one of them pondered on the words of the miraculously talking Child.

03] Joseph honoured God in his heart and thanked Him fervently for the infinite blessing that he had become the foster father of the Son of God.

04] After he had honoured and praised God together with Mary and his sons, and Mary had seen to the Infant,

05] the Child was again given over to James, and Joseph had Mary stitch his torn clothes together again. Then he went back to till the field again with his sons.

06] In the meantime Mary cleaned the furniture in the house, so that it might be clean for the reception of the guests who had promised to return in the afternoon.

07] After the cleaning was done, she checked again on the Child to see if He needed anything.

08] The Child demanded to be nursed and have a bath, and that with clean cold water.

09] Mary did all this right away; and after she had bathed the Child, a blind woman entered the room and came up to Mary complaining about her misery.

10] But Mary said to the blind woman: "I can see very well that you are not well off, but what can I do for you that would help you?"

11] And the woman said: "Listen to me! – Last night I had a wonderful dream.

12] I saw that you had a radiant Child; and this Child demanded nursing and bathing from you.

13] The bath consisted of fresh water, and after you had bathed the Child in it, the water was full of brilliant stars!

14] Then I remembered that I am blind, and was not a little surprised as to how I was able to see all of this.

15] But at the same time you spoke to me: 'Woman, so take this water and wash your eyes and you will be able to see!'

16] So I wanted to take the water immediately to wash my eyes, but then I woke up – and was still blind!

17] But this morning someone said to me: 'Go out and search! You will meet the woman with the Child; for you will not enter any house except that one only!'

18] Now here I am, having reached the end of my great effort, fear and danger!"

19] Here Mary gave the bathwater to the blind woman, and the woman washed her face in it and in this moment regained her eyesight.



20] The woman was beside herself with gratitude and wanted to trumpet it forth in Ostracine; but Mary strictly forbade the woman to do so.

***CHAPTER 94.- THE HEALED WOMAN'S THANKS AND HER REQUEST TO  
BE ACCEPTED IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE. JAMES' TESTIMONIAL OF MARY'S  
CHARACTER. THE GIRL'S PROPHECY OF THE ADORATION OF MARY.  
MARY'S HUMILITY. JOSEPH'S RETURN.***

***15 DECEMBER 1843***

01] And the woman asked Mary if she could perhaps allow her to stay with her for some time, in order to serve the house in which such a great salvation had come her way.

02] And Mary replied: "Woman, that is not for me to decide, for I myself am only a maiden of the Lord.

03] But stay around for a while until my husband returns from the fields; he will surely tell you what should be done!"

04] The woman threw herself at Mary's feet and wanted to start worshipping her as a real Goddess; for she regarded the healing of her face as too great a great miracle, as she was born blind.

05] But Mary sternly rebuked her and withdrew to another room.

06] Thereupon the woman started to cry, for she thought that because of this she had offended her greatest benefactress.

07] James, who coaxed the Infant in the same room, looked at the woman and said to her:

08] "Why do you cry, as if somebody had hurt you?"

09] And the woman said: "Oh, you dear young man! I have offended the one who gave light to my eyes; how could I not cry?"

10] But James said: "Oh, worry about something else! The young woman, who gave you the bathwater, is gentler than a turtledove, so she can never be offended.

11] Even if somebody wanted to offend her, he would not be able to do so.

12] For she then blesses him ten times for one insult and asks the offender for his friendship again, in such a way that even the hardest stone could not resist!

13] See, that is how good this woman is! Therefore, do not worry; for I assure you that right now she is praying to God for you!"

14] And so it was indeed. Mary indeed prayed to God for this woman, that He would make her see sense and would let her realise that she, Mary, was only a weak woman also.

15] Mary was actually of the highest nobility; but her pleasure consisted of being humbled everywhere and by everyone.

16] After a while our dear, sweet Mary returned and asked the woman in earnest to forgive her for snapping at her so harshly.

17] Behaving in this way, Mary drove the grateful woman almost mad out of love for her.

18] And in total rapture, the woman spoke of her love:

19] "O bright soul of my gender, what your most noble heart just rebuked me for, nations will one day do to you!

20] For among all the women on earth, you are surely the first allied to the highest Gods, especially so since you are so unspeakably kind, sweet and beautiful, not to mention your

truly divine virtue!"

21] Mary said: "Dear woman, after my death the people can do with me as they please, but during my lifetime this will not happen!"

22] At this point Joseph returned with his four sons; and Mary promptly introduced him to the woman and told him everything that had happened.

## ***CHAPTER 95. - JOSEPH TAKES IN THE HEALED WOMAN. HER MOVING LIFE STORY. JOSEPH CONSOLES THE POOR ORPHAN.***

**16 DECEMBER 1843**

01] As soon as the woman realised that Joseph was Mary's husband, she went over to him with the request that she may stay in his house.

02] And Joseph said to her: "Since you experienced such grace as my wife told me in your presence, and you wish to express your gratitude for it to this house, you may as well stay.

03] For see, I have quite a large property, many animals and a spacious house!

04] So you will have enough things to do, and there also sufficient space here to live.

05] And anyhow my wife's physical constitution is rather weak; so you would serve me well if you would help my wife in the housework here and there.

06] All your needs shall be taken care of; but I cannot pay you any wages, for I do not have any money.

07] If you are satisfied with this proposal, you may stay as long as you like, but not out of any sense of obligation!"

08] Upon hearing these words the woman, who was a very poor orphan anyway, became very happy, and she praised the house, in which she encountered so much goodness, beyond measure.

09] Joseph then asked her about her place of birth and her age, and to which religion she belonged.

10] And the woman replied: "Man worthy of all esteem! – I was born in Rome, and I am the daughter of a powerful patrician!

11] My aged appearance does not correspond with my years; for I have am on this earth for hardly twenty summers.

12] I was born blind; a priest advised my parents to bring me to Delphi where, by the grace of Apollo, I would regain my eyesight.

13] This advice was given to my parents when I was ten years and seven months old.

14] My parents, who were very rich and who loved me dearly as their only daughter, followed this advice.

15] They hired a ship to sail with me to Delphi.

16] But we had hardly been at sea for three days, when an incredibly violent storm blew the ship with great speed to this region.

17] As the one who saved my life often told me, about two hundred fathoms away from the shore, the ship was hurled on a rock,

18] and everyone, except myself and the one sailor who saved me, died, including my dear parents.

19] Never did an opportunity arise to return to my hometown. Five years ago the sailor also died here, and I am now an orphaned beggar in this town, emaciated by great misery and sadness.

20] But now that I have found such mercy at the hands of the Gods, and regained my eyesight and can see my benefactors, I shall gladly forget my great misery!"

21] This story of the seeming women brought tears to everyone's eyes; and Joseph said: "O you poor orphan, be comforted, for here you shall discover your parents again many times over!"

## ***CHAPTER 96. – THE ORPHAN'S QUESTION ABOUT THE PUZZLING WORDS FROM JOSEPH. JOSEPH'S ANSWER.***

***18 DECEMBER 1843***

01] But the seeming woman did not understand fully what Joseph had meant by finding parents many times over; so she asked him:

02] "O you dear, most kind man, in whose house I experienced such an infinitely wonderful grace of such magnitude, what do you mean when you say that I shall find my lost parents here many times over?"

03] Joseph said to her: "Indeed, in my house you shall be considered as one of my children as long as you live!

04] Here you shall learn to recognize the one eternally true God, the same Who created you and who gave you back your eyesight just now.

05] Yes, you shall recognize the essential nature of your God and Lord and He shall teach you Himself!

06] You will also shortly meet a Roman of high standing here in my house, who will arrange your affairs in Rome.

07] This Roman is Cyrenius, a brother of Augustus.

08] For sure he knew your parents and, at my request, he will devote himself to your parents' affairs on your behalf in Rome. – And wouldn't this be like your parents many times over, both spiritually and physically?!

09] For if one of your parents were alive somewhere, tell me, could they do more for you?

10] Would they have returned your eyesight to you and would they have been able to show you the one eternal and true God?

11] Your biological parents would have looked after you for some time, but here you will be looked after for eternity if you will only accept this care!

12] Tell me, what is more important, your natural parents who were swallowed up by the ocean, or the ones you have now whom the ocean must obey in the name of the one God?"

13] Out of sheer respect and love for Joseph, the seeming woman now fell completely silent.

14] As she heard people whisper here and there that Zeus lived somewhere in the vicinity of Ostracine, she now believed she was in his bodily presence.

15] But Joseph immediately recognized the woman's delusion and said to her:

16] "O maiden, o daughter! – Do not consider me to be more than what I am; and even less, to be something that does not exist!

17] I am a human being just like you, and that must suffice for now. In time things will more clear around you; that is enough for now!

18] Now bring us the midday meal; and afterwards we shall acquaint ourselves more, so be it."

***CHAPTER 97. - JOSEPH'S WORDS REGARDING THE THREE FASTING  
PRIESTS. THE HUMILITY OF THE NEW RESIDENT AND HER  
ACCEPTANCE BY JOSEPH AS HIS DAUGHTER. THE BLESSING AND THE  
JOY OF THE INFANT JESUS.***

***19 DECEMBER 1843***

- 01] Joseph's sons promptly went out and brought in the midday meal.
- 02] Then Joseph said: "What about the three of them, will they eat lunch with us, or would they prefer to eat in their room today?"
- 03] Go and enquire about it, and it is up to them, in whatever way they prefer it!"
- 04] And the sons went and asked the three of them; but they did not say anything, and motioned to the sons that they would neither speak nor take anything, food or drink, until sunset!
- 05] The sons informed Joseph who was satisfied with this and said:
- 06] "If the three of them are doing this as a matter of conscience, then we would sin against them if we would stop them from keeping their vows!"
- 07] So, in the name of the Lord, let us sit at the table and consume gratefully what God has bestowed upon us!"
- 08] But the seeming woman said: "O Lord of this house! – You are too good and I am of no value; and so I am really not worthy to eat at your table; I wish to eat with gratitude, in the entrance hall of the house, whatever you offer me in your kindness!"
- 09] And besides, my thoroughly torn clothes and my unwashed body are also not suitable for the table of such a gentleman as you are!"
- 10] And Joseph said to his sons: "Go and get four large jugs of water and put them in Mary's side room!"
- 11] You, my wife, go and wash the woman and comb her hair and dress her in your best clothes!
- 12] And when she is exquisitely and splendidly attired, you shall bring her here, so that she can have lunch with us without being shy!"
- 13] Within half an hour Joseph's wish had been fulfilled, and totally cleansed there now stood in place of the woman, a very sweet, shy and exceedingly grateful girl, in whose face only traces of her former sadness could be seen.
- 14] Her features held a great beauty, and her eyes expressed a deep humility but also a deep love.
- 15] Joseph took much pleasure in this child and said: "O Lord, I am grateful to You, that You chose me to save this poor woman; In Your most holy name I wish to accept her unreservedly as my daughter!"
- 16] And turning to his sons, he said: "Look at your poor sister and greet her as brothers!"
- 17] Joseph's sons did this with much joy and finally the Infant also spoke:
- 18] "In that she is accepted by you, I shall also accept her; it is a good deed and gives Me great joy!"
- 19] But when the girl thus heard the Infant speak, she was surprised and said: "O what a

miracle! – how come, that this Infant can speak like a God!?" –



**CHAPTER 98. – THE LOVELY INTERACTION BETWEEN THE GIRL AND  
THE INFANT. THE DANGERS OF THE HOLY SECRET. THE SALVATION  
AND EFFUSIVE HAPPINESS OF THE GIRL**

**20 DECEMBER 1843**

01] The girl promptly went over to the Infant and said: 02] "O what a remarkable Prodigy You are!

03] Yes, you are the same radiant Infant who appeared in my wonderful dream, He who the mother had bathed and whose very same bathwater gave me my eyesight!

04] Yes, yes You divine Infant! – You gave me my eyesight; You are my Saviour; You are the true Apollo of Delphi!

05] Indeed, in my heart now, You already mean more than all the gods of Rome, Greece and Egypt!

06] What a lofty divine Spirit must reside in You, who has already untied Your tongue so soon and who reveals Himself through You in such a salutary and mighty way!? –

07] Hail to you, people of the earth, who live together with me in great darkness and misery!

08] Here is the sun of the heavens, which will give all of you blind people your eyesight back just like it happened to me!

09] O Rome! You mighty conqueror of the earth, look, here in front of me smiles the Hero who will turn you into a heap of rubble!

10] He will place His standard over your walls and you shall be buried; like chaff scattered in a storm, so too will you be blown away!"

11] The Infant offered the girl His hand and demanded to go to her.

12] And the girl took Him with tremendous joy and cuddled and caressed Him.

13] The Infant played with the girl's rich strands of hair and said to her softly:

14] "My dear sister, do you really believe the words which you spoke in front of Me when I was still in My brother's arms?"

15] And the girl replied equally softly to the Infant: 16] "Yes my Saviour, my Light, my first morning Sun! – and now that You have asked me about it I believe it all the more strongly!"

17] To which the Infant replied: "It is good for you, that in your heart you believe what you said!

18] But I tell you, for the time being keep nothing more secret than this, your confession of faith!

19] For never has the enemy of all life pricked up his ears as much as now!

20] Therefore keep silent about Me, and do not betray Me if you care not to be killed by this enemy forever!"

21] And the girl promised this most emphatically, and as she caressed the Infant she became so perfectly and youthfully pretty, that everyone around was amazed thereat; and the girl could hardly help herself out of sheer bliss; so blissful was she, that she started to coo and whoop with joy.

## ***CHAPTER 99. – THE ARRIVAL OF CYRENIUS AND PILLA. JOSEPH'S REPORT ABOUT THE GIRL. CYRENIUS' COURTING OF JOSEPH'S ADOPTED DAUGHTER.***

**21 DECEMBER 1843**

- 01] Whilst the girl was still in a state of great delight, Cyrenius arrived at Joseph's place in the company of Maronius Pilla, just as he had promised the previous evening.
- 02] Joseph and Mary welcomed him with the greatest heartfelt joy and Cyrenius said:
- 03] "O my exalted friend and brother, what have you just experienced, which to my great joy has caused you to be so cheerful?"
- 04] Joseph pointed out the girl to Cyrenius and said:
- 05] "Look over there, with the Infant in her arms and lost in ecstasy, there is the reason for our joy!"
- 06] Cyrenius had a closer look at the girl and then said to Joseph:
- 07] "Have you taken her in as a nanny? – Where did this beautiful Israelite maiden come from?"
- 08] And Joseph replied to Cyrenius who was burning with curiosity:
- 09] "O dear friend! – See, a miracle brought her under this roof! – She came to me blind, looking like an aged destitute beggar woman.
- 10] But through the miraculous power of the Infant she regained her sight, and it then showed that she is a maid of hardly twenty summers, and also an orphan, so I took her in as my daughter; and this really why we are so full of joy!"
- 11] And Cyrenius, who was looking with ever increasing delight at the girl, who in her state of bliss had not even noticed him yet in spite of him being present in all his glory, said to Joseph:
- 12] "O friend, o brother! – How much I regret now being a noble Roman patrician!
- 13] Indeed, I would give everything now to be a Jew so that I could ask for the hand of this wonderful Jewess of yours!
- 14] For you know that I am single and childless. O what could such a wife be to me, one blessed by you!"
- 15] And Joseph smiled at Cyrenius and asked him: "What would you do if this girl would not be Jewess but a Roman woman of high status, just like you?
- 16] If she would be the only daughter of a patrician, whose parents met their doom in the waters of the sea during a journey to Delphi? –!"
- 17] Here Cyrenius looked at Joseph in amazement and, after being silent for a while, said:
- 18] "O exalted friend and brother! What are you telling me!? – I beg you, explain yourself more clearly; for this matter seems to concern me closely!"
- 19] But Joseph said: "My noble friend! Look, everything in its time, therefore be a little bit patient and the girl will tell you everything herself!
- 20] For the time being, you can tell me how matters stand with the exhumed corpses from the rubble of the temple!"

**CHAPTER 100. – CYRENIUS REPORTS ABOUT THE REAWAKENING OF  
THE TWO HUNDRED APPARENT CORPSES. – HIS INCREASING INTEREST  
IN THE EXOTIC GIRL JOSEPH'S DOUBTS. THE TRIPLE MATRIMONIAL  
LAW OF ANCIENT ROME.**

**22 DECEMBER 1843**

01] And Cyrenius said to Joseph: "O friend and brother! Do not worry about the corpses; for last night almost two hundred were brought back to life, and I spent the whole morning providing them with shelter!

02] And if in the course of the rubble's removal more unscathed corpses are found, then they will be provided for just like the others.

03] See, that is all of it in a nutshell and none of it is of as much importance to me as this maiden, who, according to your most credible testimony, seems to be the daughter of a Roman patrician who was killed!

04] So let me find out exactly how matters stand with this child, so that I can offer everything necessary for the well being of this orphan.

05] See, like I told you before, I am single and childless; could she perhaps be taken care of better if, as a brother of the emperor, I would take her as my lawful wife!?

06] And therefore this girl's story is near to my heart, and nearer and nearer all the time!

07] So give me the opportunity right away to discuss and talk things over with this wonderful child!"

08] And Joseph said to Cyrenius: "Noble friend and brother! You tell me that you are single, but even in Tyre you told me that you are married to a woman, – only that you not have any children with her!?

09] Tell me, how should I understand this? – You can certainly take a second wife if the first one is barren; but how you can be single as a married man, indeed, I fail to understand! Explain yourself more clearly about this!"

10] And Cyrenius smiled and said: "Dear friend! I see that you are not familiar with the laws of Rome; and therefore I have to enlighten you – so listen to me!

11] See, we Romans have a three-fold matrimonial law, two of which are not binding, and only one is.

12] According to the two non-binding laws I can even marry a slave woman; but even then I would not yet have a lawful wife, but merely a legally permitted concubine, and thus I would still be single and can at any time take a lawful wife in keeping with my station.

13] The difference between the first two non-binding laws, is that in the first case, I can simply take a concubine, without the slightest obligation to take her as my lawful wife.

14] In the second case, I can also simply have the daughter from a house of appropriate standing betrothed to me by her parents, on the condition that I take her as my lawful wife and that we produce between one and three living children, at least one of which is a boy.

15] Only in the third case does the binding law come into effect, according to which I must first be officially married to a lawful wife in front of the altar of Hymen by a priest assigned for this purpose, at which point I would no longer be single but married.

16] So for us, neither the wedding (nuptias capere) nor the provisional marriage

(patrimonium) reverses the single status, but only the true marriage (uxorem ducere) according to the laws as they are constituted at present.

17] Thus we can enter into nuptias capere, patrimonium facere and uxorem ducere, whereby only the last one reverses the single status.

18] See, I am all the more single as I cannot father children with the concubine, and even if I could, I would still be single as the father has no legal obligation towards the children of a concubine, unless the father would adopt them with the Emperor's consent!

19] So now you know everything, and therefore I implore you to acquaint me more closely with the story of this girl; for I have decided unreservedly to formally marry her now!"

20] When Joseph heard this from Cyrenius, he said: "If so, then I first want to inform and prepare the girl myself, so that the offer will not weaken or even kill her!"

**CHAPTER 101. – TULLIA MEETS CYRENIUS. A MIRACULOUS  
DISCOVERY: TULLIA, THE COUSIN AND CHILDHOOD SWEETHEART OF  
CYRENIUS. CYRENIUS IS MOVED.**

**23 DECEMBER 1843**

01] Thereupon Joseph went to the girl, who was still busy with the Infant, tugged at her sleeve and said to her:

02] "Listen, my dear daughter, have you then really not yet noticed who is here? – Just look up and see!"

03] At this point the girl awoke from her bliss and saw the radiant Cyrenius.

04] She was really frightened and asked very nervously: "O my dear father Joseph, who is this incredibly radiant man? – What does he want here? Where does he come from?"

05] And Joseph said to the girl: "O do not fear, my daughter Tullia! – Look, this is the extremely fine Cyrenius, a brother of the Emperor and Governor of Asia and a part of Africa!

06] Certainly this man will bring your affairs in Rome in good order; for at first glance you have already become very dear to him!

07] Just go over to him, ask him to hear you and bring your whole life story before him, and you can be assured that your words will not fall on deaf ears!"

08] ?And the girl said: "O my dear father! I do not dare to do this, for I know that such a gentleman probes with a terrible rigour on such occasions, and if he discovers any point that cannot be proven, then one is immediately threatened with death!

09] I already experienced once before in my state of destitution, that a gentleman such as he came to examine me, and asked me from where I came.

10] And when I told him everything faithfully, he asked me for irrefutable proof.

11] Since in my complete poverty as an orphan I was not able to provide such a proof, he then ordered me to strictly remain silent about this and threatened me with death if I would ever speak about it to anyone.

12] So I ask that you not betray me also, for I will surely be lost!"

13] Hereupon Cyrenius, who had heard this quiet discussion, walked up to Tullia and said to her:

14] "O Tullia! Do not be afraid of him who wants to do his utmost to make you as happy as possible!

15] Tell me nothing more than the name of your father, if you still remember it, for that is all I need.

16] But do not be afraid even if you have forgotten the name of your father; you will still be as precious to me being a daughter now of this my greatest friend!"

17] At this Tullia mustered more courage and said to Cyrenius: "In truth, if your gentle eye deceives me, then the whole world is a lie! So I will indeed tell you the name of my good father.

18] See, his name was Victor Aurelius Dexter Latii; – since you are a brother of the Emperor, this name cannot be unknown to you."

19] As Cyrenius heard this name he became visibly moved and said with a broken voice:

20] "O Tullia, that was a true brother of my mother! – Yes, yes, I know that he had a daughter with a lawful wife, one who was born blind and whom he loved more than anything!

21] O how often I envied him for his luck that was in fact bad luck! – But for him the blind Tullia was more precious than the whole world!

22] Yes, I myself fell in love with this Tullia although she was hardly four or five years old, and often I swore to myself that some day I would take her and only her as my lawful wife!

23] And – O God! – now I find this very same heavenly Tullia in the house of my heavenly, divine friend!

24] O God, O God! – this is too much of a reward at one time for a weak mortal, for the little that I, insignificant in front of You, have done O Lord!" – and now the weakened Cyrenius sank into a chair and only after a while regained his composure for a further discussion with Tullia.

## ***CHAPTER 102. – CYRENIUS PAYS COURT TO TULLIA. TULLIA TESTS HIM. A GOSPEL OF MARRIAGE***

**27 DECEMBER 1843**

- 01] After the recovery Cyrenius spoke again to Tullia: "Tullia! Would you not offer me your hand and become my lawful wife, if I were to ask you this from the bottom of my heart?"
- 02] And Tullia said: "And what would you do to me, if I would refuse?"
- 03] And Cyrenius responded somewhat agitated, but still with all his heart:
- 04] "Then I would sacrifice it to Him, whom you are holding in your arms, after which I would sadly leave!"
- 05] And Tullia asked Cyrenius further, saying: "Then what would you do if I would ask Him, who rests in my arms, for advice about what I should do,
- 06] and if He would advise me against accepting your offer and would tell me to remain loyal to the house, which took me in with such exceeding kindness!?"
- 07] Cyrenius was a bit taken aback by this question, and somewhat embarrassed, he said:
- 08] "Yes indeed my most wonderful Tullia, – then I would have to renounce my request without fail!
- 09] Because mortal man can never oppose the will of Him, whom all the elements must obey!
- 10] But then ask the Infant immediately, so that I will know at the earliest where I stand!"
- 11] Here the Infant sat up straight away and said: "I am not a Lord of that which is of the world; thus you are free in all earthly matters as far as I am concerned.
- 12] If you have discovered true love for each other in your hearts, then you will not break it!
- 13] For there are no other marriage laws for me than the one written in glowing letters in upon your hearts!
- 14] So if at first sight you have both recognized each other and have bonded according to this living law, then if you do not want to sin in front of Me you should no longer separate!
- 15] I recognize no earthly bond of matrimony other than the one of the heart;
- 16] and whoever breaks such a bond is the real adulterer before Me!
- 17] You, my dear Cyrenius, have set your heart so strongly on this daughter; so you should not turn it away from her anymore!
- 18] And you, daughter, if at first sight your heart was already burning for Cyrenius, then you are his wife already before Me, and do not need to become one!
- 19] Because for Me no worldly counsel or consideration is valid, but only the counsel of your hearts.
- 20] Remain faithful to this forever, if you do not want to become real adulterers before Me!
- 21] And accursed is he who for worldly considerations counsels against the affairs of love, which is from Me!
- 22] For what is more: the living love which is from Me, or the worldly motive which is from hell?
- 23] And woe betide the love based on the world; it will be accursed!" –

24] These words of the Infant stunned everyone, and nobody dared to say anything further concerning the matter of marriage.



**CHAPTER 103. – THE DIVINE CHILD EXPLAINS THE LIVING MARRIAGE  
LAW. THE LOVE OF THE MIND AND THE LOVE OF THE HEART. THE  
UNION OF THE TWO LOVERS THROUGH THE INFANT. TULLIA'S  
COMMITMENT TO THE INFANT'S DIVINITY.**

**28 DECEMBER 1843**

01] And since after the speech of the Infant everyone was still bewildered, with no one daring to say a word, the Infant suddenly opened His mouth again and said:

02] "Why do you all stand around Me so sadly? I certainly did not hurt anybody!

03] To you, my Cyrenius, I gave what your heart desired, and the same to you, my dear Tullia; what more do you want?

04] Am I supposed to sanction the living adultery, while you humans have passed the death sentence onto the dead one?

05] What kind of demand would that be?! For is that which occurs in life, not more, than that which is held in the judgment of death?

06] I mean, you should really be glad, and not mourn about this because it is so!

07] The one who loves, does he love in the heart or in the head?

08] You, however, have drawn your marriage laws not from the heart but only from the head!

09] But life is only in our hearts and it starts from there into all parts of man, also to the head, which in itself has no life, but is dead.

10] And since you already sanction the laws of the head with death, which like the head are dead, how much more fair it is to respect the living eternal laws of the heart!

11] So be glad that I, the Living One among you, adhere to the laws of life; for if I did not do so, eternal death would have come over all of you long ago!

12] For this I came into the world, that through Me all the works and laws of death shall be destroyed and their place be taken by the ancient laws of life!

13] And when I show you in advance what the laws of life as well as those of death are, what suffering have I thus caused you that you grieve, and are afraid of Me as if I would have brought you death instead of life?!

14] O you fools! In Me, the old eternal life has come to you; so rejoice and never be sad again!

15] And you, my Cyrenius, take the wife which I give you; and you, Tullia, take the husband whom I led to you in all earnestness; and you shall never part!

16] But once the death of the body will have separated you, the surviving part shall be free outwardly, but the love shall last forever, Amen."

17] These words of the Infant caused great astonishment in everybody;

18] and Tullia said, trembling in great awe:

19] "O people! This Child is no human child, He is the highest Divinity Himself!

20] For no man can talk like this, only a God; only a God who is the basis of life Itself can know the laws of life and awaken them in us!

21] We humans are all dead; how could we find the laws of life and apply the same as such?

22] O You supremely sacred Infant, only now I clearly recognize what I have vaguely suspected so far: You are the Lord of heaven and of earth for eternity! – All my devotion be to You!"

***CHAPTER 104. - CYRENIUS' REQUEST FOR THE INFANT'S BLESSING.  
THE INFANT'S DEMAND TO CYRENIUS TO RENOUNCE EUDOKIA FOR  
TULLIA'S SAKE. CYRENIUS' INNER STRUGGLE. THE INFANT'S STRONG  
WILL. EUDOKIA IS BROUGHT TO JOSEPH'S HOUSE.***

**29 DECEMBER 1843**

01] This noble speech of Tullia impressed Cyrenius greatly and he stepped towards Tullia, who was still holding the Infant in her arms, and deeply moved he said to the Infant:

02] "O You my Life, You the true God of my heart! Since You have already most graciously united me with this girl, I, a poor sinner, also ask You for Your blessing, to which I will remain faithful my whole life!"

03] Thereupon the Infant sat up and said: "Yes, My dear Cyrenius, I bless you with your wife Tullia!

04] But in return you have to give Me the woman, to whom you were married until now!

05] For if you do not do this, you would remain before Me in the sin of adultery; for you have loved this woman – and still love her very much!

06] But if you hand over this woman to me and completely give her up and sacrifice her to Me, then you will also have given your sin to Me.

07] For this I came into this world, that I may take all the sins of the people of the world upon Me, and redeem it through My love before Its divine countenance forever! – So be it!"

08] Initially Cyrenius was somewhat taken aback by this demand; for his wife was an exceedingly beautiful Greek slave, whom he had bought for a considerable amount of money.

09] He loved her very much for her great beauty, although he had no children by her.

10] Although this Greek woman was already thirty years old, she was still so beautiful that she was worshiped by the lesser pagans as a true Venus.

11] Therefore this demand was a bit hard for our good Cyrenius, and he preferred it not having been made at all.

12] The Infant however would not let off, and insisted strongly on His demand.

13] When Cyrenius realized that the Infant would not budge in the least, he said to the Infant:

02] "O You my Life! See, in my heart I have become very attached to my wife, the beautiful Eudokia, and I would miss her greatly!

15] Indeed, if it would be possible, I would rather leave Tullia to You than to give You the ever so beautiful Eudokia!"

16] The Infant, however, smiled at Cyrenius and said to him: "Do you think I am a trader of some sort?

17] O see, that I am surely not! – Or do you hold Me to be a being one can barter with over a stated word?

18] O I tell you, if you would say to Me: 'Let the whole visible sky and the visible earth vanish!', I would rather lend you my ears for that than take back one once spoken word!

19] Truly, I say to you: the sun, the moon and the stars and this earth will vanish, they will

age like a dress and thus come to nothing; but My words never ever so!

20] You will therefore have Eudokia brought here immediately and only then will you receive Tullia, blessed by Me.

21] However, if you resist, I will let Eudokia die on you

– and will never give you Tullia.

22] For what you do, you must do freely; any enforced action has no value before Me!

23] If Eudokia dies, then you are already judged with her death and can no longer become Tullia's husband.

24] If however you offer up Eudokia freely to Me, then you are indeed free and Tullia can be your lawful wife!

25] According to My order you cannot have two wives, for in the beginning only one man and one woman were created.

26] Therefore do what I have just told you, so that no judgment will come upon you!"

27] These words from the Child led Cyrenius to decide in an instant to have Eudokia brought from the city;

28] for he had taken her with him from Tyre, but did not allow anyone to see her, so that no one could become captivated by her great charm.

29] But even now he did not entrust her to anyone else than Joseph's eldest son and Maronius Pilla only.

30] These two went with Cyrenius' escort of bodyguards to his residence and soon brought the beautiful Eudokia to Joseph's house; but Eudokia was very surprised about all this and did not know how it came to be that for the first time, Cyrenius had sent some strange men to fetch her.

## ***CHAPTER 105. - CYRENIUS' SECOND PLEA TO KEEP EUDOKIA. THE INFANT'S REFUSAL. EUDOKIA'S REBELLION. THE VICTORY OF THE SPIRIT IN CYRENIUS. MARY'S CONSOLING WORDS TO EUDOKIA.***

**30 DECEMBER 1843**

01] When Cyrenius now saw Eudokia opposite Tullia, he found her to be considerably more beautiful than Tullia, and it pained him to separate from her forever.

02] So once again, he asked the Infant if he could at least keep her as a maid and a companion for Tullia.

03] But the Infant said: "My Cyrenius! You can have as many maids as you want in your house,

04] but not Eudokia! You have to leave her here because I want it that way for your own good!"

05] When Eudokia saw and learned of all this, how this minor Child replied to Cyrenius authoritatively,

06] she was horrified and said: "But for the sake of all the gods, what is all this?! – A minor Child commands the one, before whom Asia and Egypt tremble when he speaks!

07] And the great ruler anxiously listens to the firmly commanding Child and bows to his wishes?!"

08] From what I hear, I should separate from Cyrenius so that someone else can take my place!

09] O this will not happen as easily as this minor Child thinks!

10] For you, mighty Cyrenius, it would be an utter disgrace if you allow yourself to be ordered around by this Child; so be a man and a Roman!"

11] When Cyrenius heard these words from Eudokia, he became agitated and said:

12] "Yes, Eudokia! I will show you right now that I am a man and a Roman!

13] See, even if this Child whom Tullia is coaxing would not be of divine descent and He would talk to me with nearly such divine wisdom, I would still follow Him!

14] But this Child is from the highest divine origin, and so I will follow Him all the more, whatever it is He wants from me!

15] Now what would you prefer: to do what this Child of all children demands or to die forever?"

16] These words from Cyrenius to Eudokia had a great effect.

17] She even began to cry, since she would suddenly have to give up such great splendour,

18] but she also realised that one is not able to change the counsel of a God and so she resigned herself to it.

19] But Mary went over to Eudokia, and said to her: "Eudokia! – do not grieve about this exchange!

20] For you are only to sacrifice one minor splendour to receive a much greater one in return!

21] See, I am also a king's daughter, but the royal splendour has faded since long and now

look, I am a maid of the Lord, and that is a much greater splendour than all the royalty in the world!"

22] These words had a great effect on Eudokia, and she began to take heart in Joseph's house.

## ***CHAPTER 106. – EUDOKIA WANTS TO BE ENLIGHTENED ABOUT THE CHILD. MARY URGES HER TO BE PATIENT. THE INFANT JESUS IN EUDOKIA'S ARMS AND IN DISCUSSION WITH HER.***

***2 JANUARY 1844***

01] Eudokia asked Mary, how it could be, that this Infant was so full of miraculous power and of such a most high divine nature.

02] And how it had come to pass, that Cyrenius now seemed to depend so much on the Infant's words.

03] Mary said to Eudokia sweetly: "Dear Eudokia! See, one cannot rush such things!

04] Everything in its own sweet time; we will get the farthest with gentle patience!

05] If you would stay with me for some time, you would get to know everything; but for the moment, believe me, this Child is greater than all the heroes and Gods of Rome!

06] Did you not sense the great power of the storm yesterday?

07] It came from the powerful hand of He whom Tullia coaxes!

08] And look, what the power of this storm did to the temples of the city, this it could do to the whole earth!

09] So for now you know enough and for your own salvation you shall not know more than that;

10] when you become more versed, you will also get to know more!

11] Therefore I ask you to remain silent about this for your own salvation and not mention it to anyone; for if you do talk about it, you will be judged!"

12] These words of Mary calmed Eudokia down, and she began to think deeply about what she had learned from Mary.

13] Mary then went to Tullia, took the Infant from her arms again, and said to her:

14] "Look, you have already been blessed by Him, my son, and now you will be happy forever!

15] But over there is poor Eudokia; she has not yet felt the infinite relief of the Infant's blessing! Therefore I will place the Infant also in Eudokia's arms so that she may feel what power radiates from the Infant!"

16] Thereupon Maria carried the Infant to Eudokia and said to her:

17] Here – Eudokia, is my and your salvation! Take Him in your arms for some time and experience how sweet it is to be the mother of such a Child!"

18] And Eudokia took the Infant in her arms with great reverence;

19] but she was afraid of this mysterious Child and hardly dared to sway back and forth.

20] But the Infant smiled and said: "O Eudokia! do not be afraid of Me; for I am not your undoing but your Saviour!

21] In a short while however you will get to know Me better than you know Me now!

22] Then you will not be afraid of Me anymore but will love Me as I love you!" – These words took away Eudokia's fear and she began to kiss and cuddle the Infant.

**CHAPTER 107. - CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE. THE MAGNANIMITY AND THE WISDOM OF THE HUMBLE JOSEPH. CYRENIUS HANDS OVER EIGHT POOR CHILDREN TO BE RAISED BY JOSEPH.**

**3 JANUARY 1844**

01] Now Cyrenius said to Joseph: "Exalted friend and brother! I have found my greatest good fortune in your house in every respect; now tell me, what reward do you want for yourself from me?!"

02] O tell me, how can I compensate you even in the least degree for all you have done to me?!"

03] And do not bring this villa into the equation, which is too poor and miserable a reward for you!"

04] And Joseph said: "O brother and friend, what do take me for?!"

05] Do you take me for a trader in good deeds who does good only for the sake of a reward?

06] O how greatly mistaken you are believe me to be like that!

07] See, I do not know anything more miserable than a paid benefactor a paid good deed!

08] Indeed! The hour and the day I was born shall be damned if I would accept even one stater from you!

09] Hence take your wife, the cleansed Tullia, with you in all good cheer. What you will do to her and many other poor people, I will always regard and accept as a proper reward for my deeds to you!

10] But spare this house from any endowment; for what I have is enough for all of us – why then should there be more?

11] Or do you think I should ask any board amount from you for Eudokia? – Oh – do not worry!

12] I take her as my daughter and will rear her in the mercy of God.

13] For where is the father who asks for payment from anybody for raising his daughter?!"

14] I tell you, Eudokia is worth more than the whole world. Therefore no offered reward exists in the world that could be accepted for her.

15] The greatest reward, however, which I have for all my dealings, see, now rests in Eudokia's arms!"

16] When Cyrenius saw this great unselfishness of Joseph, he was very touched and said:

17] "Indeed, before God and all human beings on earth you stand alone as a man of all men!"

18] To praise you with words would be a wasted effort; for you stand above every word of man!

19] But I know what I should do to show you my exceedingly high respect and appreciation.

20] I will give you a present which you will surely not refuse!

21] See, in Tyre I have three girls and five boys from very poor parents who already died!



22] I will bring these lovely children over to you so that they can be raised by you!

23] You can be fully assured that I will see to their upkeep.

24] Will you deny me that too? – No, Joseph, you my most exalted brother, surely you will not do as such!"

25] And Joseph was very touched and said: "No, brother, I will never deny you that! Send the children here as soon as possible and they shall be well looked after in everything they may need!"

***CHAPTER 108. - CYRENIUS' DOUBTS ABOUT THE CONSECRATION OF  
THE MARRIAGE THROUGH A HIGH PRIEST OF HYMEN. JOSEPH'S GOOD  
ADVICE AND CYRENIUS' GREAT JOY.***

***4 JANUARY 1844***

01] And Cyrenius, completely satisfied by Joseph's assurance, then said to Joseph:

02] "Exalted friend! Now every one of my wishes has been fulfilled, and there is nothing more that I desire!

03] Only one critical circumstance prevails over my great good fortune, which is as follows:

04] Tullia, the heavenly one, is indeed now my lawful wife with God's blessing; but see, I am outwardly still a Roman and

must also, for the sake of the people, have it consecrated by a priest!

05] Such a consecration can only be performed by a high priest of Hymen; only then can the alliance be considered legal.

06] But how can such a thing be done here, with only the three lesser priests available?"

07] And Joseph spoke to Cyrenius: "Why do you worry about things that do not matter in the least?

08] If indeed you attach any importance to such a consecration, you will find enough priests on your return to Tyre, who will consecrate you in exchange for money.

09] However, you are better off remaining as you are now; after all, you are also the master of your own law!

10] I recall once having heard a Roman say, that there is a secret law in Rome, which states:

11] 'If a man espouses a maiden in the presence of a mute person, a fool or an under-aged child,

12] and these are good-natured and smiling during the selection, then the marriage is considered perfectly lawful, which should then be notified to the relevant priest,

13] whereby, of course, a small shiny offering should not be lacking.'

14] If this secret law is valid, then what else is necessary?

15] Let the three priests, who are with me, come; they will testify that you have chosen Tullia in the presence of a Child, not yet four months old, who smiled at you and even blessed you!

16] When you have this most innocent witness and a bit of gold, what more can the Roman people possibly want?!"

17] And Cyrenius literally leapt for joy and spoke to Joseph:

18] "Indeed, exalted brother, you are absolutely right! There is really such a law; but at first I could not recall it!

19] Now everything is in the best order; so send for the three priests, and I will confer with them in this matter at once!" – And Joseph asked for the three still silent priests to enter the room.

## ***CHAPTER 109. - THE PRIESTS' MISGIVINGS. CYRENIUS TAKES OVER THE RESPONSIBILITY. A POOR TESTIMONIAL OF ROME AND ITS GREED. CYRENIUS' MARRIAGE TO TULLIA.***

***5 JANUARY 1844***

01] The three priests immediately came, and one said: "Only an order of the governor would induce us to speak today;

02] for we took a vow this morning that we would remain silent and not eat a single bite throughout the day!

03] However, as mentioned earlier, we are breaking this vow this evening, as we are compelled to do so on the governor's order! – May he one day bear the responsibility for us!"

04] Cyrenius responded: "Really, I have not compelled you; but as you have scruples about this, I will gladly accept the responsibility!

05] For I am in the house of Him who is ultimately concerned with such accountabilities, and so I believe that in this reckoning, things will not weigh as heavily against me as you imagine in your foolishness!"

06] And Joseph spoke: "O brother! The accounting is already completed, so just tell the three priests what you require of them!"

07] One of the priests, however, anticipated Cyrenius and asked him what they were supposed to do for him.

08] And Cyrenius briefly presented his request to them.

09] The three spoke: "The law is right, and so is the deed; however, we are merely lesser priests and our testimony will not be considered as lawful!"

10] And Cyrenius explained to them, that in the absence of a high priest, every lesser priest could and indeed, was obliged, to hold the office and exercise the powers of a high priest.

11] The priests spoke: "That is correct; but look, you condemned us when we wanted to pontificate two days ago!

12] If we should again pontificate before you, would you not condemn us once again?!"

13] Cyrenius spoke excitedly: "I condemned you at that time, because you wanted to pontificate entirely illegally.

14] Now, however, you have the legal authority before you; so if you act accordingly, you need not fear my condemnation!

15] Instead I will give you an offering that will ensure your livelihood! And an offering for Rome will be taken care of as well!"

16] And the priests spoke: "Good; but we three do not give allegiance to the gods anymore and want nothing more to do with Rome's paganism!

17] Will our testimony be considered as lawful, once Rome comes to hear of our conversion to Israel's faith?"

18] And Cyrenius spoke: "You know as well as I do that in Rome money can legitimize any testimony!

19] Therefore do what I demand of you, and do not concern yourselves with anything else; for I will take care of it!"

20] The priests first weighed this assurance before issuing, and thereby sanctifying, the testimony demanded by Cyrenius.

21] When Cyrenius got the official document, he first stretched out his hand to Tullia and then raised her up as his now lawful wife,

22] and gave her a ring and immediately arranged for royal robes to be fetched for her from the city.

**CHAPTER 110. – TULLIA IN ROYAL ROBES. EUDOKIA'S PAIN. THE  
INFANT CONSOLES EUDOKIA. EUDOKIA'S TEARS OF JOY. MARY'S  
PARTICIPATION.**

**8 JANUARY 1844**

01] In a short time, the royal robes were brought for Tullia, and she was attired in them, as earlier mentioned.

02] Mary took back her robe, washed it, and then kept it again for herself.

03] Cyrenius, sure enough, wanted to give Mary royal garments for it also;

04] but Mary as well as Joseph solemnly declined this.

05] When Eudokia saw Tullia in her true royal splendour, her heart was so heavy, that she began to sigh secretly.

06] The Infant spoke to her softly: "Eudokia, I tell you, do not sigh because of the world, but sigh because of your sins, and you will be better off!

07] For look, I am greater than Cyrenius and Rome; if you have Me, you have more than if you possessed the whole world.

08] However, if you want to have me completely, then you must repent your sins which caused you to become barren.

09] If you repent your sins for love of Me, then you will recognize who I really am to the extent of your love of Me!

10] And when you do recognize Me, you will be happier than if you were the wife of the emperor himself!

11] For look, the emperor has to keep powerful guards, so that he is not dethroned.

12] But I am sufficient onto Myself alone! Spirits, suns, moons, earths and all the elements obey Me; and yet I do not require guards and I allow Myself to be carried in your arms despite your being a sinner!

13] Therefore remain calm and do not cry; for you have received that what was taken away from Tullia when she accepted the royal robes!

14] And that is infinitely more than those gold- shimmering royal robes, which are dead and bring death,

15] while you carry Life in your arms and will never taste death, as long as you love Me!" –

16] The Infant's words had such a salutary effect on Eudokia's spirit that she began to cry in the great joy of her blessed amazement.

17] Mary noticed that Eudokia had burst into tears of joy, so she went to her and asked her:

18] "Sweet Eudokia, what has happened to you that I see gentle tears in your eyes?"

19] And Eudokia replied after a deep sigh of happiness:

20] "O you most fortunate of all the mothers on earth! Look, your Infant has spoken to me in a miraculous manner!

21] Truly, no mortal man in all his worldly greatness, but only gods are capable of such words!

22] My breast is now full of wonderful thoughts and premonitions. They rise in me, as if from hidden depths, like bright stars from the sea, and hence I am weeping in delight!"

23] Mary spoke: "Eudokia, just be patient, after the stars the sun will also come; only in its light will you see where you are! – But be quiet now, for Cyrenius is coming over."

**CHAPTER 111. – CYRENIUS' EXPRESSION OF GRATITUDE TO THE  
INFANT. THE INFANT'S WORDS OF BLESSING TO THE BRIDAL COUPLE.  
JOSEPH'S INVITATION TO THE WEDDING FEAST. CYRENIUS' RETURN TO  
THE CITY.**

**9 JANUARY 1844**

01] As Cyrenius came with Tullia towards Eudokia, who was still carrying the Infant in her arms, he spoke to the Infant:

02] "O You my Life; You are my all in all! To you alone I owe this, my great and wonderful fortune!

03] I did only little for You, and You rewarded me in such an unspeakable way and made me the happiest man on earth!

04] O how can I, a poor sinner, ever be able to thank you enough for it?!"

05] The Infant sat up, raised His right hand and spoke:

06] "O My dear Cyrenius Quirinus, I now bless you and your wife Tullia, so that you live happily together in the world!

07] However, I also tell you: Never appraise yourself as too lucky in the fortunes of the world, but regard the world as a theatre of delusion and you will enjoy life in the world in the right measure of wisdom!

08] For look, everything in the world is exactly the opposite of what it appear to be; only love, when it springs from the bottom of the heart, is true and righteous!

09] Wherever you see life without love, there is no life, but death!

10] But where you imagine death to be in the serenity of true love, there life dwells, and it cannot be destroyed by anyone!

11] You do not know, how weak the foundation is upon which you stand; but I know it, and therefore I tell you all this!

12] Just dig one thousand fathoms deep at this place, and you will have an immense abyss before you that will devour you.

13] So do not dig too deeply within the world, and do not rejoice at the discoveries in the depths of the world;

14] for wherever someone digs too deeply into the world, he has also prepared his own downfall.

15] Do not trust the small spot on which you stand; for it is loose and can engulf you, if you dig there and make a mine in the ground!

16] Bear in mind that everything in the world can kill you, because everything carries death within itself, – only the exclusive love does not kill, if you preserve it in its purity!

17] If you mix it with worldly matters, it will become heavy and can also kill you, physically as well as spiritually.

18] Consequently, remain in this pure and unselfish love; love the one God as your Father and Creator of everything and love human beings as equal brothers and sisters, and you will have everlasting life in such love, Amen."

19] The Infant's exceedingly wise words instilled such deep respect in Cyrenius as well as

all those present that they trembled all over.

20] Joseph went to Cyrenius and spoke: "Brother, get hold of yourself, and go to the city with the blessing of this house! For the time being, however, keep all that you have heard or received here secret! Come here tomorrow and hold the marriage feast!" – And Cyrenius immediately proceeded into the city with Tullia and his entourage.



## ***CHAPTER 112. - A NOVEL SURPRISE AT JOSEPH'S HOUSE: FOREIGN WHITE-ATTIRED YOUTHS AS HELPERS IN THE HOUSE.***

***10 JANUARY 1844***

01] Rather late in the evening, as Cyrenius left for the city with his people, Joseph said to his sons:

02] "Children, go now, and get our household in order! Take care of the cows and the donkeys, and then prepare supper, one that is good and fresh; for I must adopt and bless my new daughter at a joyful meal today itself!"

03] Hereupon Joseph's sons immediately went and did as their father had ordered.

04] But imagine their surprise when they found several white-attired youths, diligently tending the cows.

05] Joseph's sons asked them who had ordered them to do this and whose servants they were.

06] The youths spoke: "We are the Lord's servants at all times, and the Lord has ordered us to do this work; hence we are doing it!"

07] Joseph's sons asked the youths: "Who is your Lord, and where does he live? Is he by any chance Cyrenius?"

08] And the youths spoke: "Our Lord is also your Lord, who lives with you, – and his name is not Cyrenius!"

09] Joseph's sons then assumed that the youths were referring to their father, and thus spoke to them:

10] "In that case, come with us, so that our father, who is the master of this house, can identify you as his servants!"

11] And the youths spoke: "First milk the cows, and then we will go with you and introduce our Lord to you!"

12] Here the sons took the milk pitcher and milked three times more milk than the usual quantity, even though they had taken similar good care of the cows previously.

13] They were exceedingly astonished and could not explain why the cows gave so much milk this time.

14] When they had finished milking the cows, the youths spoke:

15] "Now, as you have finished your work, let us go into the house, where your and our Lord lives!"

16] However, your father has also ordered you to prepare a good supper; this must be ready, before we enter the Lord's chamber!"

17] The youths immediately went into the kitchen, and look, there were several youths busily engaged in the preparation of a delicious evening meal. –

18] However, as Joseph felt that his sons were taking more time than usual to complete their tasks, he went to check what they were doing.

19] But he was astonished to see the kitchen overcrowded with workers!

20] He at once asked his sons what in the Lord's name was happening.

21] The youths replied: "Joseph, do not worry; for everything is and happens only

according to the Lord's will! – However, let us first prepare supper, then you will learn the details from the Lord Himself."

***CHAPTER 113. - MARY'S ASTONISHMENT ABOUT THE INCESSANT VISITATIONS. JOSEPH'S CONSOLATION. THE ANGEL'S AWE OF THE INFANT AND HIS WORDS TO THE ARCHANGEL. THE SHARED SUPPER.***

***11 JANUARY 1844***

01] Joseph then immediately went into the room and told Mary and Eudokia what he had seen and what was happening in the kitchen.

02] Mary and Eudokia were astonished at what he said, and Mary spoke:

03] "O great God, we are not safe from Your visitations for one second! – Before one of them has barely left the room, hundreds of others set foot into the room in their place!

04] O Lord, will You then never grant us any peace?! – Should we perhaps flee once again, and this time perhaps from the Romans? What will come of this phenomenon?"

05] Joseph spoke: "Dear Mary, do not frighten yourself in vain! See, we are just wanderers in this world, and the Lord is our guide!

06] We will obediently follow the Lord wherever He leads us in His holy will; for He alone knows where and what is best for us!

07] See, you are always frightened, when the Lord sends us something new; I, on the other hand, am overjoyed with it, – for I know now that the Lord always takes the best care of us!

08] The Lord sent me a severe test this morning; it made me very unhappy.

09] But the sadness did not last long; for the one who died was brought back to life, and I am once again full of cheerfulness and now look forward to a good and blessed supper.

10] It will be better for you if you would do the same, instead of all your useless fear and timidity!"

11] These words of Joseph soothed Mary, and she was now full of curiosity to see the new cooks in the kitchen.

12] She therefore got up and wanted to go and have a look; but at that moment, Joseph's sons entered the room laden with food, and all the youths followed them with the highest respect.

13] And as they came near the Infant, they suddenly kneeled down and worshiped Him.

14] The Infant raised Himself up and spoke to the youths: "Rise, archangels of My infinite heaven!

15] I have heard your petition! Your love wants to serve Me also here in my lowliness; but I, your Lord of infinity, have never needed your service!

16] However, as your love is so immense, you may remain here for three earth-days and serve this house; but apart from those in this house, no one shall learn who you are!

17] Now share the supper with My foster father and My birth mother and with this daughter, who carries Me in her arms, with the three seekers and with My brothers!"

18] Thereupon the youths got up, Mary took the Infant, and everyone sat down at the table, began singing the hymn of praise with Joseph, and ate and drank in great bliss and merriment.

19] However, the archangels appearing as youths wept in sheer bliss and spoke:

20] "Truly, eternities full of the supreme delight have passed under our gaze;

21] but all the most blissful eternities are outweighed at this moment, in which we are eating at the table of the Lord, indeed at the table of His children, among whom He exists in all His fullness! – O Lord! Let us also become Your children!"

## ***CHAPTER 114. - MARY'S CONVERSATIONS WITH ZURIEL AND GABRIEL THE INFANT'S ADVICE ON THE NEW ORDER IN HEAVEN AND ON EARTH. EUDOKIA'S CURIOSITY REGARDING THE 'ARCH-HERALDS'.***

***12 JANUARY 1844***

01] After supper, as all, together with Joseph, had offered the Lord a song of praise, one of the youths spoke to Mary:

02] "Mary, blessed are you among the women on earth! Do you not recognize me anymore? – Am I not the one, who so often played with you in the temple and who brought you good food and sweet beverages?"

03] Here Mary was startled and spoke: "Yes, I recognize you, you are Zuriel, an archangel! You teased me a lot sometimes, because you spoke to me, but did not allow me to see you;

04] and often I had to beg you for hours, before you could be persuaded to let me see you!"

05] And the youth spoke: "See, blessed mother, it was the will of the Lord, who loves you so very dearly.

06] Just as your heart, as the seat of love, incessantly beats and tugs and teases your whole nature,

07] so also is the nature of the Lord's love that he constantly tugs and teases His love ones, but thereby shaping life and making it durable for all eternity!"

08] Mary was very pleased to hear this explanation and praised the Lord's wonderful grace.

09] Another youth turned to Mary and spoke: "Blessed virgin! Do you also recognize me? It cannot have been more than a year since I visited you in Nazareth!"

10] And Mary recognized him by his voice and spoke: "Yes, yes, you are Gabriel! Truly, no one is equal to you; for you certainly brought the most important message to the earth, and the salvation of all mankind!"

11] And the youth replied to Mary: "O virgin! You are mistaken in the first part; for look, the Lord has already begun with me to make use of the smallest and most insignificant means, to execute the greatest deed!

12] Therefore I am only the least significant and the smallest in the Kingdom of Heaven, and not the greatest! – I indeed brought the greatest and most holy message to the earth;

13] however, I am not thus unequal to others in greatness; it is just the opposite, I am the least in the Kingdom of God!"

14] Mary, together with Joseph, was astonished at the youth's great humility.

15] But the Infant spoke: "Yes, this angel is right! In the beginning, the greatest one was the one closest to me.

16] He, however, elevated himself and wanted to be equal to Me, and wanted to surpass Me, and therefore distanced himself from Me.

17] Therefore I created heaven and earth and gave the order, that only the insignificant ones should be closest to Me!

18] I have now chosen all the lowliness of the world for myself, and thus only the greatest

ones will be with Me, who are, like Me in the world, themselves the least significant and the lowliest.

19] And so Gabriel, you are right, and the mother is also right; for you are the greatest, as you are the least of and in yourself!"

20] As the Infant said these words to the youth Gabriel, all the youths instantly fell to their knees and worshiped Him.

21] Eudokia, however, pondered back and forth; for she did not know what to make of these exceedingly beautiful youths.

22] She heard that these youths were called 'archangels' and that they came from the Kingdom of God, – but she also considered Palestine and Upper Egypt to be the Kingdom of God. She therefore asked whether they were, perhaps, envoys.

23] One of the youths spoke: "Eudokia, just be patient! See, we are staying here for three days, and we will get better acquainted with each other!" – And Eudokia was satisfied with this and soon retired for the night.

**CHAPTER 115. - JOSEPH CALLS FOR PEACE AT NIGHT. THE YOUTHS'  
DISCLOSURE ABOUT THE NIGHTLY ATTACK BY THREE HUNDRED  
ROBBERS. THE ATTACK. THE VICTORY OF THE ANGELS.**

**13 JANUARY 1844**

- 01] And Joseph spoke: "Children and friends! It has become late evening now; therefore I think it's time to retire!"
- 02] But the youths spoke: "Yes, father Joseph, you are right; all of you who still live in mortal bodies should have a good rest!"
- 03] But we will go outside and guard your house!
- 04] For the enemy of life has come to know by cunning that the Lord resides here, and has decided to attack this house tonight and murder Him.
- 05] Therefore we are here to protect this house; and when the enemy comes, he shall be mauled!"
- 06] Joseph and Mary, the still awake Eudokia, the three priests and Joseph's sons were terribly shocked at this news;
- 07] and Joseph spoke: "If it is like that, then I do not want to rest, but keep watch with you throughout the night!"
- 08] But the youths spoke: "All of you, do not worry in the least; we are enough and have enough power to annihilate the whole creation according to the Lord's will!"
- 09] Why should we be afraid of a handful of hired, cowardly murderers!?
- 10] For look, the whole issue is that some friends of the perished priesthood have come to know by the efforts of Satan, that Cyrenius has become a good friend of the Jews and that through this house.
- 11] Therefore they hatched a secret plot and swore to attack this house tonight and kill everyone inside.
- 12] But we have anticipated such a plan for long and therefore have come here to protect this house.
- 13] So be very calm: tomorrow you will see, how we worked for you throughout this night!"
- 14] When Joseph heard such loyal assurances of protection from the youths, he praised and honoured God,
- 15] then first led Eudokia to her bedroom, blessed her as his own daughter whereupon she immediately retired.
- 16] Then Mary and her children went with the Infant into the same room and took Him to bed with her.
- 17] Then the three priests went into their rooms as well; but Joseph and the sons stayed in the dining room and stayed awake.
- 18] And the youths went outside and installed themselves around the house.
- 19] While midnight approached, one could discern the clang of arms on the road from the city to the villa.
- 20] Within minutes, Joseph's entire house was encircled by three hundred armed men.
- 21] But as they wanted to force their way into the house, the youths arose and

instantaneously strangled the entire horde except one man.

22] This one man they tied up and brought him in a room to bear witness the next day.

23] And so it came that Joseph's house was miraculously saved and remained in peace and protected from any future attack.



**CHAPTER 116. - THE PREPARATIONS FOR CYRENIUS' WEDDING  
BANQUET. THE REVERENCE OF THE ANGELS BEFORE THE BATHING  
INFANT. THE REAWAKENING OF THE MURDERERS' CORPSES THROUGH  
THE INFANT'S BATHWATER**

**15 JANUARY 1844**

01] In the early morning, even before sunrise, there was activity all around in Joseph's house.

02] Joseph's sons and the youths took care of the stable and the kitchen; for many things had to be prepared for Cyrenius' wedding banquet.

03] Joseph himself went outside together with some youths, Zuriel and Gabriel, and inspected the dead bodies and spoke to the two:

04] "What shall happen to this? Shouldn't we first bury them, before Cyrenius comes from the city?!"

05] But the youths spoke: "Joseph! Do not worry about that, for especially the governor has to see the power that resides in your house!

06] Therefore these corpses remain here until Cyrenius arrives, and he himself may have them carried away."

07] Joseph was satisfied with this reply and went back into the house with both of them.

08] When they entered the room, Mary was just bathing the Infant while Eudokia assisted her where she could.

09] The two youths remained standing in greatest reverence with crossed hands on their chests, as long as the Infant was being bathed.

10] But after the Infant had finished His bath and had been dressed in fresh clothes, He promptly called Joseph and spoke:

11] "Joseph! nobody on the land that is part of this house shall die!

12] But the reason I called you is for you to take this water and store it.

13] When Cyrenius returns from the city and sees the strangled men, you will take this water and sprinkle it on them; they will become alive and shall be brought before the state tribunal.

But first you must tie the hands of each 14] corpse at the back, so that, while it awakens, it does not immediately grab a weapon and defend itself!"

15] When Joseph heard this, he and the two youths immediately carried out what the Infant had said;

16] and when he had finished binding the hands of the last corpse, Cyrenius arrived from the city in full splendour, with a large entourage.

17] But he was appalled at the sight of these bound corpses and hastily asked, what had happened here.

18] And Joseph told him the whole story, had the water brought to him and sprinkled it on the corpses, whereupon they immediately arose as from a deep slumber.

19] And Cyrenius, now informed about everything, had the resuscitated men immediately brought to the state prison.

20] And when all of them, including the one kept alive, were taken into custody under strict surveillance, Cyrenius went to his room with his bride and there abundantly praised and honoured the God of Israel.

***CHAPTER 117. – CYRENIUS' ANNOYANCE AT THE TRAITORS. JOSEPH'S  
INDICATION OF THE LORD'S HELP. CYRENIUS AND THE ANGELS. THE  
POWERFUL MIRACLE OF THE ANGELS.***

***16 JANUARY 1844***

01] But Cyrenius was a bit annoyed about this occurrence and he did not know what to do with these traitors.

01] Therefore he went to Joseph and talked it over with him; but Joseph replied:

02] "Be cheerful, my brother before the Lord! 03] Not a hair on your head will be touched because of this.

04] See, you are surely my greatest friend and benefactor on this earth; but what good would all your friendship have done me in the night?

05] These hired assassins could have cooked and roasted me and my entire household last night without you having heard anything about it before this morning, when you came to me and would have found nothing remaining of me!

06] Who then was my saviour? Who could have seen through these secret plans of the wicked long before and has sent me help at the right time?

07] See, it was the Lord, my God and your God! – Therefore be cheerful; for you are also now in the all-protective hand of the Lord, and He will not permit one hair on your head to be touched!"

08] And with Tullia by his side who was busy with the Infant, Cyrenius thanked Joseph for this consolation with heartfelt gratitude.

09] But right then he saw the two marvellous youths, and also noticed that there were more of them present in the kitchen.

10] So he asked Joseph from where these beautiful and tender youths came, and if they were also some of the less fortunate ones who were rescued earlier.

11] But Joseph spoke: "See, each man has his servants; and you know by now that my little Child is also a Lord!

12] And see, these are his servants; and it is they, who protected this house from its ruin last night!

13] But do not guess which country they come from; for you will not get anywhere, since these helpers have an indescribable strength and power.

14] So they will not tell you and by applying force you will get nothing out of them, because they are too powerful and infinitely strong!

15] And Cyrenius spoke: " So they are demigods, like in our mythical teachings?

16] What?! – Do you also have such demigods besides the one God, who are destined to do good service to men as well as to the main God?!

17] And Joseph spoke: "O brother, you are greatly mistaken! See, there can be no question of demigods with us in eternity;

18] but we do have highly blessed Spirits who are now angels of God, but who once lived on the earth like we do!

19] But what you have heard from me now, you will need to keep silent about, as if you

have never heard anything about it, otherwise you could be suffer serious harm!"

20] Cyrenius put his finger on his mouth and swore to keep silent until his death.

21] Hereupon the two youths approached Cyrenius and spoke: "Now come outside with us, so that we can show our power to you!"

22] And Cyrenius went outside with them, and see, in the far distance a mountain disappeared at one word from the youths' mouth!

23] Now Cyrenius realised why he had to keep silent and he did so for the rest of his life - and so did all those who were with him.

***CHAPTER 118. - THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE POWER OF THE LORD AND THE POWER OF HIS SERVANTS. CYRENIUS' QUESTION ABOUT THE PURPOSE OF ANGELS. THE PARABLE OF THE LOVING FATHER AND HIS CHILDREN.***

***17 JANUARY 1844***

01] After this demonstration of power, the two youths led Cyrenius back to his room, where Joseph, Mary and the Infant, Tullia, Eudokia, the three priests, Maronius and some other members of Cyrenius' entourage were.

02] And Joseph promptly went over to Cyrenius and asked him:

03] "Well, illustrious brother and friend, what do you have to say about these servants of the Lord?"

04] And Cyrenius said: "O most exalted brother! There is almost no difference between them and the Lord; for they are as powerful as He is!

05] The Infant destroyed the large statue of Zeus with a gesture of the hand;

06] but these servants destroyed a whole mountain with just one word! – Tell me then, what difference is there between Lord and servant?!"

07] And Joseph replied: "O friend! there is an infinitely big difference between them!

08] See, the Lord does this on His own accord eternally; but his servants can only do this through the Lord when He wants it!

09] If that is not the case, they can do as little as you and I, and with their own power they cannot even crush a sun- speck!"

10] But Cyrenius replied: "I do understand you; what you have said is correct and needs no further explanation.

11] But if everything is effected by the Lord only and the servants have no power themselves, what use are they to Him then?"

12] And Joseph spoke: "Look, you marvellous, lovely brother, here is the Infant, ask the same question to Him, and He will give you the most valid answer!"

13] And Cyrenius did so, and the little Child arose and spoke:

14] "Cyrenius, you are a husband now and you have impregnated your wife already this night, so that you may beget a descendant!

15] But I say to you, you will have twelve of them! But when you are a father of twelve children, tell Me, what for and why and for what purpose do you want children anyway?

16] Is it not possible for you to do your affairs well and vigorously enough without them?"

17] Here Cyrenius was completely taken aback and after a while he said somewhat shyly:

18] "As far as looking after my governmental affairs is concerned, this takes its own course and I do not need children for that!

19] But only in my heart there is a tremendous need to have children, and this need is called love!"

20] And the Infant spoke: "Well, but when you have children, won't you have them participate in your affairs out of pure love and therefore vest them with power and

authority, because they are your children, and mould them into powerful servants?"

21] And Cyrenius replied: "O Lord, I will most certainly do that!"

22] And the little Child answered again: " Now look, when you as a human being do such things out of love for your children, why then should God as a holy Father not do the same with His children out of His infinite love for them?!"

23] This answer summed up everything for Cyrenius, and it filled him and all the others with the greatest reverence, and he did ask anything further.

**CHAPTER 119. - JOSEPH'S INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE WEDDING  
BANQUET. THE DRESSING UP FOR THE OCCASION. THE DAZZLING  
FESTIVE DRESS OF THE ANGELS. THE UNEASINESS OF CYRENIUS AND  
THE OTHERS. THE REMOVAL OF THE FESTIVE DRESSES.**

**18 JANUARY 1844**

01] Joseph's sons now entered the room and told him: "Father, the morning meal is lavishly prepared!

02] If you wish we will set the large dining table and then serve the meal."

03] And Joseph spoke: "Well, my children, please do so, but wear your new clothes, for this morning we will have Cyrenius' wedding banquet!

04] You also have to join us at the table, so you have to be dressed as befits a wedding! Go now and do everything that is good, right and proper!

05] And after the sons arranged the table they went and did as Joseph had demanded.

06] But the two youths went over to Joseph and spoke:

07] "Father Joseph, what do you think? Look, the robes we are wearing are only our work clothes; should we also put on a dress befitting the wedding?"

08] But Joseph replied: "You are the angels of the Lord and your robes are already the most beautiful wedding garments; why would you wear another one?"

09] But the youths spoke: "Look, we do not want to annoy anybody; what you have demanded from your sons, we also want to do and be represented at your table in our wedding garments!

10] Therefore let us go and we will immediately change our garments just like your sons!"

11] And Joseph spoke: "So, then please do what you deem necessary through the Lord! But you are servants of the Lord forever and you always know His will; therefore act accordingly!"

12] And the two youths went away and came back after a while together with Joseph's sons and all the other youths, dressed in garments that shone as bright as a red morning sky, with the most beautiful glow;

13] and their faces, feet and hands shining like the rising sun.

14] Cyrenius and all his followers were aghast at all this infinite splendour and majesty.

15] And Cyrenius spoke to Joseph in an anxious hurry:

16] "Most exalted friend, now I have seen the infinite splendour of your house! But let me go out, for all this splendour is consuming me!

17] Why did you have to ask your sons to change their dresses? Without that they would surely have remained the Lord's servants with their former simplicity and unglamorous appearance which was so pleasing to me!"

18] At this moment Joseph got hold of himself because he had lost his breath at all the splendour and now instructed his sons to put on their work clothes again.

19] The sons went and did the same; and the youths went too and changed their dresses and they came back together with Joseph's sons restored in their former simplicity.

20] Now Cyrenius' felt relieved in his heart and was now able to sit at the table with his wife and his companions.

21] And so he occupied the upper part of the table with his people, while Joseph, Mary and the Infant, Eudokia, Joseph's sons and the youths sat at the lower part, and after Joseph's song of praise they all ate and drank.

22] But some of the centurions as well as the commander thought, that they really were at the table of the gods in Olympus and were beyond themselves with delight; for they had no idea about the constitution of Joseph's house.



**CHAPTER 120. - JOSEPH WORRIED ABOUT THE CORRECT  
CELEBRATION OF EASTER, THE REASSURING WORDS OF THE ANGELS.  
JOSEPH'S FRESH WORRIES BECAUSE OF THE MANY PAGANS PRESENT.  
THE INFANT'S REPLY.**

**19 JANUARY 1844**

01] After finishing the delicious morning meal, which had lasted for one hour, Joseph spoke the song of praise and all arose from the table.

02] Since it was a pre-Sabbath day and thus a Friday, the day before the Easter festivities of the Jews were held, Joseph was a bit anxious and did not know how he should approach the celebration of this feast among all these Romans.

03] For he knew, that they would also visit him on the Easter Sabbath day just like any other day.

04] Therefore he was, as said, anxious about how he could sanctify this exceptionally high Sabbath.

05] But now the youths surrounded him and spoke: "Listen to us, you righteous, but vainly concerned man!

06] You know that at this time the angels of God were also present in Jerusalem - as archangels, Cherubim and Seraphim.

07] And, as you know and as your wife does, the inner sanctum was always occupied by them.

08] Since you know that we only follow the Lord and not the temple in Jerusalem - we are therefore not in the temple!

09] When the Lord lived in the temple in Jerusalem, we were also there.

10] But now He lives here and we are also here, to celebrate Easter with you and none of us is in the temple, which is now thoroughly abandoned.

11] Now how could you better celebrate Easter when you act like we do?!

12] See, we shall do the same tomorrow as we have done today and will continue to do, and it will be right!

13] Do the same and you will observe the Sabbath and Easter properly with us in the fullest presence of the Lord of the Sabbath and of all holidays!

14] Ask the most lofty Infant and He will tell you the same!"

15] And Joseph spoke: "All is right and good and true but what about the law of Moses? Does it cease to exist"?

16] But the youths spoke: "Righteous man, you are mistaken, - tell us, had Moses ever decreed that Easter should be held at Jerusalem?

17] Did he not stipulate it to be held only there, where the Lord with the Ark of the Covenant is!?

18] See, the Lord is no longer with the Ark of the Covenant now, but He is present here with you and in your house!

19] Now tell us, where according to Moses should the correct Easter celebration be held?"

20] And Joseph said: "If it is like that, then sure enough, the feast has to be celebrated here! But what shall we do with all the pagans here?"

21] And the youths spoke: "O righteous son of David, do not concern yourself with this, but do what we do and everything will be all right!"

22] Now the Infant asked for Joseph, upon which occasion the youths immediately fell to the ground, and He spoke:

23] "Joseph, as today so tomorrow and the day after tomorrow; - do not be concerned because of the uncircumcised, for these are now better than the circumcised!

24] See, the circumcision of the foreskin is of no importance, but the circumcision of the heart is all important!

25] Now these Romans have a noble circumcised heart; and so I will celebrate Easter with them and not with the Jews!

26] These words made Joseph regain his balance; he was full of joy and surrendered all his worries about the Easter celebration to the youths.

***CHAPTER 121. - JOSEPH, INVITED FOR EASTER BY CYRENIUS IN HIS  
FORTRESS, IN DISTRESS ABOUT CELEBRATING EASTER, THE INFANT'S  
SOOTHING WORDS. "WHEREVER I AM, THAT IS WHERE THE REAL  
EASTER IS!"***

***20 JANUARY 1844***

01] As the celebration of Easter was thus decided upon, and Joseph had accepted everything,

02] Cyrenius went up to Joseph and spoke: "Most exalted friend and brother! See, today I was your guest and will remain so until the evening!

03] However, tomorrow I will prepare a small feast in my fortress and wish to invite your whole family as it is gathered here,

04] and I hope that you will not refuse this act of friendship?!

05] For I am not inviting you as a compensation, but am doing this out of the great love and respect that I entertain for you and your entire family!

06] For look, my departure has been set for the day after tomorrow and I cannot stay here as long as I had earlier planned;

07] urgent duties are inducing me to alter my plans.

08] However, it is precisely for this reason that I wish to have the fortune of hosting you at my place, and certainly in a way worthy of you!"

09] But Joseph hesitated and did not know what he should do; for at least he wanted to celebrate the holy Easter Sabbath in his house.

10] He therefore said to Cyrenius: "Most worthy friend and brother in the Lord!

11] See, tomorrow is the most important festive day for us Jews, which every Jew must at least celebrate in the forecourt of his house, if indeed he cannot go to the temple in Jerusalem!

12] I would reproach myself most bitterly if I would break our foremost law;

13] hence I cannot promise you anything in this respect!

14] However, I would be extremely delighted if you are willing to come to me and host your intended feast in my house, which in fact also belongs to you!"

15] And Cyrenius spoke: "Why, brother! Are you then a greater unbeliever than I, a pagan from birth as you have said!?

16] What is your Child? Is He not the Lord, from whom all your laws are from the beginning!?

17] Are the youths not his very first attendants? – Does not He, who is resting so omnipotently in the arms of the young mother, have the right to determine the laws?!

18] If He would grant me my wish, would you then give greater importance to your festive day than to His divine word?"

19] Here the Infant raised Himself up and spoke: "Yes Cyrenius, you are right; however, keep all this within yourself!

20] Tomorrow we will all be your guests; for wherever I am, that is where the true Easter is,

– for I am the liberator of the children of Israel out of Egypt!" –

21] When Joseph heard this, he gave up his original plans for Easter and accepted Cyrenius' invitation.

## ***CHAPTER 122 - JOSEPH'S QUERIES ON THE CLEARING OF THE TEMPLE RUBBLE, ON THE FATE OF THE REBELS AND THE LESSER PRIESTS, AND ON THE EIGHT CHILDREN. CYRENIUS' RESPONSE.***

***22 JANUARY 1844***

01] As mentioned earlier, Joseph was satisfied with the decision to celebrate Easter in this way, but he asked Cyrenius once again about the removal of the temple rubble and the bodies that had been dug out.

02] And Cyrenius spoke: "O my most exalted brother and friend, do not worry about that;

03] for I have already taken care of the matter to the best of my judgment!

04] The rubble has been completely removed, the slain priests have been buried, and those who were rescued will be taken

by me to Tyre the day after tomorrow, and there see to their proper disposition!

05] See, that is how the matter stands! I believe that it is arranged in the best possible and fairest manner?"

06] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, indeed, no father could have cared better for his own children! I am fully satisfied with that!

07] But what will you do with the rebels who attacked my house last night?"

08] And Cyrenius spoke: "Look, these are traitors and have therefore drawn a death sentence upon themselves.

09] Now, as you know, I am no friend of bloodshed, rather its greatest foe!

10] Hence I have remitted the death sentence and have decided instead, that their well-deserved punishment will be lifelong slavery!

11] And I believe that this punishment in place of the death sentence is not too severe, particularly because freedom is secretly given to those who reform themselves.

12] They too will come to Tyre, where further decisions will be made about them."

13] And Joseph spoke: "Dear brother! You have acted with full faith in the divine order even here, and for this I can only praise you as a truly wise governor!

14] But I still have one more matter on my mind! See, there are still the three lesser priests; what do you suggest I do with them?"

15] And Cyrenius spoke: "O most exalted friend and brother! I have also taken care of them.

16] Maronius, who now thinks as I do, will take them and appoint them as civil servants in the department that I will assign to him.

17] Tell me, is that a good solution? – Indeed, if I had greater and deeper insight, I would certainly make even better decisions!

18] However, I act as best I can, and think that your Lord and your God will bless my good will, even if it does not originate from the best insight?!"

19] And Joseph spoke: "The Lord has already blessed your insight, as also your will, and hence you have made the best decisions!

20] However, there is one more thing: When will you send me the eight children which you said consisted of five boys and three girls?"

21] And Cyrenius spoke: "My brother, my friend, that will be my first concern as soon as I arrive in Tyre!

22] Now let us go outside, for it is a most pleasant day, and we should praise the Lord." – And so Joseph mobilized everyone in the house.

***CHAPTER 123. - THE PROCESSION TO THE HOLY MOUNTAIN. THE  
ENCOUNTER WITH THE WILD ANIMALS. THE TAMING OF THE WILD  
BEASTS BY THE TWO CELESTIAL YOUTHS.***

***23 JANUARY 1844***

01] The party was made up of Cyrenius with his entourage, Maronius with the three priests and Joseph with Mary and the Infant, the two youths and Eudokia;

02] Mary and Eudokia sat on the two donkeys that were led by the two youths.

03] The other youths remained with Joseph's sons at home and helped them take care of the house and prepare good bread and lunch, which, however, would not be consumed before evening.

04] Outside the town, there was a mountain which was fully covered with cedars and measured about four hundred fathoms in height.

05] This mountain was venerated as a holy place by the gentiles, which is why no tree on it was ever cut down.

06] Only one path, which had been laid out by the priests, led to the summit, on which an open temple was built. The temple site offered an extensive and delightful view in all directions.

07] Due to the dense forest of this fairly extensive mountain, a lot of ferocious animals lived in its dense forest, which made the ascent of the mountain precarious and unsafe.

08] The three priests, however, were well aware of this characteristic of the mountain; hence, when Cyrenius had reached the foot of the mountain, they went up to him and told him about this.

09] And Cyrenius spoke: "Do you not see that I have no fear?

10] Why should I? – The Lord of all heavens and all worlds, and two of His almighty attendants, are in our midst!"

11] The priests took courage at these words of Cyrenius and withdrew again, and the procession swiftly ascended the mountain.

12] As the whole company was a good half hour's journey deep in the mountain forest, three enormous lions suddenly leapt out of the forest thicket and obstructed Cyrenius' path.

13] Cyrenius was horrified at this and cried for help.

14] And the two youths immediately stepped out, and threatened the wild beasts, which left the spot instantly, all the while roaring;

15] however, they did not run away into the thicket, but escorted the company at the edge of the path and did not harm anyone.

16] As the company continued on its way for another half an hour, an entire troop of lions, panthers and tigers came towards them.

17] However, as this eerie troop encountered the two youths, they split up on both sides of the path and made way for our company.

18] This instilled such reverence and deep respect in Cyrenius' entourage that they hardly dared to breathe.

19] However, as they noticed that the wild beasts went down and trembled when they were close to the Infant, the truth began to dawn on the timorous gentiles as to who dwelled in the Child. –



## ***CHAPTER 124. - FAINTING OF EUDOKIA AND TULLIA. THE POISONOUS SNAKES AT THE SUMMIT. THE PURIFICATION OF THE PLACE BY MARY AND THE CHILD. THE AMAZEMENT OF CYRENIUS' ENTOURAGE.***

**24 JANUARY 1844**

01] However, this caravan of beasts did not turn back, but continued on their way, growling a little.

02] Eudokia on Mary's side, as also Tullia on Cyrenius' side, who walked just in front of the two donkeys, fainted at the sight;

03] however, Joseph and Mary instilled so much courage in them, that they soon lost all their fear.

04] And the procession continued unhindered and reached the summit without further ado.

05] However, when they reached the summit, at the highest point on which the temple stood, a new obstacle emerged.

06] In the vicinity of the temple, there was a lair of the most poisonous rattlesnakes and vipers.

07] They sunned themselves by the hundreds on the extensive open spaces around the temple.

08] As the vermin saw the approaching company, they began to rattle and hiss, and flicker their tongues.

09] This caused Cyrenius' entourage to become paralyzed with fear. It was particularly bad for Tullia, who was on foot; she completely lost her presence of mind and in her great fear, saw her demise in front of her.

10] However, it was not only the human beings, but also the three lions that started to give out cries of fear, and they huddled as close as possible to the group of people.

11] Although this sight had no effect on Cyrenius, he was nevertheless uneasy on account of his wife and his entourage.

12] He thus turned to Joseph and spoke: "Brother! Tell the two attendants of the Lord to threaten this vermin!"

13] Joseph, however, spoke: "This is not necessary!"

14] For look, my wife is a master craftswoman; let us allow her, with her animal, to go in front,

15] and you will see how this vermin will flee in fear of her!"

16] And Mary, with the Infant in her arms, stepped forward with her animal, and as the vermin saw Mary,

17] they slithered away in a flash from that place, and could not be seen anywhere.

18] Cyrenius' entire entourage was amazed by this, and many wondered among themselves:

19] "Could this be Hygea, whom all the snakes obey at her every gesture?"

20] Cyrenius, who heard this question, spoke: "Why are you talking about Hygea, who never existed!?"

21] Here is more than Juno, who also did not exist; she is the wife, selected by the

Supreme God, for this most exalted man!"

22] At this, the entire entourage of Cyrenius was taken aback; but none dared to ask any further questions to anyone.

## ***CHAPTER 125. - THE DANGEROUS TEMPLE. THE SWARM OF BLACK FLIES. THE TEMPLE COLLAPSES. THE COMPANY UNDER THE FIG TREE.***

**25 JANUARY 1844**

01] As the summit of this mountain was cleansed of all vermin in this manner, Cyrenius spoke to his servants:

02] "Go inside the temple and sweep it, and put clean cloth upon the altar, and then place the provisions we have brought along upon this cloth!

03] We will then partake of a little refreshment in this beautiful scenic temple!"

04] Cyrenius' servants immediately went and did as ordered.

05] When everything was prepared, Cyrenius invited Joseph and Mary to follow him into the scenic temple to partake of a little refreshment.

06] Joseph spoke: "Brother, I tell you, let us hastily fetch everything from the temple, otherwise it will collapse even before you will have brought out your things!"

07] For look, this building is exceedingly old, weatherworn and crumbling and has once served the priests in acts of great vileness!

08] Thus it is now held together only by a few evil spirits.

09] If my wife and Child enter this crumbling building, then the evil spirits will flee, and the entire temple will collapse in smoking rubble over us!

10] Please follow my advice and you will fare well!"

11] Cyrenius was very surprised at this but nevertheless followed Joseph's advice instantly.

12] However, his servants had barely completed the task, and that too very hastily, as a great swarm of black flies were seen fleeing the temple amid a wild humming noise.

13] At this phenomenon, Joseph shouted at the servants: "Come out of the temple at once, otherwise you will be injured!"

14] Due to Joseph's shout, Cyrenius' servants rushed out of the temple as if they had been caught in a whirlwind.

15] When they were barely a few feet away from the temple, it collapsed with a tremendous crash.

16] This terrified everyone and they repeatedly threw up their hands above their heads; even the three lions ran away on this occasion, but they soon returned.

17] On all sides, people asked the reason for this event; but none of the gentiles – with the exception of Cyrenius – could give any information.

18] However, as the company had partially recovered from this fright, Cyrenius asked Joseph where he could have the refreshments laid out.

19] And Joseph indicated an open, green spot under a mountain fig tree full of blossoms and fruits.

20] And Cyrenius immediately sent his servants there, who cleaned the place, covered it with a pretty cloth and then placed upon it all sorts of refreshments that had been brought along.

**CHAPTER 126. – THE SNACK IN THE OPEN WITH THE YOUTHS. THE  
FIRE AT THE IMPERIAL PALACE. CYRENIUS' AGITATION AND ANGER,  
JOSEPH'S COMPOSURE AND THE CALM RESPONSE TO THE AGITATED  
CYRENIUS.**

**26 JANUARY 1844**

01] Afterwards Cyrenius once again invited Joseph, together with Mary, the Infant and Eudokia, to partake with him of the refreshments.

02] At this Joseph went with his people, took his place at the lower end, blessed the food and ate and drank.

03] Joseph's example was also followed by the two youths and then by the entire company.

04] As they sat together in good spirits and ate and drank,

05] Maronius, who sat next to Cyrenius, observed that a great column of smoke began to rise over the city of Ostracine,

06] and that thick columns of smoke also arose from the more distant seashore.

07] He instantly indicated this to Cyrenius, who immediately realized that it was his palace in the city that was in flames, – and suspected that it were his ships, lying at the somewhat distant seashore, that were set on fire.

08] As if struck by a thousand bolts of lightning, Cyrenius jumped up and cried:

09] "In the Lord's name, – what is it that I see?! – Is that the consequence of my goodness to you miserable Ostraciners?

10] Indeed, I will transform this goodness into the rage of a tiger, and you will have to atone for this outrage as no fury in the deepest hell has ever had to atone!

11] Get up, friends and brothers! We have no more time to remain here! Come on, let us take just revenge on these criminals!!!"

12] Cyrenius' entire entourage instantly jumped up at his terrible call and gathered up everything instantly.

13] Only Joseph and his own people remained calmly seated and hardly took note of the places that were burning.

14] Cyrenius noticed this and hastily snapped at Joseph, saying:

15] "What kind of friend are you, who at the moment of my misfortune, can sit here so calmly?!"

16] You know well that because of the ferocious animals, I cannot safely pass this mountain path without you!

17] Therefore get up and provide me safety, otherwise you will embittered me against you!"

18] And Joseph spoke very calmly: "Look, you infuriated Roman, I will not follow you just now!

19] Anyway, what can you do, when you descend in approximately two hours? – Will not everything be consumed by the flames by that time?!"

20] If you want to take revenge, well, I think there will be enough time for that!

21] If you had not flared up, truly, I would have told the two youths, and they would have instantaneously put an end to the fire.

22] But as you have flared up in this manner, now go there yourself, and quell the fire with your anger!"

**CHAPTER 127. - CYRENIUS TRIES TO PACIFY JOSEPH THROUGH  
TULLIA. JOSEPH'S FRIENDLY WORDS. THE EXTINCTION OF THE FIRE  
THROUGH THE WILLPOWER OF THE TWO YOUTHS.**

**27 JANUARY 1844**

- 01] Joseph's most solemnly spoken words made a powerful impression on Cyrenius, and he did not know how to respond to them;
- 02] he also did not dare utter another word to the visibly excited man.
- 03] He therefore said to Tullia: "Go to the wise man and relate to him my understandable distress and the resulting agitation of my spirits!
- 04] Ask him for forgiveness and assure him that I will never cause him such a moment in future!
- 05] But he should not abandon me this time and not refuse me his aid!"
- 06] Joseph, however, heard what Cyrenius had said to Tullia;
- 07] and he stood up, went to Cyrenius and spoke: "Noble friend and brother in the Lord God! Until now we have not needed an intermediary,
- 08] but have always openly acknowledged our mutual issues!
- 09] Why should you make your wife an intermediary, as if we both are not enough for each other?
- 10] Do you think that I too could become enraged about anything?
- 11] Oh see, in that case you would be greatly mistaken about me! – My severity is merely the consequence of my great love for you!
- 12] It is a bad friend, who does not allow his friend to hear a serious word in times of trouble!
- 13] Look, if there was anything to the matter that now troubles you so greatly, you may rest assured that I would be the first to tell you, as I have always done on every occasion!
- 14] However, here is nothing but the completely empty phantasmagoria of those evil spirits that were driven out from here!
- 15] They are now taking blind revenge and want to terrify us because we threw them out of their old shelter here.
- 16] Look, that is all there is to it! – If you had asked me earlier, before you became agitated, you would not even have needed to get up from the ground!
- 17] However, you immediately trusted your senses and became agitated over absolutely nothing!
- 18] Now sit very quietly and calmly look at the fires, and rest assured, that they will quickly be extinguished!"
- 19] This announcement from Joseph's was for Cyrenius as if from another world;
- 20] but he nevertheless believed what Joseph had said, although he did not understand anything of the matter.
- 21] Joseph spoke to the youths in Cyrenius' presence:
- 22] "You should also take a look at the places in which the displaced spirits are

perpetrating their wilfulness, so that there can be an end to it and my brother will calm down!"

23] And both did so, and look, right at that moment, the conflagration vanished without a trace!

24] Only now did Cyrenius comprehend better what Joseph had told him earlier, and he was again in happy spirits; he now felt an immense respect for the two youths and for Joseph.

**CHAPTER 128. – CYRENIUS IS INSTRUCTED IN THE PROMISED  
TUGGING OF THE LORD. JOSEPH EXPLAINS THE WONDERFUL  
PHENOMENA IN NATURE.**

**29 JANUARY 1844**

- 01] After all was sorted out and everything had quietened down, the Infant raised itself up and spoke to Cyrenius:
- 02] "Listen to me, you noble-hearted man! – Do you remember how I tugged at My brother James' hair?
- 03] See, at that time you wanted Me to tug at your hair as well!
- 04] I promised this to you, and look, now I am keeping My promise;
- 05] for all the small surprises, that have occurred to you since, are nothing else than the promised tugging at your hair!
- 06] Whenever such incidences occur to you in future, remember My words to you and do not fear anything, and never be angry;
- 07] for you will not lose any hair on account of your anger! Those to whom I do such things are the ones I love! – And they have nothing to fear, either in this or in the other world!"
- 08] Cyrenius had tears when he heard this explanation from the Infant, and could not help himself for sheer love and gratitude.
- 09] Several of the gentiles present also heard the Infant's speech and were exceedingly astonished that a three- month-old Infant could speak with such perfect wisdom and clarity.
- 10] And some of them turned to Joseph and asked him how it was possible that the Infant could be so perfectly equipped to speak at such an early age?
- 11] At this, Joseph shrugged his shoulders and spoke: "Dear friends! – The most amazing phenomena appear from time to time on the great earth, and particularly in the sphere of life.
- 12] They occur in front of our eyes, but who can define the mysterious laws of a creative God by which they occur?!
- 13] Indeed, we, by ourselves the greatest wonder of all, tread the innumerable wonders with our feet everyday – and hardly take notice!
- 14] Which one of us knows how these countless marvels are created – such as the grass, the tree, the worm, the mosquito and the fish in the water?
- 15] Indeed, nothing remains for us than to look at the wonders and extol, glorify and worship the great holy Master Builder!"
- 16] This explanation completely satisfied the questioning gentiles,
- 17] and from this moment, they looked at all of nature with entirely different eyes.
- 18] They then scattered to all the sides of the bare mountain and observed the wonder of creation.
- 19] Cyrenius surreptitiously turned to Joseph and asked him, whether he really did not know anything more about this.
- 20] Joseph solemnly affirmed this and spoke: "Consult the Infant about this; He will certainly give you the best information."



**CHAPTER 129. - CYRENIUS' QUESTION ABOUT THE AMAZING  
SPEAKING SKILLS OF THE THREE-MONTH-OLD INFANT JESUS. THE  
PROFOUNDLY WISE ANSWER OF THE ANGEL ABOUT THE MYSTERIOUS  
NATURE OF THE INFANT.**

**30 JANUARY 1844**

- 01] Hereupon Cyrenius immediately turned to the Infant in all humility and spoke:
- 02] "You are my life, my all! – See, although it is known who You are, it is just too incredible that You, an Infant of three months, can speak so perfectly and so very wisely!
- 03] I would like to be enlightened a little in this matter by You on this mountain where so many amazing things have occurred already! – Would you tell me something about this?"
- 04] The Infant spoke: "Cyrenius, look, there are the two attendants next to Joseph; consult them, and they will reveal this to you!"
- 05] Cyrenius immediately followed this advice and turned to the two attendants in this matter.
- 06] And they spoke: "Look, this is a purely divine matter; even when we explain it to you, you will not be able to understand it!
- 07] For ordinary persons can never grasp that what is purely divine, because their spirit is not free but caught in worldly matter.
- 08] You too are, for the most part, an ordinary person; thus you too will not understand what we will reveal to you!
- 09] However, as you wish to have knowledge about this, we will give it to you at the Lord's behest;
- 10] but we cannot give you the necessary understanding for it, as you are still an ordinary person.
- 11] So, listen to us! – See, the Infant, as He is in His human form, can by no means talk to you for long as an ordinary person can!
- 12] He will, to some extent, be capable of this only in half a year's time.
- 13] However, the fullness of the eternal almighty God dwells in His heart.
- 14] If this Child speaks to you in a distinct and wise way, then it is not the Child that is visible to you which is speaking, but the divinity speaking out of the Child to your spirit that is awakened for this purpose.
- 15] And therefore you hear the words as if the Infant visible to you is speaking.
- 16] However, this is not the case because only the Deity, invisible to you, is speaking!
- 17] And what you believe you hear outwardly, you hear only within yourself; and this is the case with everyone who hears this Infant speak!
- 18] So that you can convince yourself of this, just go as far as you wish from here, where you will not be able to hear the Infant's natural voice.
- 19] And the Infant will speak to you, and you will hear Him as well as you would from close by! – Go and experience this!"
- 20] And Cyrenius, who did not understand anything of all this, nevertheless went a

thousand paces towards the open space on the mountain.

21] There he suddenly heard the Infant's call very loud and clear, which said:

22] "Cyrenius! Return as fast as you can; for beneath the spot, on which you are standing, is a den full of tigers!

23] They are beginning to scent you; so rush back before they see you!"

24] Cyrenius, who heard this, immediately rushed back at lightning speed and stood there, absolutely astounded. He wanted to make further inquiries, but in the end he did not know what he really wanted to ask, for this experience was just too strange for him.

**CHAPTER 130. - CYRENIUS PROFESSES HIS IGNORANCE IN SPIRITUAL MATTERS. HIS REQUEST FOR ENLIGHTENMENT. THE ANGEL'S RESPONSE AND A SPLENDID AND CLEAR TESTIMONIAL OF THE LORD'S NATURE AND INCARNATION. THE INFANT'S BLESSINGS ON CYRENIUS.**

**31 JANUARY 1844**

01] The two youths now did not speak more; but this explanation affected Cyrenius so deeply, that he could not rest.

02] As after a while he had pulled himself together, he spoke to both the youths:

03] "Most highly exalted servants of God, undoubtedly since eternity! Your explanation is too wonderfully sublime and captivates my entire life, and thus I cannot be content with that what you said and showed to me!

04] I now realize perfectly that I am an ordinary person, completely lacking in all higher wisdom, who can barely see beyond what he can grasp.

05] However, is it not possible for me to gain just a little more insight?

06] I most humbly request you to do this for me! Open for me the cognitive faculties that are surely latent within me,

07] so that I may at least understand more clearly what you have revealed to me!"

08] The two replied: "See, you who are such a dear friend and brother, here you ask of something that is impossibly premature!

09] For as long as you still walk in the flesh, you will never comprehend matters of the highest divine wisdom!

10] Just think, that the Lord God, who lives here in this Infant in all His infinite and everlasting fullness, could have chosen any of His countless myriads of the most marvellous and gigantic worlds and planets whose infinitely smallest part you see as little stars at night,

11] just as this earth, for his incarnation! And He nevertheless chose this meagre earth, which is, of all the innumerable celestial bodies, the most miserable and inferior in every respect!

12] However, He, the eternal Lord of infinity, has found delight in this; He did it, as you can see in front of you!

13] Do you really think that He requires our advice or our consent for this?

14] O look, this type of thinking would be basically erroneous! – Since eternity, He does only whatever He wishes, and no one has ever been His advisor!

15] Who could ever question him: 'Lord! What are You doing, and why are You doing this?'

16] He Himself is the everlasting perfection, the highest wisdom, the greatest love and kindness!

17] He Himself is the supreme force and power; a thought of annihilation in His heart would instantly cause everything to sink into nothingness!

18] And see, He nevertheless allowed Himself to be lured here as a weak mortal Child in the arms of a frail Jewish virgin!

19] And He, who provides countless suns, worlds and beings of endless description with

the gift of life, and the most wise and appropriate fare of the most abundant infinity, suckles here on this meagre earth on the weak breasts of a fifteen-year-old virgin!

20] He, as the foundation of all life, has Himself put on the apparel of death, of sin, and has concealed Himself in flesh and blood! –

21] What do you say about this? – How does this appear to you? – Do you not want to have more light shed on this also?!

22] See, the less you comprehend this in its profundity, the less can be said to you about the capability of this supreme Child to talk at this early age.

23] However, love Him with all your might, and do not ever betray Him, so that in this love you can also find that what all the heavens in eternity would not otherwise be in a position to reveal to you!"

24] These words filled Cyrenius with such an immense respect for the Child that he immediately fell before Him, wept and spoke: "O Lord! I am eternally unworthy of the grace that I receive here!"

25] The Infant spoke: "Cyrenius, rise, and do not betray Me! I know your heart, and love you, and bless you; therefore rise!" – And Cyrenius immediately got up, trembling all over with love and respect.

## ***CHAPTER 131. – AN APPROACHING THUNDERSTORM. JOSEPH'S ADVICE. THE LION'S FOREBODING AND THEIR FLIGHT INTO THE WOODS.***

***1 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] The others, who had earlier scattered to all sides of the mountain expanse, returned with very distressed faces.

02] For they had seen enormous black clouds, always precursors of big storms, coming from the south-western region of Egypt.

03] The skies were clear north-easterly towards Ostracine; however, this made the sight over the mountain in the south-westerly direction as mentioned before, all the more eerie.

04] Those returning therefore advised a hasty return.

05] However, Cyrenius said: "When the time is right, it will be revealed to us by these mighty and wise companions;

06] but as long as they remain calm, there is no need for us to worry at all!"

07] Maronius and the commander spoke: "You are right; but go there over this small bank, and look, and you will certainly share our opinion!

08] For it looks as if all the Furies had suddenly set the earth on fire!"

09] Cyrenius asked the slightly dozing Joseph:

10] "Friend and brother, have you heard the alarming news that has been brought to me by these people?"

11] And Joseph spoke: "I was dozing and hardly know what you were discussing among yourselves."

12] And Cyrenius spoke: "So rise, and come with me to this little bank, and you will immediately discover what we were talking about!"

13] And Joseph got up and ascended the bank.

14] As they arrived there, Cyrenius at once pointed out the highly threatening appearance of the approaching storm to Joseph.

15] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, what will you do now?"

16] Flee? – Where to? – The storm will arrive in fifteen minutes at the latest!

17] We need one-and-a-half hours to walk to Ostracine; the storm will have overtaken us long before we even go through the upper part of the mountain forest!

18] What then in the dangerous valley, if a legion of wild beasts surround us, as they are wont to do during big storms?!

19] And if, on top of that, sudden torrential rains overtake us and mercilessly drag us into the depths – what shall we do then?!

20] Therefore let us remain here at the summit, where we can get wet at the most, while in the forests we can run into all sorts of trouble!"

21] Cyrenius was satisfied with this advice and went back under the fig tree with Joseph.

22] However, Cyrenius' company was still very sceptical, – particularly as they saw the three lions suddenly leap and flee into the woods.

23] And Maronius himself spoke to Joseph: "Look, the three beasts that had become loyal

to us have surely received forewarning of the calamity that is expected here, as they have taken flight to find shelter! Should we not do likewise?"

24] Joseph however spoke: "Man need not to learn what to do from the animals, but from the Lord of nature!

25] I am of the opinion that I am cleverer than the animal; I will therefore remain here and await the storm, if it comes at all, and then leave!" – All had to be content with this, while remaining in fearful expectation.

**CHAPTER 132. – THE MOUNTAIN TOP WRAPPED IN MIST. THE  
GENTILES' FEAR OF THE GODS. CYRENIUS' COURAGE TESTED IN THE  
RAGING OF THE THUNDERSTORM. THE SUDDEN SILENCING OF THE  
THUNDERSTORM AT THE INFANT JESUS' COMMAND.**

**3 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] It took less than fifteen minutes before the mountain top suddenly began to be covered in mist so thick that it became really ominous.

02] Cyrenius' entire company began to lament and spoke:

03] "Now we have it! – Zeus will serve us very well here!

04] Here one cannot say: far from Zeus, far from lightning!

05] But here we can all die in a horrible way; for mortals should never unduly approach the gods, if they wish to wander the earth unscathed!"

06] However, Cyrenius spoke somewhat jokingly: "I do not care about any of your gods!

07] I have found a better God, about whom it is not said: far from Him, also far from lightning!

08] But it is just the opposite: far from Him, far from life – and very close to the deadly lightning!

09] But close to Him then is as much as: close to life – and very far from the deadly lightning!

10] Therefore, even this mist does not frighten me in the least; for I know that all of us are nevertheless very far from the deadly lightning!"

11] Hardly had Cyrenius declared this, when lightning struck the earth with a loud bang just in front of the company, and this was soon followed by a series of other strikes!

12] Cyrenius was somewhat taken aback by this, and his companion spoke: "How do you now feel about your earlier statement?"

13] And Cyrenius spoke: "Very well; for this is a really incredible racket by which none of us have lost his life!

14] It seems to me that your gods have seen the emperor's brother here – and also quite a few others! That is why they give us this honour!"

15] However, a captain from Cyrenius' company, who was rather greatly subjugated by the gods, spoke to the jesting Cyrenius:

16] "Please, Your Imperial Consular Highness, do not jest here with the gods! – For the agile Mercury could easily notify Zeus, and then we would all be ruined by one flash of lightning!"

17] And Cyrenius spoke, jesting even more: "My dear captain, sit down very calmly on the earth!

18] For Mercury now has eternal house arrest, and Zeus himself has received such a hard slap in the face from quite another Juno that it has caused him permanent loss of hearing and sight!

19] Hence you must now be very calm on this score; because from now on Zeus will not have much to do with lightning and thunder!"

20] On that occasion, it began to flash even more intensely and to thunder even more terribly, and the captain remarked:

21] "Oh! Your Imperial Consular Highness will surely deeply regret this diatribe against the gods!"

22] And Cyrenius spoke: "Surely not today; perhaps tomorrow, if I have that much time left!

23] For look, if I would fear the gods as much as you and some of the other fools do, then I would not be speaking in this way, at this particular time, below this sea of fire.

24] However, I speak in this way because I do no longer fear the gods!"

25] With this, the captain was snubbed and he did not dare to speak further to the Imperial Highness.

26] However, a flash of lightning struck just between Joseph, Mary and the two youths.

27] The Infant then raised Himself and spoke: "Expose yourself, you monster!"

28] At these words the clouds suddenly burst over them. The sky became completely clear; but in return a lot of vermin could be seen crawling around on the ground.

29] The two youths directed their gaze on the ground, and the vermin fled either into the woods or were destroyed.

30] This act caused all who were on the mountain with Cyrenius to fall silent; for they did not know how this happened.



**CHAPTER 133. - THE CURIOSITY OF THE NOW PENSIVE ROMAN  
COMMANDER AND HIS CONVERSATION WITH CYRENIUS ABOUT THE  
LAWS OF NATURE AND THEIR LAWGIVER. THE RETURN HOME FROM  
THE MOUNTAIN.**

**5 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After a long while of continual astonishment, the commander approached Cyrenius with great humility and spoke:

02] "Your Highness! I know that you have concerned yourself a lot with natural sciences, just as several other illustrious leaders of Rome have done!

03] As for me, I have always been much more of a soldier than a scholar of nature;

04] but this highly strange phenomenon that occurred here in front of our eyes, compels me to reflect upon it.

05] However, I earnestly do not see any other reason except the miraculous, which can only be explained by the remarkable power of this Jewish Child.

06] Is it possible that there are really no other reasons? Is it not possible, that there are some secret laws of nature, which can produce such a phenomenon, just as the customary rain, hail and snow?

07] O give me a small light, with which I can understand it a little and not stand there like a lost soul!

08] And Cyrenius spoke to the commander: "O friend! You have been ill-advised, that is why you have turned to me in this matter!

09] For I understand as little of this as you; that such a thing most certainly occurred according to a law is certain!

10] However, the constitution of this law is something that can scarcely be known to anyone except the great lawgiver of nature!

11] Whether we mortals are entitled to ask the great lawgiver about the constitution of such laws is absolutely unknown, at least to me!"

12] The commander spoke: "See, your Highness, here is the wise Jew, and there his marvellous Child and the two remarkable youths that have unnerved us so greatly with their brilliant garments!

13] How would it be if we consulted them in this most remarkable matter?"

14] And Cyrenius spoke: "Try it, if you have sufficient courage to do so!

15] On this occasion, I lack the courage for this; for I now see quite clearly, that these beings are of a completely different nature than us!"

16] And the commander spoke: "Lack of courage is not the obstacle in my case;

17] but if Your Highness is of this opinion, then I certainly do not want to be a traitor and will make do with my ignorance!"

18] Joseph now spoke to Cyrenius: "Brother, let us prepare now for departure; for the sun has almost set!"

19] Cyrenius followed this advice, and the departure, which took place without any obstacle, began within a short time. In two hours, they had returned to the villa.

**CHAPTER 134. – THE RECEPTION IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE BY THOSE LEFT  
BEHIND. JOEL'S NARRATION. THE THREE LIONS AS CYRENIUS'  
BODYGUARDS.**

**6 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] Upon arrival at the villa, the company was greeted most affectionately by Joseph's sons and most particularly by the youths who were left behind.

02] And the sons immediately notified their father of everything they had done in the meantime and how faithfully they had fulfilled his wishes.

03] At the same time, the oldest son of Joseph related all the remarkable events that had taken place around Ostracine during this time.

04] "Especially", said the narrator, "the sudden fire in the governor's residence had frightened all the inhabitants!

05] However, as they tried to halt the conflagration, it suddenly went out and no trace of it could be found.

06] Then we suddenly saw that the mountain was being enveloped in fiery clouds, and a thousand flashes of lightning struck indiscriminately.

07] We then thought about the Sinai, which might have looked similar at the time of God's great revelation to our fathers.

08] We were extremely worried about you; but the youths consoled us and said that not a hair on anyone's head would be touched.

09] But nevertheless, as the mountain began to be enveloped in fiery clouds, we became extremely frightened:

10] From the mountain path, three enormous lions jumped on us in great haste!

11] This made us extremely frightened. But the youths spoke: 'Do not fear; for these animals seek protection in the house of Him, whom all things must obey!'

12] And so it was! The three lions immediately rushed to our cart shed, where they are resting quietly until now.

13] After the storm, we went there with some of the youths and saw the enormous beasts;

14] they soon got up and made signs of unmistakable submission and friendliness! – See, father Joseph, these were the miraculous things which occurred in your absence."

15] And Joseph spoke: "All right, my son; we too have experienced all this! Your narration was almost too protracted!

16] Now go and prepare the table; for we all need refreshment, as the mountain has exhausted us a little!"

17] And the sons, together with the other youths, immediately hastened to the kitchen and quickly put everything in perfect order.

18] However, Cyrenius spoke: "Indeed, it causes me great wonder that these three beasts, instead of hiding in their caves, took refuge here!

19] Maybe they will stay near the house and guard it faithfully. There have been several similar instances with this animal species!"

20] And Joseph spoke: "Whatever is appropriate and agreeable to the Lord is the same to

me!

21] It is also possible, however, that these animals are following you to protect your ship?!"

22] And Cyrenius spoke: "Then whatever is appropriate and agreeable to the Lord is also the same to me – although the Lord can protect me even without these lions!"

23] Here the three lions came out and stood by Cyrenius and showed their friendliness to him.

24] And Cyrenius said: "That is really strange; you, dear brother, need only say something, and it happens!"

25] Both the youths spoke: "These three lions will serve you well this very night!"

26] For the Lord always knows the most suitable means with which to help someone.

27] Such animals were often in divine service; which is why they have been chosen also now, to serve you in a matter that awaits you! – And so be it!"

**CHAPTER 135. – THE MEAL IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE INFANT'S  
DISCLOSURE OF THE FORTHCOMING ASSASSINATION ATTEMPT ON  
CYRENIUS. CYRENIUS' HOMECOMING. THE LIONS AS NIGHT WATCH.  
THE ATTACK. GOD'S JUDGMENT ON THE ASSASSINS.**

**7 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After this discussion, the three lions again left Cyrenius and retreated into the cart shed.

02] Cyrenius wanted to speak to Joseph about a good many things about this phenomenon, but Joseph's sons came at this moment and indicated to their father that the meal was ready and the table was set.

03] And Joseph invited the entire company to enter into the dining room and to fortify themselves with the served food and drink.

04] At this invitation, all proceeded into the dining room and ate the blessed food and quenched their thirst with water and some lemon juice.

05] After the meal, which lasted for an hour, Joseph thanked God and blessed all of the guests present.

06] The Infant called for Cyrenius, and as he approached Him with the greatest humility, He spoke to him:

07] "Cyrenius, you will be attacked by a small traitorous gang in your bedchamber tonight!

08] Therefore, I am giving you the three lions; allow them to remain in your chamber with you, and let them follow you as they wish.

09] When the traitorous gang enters into your chamber, the three lions will suddenly attack them ruthlessly and tear them to pieces;

10] however, not a hair on your head will be touched! – Do not be afraid of the three lions; for they fully recognize you as their master!"

11] Cyrenius thanked the Infant most fervently in his heart and showered Him with kisses, as did his wife, Tullia, although she did not know what the Infant had just told Cyrenius.

12] And as it had become evening, Cyrenius set off with his company, and after repeating his invitation for the following day, he proceeded, after being blessed, into the city.

13] As he put a foot in his forecourt, the three lions were also at hand and escorted Cyrenius unwaveringly into his house.

14] And as he went to his bed with Tullia, the lions surrounded it, fixing their shining eyes towards the entrance door.

15] Cyrenius' servants often went in and out of the room; but the lions paid no attention to them.

16] However, at around the second night watch, twenty masked men entered very softly into Cyrenius' chamber and approached the bed very quietly.

17] As they stood barely five paces from the bed with drawn daggers,

18] the three lions suddenly pounced on them with terrifying roars and tore them to pieces in a very short time, and none of the men escaped this attack!

19] For no one was prepared for such an attack; the first pounces caused extreme terror

and bewilderment to all and the thought of defending oneself did not occur to anyone.

20] That is why none of the men found their way back and were thus prey to the lions' rage.

21] And so Cyrenius was miraculously rescued by the three lions during this night and was not a little astonished to see the dismembered corpses in his room the next morning.

## ***CHAPTER 136. - CYRENIUS' INTERROGATION OF THE SERVANTS. THE SERVANTS' FEAR OF THE THREE JUDGES. THE DETECTION OF THE TRAITOR. THE LION'S EXEMPLARY TRIBUNAL***

***8 FEBRUARY 1844***

- 01] Cyrenius immediately awoke his servants and called them, so that they could account for this treacherousness.
- 02] The servants were horrified at the sight and spoke to the enraged governor:
- 03] "Most strict, most just and most powerful lord, lord! The gods are our witness that we have not had any knowledge of this!
- 04] We will all be doomed, if we have participated in this in the slightest way or even had the slightest knowledge of this!"
- 05] And Cyrenius spoke: "Then take these corpses out and bury them in front of this fortress in an open place, to serve as a deterrent to all those who might have a similar inclination!"
- 06] However, the servants had a great fear of the three lions that still heavily guarded Cyrenius' bed, and spoke:
- 07] "O lord, lord! Look, we do not dare to touch anything here; for the three beasts look ferocious and could do the same to us as they did to the assassins?!"
- 08] And Cyrenius spoke: "Those who have an honest conscience can come forward and convince themselves that these ferocious animals also respect loyalty!"
- 09] At this speech of Cyrenius, all but one came forward, and the lions did not do even the slightest harm to them.
- 10] However, Cyrenius asked the one who had stayed behind: "Why do you stay behind, although you can see that your colleagues have not been harmed by the lions in even the slightest manner?!"
- 11] And the interrogated servant spoke: "Lord, lord, have mercy on me; for I have an impure conscience!"
- 12] And Cyrenius asked him: "What is the basis of the impurity of your conscience? – Speak, if you do not wish to die!"
- 13] And the interrogated servant spoke: "Lord, lord! – I knew about this treason since yesterday morning, but did not want to reveal it to anyone because I was bribed with one hundred pounds of silver!
- 14] For I thought that you would in any event be saved, just as the wise man in the villa on the outskirts was saved, and so I accepted the silver."
- 15] Here Cyrenius jumped up and spoke: "Must then every honest philanthropist have a devil among his servants and friends!?
- 16] You miserable rogue, step forward before God's tribunal! If you find mercy from this tribunal, then I too will not judge you;
- 17] however, if you do not find mercy from this tribunal, then you are already judged for all eternity!"
- 18] At this, the thus interrogated and addressed servant became fearful and collapsed in a faint.

19] Then one lion stood up, moved towards the unconscious man, seized his hand and dragged him very carefully towards Cyrenius, where the culprit remained motionless.

20] However, the same lion then hastily sprang into the open chamber, seized a bale, pulled it forth and tore it into a thousand pieces.

21] And the hundred pounds of silver that the servant had received for his silence came out.

22] Cyrenius was quite astonished by this event.

23] The lion hereupon again seized the culprit by the arm, dragged him into the anteroom and laid him exactly where the bale was earlier located.

24] He struck the man a few times with his tail, which revived the unconscious man, and did not harm him otherwise.

25] Then the lion went back to its earlier spot and kept very quiet, together with its two companions.

26] The servants now began to remove the dead bodies as per Cyrenius' order. And Cyrenius praised and glorified the God of Israel, for He had saved him so miraculously – and in an hour the bedchamber was fully cleaned again.

## ***CHAPTER 137. – TULLIA AWAKENS FROM DEEP SLEEP. CYRENIUS RELATES WHAT HAPPENED. THE REUNION WITH THE HOLY FAMILY.***

***9 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] Tullia, however, awoke from a restorative sleep only after all the traces of the night's events had been removed.

02] And Cyrenius asked her whether she had slept peacefully.

03] And Tullia affirmed that she had, as she had been very tired from the mountain trip.

04] And Cyrenius spoke: "You were very lucky here!

05] For if you had awoken during the night, you would have had to suffer great terror!

06] For look, one hour ago, this room was a scene of horror!"

07] Greatly astonished, Tullia asked what had happened.

08] And Cyrenius showed Tullia the three lions and spoke in a strongly raised voice:

09] "Tullia! – Look, these are surely three terrible animals; they are the kings of brutish power, rage and ferociousness, when they are provoked!

10] And woe to any wanderer in the wilderness, where they dwell!

11] Nothing can save him from their rage – one spring, and the man lies torn to pieces in the blazing wilderness!

12] And yet there are men, compared to whom these animals are genies from heaven!

13] Thus the three lions have protected us this night against the fury of men and have torn twenty assassins to pieces in this chamber!" –

14] Tullia was horrified by her husband's narration and spoke:

15] "How did this happen? – Why then did I not know anything about it? If you knew something of this earlier, why did you not reveal it to me?"

16] And Cyrenius spoke: "Tullia, I knew well that something was going to happen during the night;

17] but to be precise, I did not know in what manner, for I only knew as much as the divine Child of my friend had disclosed.

18] That I did not reveal anything to you is due to my great love for you, my beloved wife!

19] And see, now it is all over; the God of Israel has saved us marvellously from a most disgraceful demise,

20] and for that we will love, praise and glorify Him from the depths of our hearts as long as we live!

21] However, now that you are already dressed, let us go towards the exalted family and receive them already outside the city gate!"

22] Cyrenius now commanded his servants to prepare everything for the forthcoming feast and to make all proper arrangements for it,

23] and ordered the traitorous servant to follow him in outside the city gate.

24] At the same time, Maronius, together with the three priests, emerged from another part of the fortress, and announced to Cyrenius that the most exalted family was already approaching the fortress.



25] Here Cyrenius abandoned everything and, with a throbbing heart, rushed towards Joseph who, together with Mary and the Infant and his entire holy entourage, came to meet him with open arms on the first step.

***CHAPTER 138. - CYRENIUS' REPORT AND JOSEPH'S CRITICISM. LOVE  
AND COMPASSION ARE BETTER THAN THE MOST STRINGENT JUSTICE.  
CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE. THE COMPANY IN CYRENIUS' LARGE  
BEDROOM.***

***10 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] Cyrenius embraced Joseph most cordially and briefly narrated to him what had occurred in the fortress during the night.

02] And Joseph spoke: "My dearest friend and brother in the Lord, – what you now tell me, I already knew, and that in great detail just as it unfolded!

03] However, there is one thing you did that you should not have done, –

04] and this is the fact that you had the torn corpses buried in the public place!

05] You have indeed done this out of political considerations, to serve as a deterrent to other people from making similar attempts;

06] however, this is a most untenable method! For look, nothing in the world lasts as short as horror, fear and sadness!

07] Therefore even the methods of stirring up these three feelings are not in the slightest more tenable than the feelings themselves.

08] However, if any man has shaken off these three emblems of judgment by means of the freedom of his spirit, he will become incensed and will attack the terrible judge with twice his fury.

09] Therefore always lead men with eternal love, and try to conceal such necessary, but nevertheless horrific examples from the people, and you will always enjoy their love!

10] I tell you: One drop of compassion on every occasion is better than an entire palace full of the best and most stringent justice!

11] For compassion reforms the foe as well as the friend; but the most stringent and best justice causes the righteous to be proud and arrogant,

12] and the guilty and prosecuted to be full of wrath, and thinking only of plotting revenge on the righteous.

13] What you have now done, cannot be undone.

14] However, bear this rule in mind in future; it is better than gold, better than the purest gold!"

15] Cyrenius fell on Joseph's neck once again and thanked him for this teaching as a son thanks his father.

16] Then the entire company proceeded into Cyrenius' bedchamber, which, as was customary for the Romans of importance, consisted of a large hall.

17] For the Romans said: Man always transpires sickness during sleep;

18] if the room is not large enough for the sickness to disperse, it returns to the person and makes him ill!

19] For this reason, the wealthy Romans even had fountains in their large sleeping halls that purified the air and absorbed the bad fumes.

20] And so even in this fortress, Cyrenius' bedchamber was the largest room and had two fountains with wide tanks, in which several sea onions floated around.

21] The floor of the hall was of black and brown marble, and the entire hall was full of ancient Egyptian splendour.

22] The whole company was now in this hall and they spoke to one another about a good many things of prehistoric times, while Cyrenius' servants diligently laboured to arrange all things in the adjoining halls in the best possible manner.

***CHAPTER 139. - THE TRAITOR'S REPENTANCE. THE COMPASSION OF  
THE THREE LIONS FOR THE REPENTANT SERVANT. JOSEPH'S GOOD  
ADVICE. CYRENIUS' GENEROSITY AND THE MARVELLOUS EFFECT ON  
THE REPENTANT SERVANT.***

***12 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] The traitorous servant stood in one corner of the hall and regretted the act he had committed against his master;

02] but nobody thought about him, for all were engrossed in profound discussions.

03] In any case, the trustworthy servants of Cyrenius were fully occupied with the arrangement of the table, with the kitchen and with setting up all sorts of ornaments.

04] And so even the servants did not spare a thought for their extremely sorrowful colleague.

05] Suddenly the three lions got up and trotted towards the penitent servant of Cyrenius and licked him and, through various gestures, indicated their compassion towards him.

06] Maronius was the first to observe what the three lions were doing with the servant, and indicated this to Cyrenius;

07] for Maronius feared, that the three beasts might be getting a craving for the servant.

08] As Cyrenius noticed this strange situation around his traitorous servant, he began to speak to Joseph about the servant's offence.

09] And Joseph spoke: "Friend and brother, look here at an act I previously advised you about, how a very small amount of compassion is better than a whole palace full of the best justice!

10] The three lions are setting a good example here; go there and, as a human being, do something better!

11] On the journey here from the villa, I heard from one of the Lord's attendants how you praised the three lions to your wife this morning!

12] How is it then, that even now these three animals are showing you what you should have done in the first place?

13] See, this is how the Lord constantly instructs men!

14] Nothing in the world happens in vain; you can acquire true wisdom even from the spinning of a sun dust particle!

15] For it is steered and maintained through this same wisdom and omnipotence of God as the sun and the moon of heaven!

16] You can view this phenomenon all the more as a sign of the Lord, who clearly tells you what you should do.

17] Go there, and raise the threefold pitiful and fallen man; go there and uplift an exceedingly distressed and repentant brother!

18] For the Lord has prepared him to become your most loyal brother!"

19] As Cyrenius heard this from Joseph, he hastened to the servant and grabbed him under the arms and spoke:

20] "Brother! You have done me an evil; but as I have found repentance in you, I am raising you up again!

21] However, from now on, you will not be my servant anymore, but will become a trustworthy brother at my side!"

22] This broke the servant's heart, and he started to weep loudly and lament about how he could have sinned against such nobility in a man of all men!? –

**CHAPTER 140. – CYRENIUS' BROTHERLY WORDS TO THE PENITENT  
SERVANT. HIS INCLUSION IN THE COMPANY. THE ENVIOUS SERVANTS  
AND CYRENIUS' RESPONSE TO THEM.**

**13 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] As Cyrenius saw the immense gratitude and great repentance of this servant, he consoled him and spoke:

02] "Look, my new brother in the Lord, we human beings are all flawed before God, and God forgives us our mistakes when we recognize and repent them!

03] All the same, God is holy, while we all are great sinners before him!

04] However, if the Holy One forgives, why should we sinners not forgive each other for our mistakes?

05] As long as a man has not sunk to the level of a veritable Fury, God's mercy remains on him;

06] however, if a man on earth has become a complete devil, then God takes away His mercy from him and hands him over to the tribunal of hell!

07] That is why the twenty men who had bribed you were torn to pieces by the lions, – for they were already devils!

08] You, however, have been spared, as you were only misled, and blind, and did not know what you were doing!

09] The Lord God has not taken away his mercy from you and has opened your eyes, so that you yourself could come to a full realization of the sin you have committed.

10] You have recognized the sin and repented of it, and God has forgiven your sin!

11] And so I too forgive you the transgression against me and consequently make you my friend and a brother in the Lord!

12] I therefore raise you and lead you to my most holy and exalted company.

13] Hence be optimistic and follow me, so that you are blessed by my noble friends to become a true brother to me!"

14] This magnificent speech of Cyrenius had the best effect on the traitorous servant.

15] It comforted and strengthened the servant, who got up, dissolved into tears and followed Cyrenius towards the company.

16] As he reached there, Joseph immediately raised his hand and blessed the servant, and merely said: "The Lord be with you!"

17] Then Cyrenius immediately ordered brilliant and magnificent garments to be brought and put on the servant,

18] and immediately dignified him with an honorific title and gave him a brotherly kiss.

19] Then Cyrenius called the entire domestic staff together and presented this new brother to them and ordered them to obey him.

20] However, the servants spoke: "What sort of impartial judge are you that you elevate the traitor, but degrade us, who have always shown you the utmost loyalty?!"

21] "Does it trouble you", spoke Cyrenius' "if I am good-hearted and merciful? – Whom among you have I ever denied anything? And yet none of you has ever risked his life for

my sake!

22] However, this man was always the least among you and risked his life for me; through his deed I am free of my enemies! Does he therefore not deserve this status?"

23] Here the servants fell silent and again went about their business and were satisfied with this reply.

24] However, one of the heavenly youths spoke: "This is exactly what will happen in the Kingdom of God one day; there will be more joy over a penitent sinner than over ninety-nine very righteous persons, who have never sinned!" – –

**CHAPTER 141. – THE PREPARATIONS AND THE INVITATION TO THE  
MORNING FEAST BY CYRENIUS. THE INFANT'S CONSECRATION  
SPEECH. THE INVITATION AND FEEDING OF THE POOR**

**14 FEBRUARY 1844**

- 01] During this occasion, the morning meal was ready and the tables were nicely set;
- 02] and the servants came and indicated this to Cyrenius.
- 03] And Cyrenius went and inspected everything, and as he found everything in the best possible order, he went and invited the company to come to the table in the large adjoining hall.
- 04] As Joseph entered the hall, he could not stop wondering, as to why he felt as if he were in a small temple of Solomon in Jerusalem.
- 05] This arrangement however was a work of Maronius Pilla, who as the former governor of Jerusalem naturally knew the temple inside out.
- 06] Filled with joy, Joseph spoke: "Indeed, to this end, my brother Cyrenius Quirinus, you could not have set in motion a better concept!
- 07] And I am now, as in Jerusalem, at the Feast of Preparation, only the Holy of Holies is missing for the completion of the temple here!
- 08] The curtain is there; but the Ark of the Covenant behind it is missing!"
- 09] But Cyrenius spoke: "Brother, I thought that as you will anyway be bringing the living Holy of Holies with you, why should there be an artificial one there?"
- 10] Only now Joseph recovered from his unexpected dreams and thought of the Infant and Mary.
- 11] The Infant now called Cyrenius to Him and spoke to him; (at this, the angels fell down on their faces):
- 12] "Cyrenius, you have done much to bring joy to the purest man on earth; however, you almost forgot one thing!
- 13] See, you are giving a great and absolutely splendid feast today!
- 14] What the three continents produce as the best and the most precious is united here!
- 15] You have done well to do this, for indeed a greater honour through all eternity and infinity has not befallen any house in any world, than now befalls yours!
- 16] For now in front of you is He before whom all heavenly powers hide their faces!
- 17] Joseph has indicated to you that the Holy of Holies in this temple is empty.
- 18] Look, it is so! – However, it should not be so.
- 19] Send out your servants, and ask them to bring all kinds of poor, blind, lame and crippled people here!
- 20] Get another table set for these people in the replicated Holy of Holies and cater for them festively, and My attendants will tend to them!
- 21] And see, this is how the Holy of Holies will be full of life and will represent the Holy of Holies better than the now empty Ark of the Covenant in Jerusalem!
- 22] At the same time, procure three billy goats; throw them to the lions, so that they too



can be fed!"

23] Hereupon Cyrenius kissed the Infant and immediately followed his advice.

24] In the course of an hour, the exemplary Holy of Holies was filled with the poor, and the lions got their food as well.

**CHAPTER 142. - JOSEPH'S THANKSGIVING AND HUMILITY. CYRENIUS'  
AFFECTIONATE QUARREL WITH JOSEPH ON ACCOUNT OF THE  
PLACEMENT. JOSEPH'S INTELLIGENT ADVICE.**

**15 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After all was ordered and arranged, Joseph first raised his eyes to heaven and thanked the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.

02] Only after he ended his thanksgiving prayer, did he and his family take their places at the far end of Cyrenius' regally arranged table.

03] Bur Cyrenius hastened towards Joseph and spoke to him:

04] "No, no, no, my most exalted friend and brother! This is not possible; for this feast is in your honour and not in mine!

05] Therefore, your place is at the head of the table, and not here at the very far end!

06] Elevate yourself accordingly, and allow me to place you, and all your relatives, at the head of the table, which is set with gold!

07] My people will sit and recline here; for this is what I have ordered!"

08] Joseph spoke: "Cyrenius! Look, it is just because I am your most honest friend that I will remain sitting here in this place with my people!

09] For look, by me, you lose nothing, even if I sit here at the bottom of the table;

10] but you will lose much by your important public office companions, if they are not placed at the head!

11] Hence let the matter remain as it is! In the world, the world should get priority; in the Kingdom of God, however, the situation will be quite different, – for there the last ones will be the first at the table of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob!"

12] Cyrenius spoke: "O brother! I have looked forward to this day, when I would bestow a royal honour to you, a king's son!

13] However, now half of my joy is gone when I see you, for whom all of this is meant, sitting at the far end!

14] Brother! Go and sit at least in the middle, so that I am a little closer to you at the table!"

15] And Joseph spoke: "But my beloved brother, you will surely not be childish!?"

16] You know that I must always and everywhere remain within the order that the Lord God prescribes in my heart!

17] Do you then want to tempt me to go beyond this order?!

18] Place your distinguished and luminous personages at the head; and as the master you can sit wherever you want, as you have the right to sit at any place at the table!

19] And the matter can be settled in this way; the distinguished personages will recognize the foremost place by the golden tableware and will consider themselves most privileged, if you concede such places of honour to them and choose an inferior place for yourself!"

20] Cyrenius understood Joseph's words, and assigned the foremost places to his dignitaries;

21] and he, together with Tullia, sat down at the middle of the table.

22] And thus all was well arranged; the distinguished personages were delighted to be sitting at the head,

23] Cyrenius was happy in the middle, and Joseph with his people was extremely cheerful that he could remain within God's order even during this splendid feast.

**CHAPTER 143. – THE INQUISITIVE GOD-SEEKING CAPTAIN. THE  
PRIEST ON MYTHOLOGY, HIS AVOWAL OF THE ONE AND ONLY TRUE  
GOD. JOSEPH TO THE QUESTIONING CAPTAIN: THERE IS A TIME FOR  
EVERYTHING!**

**16 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] The morning meal lasted about one hour, and there were a lot of discussions on all sorts of subjects during the meal.

02] At the end of the meal, one captain, who had participated in the mountain climbing, asked one of the three former lesser priests:

03] "Now listen to me! Look, we have a mythology, according to which there are so many gods, that we see them wherever we might look;

04] I, however, have never seen or perceived a god!

05] I have often dreamt of a thousand things, – but never of any divine being!

06] Among all the currently living human beings, who can step forward and conscientiously and truthfully avow: 'I have seen and spoken to Zeus or any other divine being?

07] Since we are as good human beings as those who interacted with the gods in primeval time,

08] I do not see why the gods have abandoned us now and do no longer look after us in the least!

09] As a former priest, can you not give me any valid reason for this?"

10] The lesser priest spoke: "Dear friend, I beg you for the world, never ask me such nonsense!

11] Our gods are nothing but pure ephemera, who originate from the quagmire of our ignorance.

12] However, as, in our ignorance, we like to see nothing better than our own quagmire creations, we give precedence to them and imagine them as gods,

13] build temples and then pray for the most worthless products of our ignorance.

14] See, these are the gods, for whom we have built temples which abound in Rome!

15] Yes, there is certainly a true god; who has always been holy, but we highly impure beings in our hearts cannot see Him, although we can see His works!

16] If you wish to learn more about this one and only God, then turn to that pure Jew; he will certainly teach you – I swear it to you – to know Him better!"

17] The captain was satisfied with this reply; for he got just the answer he was seeking since a long time.

18] And he moved towards Joseph and expressed his concern to him.

19] And Joseph spoke: "Good man, there is a time for everything! When you are ready, it will be revealed to you; for the time being, therefore, be content with this promise!"

***CHAPTER 144. - JOSEPH'S AND CYRENIUS' INTENTION TO LOOK AT  
THE REPLICATED HOLY OF HOLIES. THE INFANT'S OBJECTION.  
JOSEPH'S EMBARRASSMENT. MARY'S ENLIGHTENING WORDS AND THE  
INFANT'S APPROVAL. THE SUBSEQUENT INSTRUCTION OF THE CAPTAIN.***

***17 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] As the god-seeking captain was dealt with in this way, Joseph spoke to Cyrenius:

02] "Brother, now let us also look at the Holy of Holies!"

03] And Cyrenius complied with great joy to the request of his most esteemed friend.

04] However, the Infant raised Himself up and spoke to Joseph:

05] "Listen to me, you trustworthy provider of My body! You yourself previously told the god-seeking captain:

06] 'There is a time for everything; only when you are ready, will further knowledge be revealed to you! For the time being, be content with this promise!'

07] So I too say here in front of the entrance of the exemplary as well as replicable Holy of Holies:

08] There is a time even for this entry! You are still not ready for this; when you are ready, I will disclose it to you through My attendants!

09] For the time being, therefore, be content with this promise!"

10] Here Joseph and Cyrenius looked intensely at each other, and the embarrassment of one surpassed that of the other.

11] And Joseph spoke to Mary: "Well, this looks good! The Infant is giving me ordinances while His feet are still wrapped in swaddling clothes!

12] Whatever will He do when He is ten years old, and what, when He is twenty?"

13] Mary however spoke to Joseph: "But dear father Joseph, how can you too become weak!?"

14] The angels have indicated to you with the utmost humility who this Infant is!

15] And the many miracles that have occurred around us are genuine and clear evidence for this great miracle truth of all truth – and all truth!

16] See, I, your faithful wife and maidservant, am well aware of what the words of the Infant refer to!

17] If you do that, I am sure in advance that another wind will promptly begin to blow!"

18] Hereupon Joseph again asked Mary: "Yes – what is it then that I must do now?"

19] And Mary responded: "Look at the man who there seeks, and wisely show him What he seeks – the One he thinks is so far from him, but who is so near instead!"

20] And the Infant looked at Joseph, smiling in the friendliest manner, and spoke:

21] "Yes, yes, my beloved Joseph, the woman is right; go there and instruct the captain!

22] For look, the gates to my Kingdom that have been closed for a long time, must be opened to those who ask, seek and knock!

23] But you must not point the finger at Me, as My time has still not arrived; for as you

know, everything requires its time!"

24] Hereupon Joseph kissed the Infant, and then went over to the captain and said to him:

25] "Come and listen! What you seek shall be given to you! And the captain listened to Joseph's speech with great joy.

**CHAPTER 145. – THE CAPTAIN ASKS ABOUT THE COMING OF THE  
MESSIAH. JOSEPH ON THE NATURE OF THE MESSIAH. THE LESSER  
PRIEST'S PROPHETIC WORDS ON THE DESTRUCTION OF THE PAGAN  
TEMPLE. FROM THE LIVING TEMPLE IN HUMAN HEARTS.**

**19 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] As the captain thus received the main tenets of God's teachings from Joseph, and consequently, some indications about the Messiah,

02] he became extremely pensive and after a while, asked when this Messiah would come.

03] Joseph answered and spoke: "This Messiah, through whom all men will be freed from the yoke of death, and who will reconnect the fallen earth with heaven, has already arrived!"

04] And the captain inquired further and asked: "So if this Messiah is already here, then tell me, where is He – and how can He be recognized?"

05] And Joseph replied: "I am not permitted to point Him out with my finger;

06] however, with regard to the marks of recognition, I can tell you a few things, so listen up!

07] See, to start with, the Messiah will be the living Son of the Supreme God, a God unknown to you until now!

08] An immaculate virgin will conceive him in a most miraculous way, solely through the power of the Supreme God!

09] And when He is conceived and then born, the fullness of God's supreme power will dwell within His flesh.

10] And so He will live physically on earth, His attendants and messengers will descend from the high heavens onto the earth and will serve him secretly, and many of them also openly.

11] He will bless all those, who will act according to His words and whose hearts become inflamed for him!

12] However, those who do not want to recognize Him will be judged by His almighty word which He has indelibly written on every man's heart!

13] However, His words will not be like those of a human being, but will be full of power and full of life; and whoever hears the words and keeps them subsequently in his heart, will never taste death!

14] In His nature he will be as gentle as a lamb and as tender as a turtledove;

15] But nevertheless, His subtlest breath will be obeyed by all the elements!

16] Although He will command the winds very softly, they will blow forcefully and will create furrows in the ocean until these reach to the bottom!

17] When He looks at the surging sea, the waters will become smooth as glass!

18] When He breathes on the earth, it will open up its ancient graves and will have to deliver all the dead by bringing them back to life!

19] And the fire will cool him who carries the Messiah's word alive in his heart. –

20] Now, dear captain, here you have the fundamental attributes of the Messiah, by which you will may easily recognize Him.

21] I am not permitted to say anymore about Him; but you will easily and shortly find out 'where He is'!"

22] This explanation made such a powerful impression on the captain that he hardly dared to speak any further.

23] He then went to the lesser priest to whom he had spoken earlier, and said to him:

24] "Did you overhear what this eminently wise Jew told me?"

25] And the lesser priest spoke: "I tell you: every single word pierced my marvelling soul!"

26] And the captain spoke: "So tell me, how will our gods' era come to an end in the future, when the Messiah of the world, described to me as being of such remarkable character, asserts himself in the full activity of His altogether divine power?"

27] And the lesser priest replied: "Did you not sense the power of the nocturnal hurricane three days ago?"

28] On the mountain, – did you not see the sudden end of our former Apollo temple and all the subsequent signs thereafter?

29] See, that is just what will happen to Rome within a short time, – the temples will become dusty rubble!

30] And you will soon see that place where people are still making offerings to Zeus, as a disordered heap of stones; but instead, living temples will be built in the hearts of men!

31] In these hearts, every man will be able to make live offerings to the only true God anywhere and anytime, just like a priest! – I can tell you this much but no more! – Do you want more? Look, there are those, who know more than me; so do not question me any further!"



**CHAPTER 146. – FURTHER QUERIES BY THE CAPTAIN. JOSEPH ON THE  
NATURE OF THE MESSIAH. LOVE AS THE PRINCIPAL KEY TO THE  
TRUTH. THE COMPANY IN THE REPLICATED HOLY OF HOLIES. THE  
POOR BLIND PERSONS REGAIN THEIR EYESIGHT.**

**20 FEBRUARY 1844**

- 01] The captain now asked the lesser priest no further questions but went straightaway to Joseph.
- 02] There he immediately narrated all he had heard from the lesser priest,
- 03] and immediately thereafter, asked Joseph how he should take all this.
- 04] And Joseph answered: "For the time being, hold onto all that has been said to you as the words are worth;
- 05] but wait most patiently for what comes in the future and you will fare best!
- 06] For look, the holy Kingdom of the Messiah does not lie in questions and answers,
- 07] but only in the patience, love, kindness and absolute surrender to the divine will!
- 08] For God cannot be rushed, forced and least of all, obtained through sheer stubbornness!
- 09] However, when the Lord considers it the right time, He will also lead you to higher revelation!
- 10] So establish an instant, living love towards the God I have revealed to you in all clarity; this will lead you to where you actually want to go in the shortest possible time!
- 11] Yes! – In one instance you will obtain more with such love than with a million dead questions!"
- 12] And the captain spoke: "Good, my most esteemed and wise friend! I will do all this; however, you must tell me how to love your God, about whom one knows still too little?"
- 13] And Joseph spoke: "Love God as you love your brother and as your possible bride!
- 14] Love your fellow men as genuine brothers and sisters in God, and you will thereby love God as well!
- 15] Do good deeds at all times and everywhere, and you will have God's grace!
- 16] Be merciful towards all, and you will find the true living mercy from God!
- 17] Furthermore, be calm, gentle and full of patience in all things, and avoid pride, arrogance and envy like the plague;
- 18] then the Lord will awaken a powerful flame in your heart,
- 19] and the powerful light of this spiritual flame will drive away all the obscurity of death, and you will find revelation within yourself, in which you will find all your questions answered in the most luminous and lively way!
- 20] Look, that is the right path towards light and life from God; that is the right love for God; walk along this path!"
- 21] As the captain received this powerful teaching from Joseph, he desisted from his many remaining questions and immersed himself in deep thoughts.

22] However, in the meanwhile, the youths had pulled the curtain wide open, and Joseph instantly saw that it was time to enter into this replicated Holy of Holies.

23] Already from a distance, loud calls of gratitude could be heard from the depth of this large hall from the poor persons who had eaten.

24] But when the radiant Cyrenius, together with Joseph and Mary with the Infant, entered the replicated Holy of Holies, the poor were beside themselves.

25] This sight induced many tears of joy and compassion in Cyrenius, and the same happened to Joseph and Mary.

26] Among them, there were several who were blind, lame and crippled in all kinds of ways; for there were hundreds of them.

27] Mary prayed secretly, took the cloth with which she frequently wiped the Infant, and then wiped the eyes of all the blind persons with this cloth; and they regained their eyesight! – After this deed, there was no end to the praise and glorification; therefore the company returned to the main hall for a while.

**CHAPTER 147. – THE LOUD APPEALS FROM THE SICK PEOPLE TO  
MARY. HER REFERENCE TO THE CHILD JESUS. THE HEALING OF THE  
SICK. THEIR INSTRUCTION THROUGH THE ANGELS. THE CAPTAIN  
SEARCHES FOR THE MIRACLE WORKER**

**21 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After a while, the exalted company returned to the replicated Holy of Holies and was again received with profuse praise.

02] The lame, the crippled and the otherwise afflicted cried: "O you glorious mother! You, who helped the blind, please also release us from our great agony!"

03] But Mary spoke: "Why do you call me? I cannot give you any help; for I am, like you, just a weak mortal maiden of my Lord!"

04] But He, who I carry in my arms, can certainly help you; for the eternal fullness of the divine omnipotence dwells within Him!"

05] However, the sick people did not listen to Mary's speech, but shouted even more: "O glorious mother, help us, help us wretched souls, and release us from our agony!"

06] Then the Infant raised Himself up and stretched out His hand over the sick persons, and all were completely healed in an instant.

07] The lame sprang like deer, the crippled were straightened like the cedars of Lebanon, and all the other diseased were freed from their ailments.

08] And the angels went to all these poor people, told them to be silent and declared to them the proximity of the Kingdom of God on earth!

09] These occurrences brought our captain out of his contemplations, and he followed the company into the Holy of Holies.

10] On arrival there, he went straight to Joseph and asked him: "Exalted friend, what happened here? – I see neither blind nor lame, neither crippled nor other types of wretched people here anymore.

11] How?! – Have they all been healed by a miracle, or was their earlier wretched condition merely a sham?"

12] And Joseph spoke: "Go there yourself and talk about it with those who appear so mysterious to you! They will best be able to tell you what has happened to them!"

13] And the captain immediately did as Joseph had advised him; for asking questions had always been his weakness.

14] He got the exact same response from everyone; everywhere he heard: "I was healed by a miracle!"

15] And the captain came again to Joseph and asked him:

16] "Who among you worked the miracle? – Who among you has such miraculous powers? – Who among you is surely a God?!"

17] And Joseph spoke: "Look, there the poor ones who were healed are standing again!"

18] Go over there once again and ask them; they will give you the right hint!"

19] And the captain immediately turned to the poor and asked them about the miracle worker.

20] The poor people spoke: "Look at the large company; the miraculous healing came from its centre!

21] The small Jewish woman appears to have the power

29 but how? The gods will know this better than us!"

22] The captain did not know more now than he did before.

23] Joseph spoke to the captain: "See, you are a rich Roman; take care of these poor people for the sake of God, and you will learn more! For now, however, content yourself with this!"

**CHAPTER 148. – THE RIVALRY BETWEEN THE CAPTAIN AND CYRENIUS  
IN PERFORMING GOOD WORKS. THE PERPLEXED CAPTAIN AND HIS  
INSTRUCTION BY JOSEPH.**

**22 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] As the captain heard this from Joseph, he did not ponder for long, but went to Cyrenius and spoke:

02] Imperial Consular Highness! His eminence has surely heard what the wise Jew advised this unworthy person?

03] I have immediately resolved to promptly follow his advice.

04] And so I request Your Highness to allow me to pursue my resolution of taking care of these poor people like my own children!"

05] And Cyrenius spoke: "My most honourable dear captain! I am sorry that I cannot accord you this lofty pleasure!

06] For look, just at this moment, I have taken them into my own care!

07] However, you need not be despondent about it; for you will still find enough poor people.

08] Follow the wise Jew's advice regarding them, and you will reap the same reward!"

09] The captain bowed to Cyrenius, went immediately towards Joseph and spoke:

10] "Now look, what can I do if Cyrenius has forestalled me? From where shall I get the poor now? For the poor from all over Ostracine have gathered here!"

11] And Joseph affably smiled at the captain and said to him:

12] "O my best friend! Do not worry about this at all; for there has always been a greater lack of everything else on earth than poor people!

13] See, it does not necessarily have to be blind, lame, crippled and diseased people!

14] Go and investigate the families in the houses, convince yourself of their multitude of needs, and you will immediately find any number of opportunities to put your surplus to work.

15] Look, on the whole, this city is anyway more of a ruin than just a somewhat reasonably thriving city!

16] Investigate only the half-dilapidated houses of many a citizen and you will immediately and clearly see that your concern regarding the lack of poor people is groundless!"

17] Here the captain said: "Dear wise friend, you are undoubtedly right;

18] but these poor will not be able to enlighten me much on the coming Messiah, as they, as well as I, are heretics compared to you!

19] Those ones here however, have now experienced so many miraculous things and might have gradually revealed a good many things to me!?"

20] And Joseph replied to the captain: "Oho, my dear friend! – Do you really think that the spiritual revelation lies with the poor?

21] Oh – you are greatly in error! – See, the revelation lies only in the love of your own heart and spirit! – When you practice love, the flame of such love will give you illumination, but never from the mouths of the poor!" The captain was satisfied with this explanation and

from this time on did no longer ask what he should do.

***CHAPTER 149. - THE QUESTION OF THE REPARATION OF THE OLD  
CARTHAGINIAN SHIP ON THE SABBATH. THE INFANT'S SPEECH ON  
PERFORMING GOOD WORKS ON THE SABBATH. THE DISOBEDIENCE OF  
THE LAW-ABIDING JOSEPH. THE MIRACULOUS REPARATION OF THE  
SHIP BY THE ANGELS.***

**23 FEBRUARY 1844**

- 01] After the had thus been put at ease, Cyrenius ordered the commander to fit out a ship for the next day, in which to take these poor people to Tyre.
- 02] But the commander spoke: "Imperial Consular Highness! To the best of my knowledge, there is only one old Carthaginian ship out in the harbour, which is in a very bad condition.
- 03] There are no shipwrights in this city, only really miserable carpenters here and there, who can barely bind a fishing raft together.
- 04] Correspondingly, it is highly questionable, as to how we will refit the old Carthaginian ship!"
- 05] And Cyrenius spoke: "Do not worry; the best advice for this will be got at once!
- 06] Look, that wise Jew is a greater master carpenter according to his craft, and so are his five sons!
- 07] I will ask him for advice, and I am certain that he will give me the best advice, especially in this matter!"
- 08] Here Cyrenius at once turned to Joseph and presented the matter to him.
- 09] Joseph spoke: "Friend and brother! It would be no problem, if only today were not our greatest Sabbath, on which we are not permitted to do any work!
- 10] But perhaps there are carpenters here, to whom our Sabbath is of no concern; I would happily give them directions."
- 11] However, the Infant raised Himself up and spoke: "Joseph! – Every man may perform good works as far as the Sabbath is concerned!
- 12] The celebration of the Sabbath is not so much about remaining idle throughout the day, but more about performing good works.
- 13] It is certain that Moses has strongly advised the celebration of the Sabbath, and in his commandments, has designated every unnecessary and menially paid work as an abomination before God;
- 14] however, Moses has never forbidden work according to God's will!
- 15] Nowhere in the law does it state that one should allow a brother to perish on the Sabbath!
- 16] However, as the Lord of the Sabbath, I say: Do good works also on the Sabbath, as this is the best way to celebrate it!
- 17] If apparently you, Joseph, do not dare to transgress the Law of Moses through the minor reparation of this ship, then My attendants will do this work at once!"
- 18] And Joseph spoke: "My divine little Son, You are right; but see, I have grown old with the law and do not want to transgress it even to all appearances!"

19] Then the Infant immediately called the youths and spoke: "So go forth and fulfil My will;

20] for Joseph pays greater heed to the laws than the Lawgiver and respects the Sabbath more than the Lord of the Sabbath!"

21] And the youths left the hall as quick as thought, brought the ship in working order in an instant, and soon returned.

22] All wondered at this speed, and many did not believe, that the ship was in working order. However, messengers soon arrived from the harbour, who notified the captain of this deed. Hereupon the whole company proceeded to the shore and inspected the ship and marvelled about the skill of these youths.



***CHAPTER 150. – THE VISIT TO THE HARBOUR. THE VALUABLE SHIP.  
CYRENIUS' EXPRESSION OF GRATITUDE TO JOSEPH. THE INFANT'S  
REPLY AND ADVICE ON DOING GOOD TO THE POOR.***

***24 FEBRUARY 1844***

01] Cyrenius carefully inspected the ship and estimated how many people could be accommodated on it.

02] And he found that, if necessary, at least a thousand people could be accommodated on it comfortably.

03] During this estimation, Cyrenius also convinced himself of the ship's extraordinary sturdiness and workmanship;

04] for it did not look as though it were an old and patched up ship; instead, the whole ship looked as though it were cast.

05] No seams could be seen, and the wood had no visible marks of annual rings, knots or other fibres and wood pores.

06] As Cyrenius convinced himself of all this and returned from the ship to the company on the shore, – naturally with his necessary entourage – he immediately went over to Joseph and spoke:

07] "My most exalted friend, you most fortunate man on earth! I do not anymore wonder about the miracles; for I now know only too well, that all things are possible with God!

08] I know that this is no manufactured or patched up ship, but one created fully anew; but I am not surprised about its.

09] For it would surely be as easy for the Lord to create a whole new world as it would to create such a ship; for the earth

is, after all, a ship that carries a huge number of people on the sea of infinity!

10] But that you have now put me greatly in your debt, see, it makes me think as to how I could ever repay you?!

11] For look, this ship, which earlier resembled more of a wreck than a ship and was thus hardly worth a pound of silver, is now worth over ten thousand pounds of gold!

12] For it can now be used for a voyage via the Pillars of Hercules (Gibraltar) to Britannia, and for the circumnavigation of the whole of Africa up to India!

13] Indeed! – For its use in the world, such a creation cannot be paid with any amount of gold!

14] See, my most exalted friend, the repayment of this debt gives me much to think about!

15] If you would value gold, then as truly as your and now my God lives, you would get ten thousand pounds in seven days!

16] However, I know that you loathe gold, and thus it makes me sad now, that I will remain indebted to you, my greatest friend!"

17] And Joseph seized Cyrenius' hand, pressed it to his heart and wanted to speak; but tears welled up at the sight of this noble Roman.

18] Instead, the Infant sat up, smiled at Cyrenius and spoke: "My dear Cyrenius Quirinus! Truly I say to you: If you had accommodated just one poor person in My name, the value

of your deed would have been higher than ten thousand such ships!

19] However, you have taken care of several hundreds within a short period of time and I would have to give you a great number of such ships to compensate you materially!

20] For look, a human being is worth more to Me than the whole world full of such ships! Therefore do not worry about your imagined debt!

21] Whatever you do for the poor, you do for Me; however, I will not reward you for it on earth but when you die, I will instantly awaken your soul and make you equal to My attendants here who repaired the ship!"

22] Here Cyrenius wept and declared that from now on, he would devote his life to the welfare of the poor and suffering human beings.

23]The Infant raised His hand, said Amen, and then blessed Cyrenius and the ship. –

**CHAPTER 151. – THE MIDDAY MEAL IN THE FORTRESS. THE CAPTAIN  
GOES IN SEARCH OF THE POOR IN THE CITY, HIS RETURN AND  
CYRENIUS' PRAISE. THE INFANT'S WORDS OF BLESSING.**

**26 FEBRUARY 1844**

- 01] Hereupon the entire company again proceeded into the city and then to the fortress, where the midday meal was prepared fully according to Jewish custom.
- 02] All took their former places and fortified themselves with the delicious midday meal.
- 03] Only at the end of the meal did Cyrenius realize that the familiar captain was not among the guests.
- 04] "Where is he, what is he doing?" was the general topic at the Roman section of the table.
- 05] Cyrenius turned to Joseph and asked him about it.
- 06] And Joseph replied and spoke: "Do not worry about him; for he has gone to search for the poor in the city!
- 07] He is, of course, more interested in the discovery of the inner light than actually in the poor themselves;
- 08] however, this will not be detrimental to his cause, – for to the one who seeks, the right path will open up by itself!"
- 09] As Cyrenius heard this, he was overjoyed and praised the captain in his heart.
- 10] As all sorts of speculations regarding the absence of the captain were spreading about in the Roman section, the captain himself came to the company in very cheerful spirits and was instantly assailed by a thousand queries from all sides.
- 11] But the captain, who was himself very fond of questions, was, however, no less fond of answers.
- 12] He immediately went to Cyrenius and excused himself for missing the midday meal.
- 13] And Cyrenius shook his hand and spoke to him:
- 14] "Indeed, if we were standing before the enemy, and you would have left the battlefield for such a reason, you would not need to answer for it to me!
- 15] For truly, truly, as I now see, if we do good to even just one human being, then we do more than if we would win all the empires of the world for Rome!
- 16] The Lord God is more concerned about one human being than all the rest of the world!
- 17] Therefore we do a far greater thing before God when we take care of others as one brother does to another, physically – and, as far as possible, also spiritually,
- 18] than if we would campaign against several thousands of our worst enemies!
- 19] Yes, it is infinitely more praiseworthy before God to be a benefactor to a brother, than to be the greatest ever hero in this mad world!"
- 20] And the Infant added: "Amen, so it is, My Cyrenius Quirinus!
- 21] Continue on this path; indeed, no other path leads as surely towards everlasting life! – For love is life; whoever has love, also has life!" – Hereupon the Infant blessed Cyrenius and the captain with His eyes.

**CHAPTER 152. - THE INFANT JESUS' SPEECH TO CYRENIUS DURING  
THE HANDING OVER OF THE POOR PEOPLE. CYRENIUS AS PRECURSOR  
OF PAUL A PREDICTION ON THE FALL OF JERUSALEM BY THE ROMAN  
SWORD.**

**27 FEBRUARY 1844**

- 01] The youths reopened the curtain after this discussion, and the entire company again went to the poor. And the Infant sat up and blessed the poor with His eyes.
- 02] Then He turned to Cyrenius and spoke to him in an extremely sweet voice:
- 03] "My beloved Cyrenius Quirinus! Look, these attendants of Mine, who you see here as tender youths, supervise the whole of creation in My name!
- 04] Every world and every sun must obey their slightest gesture;
- 05] and so you can see, that I have granted them unlimited power.
- 06] Just as I have handed over the orderly management of all creation to My attendants, I now hand over these far greater worlds of life to you!
- 07] Look, these brothers and sisters are more than an entire infinity full of celestial bodies and suns!
- 08] Yes, I tell you: One child in the cradle is greater than all the matter in the eternally endless space!
- 09] So bear in mind the magnitude of My gift to you and the high importance I give you!
- 10] Lead these poor people with all possible love, kindness and patience on the right path towards Me, and you will eternally reap an inestimable reward!
- 11] I, your Lord and your God, hereby make you a forerunner in the kingdom of the gentiles, so that he, who I will send to the gentiles hereafter, will be received well!
- 12] Subsequently, I will also send a forerunner to the Jews;
- 13] but I say to you: he will have a hard time! That what he will do by the sweat of his brow, you will be able to achieve in your sleep!
- 14] Therefore the light will be taken even from the children and handed over to all of you in all its fullness!
- 15] And hence, as a Child, I am planting the seed in you, which will some day give Me the tree on which the most precious fruits will eternally grow for My house.
- 16] However, I will curse the fig tree with the children which I planted in Salem already during the time of Abraham – in a city that I built through Melchisedech with My own hands – because it only bears leaves!
- 17] Truly, it has always caused Me to starve! I had the tree in Salem fertilized many times by good gardeners, and still it did not bear Me any fruit!
- 18] Therefore the city which I built for My children with My own hands will fall to you strangers before a century passes, for your brother's son shall take up the sword against Salem!
- 19] Just as you have adopted these poor people as your children, so I too will adopt you strangers as My children, and you will cast out the children!

20] Keep these words within you and act accordingly in secret; I however will always bless you with the invisible crown of My eternal love and mercy, Amen!"

21] These words caused all to fall silent. The angels lay on their faces, and no one dared to say or question anything. –

***CHAPTER 153. - CYRENIUS' QUERY ON THE DIVINE NATURE OF THE CHILD. JOSEPH'S EXPLANATION ON THE LIVING WORD OF GOD IN THE PROPHETS. THE CORRECTION BY THE CHILD JESUS.***

**28 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After a while, Cyrenius drew Joseph aside and said to him:

02] "My most exalted friend and brother! Did you hear what the Infant just told me?!

03] Did you hear, when He once said straight out: I – your Lord – and your – God?!

04] If I further take into account His willpower and the attendants from the heaven of the heavens, who at all times fall down on their faces whenever the little Boy speaks, then the Child is indeed – the one, eternal, true God and Creator of the world and of all that it contains?!

05] Friend! Brother! – What do you say to my confessions? – Is it not so? – Or is it something else?"

06] Here, Joseph was himself somewhat taken aback; for he considered the Child as a perfect Son of God, but not as the Supreme Being Himself!

07] Thus he spoke after a while: "To consider the Child to be God might be a little daring!

08] However, the Jews have always considered themselves as the Children of God – and thus as the Sons of God as well!

09] And this goes back to the times of father Abraham, who also was a Son of God, as are his descendants.

10] Furthermore, we have always had greater and lesser prophets, and when they spoke, God spoke through them, and God always argued and spoke through them in the first person.

11] Thus the Lord spoke once through Isaiah: 'For I am the Lord, your God, who sets the sea in motion so that its waves rage; – My name is: Lord – Sabaoth.

12] I put My word in your mouth and cover you under the shadow of My hands so that I may plant the sky and create the earth and speak to Zion: You are My people!'

13] See, when the prophet speaks in the first person, as if he himself were the Lord, he is nevertheless not the Lord, but it is only the Lord's spirit that speaks through the prophet's mouth!

14] And look, it must be the same also here; God has awoken a most powerful prophet in this Child and now speaks through His mouth at an early age, as He once did through the mouth of the boy Samuel!"

15] Cyrenius was calmed by these words; but the Infant called Joseph and Cyrenius and said to Joseph:

16] "Joseph, you know well that the Lord mostly speaks through the mouths of the prophets in the first person;

17] however, don't you know what the Lord once spoke through Isaiah, when He said:

18] 'Who is this who comes from Edom, with reddish clothes from Bozrah? This One who is glorious in His apparel, travelling in the greatness of His strength? –

19] 'It is I, a teacher of justice and a master helper!

20] 'Why is Your apparel red, and Your garments like one who treads in the winepress?

21] 'I have trodden the winepress alone, and no one is with Me from among the nations. For I have trodden them in My anger, and trampled them in My fury.

22] 'Their blood is sprinkled upon My garments, and I have stained all My robes!

23] 'For I have determined the day of vengeance; the year to redeem My own has come!

24] 'I looked around, but there was no one to help; and I was terrified, but no one saved me, instead My arm had to help me, and My fury held me back!

25] 'I have trodden down the nations in My anger, made them drunk in My fury, and struck their strength to the ground!' –

26] Joseph! – Do you know Him, who comes from Edom, and who has now arrived and is speaking to you: I am He, who teaches justice and who is a master helper!?"

27] At these words, Joseph laid his hand on his heart and silently worshiped the Infant.

28] After a while, Cyrenius quietly said to Joseph: "Brother! From the certainly very wise words of the Infant, it appears to me that I could be right after all?!"

29] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, you are right, and you must be all the more concerned about maintaining silence on this, if you wish to live!" – And Cyrenius engraved this warning deep in his heart and adhered to it all his life.

**CHAPTER 154. - THE OFFICIAL QUESTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN.**  
**CYRENIUS' NEGATIVE REPLY. THE CONVERSATION BETWEEN THE**  
**INQUISITIVE CAPTAIN AND THE BEAUTIFUL ANGEL**

**29 FEBRUARY 1844**

01] After this scene, our captain came to Cyrenius and asked him how many men he should summon to the fortress to be at Cyrenius' service in the evening.

02] The captain asked this as he knew that Cyrenius would have his luggage brought aboard the ship that very evening, as well as the rations for the several hundred people he was taking along from Ostracine to Tyre.

03] Cyrenius looked at the captain and said: "My dear friend! If I should be taking care of these things only now, then I would have not taken care of it very well!

04] Still today, the provisioning of the new ship that will be transporting these poor people will be taken care of, so that none of them will be in need.

05] Have you not seen how quickly this Carthaginian ship was built by these youths?

06] See, in the same way, everything can and will be provided for!

07] With regard to my own ship, it has already been provisioned since a long time with a year's provision, and that for a thousand men in an emergency.

08] For this reason, no man needs to exert himself on my behalf, but should remain on his imperial duty."

09] The captain wondered at this response, particularly because Cyrenius usually gave a lot of importance to military etiquette.

10] He thereupon asked Cyrenius: "Your Imperial Consular Highness! Who are these youths then? Are they genuine Egyptian wizards, or are they perhaps demigods or famous magicians and astronomers from Persia?"

11] And Cyrenius spoke: "My dear friend, here is neither the one nor the other!

12] But if you want to know who these youths are, then go and ask one of them, and you will get to the heart of the matter through no fault of mine!"

13] The captain bowed to Cyrenius and instantly turned towards one of the youths present and asked him:

14] "Listen to me, my most amiable, most magnificent, most splendid-looking, who completely bewitches me, you who are glorious beyond my comprehension, you who are endlessly gentle, whose amazing beauty paralyzes my tongue, you u-t-t-erly – utterly lovely – young man!

15] Yes – um – what did – did – did – I then – actually want to ask you?"

16] And the youth, who, apart from the glory, blended into full heavenly beauty, hereupon said to the captain:

17] "You surely must know that? Just ask questions, you who are so fond of questions; I will willingly answer all of them!"

18] However, the captain was awestruck by the great beauty of the youth and could not utter a single word.

19] After a while, when he had gawked to his heart's content at the, for him, indescribable



beauty of the youth, he requested the latter for a kiss.

20] And the youth kissed the captain and spoke: "This will create an eternal bond between us! – Just seek a closer acquaintance with that wise Jew, and you will get enlightenment on many things!"

21] However, the captain had fallen so deeply in love with this youth, that he couldn't help himself for all his love, and completely forgot his question.

22] And this love tormented him until the evening and was a mild punishment for the captain's hobby of asking questions; however, in the evening, he was again healed and had no further desire to approach such a youth.

***CHAPTER 155. - CYRENIUS' WORRY ABOUT THE SHIP. THE ANGEL'S  
ADVICE. CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE TO JOSEPH AND THE INFANT. JOSEPH'S  
PREDICTION OF CYRENIUS' ADVENTURE DURING THE VOYAGE.***

***1 MARCH 1844***

01] In the evening, supper was prepared and consumed, whereupon arrangements were made for the departure on the following day.

02] However, according to Cyrenius' and his suite's knowledge, the new Carthaginian ship was not yet loaded or supplied with anything, and Cyrenius secretly worried about it a little.

03] But one youth walked up to him and said: "Quirinus! You should not worry about anything even secretly;

04] for look, that what worries you at present has been in the best order since a while!

05] All you need to do is to put your own house in good order during your absence; for we will take care of everything else in the name of the Lord God Sabaoth!"

06] Cyrenius trusted the youth's words – and did not worry at all anymore as far as the ship was concerned.

07] Hereupon Cyrenius called over the captain and handed over the management and provision of the fortress.

08] And as the captain again took up his usual duty,

09] Cyrenius called the commander to him, and gave him full authority over the military forces stationed in this city;

10] for with the Romans, a commander was not allowed to command the military forces at his own discretion in the presence of the governor, for the governor was, in a manner of speaking, all in all.

11] As Cyrenius finished with his arrangements, he went over to Joseph and spoke:

12] "My most exalted, yea, I should rather say, my holy friend and brother! How much have I to thank you and, most particularly, your most Holy Infant!

13] How, when, with what can I ever repay you this immense debt!?

14] You have given me Tullia; you have miraculously saved my life!

15] Yes, I cannot even count all the extraordinary and miraculous good deeds that you showed to me in the short time of my stay here!"

16] And Joseph said: "Friend! How long has it been since I was in great distress?!

17] You were sent to Tyre to become my rescuing angel of the Lord!

18] And see, one hand washes the other on the immense body of all mankind!

19] However, let us not speak of this anymore! Look, it has become evening! The villa is an hour's journey outside the city; therefore allow me now to depart for my house!

20] You and your companions have my and the Lord's manifold blessings; thus you may leave from here in confidence!

21] However, take along the three lions on your ship, and they will serve you well!

22] For there will be a storm and you will end up in Crete, and the rapacious Cretans will attack you.

23] And this is where the three lions will once again serve you well!"

24] Here Cyrenius was afraid; but Joseph comforted him and reassured him that no one would suffer even the slightest harm whatsoever.

## ***CHAPTER 156. – THE GRATITUDE OF MARONIUS, THE THREE PRIESTS AND TULLIA. JOSEPH'S COMMAND TO KEEP SILENT.***

**2 MARCH 1844**

- 01] Hereupon Maronius Pilla came with the three priests to Joseph and thanked him for all the miraculous good deeds.
- 02] And Joseph cautioned him to keep silent on all that he had seen;
- 03] and Maronius as well as the three priests most solemnly promised to do this.
- 04] Hereupon Tullia came, fell down before Mary, and dissolved into tears of gratitude.
- 05] However, Mary bowed down together with the Infant, raised Tullia up and spoke to her:
- 06] "Be blessed by me in the name of Him, who rests in my arms! – Be always grateful in your heart, while bearing this Child in mind, and you will find your salvation in Him!
- 07] However, restrain your tongue and do not betray us to anyone!
- 08] For a time will come, when the Lord will reveal himself to the world!"
- 09] Then Mary dismissed the still sobbing Tullia.
- 10] Joseph spoke to Cyrenius: "Friend! Look, many of your entourage were witnesses to a good many miracles; for their own well-being, command them to keep silent on all that they witnessed!
- 11] For every traitor of this wholly divine matter will meet with death, if he does not keep silent!"
- 12] Cyrenius pledged to do as such to Joseph and assured him, that no one would find out a single thing.
- 13] Joseph praised Cyrenius and finally reminded him of the promised eight children, the five girls and three boys.
- 14] And Cyrenius spoke: "O friend, that will be my foremost concern!
- 15] However, just one more question: Look, I must go to Rome this year because of Tullia!
- 16] My brother Augustus Caesar, who as you know, already heard about a few things from me, will certainly ask me more.
- 17] What should I tell him? To what extent can I initiate this noble person into this secret?"
- 18] And Joseph spoke: "You can tell him a few things, but only in private.
- 19] However, remind him that by keeping silent, he will remain undisturbed in his imperial status, and so would his descendants!
- 20] If he drops even a word anywhere, God will instantly punish him!
- 21] And should he revolt against the Almighty, then he, along with Rome, will perish instantly!"
- 22] Cyrenius fervently thanked Joseph for this; and Joseph blessed him and then proceeded with his entire family to the villa.

***CHAPTER 157. – THE INFANT JESUS' AFFECTIONATE CONVERSATION  
WITH JAMES. THE BURDEN AND HEAVINESS OF THE LORD FOR THOSE,  
WHO CARRY HIM IN THEIR HEARTS. THE SUDDEN INABILITY TO SPEAK  
OF THE HITHERTO ELOQUENT CHILD JESUS.***

***4 MARCH 1844***

01] Outside of the city, Mary handed over the Infant to James; for she had become tired by carrying Him in her arms all day long.

02] And James was overjoyed that he could once again carry his Beloved.

03] However, the Infant opened His eyes and spoke: "My dear James! – You certainly love Me with all your heart!

04] But if I should become really heavy for you, would you then still love Me?"

05] And James spoke: "O my most beloved little Brother! – Even if You weighed as much as me, I would still carry you, with a burning heart, in my arms!"

06] The Infant spoke: "My brother, I certainly will not become too heavy for you just now,  
07] but a time will come, in which I will become a great burden to you!

08] Therefore it is good that you are even now lovingly getting accustomed to My weight;  
09] thus when the hard times come, you will be able to carry My full weight as easily as you carry Me now as a Child!

10] I tell you: Whosoever has not carried Me as a Child, will succumb under My full weight in the future!

11] But I will be as little a burden even in adulthood to him who carries Me in his heart as a small and weak Child, as you now do in your arms!"

12] And James, not understanding these lofty words, kissed and cuddled the Infant and asked Him:

13] "O my most beloved little brother, my Jesus! – Will You then allow Yourself to be carried even as a man?"

14] The Infant spoke: "You love Me with all your might, and that is enough for Me!

15] I prefer your simple-mindedness to the wisdom of the wise, who calculate a great deal and make predictions, but whose hearts are colder than ice while doing so.

16] What you do not yet understand now, you will grasp at the right time!

17] Look, I am only a Child of a very young age;

18] and see, My tongue is already loosened up and I talk to you as a mature man!

19] If I were to remain like this, then I would be two beings at once, a Child to the eye – and a man to the ear.

20] Thus things cannot remain like this! I shall not speak to anyone but but you for a year;

21] but you will hear My voice only in your heart!

22] When I again speak to you with my mouth, your eyes will perhaps see Me as more manly, but your ears will only hear childish talk through My lips!

23] I have now told you this, so that you do not get annoyed with me then – so be it!"

24] Here the Infant was again completely speechless and behaved just like any other infant. – And while this discussion went on, they had already reached the villa.

***CHAPTER 158. - THE MIRACULOUS TENDING OF JOSEPH'S DOMESTIC ANIMALS BY THE ANGELS. JOSEPH'S ZEAL FOR OBSERVING THE SABBATH. GABRIEL'S ADVICE ON THE ACTIVITY OF NATURE ON THE SABBATH. THE DISAPPEARANCE OF THE ANGELS.***

***5 MARCH 1844***

01] Upon arrival at the villa, Joseph immediately ordered the four eldest sons to go and check on the animals, tend to them and then quickly retire for the night.

02] And they hastily went and checked on the animals; however, they soon returned and said to Joseph:

03] "Father, it is marvellous! The cattle as well as the donkeys have been fed and watered, and yet their troughs are full, and the water buckets are full to the brim; how is that?"

04] And Joseph himself went to have a look and found the statement of the four sons to be true.

05] He then returned and asked the still present youths whether they had done this on a Sabbath.

06] And the youths answered in the affirmative; Joseph, however, spoke to the youths very seriously:

07] "How is it that you are the Lord's attendants and do not wish to observe the holy Sabbath?!"

08] Hereupon Gabriel spoke: "O you pure man, how can you put such a question to us?!"

09] Has today not passed as any other day, has the sun not risen and set as on any other common day? Have the morning, afternoon and evening winds not blown also today?

10] As we stood by the sea, did you not see the same active motion of the waves? Why then did it not want to celebrate the Sabbath?

11] How have you then walked, eaten, drank and breathed today – and why did you not forbid your heart to beat?!"

12] See, you Sabbath-fearing man, all that is and happens in the world, occurs solely through the energy conferred by the Lord to us, and is managed and governed by us!

13] So if we were to rest one whole day, say, would not the entire creation instantly perish?

14] See, we must therefore celebrate the Sabbath only by our activities in the Lord, but not through futile inactivity!

15] The true rest in the Lord therefore is in the true love in the heart for Him and in incessant activity accordingly, so that the eternal order may be preserved.

16] Everything else is an abomination of complete human foolishness before God.

17] Think about this carefully, and do not be afraid of performing good works on a Sabbath, and you will be wholly resemble the Lord, our Creator!"

18] After these words, all the youths fell down on their faces before the Infant and then instantly disappeared.

19] These words engraved themselves deep in Joseph's heart and henceforth he was not so anxious anymore during Sabbath.

**CHAPTER 159. - EUDOKIA'S ASTONISHMENT AND RESTLESSNESS DUE TO THE SUDDEN DISAPPEARANCE OF THE YOUTHS. MARY'S SOOTHING WORDS. THE NIGHT'S SLEEP. EUDOKIA'S LONGING FOR GABRIEL, HIS SUDDEN APPEARANCE AND HIS ADVICE.**

**6 MARCH 1844**

01] As the youths disappeared, Eudokia asked Mary, as to who these youths actually were.

02] For Eudokia was still a gentile and knew nothing of the extraordinary secrets of heaven.

03] However, on this occasion, even the gentiles could see the angels because throughout that time, their inner eye was kept open;

04] and the disappearance of the angel was nothing more than the closing once more of the spiritual inner vision, –

05] for this reason, even the disappearance of the angel appeared to Eudokia as an awakening from a profound dream.

06] She now felt quite natural again, and everything she had seen, heard and done throughout the day appeared to her as a very animated dream.

07] Hence even Eudokia's above question to Mary is excusable;

08] for she was now again in her external, pagan state.

09] And Mary replied and spoke: "Eudokia, we will be staying together for a while, and everything that is obscure to you will now become clear!

10] However, let us retire now; for I am extremely tired!"

11] Eudokia was outwardly satisfied with this consolation; but desire rose in her heart.

12] Joseph said: "My children, it has become night; close the doors and retire for the night!

13] For tomorrow is anyway the after-Sabbath, on which we do not work; we will then still be able to speak of a good many things!

14] For today, however, praise the Lord and do as I have recommended!

15] You, James, prepare the cradle and bring the Infant to bed, and put the cradle next to the mother's bed!

16] And you, Eudokia, also go to your bedchamber and strengthen your limbs with a sweet sleep in the Lord's name!"

17] And Eudokia immediately went into the room intended for her, and lay on her bed, but sleep eluded her;

18] for she was too excited by her ardent emotions caused by the disappearance of the youths.

19] For she had fallen in love with Gabriel and did not know what to do, as the object of her heart had disappeared so suddenly in front of her eyes.

20] However, when all was quiet and asleep, Eudokia arose and opened the window and looked out.

21] Suddenly Gabriel stood before her and spoke: "You must calm down your heart!



22] For look, I am not a human being like you, but only a spirit and a messenger of God!

23] Worship the Infant; for He is the Lord, who will soothe your heart!" – Hereupon the angel disappeared, and Eudokia calmed down.

**CHAPTER 160. – JAMES' CHILDLIKE-MERRY GAME WITH THE INFANT.  
JOSEPH'S REPRIMAND AND JAMES' OUTSTANDING REPLY. EUDOKIA'S  
DREAM AND MARVELLOUS TESTIMONIAL OF THE LORD.**

**7 MARCH 1844**

01] As usual, an hour before sunrise, all of Joseph's house was already lively, and also the Infant kicked about energetically in the cradle and made happy baby sounds that almost sounded like singing.

02] James played with the Infant in his way and demonstrated to the Lord of infinity all sorts of movements with his hand and thereby sang and whistled.

03] Mary, however, was still in bed and sleeping; thus Joseph, absorbed in his morning prayer, mildly reproached James for making such a noise and for his lack of respect for the prayer and the still sleeping mother.

04] James, however, apologized and spoke: "Dear father, see, the Lord of the heaven and earth is taking great pleasure in my activity with Him!

05] We should always do only that which gives pleasure to the Lord!

06] And see, the Lord takes pleasure in what I do! Why should you be displeased?

07] The mother would certainly not sleep so well, if the two of us, me and the Infant, would not be so noisy!

08] I beg you, dear father, to consider me excused for this and not reproach me further if in my calling, I sometimes appear too boisterous, but thereby still please the Lord!"

09] And said: "Yes, yes, it is all right, – I am happy to see how good you are with the Infant;

10] but do not make so much noise in future, when you see that someone is still asleep and someone else is in communion with God!"

11] James thanked Joseph for this admonishment, and then asked him:

12] "Father! When you pray to God, as you now prayed, to which God do you then pray?

13] From what I now know of this Child, the most emphatic testimonials of heaven show that it is impossible that there is any greater or more true God than this Infant!

14] And when this is the case according to the prophets and according to the many miraculous testimonials?

15] When it is written in the Prophets: 'Who is this who comes from Edom, with blood-red robes from Bozrah? This One who is glorious in His apparel, travelling in the greatness of His strength? – It is I, a teacher of justice and a resourceful Master!

16] Father! – Yesterday the Infant referred to Himself with these words in front of you! Who is He then? For no man can say such things about himself! – There is only one God!

17] So who is the Infant, the One who says: 'I am He, who teaches justice and who is a resourceful master!'"

18] Here Joseph was taken aback and spoke: "Indeed, my son James, you are right; you are better off next to the cradle - than me here in my prayer corner!"

19] At these words, Eudokia came from her room, full of supreme delight and as beautiful as the red dawn, and fell down before the cradle and worshiped the Infant.

20] And after she prayed for half an hour, she arose and spoke: "Yes, – yes, You alone

exist, and besides you, no one exists anymore!

21] In a dream tonight I saw a sun in the heaven, and it was empty and had little light.

22] But then I saw this Infant on the earth, and He shone like a thousand suns, and a powerful beam went from Him to the empty sun and illuminated it through and through!

23] In this beam I saw the angels who were here, floating about; they were infinite in number; however, their faces were incessantly turned toward the Infant! Ah! It was so magnificent!" –

24] This narration brought Joseph completely out of his prayer corner, and he now also held the infant in the highest esteem and often prayed at the cradle.

***CHAPTER 161. – MARY'S AND JOSEPH'S WORRY BECAUSE OF THE  
INFANT'S ABRUPT MUTENESS. THEIR DOUBTS ABOUT THE  
GENUINENESS OF THE CHILD. MARY'S FUTILE ATTEMPT TO HEAL A  
BLIND PERSON WITH THE INFANT'S HEALING BATHWATER. "DO YOU  
NOT KNOW THAT GOD SHOULD NOT BE TESTED?" (JAMES). THE  
HEALING OF THE BLIND MAN THROUGH JAMES AT THE INNER BEHEST  
OF THE INFANT JESUS.***

***8 MARCH 1844***

01] At this time Mary awoke as well, rubbed the sleep out of her eyes, immediately stood up and washed herself and, in the adjoining room, exchanged her nightgown for day clothes.

02] In a short time, she returned fully clean, looking like a heavenly angel, so beautiful, so good, so devout and with so much thoughtful surrender to the Lord's will!

03] She greeted Joseph and kissed him, then embraced Eudokia and kissed her.

04] After this friendly greeting, which always brought tears of joy in the elderly Joseph's eyes, Mary, in great humility and with a heart full of love, knelt at the cradle and nursed the Infant while praying.

05] After the Infant was fed, Mary had fresh bathwater prepared and bathed the Infant as usual.

06] And the Infant kicked about energetically in the basin and diligently made His inarticulate voice heard.

07] As the Infant was bathed and dried and dressed in clean clothes and foot wrappings,

08] Mary asked the Infant how He felt and if the fresh clothes made Him feel good.

09] For she knew that the Infant could speak, and that too with divine wisdom; – but she did not know, and no one besides James knew, that the Infant had again tied His tongue.

10] Therefore all were taken aback when the Infant did not respond to Mary's question.

11] Thereupon Mary implored the Infant to speak a little; but the Infant only made baby sounds and no word could be discerned!

12] This alarmed both Mary and Joseph, and they thought that perhaps the angels had taken the Child of God to heaven at night and left a completely ordinary child in the cradle in His place.

13] For the belief in the exchange of children was prevalent among the Jews.

14] Mary, as well as Joseph, anxiously looked at the Infant and wondered whether He were still the same One as before,

15] but could not discover even the slightest dissimilarity, neither about the head nor anywhere else.

16] Then Mary said: "Collect the bathwater and search for a sick man, and bring him here;

17] for until now, this water has always had the power to heal!

18] If the sick man is healed, then the Infant is ours, and if not, then it has pleased the Lord

to give us another child in the place of His own Child!"

19] Here James wanted to speak, but the Infant distinctly forbade him to do so in his heart, and he kept silent.

20] Joseph immediately sent his eldest son to the city to bring a sick man.

21] In one-and-a-half hours, his son returned with a blind man, and Mary washed the blind man's eyes with the bathwater; but the man did not regain his sight.

22] This occurrence saddened Mary, Joseph, the four sons and Eudokia; only James remained cheerful and took the Infant and caressed Him.

23] The blind man complained, because he thought that he had been made a fool of.

24] Joseph, however, consoled him and promised him a lifelong provision of food as recompense for the supposed mockery. – With this, the blind man was appeased.

25] Joseph noticed James' cheerfulness and considered it a sin against him as the father.

26] But James said: "I am cheerful, because I know where I stand; you, however, feel sorrow because you do not know this! – Do you not know that God should not be tested?"

27] Here James breathed on the blind man, who instantly regained his sight; all marvelled now at James and did not know what to think.

**CHAPTER 162. - JOSEPH'S INVESTIGATION INTO THE SOURCE OF  
JAMES' HEALING POWER. JAMES' INTERROGATION BY JOSEPH.  
JOSEPH'S DOUBTS. JAMES' WISE REPLY FROM THE LORD. JOSEPH'S  
AMAZEMENT AT HIS SON'S WISDOM.**

**9 MARCH 1844**

01] After a while Joseph approached James and asked him from where such power of breath originated.

02] And James spoke: Dear father! – I heard a voice inside me, which said to me:

03] 'Breath on the blind man's face, and he will regain perfect sight!'

04] And look, I firmly believed in this voice, did according to its words, and the blind man sees again!"

05] And Joseph spoke: "It must have been as you now tell me;

06] but where did this powerful voice come from, and how did you hear it?"

07] And the questioned James said: "Dear father! – Do you not see Him, who is in my arms and is now playing with my hair?

08] I believe He is the one who spoke to me in such a miraculous manner!"

09] And Joseph further asked James and spoke:

10] "Do you still consider the Infant as the genuine one? Do you not think that He has been exchanged?!"

11] And James spoke: "Who or which power could ever be capable of exchanging the Almighty?

12] Did the angels not fall on their faces every time the Infant miraculously spoke, – how could they act with Him, the Almighty, in this way? – !

13] It is with certainty and truth that I regard the Infant to be the original and genuine One, and it is with the same certainty and truth that I never believed in the Infant's exchange!"

14] And Joseph spoke: "My dear son, you have not given me a very firm proof of your faith here;

15] for look, even David himself spoke in this manner, when he said; 'Why are the nations so violently moved, and why are the thoughts of the people so foolish?

16] The kings of the earth rise up, and the rulers counsel together against the Lord and his Anointed, saying:

17] Let His band be broken, and His cord taken off from us!"

18] See, my son, these words are spiritual, and the kings are the powers, and the land is the great kingdom of the invisible powers! – But what do these mean; what are they talking about?

19] Do these words not convey the possibility that they can also lay their hands on the Lord?!"

20] And James said: "Certainly, if the Lord would permit it!

21] However, there is a question right at the beginning of the psalm: "'Why are the nations so violently moved, and why are the thoughts of the people so foolish?'

22] With this, doesn't David wish to describe the inadequacy of such powers against the Lord?!

23] For further below it is emphatically said: 'Then He whose seat is in the heavens will be laughing; the Lord will make sport of them!

24] Then will His angry words come to their ears, and by His wrath they will be troubled!'

25] Dear father! I think that these two stanzas of the great singer of God amply justify my faith!

26] For they sufficiently reveal to me that the Lord will always remain a Lord and no exchange can be undertaken against him!"

27] Joseph was astonished at his son's wisdom and went back, together with the entire house, to accept the genuine Infant and praised God for it. — —

**CHAPTER 163. – THE DUTIES OF JOSEPH'S SONS. MARY'S SKILL  
EUDOKIA'S DILIGENCE. THE ARRIVAL OF THE EIGHT CHILDREN FROM  
TYRE. JOSEPH'S NOBLE MESSAGE TO CYRENIUS. MARY AS TEACHER  
TO THE EIGHT CHILDREN.**

**11 MARCH 1844**

- 01] In this way, everything in Joseph's house was once again in its good old order.
- 02] Joseph and his sons made all sorts of small wooden appliances and sold them at reasonable prices to the inhabitants of the city;
- 03] and they naturally did this work besides their other housework.
- 04] Mary and Eudokia provided the family with the household needs, made clothes and sometimes also did embroidery work for the wealthy families in the city.
- 05] For Mary was highly skilled in the art of spinning and knitted entire garments;
- 06] Eudokia, however, was a deft seamstress and was good with needlework.
- 07] And so the family always earned enough for the essentials of life, and had so much, that they could even help out other poor families in times of need. –
- 08] Only after three months did the eight children from Tyre arrive – accompanied, of course, by the trustworthy friends of Cyrenius –
- 09] and they brought with them an enormous allowance, amounting to eight hundred pounds of gold.
- 10] Joseph said: "I gladly accept the children, but not the gold; for the Lord's curse is upon it!
- 11] Therefore take it back with you and give it to Cyrenius, and he will know why I cannot and may not accept it!
- 12] However, convey my blessings and greetings to him,
- 13] and tell him that I was with him in spirit during his homeward journey and was a witness to all that happened to him,
- 14] and have always blessed him whenever danger threatened him!
- 15] He should not be concerned over the loss of the three animals on the island of Crete, for that was the will of the Lord, whom he knows!"
- 16] Thereupon Joseph blessed Cyrenius' friends and accepted the eight children with great joy, and the children instantly felt at home in Joseph's house.
- 17] Hereupon Cyrenius' friends took back the gold and promptly returned to Tyre.
- 18] Joseph praised God for the addition of these children, blessed them and assigned Mary with the task of supervising them, for she was a head schoolmarm, and had received a comprehensive education thereto in the temple.
- 19] And the children learnt reading and writing in Greek, Hebrew and also Latin.
- 20] For almost everyone had to be able to speak these three languages and, on occasion, also write them. (Note: At the time, the Roman language had about the same importance as the French language has today, and was an indispensable part of a good education.)



**CHAPTER 164. - A QUIET YEAR IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE  
MIRACULOUS HEALING OF THE NEGRO FAMILY'S POSSESSED BOY  
THROUGH JAMES AT THE INFANT JESUS' BEHEST.**

**12 MARCH 1844**

01] From this period onwards, things became very quiet in Joseph's house and nothing miraculous occurred.

02] And this quiet state continued for one full year, as the Infant could walk by Himself and talk and play with the other eight children.

03] During this time, a negro family with a very sick child came to Joseph's house.

04] For this family had heard in the city that there was a miracle doctor in this house who could cure all illnesses.

05] The sick child was a ten-year-old boy and was wretchedly tormented by an evil spirit.

06] The spirit did not leave the boy in peace either by day or by night, threw him around and made his stomach swell up, thereby causing him excruciating pain.

07] Every now and then the spirit drove the boy into the water and sometimes into the fire.

08] But when this spirit was in Joseph's house, it was quiet and did not stir.

09] Joseph asked the boy's father, who understood Greek, about the reason for the boy's condition.

10] And the father gave a faithful account of the boy's state right from the beginning.

11] Hereupon Joseph called James, who as a sixteen-year-old youth was busy with the Infant as usual, and told him about the distress of this negro family.

12] James turned to the Infant and hugged Him and spoke to Him in his heart.

13] The Infant, however, loudly spoke in Hebrew:

14] "My brother! It will not be My time for yet a while; but go to the sick boy whose race carries the sign of Cain!

15] Touch his chest cavity with the forefinger of the left hand, and the evil spirit will instantly and eternally depart from the boy!"

16] And James immediately went to the boy and did as the Infant had ordered.

17] Then the evil spirit tore at the boy for the last time and shouted:

18] "What do you, dreadful spirit, want with me? Where shall I go now, as you have prematurely driven me out of my house?!"

19] And James spoke: "It is the Lord's will! – The sea is not far; you will live at the bottom of the sea, at the spot where it is deepest, and sludge will be your dwelling place henceforth, Amen!"

20] Here the spirit left the boy, and the boy was instantly restored to health.

21] Hereupon the family wanted to reward Joseph; but Joseph did not accept anything and let the family depart in peace and praised God for this miraculous healing of the boy.

**CHAPTER 165. - THE ONE-AND-A-HALF-YEAR DISCONTINUANCE OF  
MIRACLES. JESUS AS A LIVELY LITTLE BOY. JAMES' VISIT TO THE  
FISHER JONATHAN. ST. CHRISTOPHER OR THE INFANT'S WEIGHT OF  
THE WORLD. THE HOMECOMING ACCOMPANIED BY JONATHAN.**

**13 MARCH 1844**

01] From this episode onwards, another six months passed in complete tranquillity and nothing miraculous occurred.

02] For with inner power, the Infant diligently avoided anything that could have eventually led to a miracle.

03] He was lively and played with the other children when they had time;

04] otherwise He most of all liked to be around James and conversed with him most intelligently, when they were alone.

05] With the other children, however, He chatted just like any other two-year-old.

06] An emigrant Jew lived in the region, who operated a fishery at the nearby sea with which he earned his living.

07] This Jew was a giant in size and had immense physical strength.

08] Soon after breakfast on a pre-Sabbath morning, James took the Infant, with Joseph's permission, and went to this Jew, whose house was a good hour away in a straight direction.

09] James did this because this Jew had often invited him and because the Infant had secretly instructed him to do so.

10] As James with the Infant arrived at the fisher's house, the latter was delighted and immediately served James a well-prepared fish.

11] And James ate as much as he desired thereof and gave choice pieces to his little Brother to taste.

12] And the Infant ate the small portions that James put in his mouth with visible appetite.

13] This pleased the fisher so greatly that he was inadvertently moved to tears by it.

14] James soon wanted to return home;

15] but the fisher implored him to stay with him for the day.

16] "In the evening", he spoke, "I will carry you home, together with your most beloved little Brother!

17] For look, you needed one-and-a-half hours to come here because you had to go around this inlet, which is quite shallow throughout!

18] But due to my height of almost two fathoms, the water hardly comes up to my torso, even where it is deepest!

19] I shall take you on my arm, together with the Child, wade across the inlet and easily carry you home within fifteen minutes, along with a good amount of the best fresh fish!"

20] Here the Infant said: "Jonathan! Your will is good; but what will happen if I and My brother become too heavy for you?"

21] And Jonathan smiled and said: "O You dear Child, even if you were a hundred times

heavier than you are, I could still easily carry you!"

22] And the Infant spoke: "Jonathan, let us put this to a test; try to carry Me alone back and forth across this inlet, which is barely fifty fathoms wide, and we will be able to see if your strength is sufficient for both of us! – ?"

23] Jonathan immediately accepted this test, and with James' consent, took the Infant on his arm and waded with him across the inlet.

24] The journey across the inlet was manageable, although Jonathan greatly wondered about the heaviness of the Infant.

25] But on the return journey, the Infant was so heavy that Jonathan needed a strong beam to support himself, and could carry the Infant back to the shore only with the greatest difficulty.

26] Upon arrival at the shore, he set the Infant down where James was waiting, and spoke: "For Jehovah's sake, what is this? The whole world cannot be as heavy as this Child! – ?"

27] And the Infant spoke smilingly: "Certainly; for you have now carried much more than the weight of the whole world!"

28] Jonathan, who had barely recovered from the shock, asked: "How am I to take this?"

29] James said: "Dear Jonathan, take the fish, and accompany us to our house via the dry route, and stay with us tonight; tomorrow you will be enlightened on this matter!"

30] Hereupon Jonathan took three casks of the best fish and accompanied both of them that morning to Joseph's house. Joseph received him with great joy, for they had been school friends during their youth.

***CHAPTER 166. - JONATHAN AT THE HOUSE OF JOSEPH, A FRIEND OF HIS YOUTH. JONATHAN'S NARRATION AND QUESTION ABOUT JOSEPH'S STRANGE CHILD. JOSEPH'S REPORT ON THE CHILD. JONATHAN'S HUMILITY AND LOVE FOR THE CHILD AND HIS PRAYER***

***14 MARCH 1844***

01] Jonathan handed over the three casks of fish to Joseph, thereby making him very happy; for Joseph was very fond of fish.

02] Then he said to Joseph: "Dearest friend of my youth, so tell me, what sort of Child you have!

03] Indeed, he is two or three years old at the most but he speaks as if he were an adult!

04] And – look, – I, – who can carry two oxen under my arms, just as you can carry two lambs, – wanted to keep James and the Infant with me for the whole day and bring them home to you in the evening by wading across the inlet with them!

05] As I expressed my wish to James, the Infant spoke to me to my great amazement:

06] 'Jonathan, your will is good; but what will happen if I and My brother become too heavy for you?!

07] It goes without saying that I smiled at the Infant's concern because I am aware of my strength!!

08] But thereupon the Infant said to put this to a test; I should try to carry him alone back and forth across the inlet, and convince myself that it would not be too difficult for me to carry both!

09] With James' consent, I took the Infant in my arms and carried him across the water.

10] It was manageable to get across; however, for the return journey I had to use a beam to support myself, and could only reach the shore with the greatest difficulty.

11] For indeed, dear friend, you can believe me when I say that the Child was so terribly heavy that I almost believed I was carrying the weight of the world in my arms!

12] As I reached the shore, I quickly handed over the Infant to James and recovered a little,

13] and I asked James, what all this was – how could this Child be heavier than a world?

14] Then the Infant again said, unasked,

15] that I had carried more than the weight of a whole world!

16] Friend, your James is a witness to everything! – I now ask you about it and say:

17] For Jehovah's sake, what sort of Child do you have? Indeed, there is something supernatural here!"

18] And Joseph spoke to Jonathan: "My old and most upright friend, if you can be as silent as the grave – for otherwise your life would be in great danger –, I would like to tell you something!"

19] And Jonathan swore to keep silent and spoke: "I swear by God and all the heavens! – I will burn to death a thousand times if I ever breathe a word of this to anyone!"

20] So Joseph took him to his favourite hill and narrated the entire sequence of events

regarding the Infant, for Jonathan had never heard anything about this before.

21] Jonathan, as he heard the brief outline of the story, knelt down and prayed from the hill to the Infant, who was presently playing amongst the eight other children,

22] and at the end of his long prayer, he spoke: "O Salvation of Salvations! My God, my Creator has visited me! I have carried Him, who carries all the world and all the heavens, in my arms!? – O you infinite Grace of Grace! O you earth, are you worthy of such grace!? – Yes, I now understand the words of the Child of God: 'You have carried more than the world!'" – Hereupon Jonathan kept silent and, in his delight, could not speak a single word for one hour.

**CHAPTER 167. - JOSEPH'S CONVIVIAL INVITATION TO JONATHAN.  
JONATHAN'S MISGIVINGS AND CONFESSION OF HIS SINS. JOSEPH'S  
ADVICE. THE INFANT'S FAVOURITE FOOD: JONATHAN'S HEART. JESUS'  
TESTIMONIAL OF JONATHAN.**

**15 MARCH 1844**

01] As Jonathan had offered his prayer in such a spirited manner, Joseph spoke to him:

02] "My dear friend, you live alone in your hut with your three assistants.

03] As today is a pre-Sabbath day, you will, in any case, not catch any fish; so stay with me today as well as for the Sabbath tomorrow!"

04] And Jonathan spoke: "Yes, my friend and brother, if it were not for the Child of God, I would have certainly stayed with you;

05] but look, I am a sinful man impure in all the parts of my being!

06] For since I live among heathen, I have hardly thought about Moses' laws and live more according to pagan than Jewish customs.

07] And so I cannot stay where the Almighty Himself lives!"

08] And Joseph spoke: "Brother, your reasoning is fine; but I cannot accept it!

09] For look, the Lord, who has shown such mercy even to all the heathen, will certainly be more merciful towards you, a repentant Jew!

10] You only need to love Him and can be sure that the Lord will also love you beyond measure!

11] For look, the eight children and Eudokia are heathen, and the Infant nevertheless goes about with them and loves them beyond all measure!

12] So He will also welcome you most affectionately and will treat you as He treats his best friends!"

13] After these words, Jonathan took heart and, with Joseph, went down the hill and returned to the house, where the midday meal had long been prepared.

14] Joseph now called everyone to the table. Mary took the Infant and sat, as usual, next to Joseph at the table.

15] The Infant, however, did not want to eat the milk dish that was prepared for him.

16] And this worried Mary, for she thought that the Infant might not be feeling well.

17] But the Infant said: "Why are you worried about Me?

18] See, Jonathan has brought me better food; I will eat this and it will truly satisfy My hunger!"

19] Mary, however immediately thought that the fish, which had been placed on the table last, were implied.

20] The Infant spoke: "Mary, you have misunderstood Me!

21] For I do not mean the fish, although they naturally taste better than this milk from yesterday, which is already sour, and which Joel took instead of fresh milk to make a mush for me.

22] However, the great humility and the deep love of his heart (of Jonathan's, namely), which he has often demonstrated to Me, without knowing Me – that is what I mean!

23] I tell you, Mary, Jonathan is a man of strong limbs but the love in his heart is still more powerful!

24] And this love that he has for Me is the most strengthening food to satisfy My hunger now! – I shall also eat his fish; but I do not like the sour mush!" – This made Jonathan so happy that he began to weep.

**CHAPTER 168. - JOEL'S BADLY-PREPARED MUSH. MARY'S AND  
JOSEPH'S REPRIMAND. THE INFANT'S LENIENCY TOWARDS JOEL.  
SUGGESTIONS FOR UPBRINGING.**

**16 MARCH 1844**

01] Here Mary first tasted the mush which Joel had prepared for the Infant, and found it indeed somewhat sour and having a fine semolina-like consistency.

02] So she immediately called Joel, who was still very busy in the kitchen with the roasting of the fish.

03] As he came, the mother sternly said: "Joel! Just taste the mush!

04] Do you have so little respect for the Child, for father Joseph and for me, the faithful wife of your father, to do something like that to me?!

05] Do our cows and goats not have any more fresh milk in their udders?

06] Why did you take yesterday's milk that had already turned sour, and that one can drink cold when one is thirsty, but not cooked as it is harmful, particularly for small children?!"

07] Here Joseph tasted the mush as well and was preparing himself to sternly reprimand Joel.

08] But the Infant sat up and spoke: "O you human beings! – Why do you want to outbid Me everywhere?!

09] Is it then not enough what I remarked about Joel? Why then do you want to condemn him after Me?

10] Do you think that I take pleasure in such severity on your part? – O no! – I am pleased only with love, kindness and patience!

11] Joel has certainly committed an offence through his carelessness,

12] which is why I punished him with My reproachful remark! This punishment is sufficient; why should he be the recipient of another reprimand as well as an angry outburst on top of it?

13] Every father should rightfully punish small unruly children with the rod; but he should always be a wise and gentle teacher to grown-up sons!

14] Only if a son opposes his father should he be threatened!

15] If he repents, he should again be left in peace as before;

16] however, if he does not repent, he should be disowned and drive out of his father's house and the land of his fathers!

17] Joel, however, has not committed a crime; only the craving for fish did not allow him enough time to milk a goat!

18] He will surely never do this again; therefore let him be completely forgiven!"

19] Then the Infant called Joel and spoke "Joel! – If you love Me, as I love you, then do not cause your father and mother such anxiety in the future!"

20] Joel was so deeply touched that he began to cry and knelt down before the Infant and asked Him, Mary and Joseph, for forgiveness.

21] And Joseph spoke: "Rise, my son, that for which the Lord has forgiven you, is also forgiven by me and mother!



22] Go now and check the fish!"

23] And the Infant swiftly added to this: "Yes, yes, just go; otherwise the fish will be overcooked and not be good; for I Myself want to eat of it!"

24] The other eight children were so pleased with this concern that they laughed loudly in happiness.

25] The Infant Himself heartily laughed along with them and created quite a cheerful mood among all the table companions, and Jonathan's eyes were filled with of tears of joy.

***CHAPTER 169. – THE FISH MEAL THE INFANT'S WARNING TO JOSEPH  
BECAUSE HE WAS NOT SERVED, AND JOSEPH'S NEGATIVE REPLY. THE  
INFANT JESUS' SIGNIFICANT REPLY AND PREDICTION OF MARY'S  
DEIFICATION. THE HUMBLE INFANT'S WORDS OF BLESSING.***

***18 MARCH 1844***

- 01] In a short while, Joel brought the roasted fish on a grill and placed it on the table.
- 02] Joseph promptly served a good portion to everyone, including himself;
- 03] but he naturally did not serve the Infant, for He was of course to share with His mother.
- 04] On this occasion, however, the Infant was not satisfied with this, and desired a full portion.
- 05] Then Joseph said: "Oh my dearest little Son, My Jesus, that would certainly be too much for You!
- 06] For firstly, it would be impossible for You to finish it, and secondly, if You did eat it, it would make you sick!
- 07] Do You not see that I have hence served Your mother a larger portion, because she has to feed You?!
- 08] So just be very calm, my little Son, for You will get a fair share!"
- 09] And the Infant spoke: "I know that – and I also know a few things that you do not know!
- 10] However, it would have been fitting, if you had also served the Lord a full portion!
- 11] Do you really know who Melchisedech, the king of Salem, was? – You do not know!
- 12] However, I know it and I will tell you: the king of Salem was the Lord Himself; but apart from Abraham, no one was supposed to know this!
- 13] That is why Abraham bowed to the ground before Him, and voluntarily gave Him a tithe of everything.
- 14] Joseph! – I am the same Melchisedech, and you are the same Abraham!
- 15] Why do you not want to give me a tithe of these good fish?
- 16] Why do you leave it to the mother to decide for Me? – Who, after all, has created fish as well as the sea? Was it Mary – or I, a king of Salem from eternity?!
- 17] See, I am here on My own from eternity, and you are not even willing to give Me a full serving of fish? – Now that is most unusual indeed!
- 18] Therefore it will come to pass one day that men will place far greater portions before My birth mother than before Me.
- 19] And I will have to conform to that what is given to my Mother, and that will be far from Melchisedech's order!"
- 20] Joseph, however, did not know how to respond to this. He promptly divided his portion and gave the Infant the larger half.
- 21] The Infant spoke: "Whoever gives Me something and keeps a part of it for himself does not know Me!
- 22] Whoever want to give Me, must give Me everything, otherwise I will not accept it!"

23] Here Joseph happily placed also his portion in front of the Infant.

24] The Infant raised His right hand and blessed both portions and spoke:

25] "Whoever gives me a whole thing gains a hundredfold! Take back the fish, Joseph, and eat! Give Me only the leftovers!"

26] Here Joseph took back the fish and ate a large amount of it. Even after he ate his fill, there was still so much left that it would have sufficed for twelve people. And the Infant then ate the leftovers.

## ***CHAPTER 170. – JONATHAN'S QUESTION ABOUT JOSEPH'S INNER POSITION ON THE INFANT AND JOSEPH'S REPLY.***

**20 MARCH 1844**

- 01] After this table scene, which had induced Jonathan to shed many tears of joy and also of remorse, he asked Joseph:
- 02] "Joseph, my old childhood friend, tell me sincerely – how infinitely happy you must feel when you consider the greatness of your calling?!
- 03] What do you feel when you look at the Infant and your living and believing heart tells you: 'See, the Infant is God Jehovah Sabaoth!
- 04] Who talked with Adam, Enoch, Noah, as well as with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob;
- 05] who freed this land from slavery through Moses and Himself gave the law in the wilderness;
- 06] and fed the large number of people for forty years in the wilderness, in which nothing grew but briars and thistles here and there;
- 07] who spoke through the mouths of the saints and the prophets'?
- 08] O Joseph, do tell me! – What do you feel in the presence of Him, who created heaven and earth?!
- 09] Yes, He who created the angels and made the first human couple and filled them with life with His eternally living breath!
- 10] Or – tell me! – Is it even possible for you to talk when you think these things over?
- 11] Does the sight of the Child not bind your tongue, so that you have to keep silent out of too great a reverence for Him, the eternal One?"
- 12] And Joseph replied to Jonathan: "You are right in asking me this;
- 13] but think about it yourself, – what shall I do?! That is the way it is, and I must bear with the Almighty as if He were a lesser being, otherwise it would be impossible for me to exist!
- 14] See, God is, after all, God, and we are His creatures! – He is everything, and we all are nothing!
- 15] This ratio is arithmetically correct. Now can you, by the highest flights of imagination, suggest an amendment to this ratio?
- 16] Look, that is why your questions are futile! Even if I had a heart as large as the earth, and a head as large as the heaven, and would draw feelings and thoughts towards myself, before which all the angels trembled, –
- 17] say, what service would I thereby render Him, who carries the entire infinity, just as I carry a grain of sand, in His right hand?!
- 18] Would I thereby become more human and God less of a God?!
- 19] See, that is why your question is futile! – All I can do is to love the Infant with all my might and render Him the necessary service that He demands from me!
- 20] However, I leave aside all other lofty thoughts, knowing full well that my most exalted and greatest thoughts are an empty and conceited naught compared to the greatness of God!"
- 21] This reply got Jonathan's mind onto other things, and he no more asked such

questions to Joseph.

***CHAPTER 171. - THE EVENING ON JOSEPH'S FAVOURITE HILL. JAMES  
FEEDING BREAD, BUTTER AND HONEY TO LITTLE JESUS. THE FLIES IN  
THE HONEY POT. JESUS' PROFOUNDLY WISE WORDS ON ISAIAH CHAP.  
7:15.***

**21 MARCH 1844**

01] Towards the evening of this day, which – as mentioned earlier – was a pre-Sabbath day, James took the Infant and went up on Joseph's favourite hill.

02] And Joseph and Jonathan soon followed James' example and also went up the hill.

03] As usual, James took along some butter, some honey in a small jar and a piece of wheat bread for the Infant,

04] and regularly put small portions into the Infant's mouth; for the Infant's favourite food was honey with bread and butter.

05] But as James put down his jar on a small bench and cheerfully gad about on the grass of the gentle hill,

06] some bees and flies promptly came to the little jar and feasted heartily on the sweet contents.

07] As Joseph noticed this, he said to James: "Go and cover the jar with something, otherwise its contents will soon be eaten up by the flies and bees!"

08] And James quickly came over together with the Infant, and wanted to drive away these visitors from the jar, but they did not obey him.

09] Then the Infant said: "James, give Me the jar, and I will see if the flies and the bees are also disobedient to Me!"

10] Here James put the jar into the Infant's hands, and the Infant hissed three times - ksht – ksht – ksht – into the jar and the flies and bees instantly disappeared.

11] Then James gave the Infant a piece of buttered bread with honey, and the Infant took it and ate it contentedly.

12] Jonathan, who had earlier spoken to Joseph about the wisdom in Egyptian symbols, noticed this action, which appeared to be very insignificant, and asked Joseph whether there was any more profound meaning to it?

13] And Joseph replied to him: "I do not think so; for one cannot presume hidden wisdom in every single action.

14] Whenever someone leaves butter and honey open, flies and bees will always come and feed on it!

15] On suitable occasions, we can use this phenomenon, like a thousand others, symbolically, – but, generally speaking, this action is without significance!"

16] The Infant, however, ran towards Joseph and spoke animatedly:

17] "My dearest Joseph, this time you are mistaken!

18] What did you read in Isaiah? Have I not written: 'Butter and honey shall He eat, that He may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.

19] For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that you fear shall be forsaken of both her kings.

20] The Lord shall bring upon you, your people and your father's house, days that have not come, from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah; even the king of Assyria!

21] And it will be in that day, that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee in the land of Assyria!

22] See, Joseph! – The significance of the prophet's words, also applies to this action;

23] but the time for revelation has not yet arrived, although it is not too distant!

24] Do you know the son of the prophetess who was called 'Maher-sha-lal-bash-baz'?

25] Do you know the son, who will be born of a virgin, and will be named 'Immanuel'!?

26] See, I am all that! – However, you will not fully grasp this until I, as 'Maher-sha-lal-bash-baz' and 'Immanuel' call father and mother from above!"

27] Here the Infant ran back to James. Joseph and Jonathan keenly looked at each other and they could not stop wondering about the Infant's words and about the remarkable allegorical coincidence of the earlier action with the words of the prophet. – –

***CHAPTER 172. - JONATHAN'S EXCESSIVE REVERENCE AND HUMILITY  
BEFORE THE INFANT JESUS. JOSEPH'S GOOD ADVICE AND THE  
INFANT'S AFFECTIONATE WORDS OF CONSOLATION. JONATHAN'S STAY.***

***22 MARCH 1844***

01] After Jonathan had recovered a little from his astonishment at the Infant's words, he spoke to Joseph:

02] "Brother! Indeed, although I had firmly decided to remain with you today and tomorrow, I will hardly be able to adhere to my plan!

03] For look, here everything appears to be too holy! I feel as if I am in the wilderness, in which everything that the wanderer looks at, calls out to him: 'This is no place for you, but only for spirits!'

04] I feel like I am on an extremely high mountain, whose summit initially charms the senses with its commanding view;

05] but rather soon the cold and pure air says to him:

06] 'You indolent and impure human beast of burden, go back to your stinking homeland!

07] For here, where the purest spirits of the purest ether sway, is no place for an impure soul to stay!'

08] How pure the great prophet Moses was; but the Lord, when Moses desired to see Him, nevertheless said to him:

09] 'You cannot see and live Me, your God, at the same time!'

10] Here is the same Lord in the fullness of His Holiness, – He is here, the One who was proclaimed by all the prophets!

11] As I am an old sinner according to the Law of Moses, how long will it be possible for me to bear His visible presence here?!"

12] Joseph spoke: "Dear friend and brother, you well know what the main law is; why do you then prefer to return to your house rather than observe this Law by living by it?

13] Love the Lord with all your might, and do not constantly think about your sins, and you will surely be more agreeable to the Lord than through your constant proclamations!

14] Wait, until the Infant dismisses you! – If that happens, then you may believe that you are unworthy of Him;

15] however, as long as this is not the case, stay, – for nowhere will you be more at home than here!"

16] Here the Infant joined them and spoke: "Joseph! You are right, in that you have mildly admonished him; why is he so obstinate and does not want to stay here, when I am so fond of him?!"

17] Hereupon the Infant turned to Jonathan and said:

18] "Jonathan! – Do you really not want to stay here? What evil thing do you think will happen to you, that you do not want to stay here?"

19] And Jonathan spoke: "My God and my Lord! See, I have greatly sinned against the law!"

20] The Infant said: "What sins are you talking about? I do not detect any in you!



21] Do you know who a sinner is? – I tell you: He who is without love is a sinner!

22] You, however, have love, and so you are not a sinner before Me; for I have forgiven you your sins, because I, as a Lord of infinity, am above Moses!" –

23] Here Jonathan wept and made a new decision to stay, and approached the Infant and cuddled and caressed Him.

***CHAPTER 173. - THE CHILD JESUS AS LIGHT AS A FEATHER  
JONATHAN'S ASTONISHMENT. THE INFANT'S PROFOUNDLY WISE  
WORDS ON THE BURDEN OF THE LAW OF MOSES. MOSES HAD  
ESTABLISHED THE ENTIRE LAW IN THE LOVE FOR GOD. THE LAW HAS  
REMAINED, BUT THE LOVE HAS DIED AWAY. "... I WILL MAKE THE LIFE  
OF THOSE WHO ADHERE TO THE LETTER OF THE LAW AS RESTRICTED  
AS THE EYE OF A NEEDLE."***

***23 MARCH 1844***

- 01] However, as Jonathan cuddled and caressed the Infant, the latter spoke to him:
- 02] "Jonathan, try to carry Me once more now; I will not seem as heavy to you as I was across the inlet!"
- 03] And in great joy, Jonathan took the Infant in his arms and found Him as light as a down feather.
- 04] Then he said to the Infant: "My God and my Lord! – How am I to understand this?!"
- 05] There by the sea you seemed to me as heavy as the weight of the world; but here you seem to me to be as light as a down feather!"
- 06] And the Infant spoke: "Jonathan, everyone will fare the same as you!"
- 07] For My great burden is not within Me, but in the Law of Moses!
- 08] When you did not know Me but only the Law, and carried Me on your shoulder, it was the weight of the Law and not My own weight that pressed on your shoulder with the weight of a world.
- 09] Now you know Me, the Lord over Moses and over the Law, in your heart, and see, the Law's burden is not anymore with Me, the Lord of the Law!
- 10] It will be the same for all the upholders of the law in the future!
- 11] Truly, I say to you: Those who are righteous according to the law will howl and grind their teeth;
- 12] but the Lord will sit at the table in the houses of the sinners and will heal them and accept them as His children!
- 13] I shall seek those who are lost, and I will heal, redeem and liberate the sick, the hardened prisoners and the troubled;
- 14] but the ones righteous according to the law will move out of My house unjustified!
- 15] Truly I say to you: I will praise the collectors and sinners in My house;
- 16] but I will heavily burden those who are righteous before Me in My house!
- 17] Yes, – a prostitute shall anoint Me, and I will draw the guilt of an adulteress in the sand, and the sinners shall touch Me;
- 18] but accursed will be the upholder of the law or the scribe, if he touches Me!
- 19] I will pull out of the grave those who were killed by the burden of the Law;
- 20] but I will make the life of those who adhere to the letter of the law as restricted as the

eye of a needle."

21] Horrified at these words, Joseph said: "But Child, what terrible things are you saying!?"

22] The law has also been given by God, how then can a sinner be better than a righteous man!?"

23] The Infant said: "God certainly made the law; but not for worldly reason, but for the heart! And Moses himself had established the entire law in the love for God!

24] Although the law has remained, the love has died away long since!

25] However, a law in which there is no love, is worthless to everyone, and whoever obeys it without love, is its dead slave!

26] That is why I prefer a pagan and a free sinner to a dead and chained slave of the Law!"

27] Here Joseph fell silent and thought about these words; the Infant, however, began to chat about childish things with Jonathan and His James.

**CHAPTER 174. – THE EVENING ON THE HILL. JOSEPH'S AND  
JONATHAN'S VIEWING OF THE FULL MOON. THE INFANT'S HINT ON  
VAST KNOWLEDGE IN CONTRAST TO VAST LOVE. THE 'FACE' OF GOD.  
THE NATURE OF THE MOON.**

**26 MARCH 1844**

- 01] As it had already become evening and the moon had just risen over Ostracine,  
02] Jonathan admired its beautiful form from this hill, feasted his eyes on it and was silent.  
03] Joseph noticed this and asked Jonathan: "Brother, what do you see in the luminous moon's disk that you observe it so attentively?"  
04] And Jonathan replied and said: "Actually I see nothing – apart from the old unchanging spots.  
05] However, whenever I see the moon, I always think about what these spots are, what the moon actually is, why we sometimes do not see it at all, sometimes see it as a crescent, and sometimes as it is now?  
06] If you know more about this, please tell me, – for I really like to talk about such matters!"  
07] And Joseph spoke: "Dear friend! In this respect we are exactly alike;  
08] and I have as much knowledge about the strange nature of this star as you.  
09] And so I can tell you very little on this subject! – The Infant will certainly know more than I do; therefore ask him what you have asked me!"  
10] With some trepidation, Jonathan asked the Infant about the nature of the moon.  
11] And the Infant said: "Jonathan! As soon as I show you the moon, you will also want to see the sun and after that, the innumerable stars!  
12] Tell me, when will your curiosity ever come to an end?  
13] See, too much knowledge makes the head heavy and life on earth uneasy!  
14] However, a great deal of love in the heart for God and your brothers makes life on earth agreeable and takes away all fear of death!  
15] For this love is, in itself, everlasting life; whoever has it will also get to see all creation!  
16] For the true lover of God will see His face! – And that is the face of God, which he created through his wisdom and through His eternal omnipotence!  
17] For the wisdom and the omnipotence is the face of God, just as love is His essential nature since eternity!  
18] However, as you have already asked Me about the moon, I say to you: it is an auxiliary earth and has mountains, valleys, fruits, animals and beings of your type.  
19] But the part that you see is free and uncovered and empty and has neither water nor fire.  
20] Only the part that you do not see is similar to the earth;  
21] its light comes from the sun, and its changing light is due to its position and alters every minute according to its rotation around the earth. – And its spots are deeper and darker places of trial.

22] Now you know what the moon is; are you satisfied with that?" – And Jonathan answered in the affirmative and immersed himself in deep thoughts.

***CHAPTER 175. - MARY AND THE INFANT JESUS IN A HEARTFELT AND  
JESTING CONVERSATION ON THE HILL. JOSEPH AND JONATHAN DURING  
THEIR 'MOON MEAL'. THE SUDDEN LUNAR ECLIPSE.***

***27 MARCH 1844***

01] As Mary, together with Eudokia, had completed her household chores, she also went to the hill, preceded by Eudokia.

02] And the Infant ran towards her and joyfully jumped around His lovely mother.

03] Mary took the rather heavy Infant in her somewhat tired arms and caressed Him and jokingly said:

04] "Well, you are heavy today! You must have surely nibbled a lot and eaten too much honey, butter and bread?"

05] And the Infant spoke: "It was certainly a big deal! First a little jar, which can be concealed in James' hand!

06] Then a piece of bread that may not even be exposed to the wind, to prevent it from instantly soaring into the air like a dry leaf!

07] Surely one cannot become very heavy from this!

08] I must tell you that I am actually quite hungry and already look forward to the evening meal.

09] See, Joseph and Jonathan have earlier feasted on the entire moon and are still hungry, although they grown;

10] so how could I, who has to still to grow, have had enough to eat!"

11] And Mary spoke to the Child: "My little Son, you are really difficult again today!

12] See, if Joseph and Jonathan had feasted on the moon, then it would not shine down so beautifully from the sky!"

13] And the Infant said: "Woman and mother! I am not naughty; it is only that you have misunderstood Me!

14] Just go to those two, and they will immediately give you a part of the moon to taste also!"

15] Here Mary smiled, went over to Joseph and greeted him, and asked him what he was thinking about so deeply,

16] and why he and Jonathan gazed so diligently at the full moon.

17] And Joseph hardly observed Mary and said: "Do not disturb me in my contemplation;

18] for I want to decipher something with Jonathan now! Jesus gave us hints, which must be worked out, so be silent now, and do not disturb us!"

19] Here Mary looked at the Infant, who secretly smiled, and the Infant spoke:

20] "Do you see, how Joseph and Jonathan even now feed on the moon? But just wait here patiently, and fetch Me a piece of bread and a bitter orange through James!

21] For Joseph's and Jonathan's feeding off the moon has made Me even hungrier than I already am."

22] And Mary instantly sent James to fetch what the Infant wanted.

23] Then she asked the Infant how long the two of them needed to complete the deciphering of the moon.

24] And the Infant spoke: "Just watch; today, right away, there will be an eclipse of the moon that will last about three hours!

25] However, the two of them do not know why this happens; that is why they, and particularly Jonathan, will seriously believe that they have consumed the moon!

26] And this phenomenon will bring this contemplation to an end.

27] I will thereafter instruct them again, as I usually do, whenever it is needed.

28] But first the two of them have to come up against it and have their calculations come to naught!"

29] The Infant had hardly finished speaking these words, when the moon acquired a dark brown impression.

30] Jonathan noticed this first and showed it to Joseph.

31] Joseph naturally noticed the same and still more, as the eclipse grew with every moment.

32] This frightened both of them, and Joseph immediately asked the Child: "What has happened to the moon?"

33] And the Infant spoke: "You can see that I am eating, why do you disturb Me? – Wait until I have finished eating the bitter orange, just as you have finished with the moon, then I will speak further!"

34] Hereupon Joseph fell silent, and as the moon went into a total eclipse, both he and Jonathan became frightened. All had to return home now, and Jonathan seriously thought that he had consumed the moon.

**CHAPTER 176. – CONTINUATION OF JOSEPH'S AND JONATHAN'S  
CONTEMPLATION OF THE MOON. A LIGHT OVER THE SHADED MOON.**

**28 MARCH 1844**

01] Upon reaching home, Jonathan spoke to Joseph: "Brother! What will come of this most critical event?

02] By my poor life, just look outside the window! The whole moon has already been swallowed whole!

03] And now it is ominously dark out there!

04] Yes, yes, I have often heard from the most scholarly pagans that man should not count the stars in the sky and also not look at them too attentively, –

05] for then it might easily fall down upon the earth!

06] And if a man should encounter his own guiding star, and if this should fall down, then that man is completely lost!

07] The moon is, after all, also a star in the sky and can be subject to the same strange laws!

08] And it is possible that we have struck it, and it has partially fallen on the earth's surface somewhere; for I saw a lot of particles fly away (shooting stars).

09] Or we are now obsessed with the moon and have become moonstruck, which would be a great calamity for us!

10] One thing is definitely the case! The fact that the moon does not exist anymore can be grasped; but whoever has consumed it, or where it went, is quite another question!"

11] And Joseph spoke: "You know what, I have often heard that the moon occasionally eclipses, as does the sun.

12] And this could easily be the case now, although I cannot remember ever having seen anything like it before!

13] However, I have heard from old people that sometimes the angels of God polish these two heavenly lights as we do with a lamp, when the wick gets a trim,

14] during which time it naturally gets a little dark on the earth. And this could well be the case now!

15] For the fable that a dragon begins to devour the two stars is very foolish and is nothing but the darkest paganism."

16] While Joseph and Jonathan were thus talking about the moon, it began to emerge on the other side.

17] And the children and Joseph's sons noticed this and said: "Look, look, the moon is reappearing!"

18] Both of them looked outside, and Jonathan was greatly relieved to be able to see the moon again.

19] Here Joseph again asked the Infant how such a thing could have happened.

20] The Infant said: "Allow the wretched moon to first come out of the earth's shadow, then we will see if it has changed!

21] The earth is not an infinite body, but is as round as the bitter orange I ate earlier,



22] and floats freely in an infinite space; that is why the sun's rays can shine upon it at all times from all sides.

23] So the great earth must also cast a shadow, and if the moon comes under this, it becomes dark; as otherwise, it too is illuminated by the sun. However, I will say no more!" – Here Joseph and Jonathan looked at each other and did not know how to respond to this.

**CHAPTER 177. - JONATHAN'S ASTONISHMENT ABOUT THE SPHERICAL  
SHAPE OF THE EARTH. JESUS AS 'PROFESSOR OF NATURAL SCIENCES'.  
PREPARATIONS FOR THE EVENING MEAL**

**29 MARCH 1844**

01] After a while, Jonathan said to Joseph: "Brother! Who could have even dreamt of the fact that the earth is an enormous sphere?!"

02] So we live only on the surface of this globe? 03] But what should I make of the oceans? Do they also

belong to the sphere – or does the actual solid globe float on the same?"

04] Here the Infant intercepted and spoke: "To spare you from missing out on your beneficent sleep with all your speculations, I must help you come out of your dreams!

05] Come closer, and you, James, quickly get me a fairly round bitter orange!"

06] As the bitter orange was brought, the Infant took it in His hand and spoke:

07] "Look, this is the earth! – I now want this bitter orange to completely resemble the earth on a miniature scale, and to have mountains, valleys, rivers, lakes, oceans and also townships, wherever they have been built by man. – Let it be so!"

08] At that moment, there was a perfect globe in miniature in the Infant's hand.

09] One could see the ocean, the rivers, the lakes, the mountains, and also the cities on this globe, – which, through the "So be it!" had in fact grown a hundred times the size of the bitter orange.

10] Everyone pushed forward to view this marvellous miniature earth.

11] Joseph soon discovered Nazareth and Jerusalem on it and was astonished at the extraordinary accuracy.

12] Eudokia soon found Thebes in her homeland and was astonished at the accuracy.

13] Likewise, Rome was found, and quite a few other known places.

14] The inspection of this globe took more than one hour and just seemed to go on forever.

15] Even Mary liked this small earth so much that she became greatly animated by looking at it.

16] And the eight children were so smitten by the globe that they stared at it as if they were turned to stone.

17] The Infant now explained the nature of the earth in detail, just as a professor of geology would, and all understood his speech.

18] But as the Infant had finished his explanation, He spoke to James:

19] "James! – Now take a piece of string and suspend this globe freely somewhere, so that those who are curious can also find something to do tomorrow!

20] For today, however, let us leave this earth in peace and retire for the night; that is, after the evening meal;

21] for I have become hungry and thirsty, while you have lived off the moon and the earth!"

22] And Joseph immediately ordered the Joel, the head cook, to prepare supper and to put it on the table. And Joel went with the other three brothers and prepared a good supper.

***CHAPTER 178. - THE SUPPER. JONATHAN'S REQUEST TO RETURN  
HOME, AND HIS SECRET PLAN. THE INFANT'S SUCCESSFUL  
ALTERNATIVE SUGGESTION. JONATHAN'S OBEDIENCE AND  
HOMECOMING.***

***30 MARCH 1844***

- 01] After the supper had been prepared and consumed, Jonathan said to Joseph:
- 02] "Brother, you will have too little room; so let me go in this fair night to my house, where a suitably large bed is prepared for me!
- 03] I will be with you tomorrow again, an hour before sunrise!"
- 04] But Joseph said: "Brother, if you have no other worry than a suitably large bed for yourself, then you may cheerfully remain here;
- 05] for there is no lack of this in my house!
- 06] See, there on the left side of the outer court is a door that opens to a most spacious private room!
- 07] I have already had a bed prepared for you in this room!
- 08] I think it will be big enough for you; so you may just as well stay here!"
- 09] And Jonathan spoke: "Brother, you are very good to me, and I now know only too well that I will never feel as much at home anywhere else than here,
- 10] and I am also convinced that the bed prepared for me will be large enough and more than good enough!
- 11] But look, I am strongly drawn towards my home, and now once again in such a forceful manner, that I would rather fly than walk there!"
- 12] As Joseph heard this, he said: "It is your will, and you can do whatever you wish; so you may go or stay!"
- 13] Hereupon Jonathan went to the Infant and in all humility asked to be granted leave of absence.
- 14] The Infant spoke: "Jonathan, if you absolutely want to go, then you may do so; but do not forget to return!
- 15] However, I tell you that you will not catch any fish in your big net during the nocturnal fishing!
- 16] I will send a shark into your net, and it will plague you until sunrise and it will tear your fishing equipment to pieces!
- 17] And still you will not be able to catch it, for it will ruin all your efforts with one lash of its tail!"
- 18] When Jonathan heard the Infant's words, he suddenly changed his mind and said to Joseph:
- 19] "Brother, if that is the case, I will stay! – For see, I wanted to bring you a large cask full of the most exquisite fish;
- 20] and it was this thought that drew me towards home so powerfully!
- 21] Now that I have heard what will happen if I go fishing, I will stay with you!

22] So bring me to the quarters reserved for me, and I will sleep there very peacefully, and whatever may happen at home, let it be!"

23] The Infant said: "Jonathan, you please Me more when you are like this, than when you hide your heart!"

24] But I tell you now: Go home; for you will perform an important task for me at midnight!"

25] Hereupon Jonathan, blessed by all in Joseph's house, got up and hastily went home.

**CHAPTER 179. – JONATHAN WELL RECEIVED BY HIS PEOPLE.**  
**JONATHAN'S DEPARTURE TO THE HIGH SEAS. THE RESCUE OF THE**  
**SHIPWRECKED CYRENIUS AND HIS PEOPLE.**

**1 APRIL 1844**

01] It was the tenth hour in the evening, according to present- day calculations, when Jonathan arrived home.

02] As Jonathan came home at this time, he found his three assistants with their wives and children quite busy and heard them exult and speak among themselves:

03] "It was good and proper that our master went on a journey and gave us the opportunity to show him how faithful we are as his servants!

04] Today we have caught a thousand pounds of tuna, a thousand pounds of sturgeon, three young sharks, ten swordfish, one dolphin and about two hundred pounds of smaller choice fish!

05] How happy he will be when he sees this abundance of fish!"

06] Here Jonathan announced himself and all ran towards him as if to a father and showed him the lucky haul.

07] Jonathan praised them and kissed them and then spoke: "As you have been so diligent today, go now and bring the big fish, such as the sharks, the swordfish, the dolphin and the sturgeon, quartered, into the large smokehouse!

08] And make thick smoke from sweet-scented shrubs, so that the fish do not rot due to the heat! And, in particular, salt the sharks and the dolphin well, and be generous with the sea onions and the thyme!

09] However, put the tuna and the other small fish into the big cask!"

10] And his first assistant spoke: "O master! What you have now ordered us to do has already been done during the day, and everything is in the best of order!"

11] Then Jonathan went over there and convinced himself of all this and said: "Children and brothers, this is no usual haul!

12] A higher power has played a part in this; therefore let us wait until midnight and see if, in reciprocation, this higher power will not make use of our strength!

13] You have observed the powerful lunar eclipse; that is a certain sign that disaster awaits someone today itself! That is why we should wait until midnight, in case someone needs our help!

14] Therefore go and prepare the big boat, which has a sail and ten strong oars, for departure!"

15] And the three assistants promptly left and did accordingly.

16] However, they had hardly completed the preparation of the big boat, when a powerful wind began to churn up the waters of the ocean.

17] Then Jonathan spoke to the three: "Now there is no more time to lose! – Call your ten sons and ask them to take the oars. – You, master fisher, be at the helm, and I myself will work the large two oars at the front!

18] However, take in the sail, as there is a headwind blowing; and let us go, in the name of the Almighty, out into the high seas!"

19] As they steered outward for a good hour, all the while struggling with the powerful waves, they heard loud screams of fear from the surging sea.

20] Jonathan boldly rowed toward this and, in fifteen minutes, reached a large Roman ship that was stranded on a sandbank and was heavily tilting due to the surging waves.

21] Rope ladders were immediately tossed, and all the people about one hundred in number – were rescued. At the head of this group was our Cyrenius, with Tullia and Maronius Pilla.

***CHAPTER 180. – THE HAPPY DISEMBARKATION. JONATHAN'S DELIGHT.  
CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE. THE SHIPWRECKED PERSONS AT REST. THE  
SALVAGE OF THE RUN-AGROUND SHIP. THE SHARED BREAKFAST.  
JONATHAN'S HUMILITY. THE ARRIVAL OF JOSEPH AND HIS FAMILY.***

**2 APRIL 1844**

- 01] Cyrenius asked the giant rescuer about the name of the region in which he now found himself, as well as the name of his rescuer.
- 02] And Jonathan replied: "Lord! You must be a stranger, as this region, which has so many characteristic features, is unfamiliar to you?"
- 03] And Cyrenius spoke: "Friend! One region is often similar to another, and in the twilight of the moon, one often does not recognize one's own homeland!
- 04] It is particularly difficult to recognize the regions, when one has just experienced mortal fear!
- 05] Hence you must reveal to me the name of this region, to which the terrible storm has brought me!"
- 06] And Jonathan said: "Dear Lord! As you well know, there is a rule not to tell a rescued man where he is.
- 07] For – if he is far away from the place of his destination, he will be too sad to discover this, immediately after surviving a dangerous situation;
- 08] however, if an accidental change in direction of the storm casts him near the place of his destination, then the joy he would feel just after this experience of mortal fear could cost him his life!
- 09] That is why the rescuer should keep silent at the beginning and reveal whatever the rescued person asks only after some time!"
- 10] As Cyrenius received such a response from the yet unknown rescuer, he spoke:
- 11] "Indeed, you are a noble rescuer and moreover, have the right wisdom; so steer away, that we may soon reach land!"
- 12] And Jonathan spoke: "See, we are already in the bay, which ends in a narrow inlet.
- 13] If we were now on a firm and tranquil spot, we would be able to see my fishing hut!
- 14] We will be on dry land within fifteen minutes; for the wind is very favourable now."
- 15] Cyrenius was satisfied with this reply, and Jonathan sailed straight across the bay and reached the desired shore within a few minutes.
- 16] When the boat was safely anchored on the shore, everyone promptly went ashore, and Cyrenius thanked the God of Israel that He had rescued him, together with all his dear ones.
- 17] When Jonathan heard Cyrenius, whom he did not know at this time, praising the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, he spoke:
- 18] "My friend! Now I am doubly happy that I have rescued you, an Israelite; for I too am a son of Abraham!"
- 19] And Cyrenius spoke: "I am not exactly an Israelite, but actually a Roman; nevertheless, I know the holiness of your God and therefore acknowledge only Him!"

20] And Jonathan spoke: "That is even better! We will talk more about this tomorrow; but for now, go and rest!"

21] See, my huts are spacious and clean! I also have a large quantity of straw, so make yourselves a bed; I, however, will immediately return to see whether your ship can ever again be set afloat!"

22] Cyrenius said: "Friend, there will be time for this also tomorrow!"

23] But Jonathan said: "Tomorrow is the Sabbath; that means that we have to suspend all menial work! That is why everything has to be settled before sunrise!"

24] Thereupon Jonathan and his helpers again boarded the boat and now that the wind had abated a little, sailed out all the more quickly toward Cyrenius' ship, and had little trouble in setting it afloat, as the sea's high tide assisted by the full moon stood him in good stead.

25] He immediately took the tow line, fastened it to the boat and, in great joy, rowed into the rather deep bay and so brought the large ship to its safe harbour and got it secured to the shore with a very long rope, as it could not be anchored.

26] After a good two hours of work, Jonathan went home almost in morning light, lay down on his bed and he and his assistants rested for three hours.

27] Even Cyrenius and his entourage rested and slept till late morning.

28] When Jonathan awoke well refreshed, he praised God in Joseph's Child and recalled the Child's words to him.

29] Then he right away ordered the women to slaughter the best tuna – around thirty in number – and to roast them for the many guests, and he himself, together with his assistants, helped the women in this work.

30] When breakfast was ready in one hour, Jonathan himself went into the huts and woke up his rescued guests.

31] Cyrenius was the first to be awake and found himself greatly refreshed and cheerful and immediately asked Jonathan whether he had reached the ship?

32] And Jonathan spoke: "Get up and look out of the window!"

33] And Cyrenius instantly got up, looked out and saw his great ship in good condition in the harbour.

34] At this, he was overjoyed, indeed moved to excessive gratitude towards his giant rescuer Jonathan, and said:

35] "O friend! Such a deed cannot be rewarded in the usual way; indeed, this deed can only be rewarded in a manner worthy of an emperor!"

36] Jonathan said: "Friend, be that as it may; but come now to have breakfast with your entourage!"

37] And Cyrenius spoke, in great astonishment: "What, do you want to feed us also? – O you noble man! – After I first find out from you where I am, and who you are, then you shall find out who I am, and you shall receive a large reward!"

38] Then all got up and followed Jonathan into the large hut, where breakfast awaited the company, and all ate the well-prepared fish with great enjoyment and praised Jonathan beyond all measure.

39] He, however, said: "O do not praise me; for it is another – and not I – who deserves the real credit!"



40] I was only a crude instrument of the One who sent me as a representative and who announced that I would perform an important service during the night.

41] And so it was indeed; I found you in great distress and was your rescuer, and that was the will of the Almighty!

42] I have fulfilled this holy will, and the realization that I have fulfilled God's will out of love for Him, is my great reward, – if you were the emperor himself, you could not have given me a greater reward!

43] I therefore request you not to think of any additional reward for me.

44] Just bring your beautiful and large ship in order once again; and when I learn the place of your destination from you, I will give you help and advice!"

45] Here Cyrenius said: "Friend! You will hear about it at once!

46] See, my place of destination this time is Ostracine in Egypt; for I am the governor and a brother of the emperor - my name is Cyrenius Quirinus!"

47] At these words, Jonathan knelt down and begged for mercy if he had been, for instance, a little presumptuous.

48] But just as Cyrenius wanted to raise up Jonathan, Joseph came with all his household members to visit Jonathan, because Jonathan had been so long in keeping his promise to visit Joseph's house.

**CHAPTER 181. - JONATHAN AND CYRENIUS IN CONVERSATION.**  
**JOSEPH'S ASTONISHMENT ABOUT THE FOREIGN SHIP AND JONATHAN'S**  
**EXPLANATION. THE RESCUER'S SUPERSTITIOUS CAUTION AND HIS**  
**INSTRUCTION. THE MOVING REUNION OF THE INFANT AND CYRENIUS.**

**3 APRIL 1844**

01] Joseph did not go into the hut at once, but sent a messenger inside to let Jonathan know that he was here.

02] Jonathan soon got up and spoke to Cyrenius:

03] "Imperial-Royal Consular Highness! I beg you once again for forgiveness if I have offended you by my well-meant incivility!

04] For just as everything about me is massive, so is my tongue on some occasions!

05] However, I now must go outside again; for my most worthy friend has come to visit me today!"

06] And Cyrenius spoke to Jonathan: "O friend! My dearest rescuer! Do just as you please and do not consider me, your debtor!

07] I will just dress myself a little better and then follow you as soon as possible."

08] Now Jonathan left Cyrenius and quickly went outside to receive Joseph.

09] Joseph meanwhile went a little down the shore for a closer view of the ship.

10] And Jonathan hurried towards Joseph and his company and soon caught up with them.

11] As the two men greeted each other and Jonathan had taken the Infant in his arms and cuddled Him,

12] Joseph asked his good friend in great amazement: 13] "Brother, so tell me – from where did you get this ship? 14] Or have guests or travellers come in it?

15] Indeed, it is a magnificent ship, the kind that one sees coming only from Rome!"

16] And Jonathan spoke: "O friend, see, that is why I had to leave your villa yesterday!

17] A storm had stranded a Roman ship on a sandbank outside the bay.

18] My efforts – through the grace of this your Child – to save the ship from a certain destruction, was successful.

19] The rescued persons, about a hundred in number, are still in my house, which is fortunately adequately spacious for them;

20] and I think that they will depart today itself, as they've told me that fortunately, their destination is our own city.

21] They still do not know where they are, for rescued persons must not be informed of this immediately.

22] When they are about to leave, I will in any case give them directions!"

23] And Joseph asked Jonathan if the rescued persons had announced who they were and where they were going.

24] Jonathan replied: "As you know, one must never tell tales out of school;

25] for as long as the rescued persons have not left, their names may not be revealed, because this could be injurious to them on their future journey!"

26] Here the Infant said to Jonathan: "O man! You have a noble heart, in which there is no falsehood;

27] but as regards the old superstitions, you are still full of them!

28] Here it is nevertheless better to keep silent, than to speak; for in any case, in a few moments the matter will be clarified!"

29] After the Infant said this, Cyrenius, with his entourage, left the hut and went towards the ship, that is, exactly to the place where Joseph was.

30] As he came there, he said to Tullia: "Wife! Just look there! – Is the company there with our rescuer not exactly the same for whose sake we travelled to Ostracine?!

31] By the living God! I have never before seen such a resemblance! – And look, our host is at this moment carrying an infant in his arms, who fully resembles the Holy Infant of our heavenly friend in Ostracine!"

32] Here the Infant demanded to be put down on the ground and ran towards the approaching Cyrenius, who was very near.

33] And Cyrenius stood still and gazed very attentively at the Infant who was running towards him.

34] As the Infant was about three steps away from Cyrenius, he spoke:

35] "Cyrenius, Cyrenius, My dear Cyrenius! – See, how I hurriedly make my way towards you; why do you not also hurry towards Me?!"

36] Here Cyrenius recognized the Infant, instantly knelt down, together with Tullia, and literally shouted:

37] "O my God, o my Lord! – – Who – where – am I, that You – o my God! – You – my Creator, my Life, You alone who are my All in All, how is it that You come towards me in this, to me, still unfamiliar place?!"

38] The Infant said: "My dear Cyrenius, you are already at the right place, for wherever I am is the right place for you! – See, here comes Joseph, Mary, Eudokia, My brothers and the eight children!"

39] Here Cyrenius said: "O You my Life, this is too much bliss for me!" – Hereupon he began to weep from sheer happiness and could not speak due to his sacred feelings.

**CHAPTER 182. - THE BENDING OF THE HEART INSTEAD OF THE KNEE.  
CYRENIUS' GREETING OF JOSEPH. THE BLESSING OF THE CROSS AND  
THE TRIUMPH OF THE TRUST IN GOD. CYRENIUS' JOY ABOUT THE  
PROXIMITY OF OSTRACINE.**

**12 APRIL 1844**

01] Now Joseph also came over and, together with Mary, wept in joy for seeing his friend Cyrenius once again.

02] The Infant said to Cyrenius: "Cyrenius! It is enough that you bend your heart with all your love;

03] therefore you may keep your knees straight! For see, you have a large entourage with you, who do not know Me, and you should not betray Me through such a posture!

04] Therefore rise from the ground and do, what Joseph, Jonathan, Mary and all the others, do; your wife should get up too!"

05] Thereupon Cyrenius got up together with Tullia, immediately took the Infant in his arms and cuddled Him.

06] With the Infant in his arms, he went closer to Joseph and said:

07] "I greet you from the bottom of my heart! – How very often did my heart long for you!

08] But in the past two years, critical affairs of state have increased to such an extent that I could never find the time to follow this high and holy demand of my heart.

09] It is only now that I could bring everything so far in order that I could visit to you, my holy friend.

10] But even now that I followed the dictates of my heart, I would almost have perished, if this most Holy Infant had not sent a rescuer for me!

11] O my friend and brother! I have suffered a lot in these two years!

12] I had to endure persecution, treason, slander with the emperor and many other highly unpleasant things.

13] However, I always thought about what the most Holy Infant had said to me two years ago, namely: that He teases and pinches those whom He loves.

14] And indeed, all the assaults on my spirit were actually nothing but caresses from my Lord of Lords!

15] For wherever there was a wave rising up against me which threatened to devour me completely,

16] it crashed against an even more powerful counter wave and nothing remained but empty foam.

17] And so I have now landed here completely safe, after experiencing great danger that threatened to engulf everything, and find myself in your most holy company; and all the storms that frightened me have been put to eternal rest!"

18] Here Joseph embraced Cyrenius and said: "Yes, brother in the Lord, it is just as you have now spoken!

19] In fact, I always knew what was happening to you; but I always praised the Lord for loving you so much.

20] Now look over there toward noon and morning, and you will easily recognize the city, and even more easily, your villa!

21] See that your ship is taken care of and come with me; we can have a good chat when we are back home!"

22] When Cyrenius looked over and quickly recognized the villa, he was beside himself, and he could not stop wondering about all this.

***CHAPTER 183. – CYRENIUS' JOURNEY AND HIS REQUEST TO JOSEPH  
FOR ENLIGHTENMENT. JOSEPH'S ELUSIVE ANSWER. THE DISSATISFIED  
CYRENIUS AND HIS ENLIGHTENMENT BY THE INFANT. THE GENERAL  
DEPARTURE TO JOSEPH'S VILLA.***

***13 APRIL 1844***

01] Only after Cyrenius had puzzled over Joseph's statement by looking at it from all angles and convincing himself of its correctness, was he able, in utter amazement, to speak properly again, and said to Joseph:

02] "Yes, my exalted friend and brother, let us immediately do as you desire;

03] but two things must be rectified first!

04] Firstly, my great rescuer must be rewarded – and in a manner befitting an emperor!

05] And secondly, I must learn from you how it was possible for me to be brought here, to a place I least expected to be!

06] For see, ever since I started from Tyre, I had a steady and strong east wind that gradually transformed into a regular hurricane!

07] I roamed the high seas for ten full days – God knows where – because of this unfavourable wind.

08] When I once again set foot on land last midnight, with the help of this great rescuer, I thought I was in Spain, and more particularly, close to the Pillars of Hercules!

09] And – now, instead of in Spain as I had supposed, I am exactly where I really wanted to go!

10] O brother, o friend! – Give me just a brief explanation on this!"

11] And Joseph said: "Friend, first get your people to check whether your ship is in order;

12] only then will I, with the grace of the Lord, reveal something about your sea voyage!"

13] And Cyrenius replied to the wise Joseph: "O friend! – You appear to be very unusual today!

14] Are you testing me? Or what is it that you intend to do with me?

15] After all, today is the Sabbath of your and my Lord, to which you usually attached so much importance!

16] And indeed, I do not understand you and also do not know why you want to compel me to work today?!

17] See Him here, the holy, most holy One that I love above all else, who is resting in my arms, has surely brought my ship in order long ago because I love him above anything else!

18] Why then should I worry? – I was in great danger and was very worried;

19] but all my worries were vain; for He alone has brought about my rescue!

20] That is why I will not worry about anything any longer and will certainly leave the ship alone! – Is that not correct?"

21] And the Infant kissed Cyrenius and said: "Joseph only wanted to test you in My name, because you wanted to reward Jonathan before going with him to the villa.

22] But I say to you, you should not reward Jonathan in any way, for I Myself am his reward!

23] Therefore just get ready and go with Joseph; everything will become clear to you at home!" – And Cyrenius promptly did as the Infant had advised him to do, and all left for the villa.

**CHAPTER 184. - THE REFRESHING GET-TOGETHER IN THE SHADY  
ARBOUR OF THE HILL. JOSEPH'S WISE INTERPRETATION OF CYRENIUS'  
SEA VOYAGE. HOW THE LORD LEADS HIS PEOPLE.**

**15 APRIL 1844**

01] When Cyrenius' entire entourage, with the exception of the Jonathan's servants, was in or near Joseph's villa, Joseph promptly ordered his sons to prepare a good midday meal.

02] And for this purpose, Jonathan handed over a good load of the finest tuna that he had brought along.

03] After this, Joseph, with Cyrenius' main entourage, and naturally with Cyrenius himself, as well as with Mary, Jonathan and the infant, who Cyrenius still carried in his arms, went up his favourite hill.

04] And Eudokia and Tullia, as well as the eight children, did not remain at home, but also followed the company on the spacious hill.

05] On arrival, all sat down on the benches that Joseph had made, and refreshed themselves under the fragrant shade of rose, myrtle and papyrus trees.

06] For the hill had two sections: one of them densely wooded, and meant for the daytime;

07] the other section, however, was bare and was meant only for the evening and night time, when it was possible to enjoy the fresh air and an unhindered view of the area, as well as the sky.

08] After everyone had taken their places under the splendid arbour of the hill, Cyrenius asked Joseph if he would now like to give him the promised clarification on his sea voyage.

09] And Joseph responded and said: "Yes, brother, this is the place and the time for it, so listen to me!

10] See, the east wind represents the mercy of God; this wind tempestuously propelled you towards Him whom you now have in your arms! –

11] There are ever so many who do not know and recognize the Lord's grace, nor when and how it acts.

12] So you too did not recognize what the Lord's almighty grace intended for you!

13] You thought you were lost and assumed that the Lord had totally forgotten about you;

14] and look, it was only when you were stranded on the sandbank by the mightiest grace of the Lord, and believed yourself to be lost, that the Lord powerfully seized you and rescued you from sinking!

184,15] This has been and will always be the Lord's way at all times, by which He will lead those who have been, and will be, on their journey towards Him!

16] But why did the Lord lead you in this way? – See, when it became known in Tyre that you wanted to travel to this place by ship, mercenaries got together,

17] assembled vessels and planned a murderous attack on you on the high seas!

18] So the Lord sent a sudden and powerful east wind;

19] this quickly pushed your ship away from the enemies, so that they could not reach you.

20] But as your enemies still did not lose sight of you, but instead pursued you all the more



ruthlessly, the Lord's grace came upon you in the form of a hurricane.

21] This hurricane drowned your enemies in the sea and put your ship in the right place in calm waters, where you were fully rescued. – Cyrenius! – Do you now understand your sea voyage?" –

***CHAPTER 185. - CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE TO THE INFANT FOR THE  
MERCIFUL GUIDANCE. HOW TO PRAY IN A MANNER PLEASING TO  
GOD. THE MAIN REASON FOR THE LORD'S INCARNATION. CYRENIUS'  
AMAZEMENT AT THE PROGRESS MADE BY THE EIGHT CHILDREN.***

**16 APRIL 1844**

01] When Cyrenius heard these words from Joseph, he immediately turned to the Infant resting in his arms and spoke to Him:

02] "O You, whose name my tongue will never be worthy to utter! – So all that was nothing but Your grace, O You my Lord and my God?!"

03] How, and in what manner, can I thank You; how can I praise and glorify You for such immense and most wonderful grace?!

04] How can I, a poor foolish man, ever do anything in return, o Lord, for Your infinite grace towards me for protecting me more than your own heart?"

05] And the Infant spoke: "My dear Cyrenius! I would be much pleased when you do not sigh so heavily before Me!

06] What do I and you gain from your sighing before Me?

07] I tell you, better remain cheerful in spirit, and love Me, like all other men, in your heart; you would then be dearer to Me, than if you constantly sigh for nothing at all!"

08] And, most tenderly, Cyrenius said to the Infant:

09] "O You my life, You my all! – May I then not pray to You, my God and my Lord?"

10] The Infant replied: "O yes, you may certainly do that; however not with all sorts of endless proclamations,

11] but only in your spirit, in which you have the love for Me, and in its truth, for that is where the right light is, from which the flame of love pours out. – –

12] Do you really think that human prayers would make me more opulent, powerful and greater than I am, even without such prayers!?

13] O look, I have put Myself, out of My eternal infinity, into this body, so that men will pray to Me with more love –

14] and thereby spare their mouths, tongues and lips; for such prayer degrades the worshipper as well as the worshipped, because it is a dead thing, a property of the heathen!

15] What do you usually do with good friends and brothers when you come together?

16] See, you are happy to be with them and greet them and offer them your hand, heart and head!

17] Do the same with Me, and I will never demand anything else from you!! –

18] And now be really cheerful, and look after your children a little, and examine them to see what they have learnt,

19] and you will have a greater joy in that and also give Me a greater joy, than if you continually sigh and exclaim for a hundred years in succession!"

20] Hereupon Cyrenius became very cheerful and immediately called the eight children to

himself and asked them various things.

21] The children gave him such thoroughly knowledgeable answers to every question that he was utterly amazed.

22] Cyrenius was beside himself with joy; the children also were happy to be so smart, and Cyrenius gave them bounteous presents and praised the schoolmaster.

**CHAPTER 186. – THE BOY SIXTUS' 'RETURN PRESENT' TO HIS FATHER  
CYRENIUS: A LECTURE ON THE NATURE AND THE SHAPE OF THE  
EARTH. THE CORROBORATION BY THE CHILD JESUS.**

**17 APRIL 1844**

01] Hereupon the eldest of Cyrenius' three sons went up to his father and said to him:

02] "Father Quirinus Cyrenius! As you have now questioned us on a few things and we have been able to answer everything, which gave you pleasure, –

03] would you like to receive a small present in return from me for your love and care for us?"

04] Cyrenius smiled at this question and spoke to the boy:

05] "Your request, my dear Sixtus, is most gratifying and affectionate; but you must give me a better description of your intended present,

06] and I will immediately tell you all of you if I can accept it or not!"

07] Hereupon the boy replied: "O father Quirinus Cyrenius! It is not an object which we want or can give you as a present,

08] but a new science, about which you surely have no clue as yet!"

09] When Cyrenius heard this from his Sixtus, he said to him:

10] "Listen, my dear Sixtus, if that is the case, then you can give me as many presents as you want, and I shall willingly accept it all!"

11] After this statement by Cyrenius, the boy said:

12] "Well then, as all this is agreeable to you, o father Quirinus Cyrenius, then listen to me!

13] Until now, you have surely not heard the truth about how the earth looks like, and what shape it has!

14] What do you think is the shape of this great earth, which carries us all and feeds us through the grace of God inside her?"

15] And Cyrenius was taken aback by this question and did not know how to respond to it.

16] Only after a while, he said to the boy: "Listen, your question puts me on the spot; for I cannot give you a definite answer on it!

17] We all have all sorts of conjectures here regarding the nature of the earth; but there is no room for conjectures when dealing with a definite truth!

18] Therefore speak on your own now, and I will listen and then judge your presentation."

19] At Joseph's suggestion, the boy ran into the house and most carefully brought the globe that the Infant had created from a bitter orange the night before, on account of the lunar eclipse.

20] When Cyrenius saw this object, he was surprised and said: "Yes, – what is this? Is that perhaps the supposed present?

21] You previously said that the present was not an object, but rather a scientific discussion!?

22] This, however, is an object and not a scientific discussion!"

23] The boy said: "Dear father Quirinus Cyrenius, that is certainly true, but I cannot give

you this object, because it does not belong to me;

24] however, it is necessary here if you are to understand what I say!"

25] Here the boy began to talk like a professor about the nature of the earth with the help of the globe, and with a thoroughness that greatly amazed Cyrenius.

26] And when the boy finished, the Infant said to Cyrenius: "It is so! – As a souvenir, you shall keep this small earth until one day, when a greater one will come over you in My kingdom!"

**CHAPTER 187. – CYRENIUS' DELIGHT IN RECEIVING THE GLOBE AS A  
GIFT AND HIS REQUEST CONCERNING AUGUSTUS. THE INFANT'S  
PROFOUNDLY WISE RESPONSE WITH REFERENCE TO THE DIVINE  
ORDER.**

**18 APRIL 1844**

01] Cyrenius was so extraordinarily happy with this gift that he was beside himself with sheer bliss.

02] After a while, when he had looked at the marvellous globe from all sides and had convinced himself of the significant representation of all the spots known to him, he began to speak again, saying:

03] "Joseph, for all of us, this is an obvious proof of Him, who once created the earth!

04] For what is more difficult for the Almighty, to create a big earth – or to create such a small one to instruct us about the big one that carries us?!

05] I believe that it is the same thing!

06] O God, o great God! – What infinite fullness of all sorts of perfections must live within You, that such marvels are so easy for you!?

07] Whoever is spiritually engrossed in You has bliss on earth!

08] Whoever has You and carries You in his heart is infinitely happy!

09] O how repulsive the vain bustle of earthlings appear to me now!

10] O my poor brother Augustus, if you only knew what I now know, how deeply disgusted would you be with your wobbly throne!

11] O You my little Jesus, You my life, You my all! Would You not like to show my brother, through Your omnipotence, how worthless and terribly sordid his throne actually is?"

12] The Infant spoke: "Cyrenius, look at all the creatures of the earth,

13] and you will find some who are good and some who are bad towards you!

14] Do you think that they are therefore the same towards Me as well?

15] See, the lion is a terrible animal and does not spare a life in his rage!

16] Did you find this animal to behave as such towards Me?

17] Certainly not – you say in your heart, for this king of the wilderness saved my life twice!

18] See, the same applies to your brother; he cannot be as you are, and you cannot be as he is.

19] For that reason, I have allowed all sorts of creatures to exist, because they are necessary for My eternal order!

20] And so it had to happen, that your brother became what he is, and you became what you are!

21] However, if your brother says: 'Lord! I do not know what I am, and what I am doing, but Your power is with me, and I act according to it!' –

22] then your brother is as righteous as you are, and you need not worry about him; for every deed will become manifest hereafter!" – This speech gave rise to better thoughts in

Cyrenius about Augustus, and he again looked at his small earth.

***CHAPTER 188. – CYRENIUS AFFIRMS HIS LOVE FOR THE LORD. THE  
TEST: TULLIA'S DEATH. CYRENIUS' PROFOUND GRIEF. THE JUSTIFIED  
REBUKE OF THE DISAPPOINTED INFANT AND ITS EFFECT ON  
CYRENIUS.***

***19 APRIL 1844***

01] As Cyrenius looked at the globe once again with great attention, the Infant requested to be allowed to go to the hill and hop around a little.

02] And Cyrenius very gently set Him down on the earth and said:

03] "O You my Life, You my Salvation, You my All! I only release you physically from my hands;

04] but never, never from my heart; for You alone live there, – yes You alone are my love!

05] Truly, as long as I have only You, o My Saviour, then all the treasures of the world are less than nothing!"

06] Here the Infant stood up, turned again towards Cyrenius and spoke to him:

07] "In that case, I must, after all, stay with you, although I would have really liked to hop around a little, because You love Me so much!

08] Look, it would have become a little boring for Me to be with you, if you had constantly looked at your little earth;

09] but as your heart and all your attention has again turned fully towards Me, I have to remain with you and cannot leave you!

10] But listen, My dear Cyrenius! What would your wife say, if she heard that you love only Me?"

11] And Cyrenius said: "Lord, if I have You, what concern should I have about my wife and the whole world! – See, all this can be traded off for a mite!

12] O You my Jesus, what bliss can ever be greater than loving You above all else and to be loved by You in return!

13] Therefore I would rather despise Tullia as I would a plague of locusts, before I would give up an infinitesimal fraction of the love I have for You!"

14] The Infant spoke: "Cyrenius, if I would test you a little on this, do you think that you will remain steadfast?"

15] And Cyrenius said: "According to my present feelings, You may cause the earth under my feet to become dust and take Tullia a thousand times, if it were possible, and I would still love You the same!"

16] Here Tullia suddenly sank onto the ground as if hit by a blow and was completely dead.

17] All those present were extremely frightened. Fermented lemon juice and fresh water was instantly brought to revive her;

18] but all efforts were in vain, for Tullia was stone dead.

19] When Cyrenius saw that Tullia was really dead, he covered his face and began to get very sad.



20] The Infant now asked the sorrowful Cyrenius: "Cyrenius! How am I to understand this? See, the earth is still whole, and your wife has not died a thousand deaths, as you had demanded, – and now you are as sad as if you had lost everything in the world!

21] Am I not the same to you now as I was formerly, when I was everything to you?! – Why are you grieving so much now?"

22] Here Cyrenius sighed deeply and sorrowfully spoke: "O Lord! As long as I had Tullia, I did not know how dear she was to me; only after losing her have I realized her worth!

23] That is why I grieve – and I will grieve for her all my life, as she was such a noble and faithful aide!"

24] The Infant sighed heavily and spoke: "O you fickle human beings! How little steadfastness lives within your hearts!

25] If you are like this already in My presence, how will you be when I am not among you?!

26] Cyrenius! What was I to you a few minutes ago, – and what am I to you now?

27] You are covering your face from Me as well as from the world, and your heart is so full of sadness that you can hardly hear My voice!

28] I tell you: Truly, you are not worthy of Me!

29] He who loves his wife more than Me is not worthy of Me, for I am more than a wife, who has been created through My power!

30] I say to you, be more circumspect in the future, otherwise you will never again look upon My face in this world!"

31] Hereupon the Infant went to Joseph and said to him: "Joseph! Let the dead woman be brought into the small closet and place her on a bier!"

32] Here Joseph asked: "My little Son, will she never live again?"

33] And the Infant spoke: "Do not question Me about this; for My time has not yet come, but do as I say!

34] See, the woman was jealous of Me, when Cyrenius confessed his love for Me; it was this covetousness and jealousy that killed her so swiftly! Therefore do not ask Me anymore, but place her on a bier in the small room; for she is really dead!"

35] Hereupon Joseph had the corpse brought into the house, prepared a bier in a small side room and placed the corpse on it.

36] All now went to Cyrenius and consoled him for the sudden loss of his wife.

37] However, Cyrenius uncovered his face, straightened up like a true hero and spoke:

38] "O dear friends, do not console me in vain; for I have already found my consolation in my own heart,

39] and you cannot give me a richer one!

40] Look, the Lord gave me this noble wife, and then He took her away from me; for He alone is the Lord of all life!

41] Therefore let all be offered up to Him, and let His holy name be honoured and praised eternally!

42] It is certainly a hard blow to my human heart; but I now feel it to be all the more invigorating for my spirit!

43] For the Lord has thereby released me, and I now belong wholly and free of all earthly attachments to Him alone, and He alone is now the holy resident of my heart! Therefore do

not console me; He alone is my consolation in all eternity!"

44] Here the Infant came to Cyrenius again and said to him: "Amen! – So be it forever!

45] These years on earth, in which we will still be work here, will pass like a breath; however, you will then be where I will be in all eternity among those, who will love Me like you do! – So be it forever, forever, forever!" – – –

**CHAPTER 189. - JOSEPH INVITES CYRENIUS FOR A MEAL CYRENIUS'  
DECLINATION REFERRING TO HIS SATIATION BY THE LORD. THE  
INFANT'S PRAISE FOR CYRENIUS.**

**20 APRIL 1844**

- 01] Joseph's sons now came and indicated that the meal was ready.
- 02] And Joseph went to Cyrenius, who was wholly engaged with the Infant, and notified him of the meal, and asked him if he would be able to eat anything in his grief.
- 03] And Cyrenius said: "O my exalted brother, do you really think that I am in the least hungry?
- 04] Just look over there! How can a man be hungry in the company of Him, through whom myriads and myriads are fed at every moment!?
- 05] As far as the supposed grief is concerned, I say from the fullness of my love to Him, who created you and me:
- 06] How can I be sad in the company of my and your Lord?!
- 07] See, when you sow one grain of wheat in the earth, and the seed then rots, He replaces the one with a hundred!
- 08] This is also the case here: where the Lord takes one away, He soon gives a thousand in return!
- 09] He took away the jealous Tullia from me, but in return He gave Me Himself!
- 10] O brother, what an infinite substitute it is for my minor loss!
- 11] In place of my wife, I may now designate Him in my heart as eternally mine! – O brother, how can I then still mourn for Tullia?!"
- 12] Here Joseph spoke: "O brother! You have become great before the Lord; indeed, you were a heathen – and now you are better than many Israelites!
- 13] Yes, I myself must confess to you: your heart and your mouth greatly shame even me;
- 14] for I have not yet experienced such a surrender to the Lord's will in myself!"
- 15] Here the Infant raised Himself and spoke: "Joseph! I know why I chose you; but you were never greater before Me than just now, when you acknowledged your weakness to a heathen!
- 16] But I tell you, as you have already given Cyrenius the testimonial that he is better than many Israelites:
- 17] Cyrenius is more here than Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and more than Moses and the prophets, and more than David and Solomon!
- 18] For their actions were righteous through their faith and through great piety in their hearts;
- 19] Cyrenius, however, is a firstling, who was awakened by My love; and that is more than the entire old covenant which was dead, while Cyrenius is now fully alive!
- 20] You know the splendour of the temple in Jerusalem; it is a creation of Solomon's wisdom.
- 21] But this temple is as dead as its master builder, who sacrificed Me for the women!

22] But Cyrenius has, with great self-denial, built Me a new and living temple in his heart, where I will live forever, and that is more than all of Solomon's wisdom!"

23] Here Cyrenius began to weep in bliss, and Joseph as well as Mary, engraved these words in their hearts; for they were full of strength and full of life. — —

***CHAPTER 190. – THE INFANT'S REQUEST TO CYRENIUS TO EAT AND  
PLAY WITH HIM. MARONIUS' AND MARY'S OBJECTION. THE INFANT'S  
INVALIDATING RESPONSE. THE AWAKENING OF TULLIA.***

***22 APRIL 1844***

01] The Infant then said to Cyrenius:

02] "Cyrenius, your heart is now full, and this satiety will last you forever!

03] But your body is hungry, and you need strengthening for the same purpose that I  
Myself need natural sustenance for My body.

04] Therefore go with Me down to the house, where we will eat some good fish that  
Jonathan brought with him today and which My brothers have prepared so well.

05] For I must tell you that I much prefer to eat fish over the dull Jewish baby food; and I  
am already really looking forward to a good piece of it!

06] O I tell you, My dearest Cyrenius, I really enjoy eating fish which is all the more reason  
why I love Jonathan very much, because he is a real fisherman and often brings us the  
best fish!

07] And you know, My dearest Cyrenius, after the meal you must play with Me a little, and  
your children should play as well!

08] You are not yet old and can therefore hop and jump around a little with Me!"

09] The Infant's purely childlike language made Cyrenius so happy that he completely  
forgot the dead Tullia, although his company was mourning;

10] and some of the company started to be concerned about Cyrenius' cheerfulness,  
which appeared to them as insanity.

11] Maronius himself went up to Cyrenius and asked him how he was feeling.

12] Instead of Cyrenius, the Infant instantly replied:

13] "O Maronius! Do not worry about My friend; for he has never been more free of  
insanity in all his life than now!

14] I wish that you were as healthy as Cyrenius, for then you would not ask such questions  
in My presence!

15] But come down along with us to the meal; perhaps a good piece of fish will cure you!"

16] Hereupon Cyrenius went into the house with the Infant and with Joseph, Mary,  
Jonathan, Eudokia and the eight children, and Maronius followed them, although  
somewhat on pins and needles;

17] but the rest of the large company mourned and did not go to the midday meal.

18] After the meal, which all present found delicious, the Infant once again desired to go  
outside into the open air to play with Cyrenius and the eight children.

19] But Mary said: "Listen, My Jesus! You may not play now, and the eight children also  
may not play, for firstly, it is the Sabbath, and secondly, we have a corpse in the house,  
and then one should not play, but remain quiet and modest!"

20] But the Infant said: "Woman, what spirit is causing you to speak to Me in this way?

21] Is then the Sabbath more than Me – and the dead woman greater than My will?!

22] But so you may see that I stand above the Sabbath and above the dead woman, and so that the latter does not hinder my happiness, let her awake!"

23] At these words, the corpse sat up from the bier and soon came into the room.

24] The Infant ordered food to be given to her, and then immediately went outside with Cyrenius, while all were utterly amazed at this awakening.

## ***CHAPTER 191. - JESUS' RACE AGAINST CYRENIUS. HOW CYRENIUS ALSO BECOMES A MASTER, HINT ON THE MASTERY OF LIFE.***

**23 APRIL 1844**

- 01] When the Infant, together with Cyrenius and the other eight children, were outside in the open air, the Infant said to Cyrenius:
- 02] "Look at the tree there; how far do you think it is from here?"
- 03] "I think", said Cyrenius, "it is possibly a little over two hundred steps from here!"
- 04] And the Infant spoke: "So let us race and find out who among us is the fastest!"
- 05] And Cyrenius smiled and said: "O Lord, with your natural strength, it will certainly be You who will arrive last at the tree!"
- 06] And the Infant said: "This matter will only be settled when we have the result – and so let us make the attempt!"
- 07] Here all the participants ran with all their might, and the Infant arrived first at the tree.
- 08] Upon arrival at the tree, Cyrenius said, completely out of breath:
- 09] "O Lord! I actually knew that You would not run naturally and would therefore arrive at the finish line first!"
- 10] For invisible powers carry You; but I am only carried by my sluggish feet!"
- 11] But the Infant spoke: "Cyrenius, here you are once again mistaken; for your feet are filled with the same invisible powers as Mine.
- 12] But the difference is only due to the fact that I am a Master, and you are a mere student of the powers.
- 13] If you would properly train your power, then you too will be able to use it like the Master does!
- 14] But now let us run back, and we will see who will reach the spot in front of the house first!"
- 15] Here Cyrenius quickly bent down, lifted up the Infant and ran with Him to the spot – and was easily the first to arrive at the spot.
- 16] On arrival there, the Infant smiled and spoke: "That was quite amusing!"
- 17] See, you have attained mastery at once; you saw the Master, took Him up, and thereby became a master yourself!
- 18] However, also learn a lesson from this: in future, no one will be a master through his own efforts;
- 19] but when he takes up the Master, he will become a master himself through the Master whom he has taken up.
- 20] It does not matter much who runs faster; but regardless, everyone should try to be the first in reaching the goal set by Me, ahead of any other goal!
- 21] He who begins his race of life on his own strength, will be the last;
- 22] but he who does what you did for the second race, will also find himself as the first at the finish line!
- 23] Now let us proceed to a different game and let us amuse ourselves in a real childlike

manner!"



## ***CHAPTER 192 - THE INSTRUCTIVE HOLE-GAME. THE HOLES OF LIFE AND THEIR ORDER.***

**24 APRIL 1844**

01] Hereupon the Infant turned to Sixtus as the eldest of Cyrenius' sons and said to him:

02] "Sixtus, go and make ten small holes there at the edge of the path, each hole a span apart! You already know what to do with them.

03] Then bring the ten clay marbles that James has made for us to play with, and we will then toss the marbles a few times; – you already know how to do it, for it was you who taught Me this!"

04] Hereupon Sixtus immediately did as the Infant had asked.

05] When the ten small holes were made and the clay marbles were brought, the Infant said to Cyrenius:

06] "Now release Me, so that I can explain to you and show you how this game is played; but you other children should not interrupt Me, because I want to explain the game to Cyrenius Myself!"

07] Here the Infant solemnly turned to Cyrenius and spoke:

08] "See, the game goes like this: you must stand three steps in front of this hole, then toss a marble.

09] If you can successfully throw it into the tenth and last and farthest hole, then you are the king of the game; if you manage to throw into the ninth hole, then you are a minister; a throw into the eighth hole would make you a general!

10] The seventh hole would make you governor, the sixth a judge, the fifth a priest, the fourth a farmer, the third a father, the second a mother and the first a child!

11] I will explain to you how this game continues when the holes are filled."

12] Here Cyrenius smilingly took a marble and tossed it, and the marble immediately rolled into the first hole!

13] And the Infant asked: "Are you satisfied with your position? Otherwise, being a beginner, you are allowed a second toss!"

14] And Cyrenius said: "My most wonderful Life, My Jesus! I will remain where I am now!"

15] And the Infant spoke: "Good, so now you can all toss, one after the other. I will toss last!"

16] And the children tossed their marbles; however, they did not fill all the holes, but often ended up with two or three marbles in one hole.

17] At the end, the Infant tossed and the marble reached the tenth hole, as always! –

18] Then one of the girls lingered and spoke: "But then little Jesus has to be a king all the time!"

19] But the Infant said to the girl: "Why do you fret about this? – You have, after all, tossed before I did; why were you so inept with your hands?!"

20] Do not be resentful about this, otherwise I will again let a mouse, which you so greatly fear, come over you!"

21] Hereupon the girl did not say anything and was content to be alone in her second hole!

22] However, the ninth, eighth, seventh and sixth holes were unoccupied; so Cyrenius said to the Infant:

23] "See, You my Life! – Now there is no minister, no general, no governor and no judge!

24] Who will assume these main positions?"

25] "I Myself must occupy these positions", spoke the Infant, "because they are unoccupied; for all the vacant positions must be assumed by the occupier of the hole above them!

26] If the minister hole were occupied, then the three preceding empty posts would be allocated to him; however, as it is unoccupied, the four holes now fall to the king! – As all the holes are now occupied, let us get on with the actual game!"

## ***CHAPTER 193. - THE HOLE-GAME - A GAME OF THE HUMAN DRIVE.***

### ***THE RULES GIVEN BY THE INFANT AS KING OF THE GAME.***

**25 APRIL 1844**

- 01] And the Infant said further to Cyrenius: "Now that I am the king, each one of you must obey Me as you would a king!
- 02] And now hear my laws! – The priest hole should have wisdom and earnest goodness!
- 03] If you laugh when another laughs, then you err and will be removed from your post and thereby punished.
- 04] The farmer hole should have action; if you are indifferent, then you will have to starve!
- 05] The father hole should be full of love for your children; raise them properly and righteously, otherwise you will be a laughing stock to them!
- 06] The mother hole should be domestic and filled with fear of God, so that your infants become wise!
- 07] And you, my good and dear child hole, should remain as you are: a constant teacher of wise men towards God's wisdom!
- 08] Now these are the laws; they must be faithfully obeyed!
- 09] However, if anyone wants a favour from Me, he must come to Me for it on his knees!
- 10] Now go and proceed with the game, and leave Me alone! But you, Cyrenius, must go with the father and the mother, because you are a child!"
- 11] Now a girl and a boy, as priests, solemnly walked off and positioned themselves in a somewhat elevated spot.
- 12] Then two girls and one boy, as farmers, walked off and romped about busily on the ground, as if they had to do the most important work.
- 13] Then again a boy and a girl, both very serious in demeanour, went off and represented the father, who, in order to be a proper father, should also be like a mother at heart.
- 14] Hereupon the sole mother went to the child, that is, Cyrenius; but the mother was shy of her child and did not trust herself to speak to him and give him wise instruction.
- 15] She therefore turned to the King and asked Him for the grace of being given another position.
- 16] The King, however, advised her to go to the priests, who began to laugh when they saw the mother coming towards them.
- 17] So the King immediately called the priests and dismissed them, because they should have behaved in a more earnest and wise manner, and put them among the farmers.
- 18] The farmers, however, soon began to argue and quarrel with each other, and the King called them and settled the issues and restored peace among them.
- 19] Now the mother came again and wanted another post.
- 20] The King spoke: "As you represent love in its wisdom, you may be the priest!"
- 21] But now the father came and complained that he had no wife, because the mother was a priest.
- 22] And the King spoke: "So take the child and go there and become what the mother is!"

23] And so it was; but the priests now demanded more respect from the farmers.

24] Soon there was confusion, and the King called everyone back again and spoke: "I see that you are all at odds; therefore let us proceed to a new toss!" –

**CHAPTER 194. - CYRENIUS IN THE MINISTER HOLE. THE GIRL'S  
DISCONTENTMENT. THE KING'S' EFFECTIVE MEANS OF INTIMIDATION.  
THE MICE MIRACLE.**

**26 APRIL 1844**

01] Cyrenius was again the first to toss, and his marble rolled into the ninth hole, and his children said:

02] "Father Cyrenius, this means that you have risen from child to minister, and that with the first toss!

03] If you toss again, you would surely reach the king hole!"

04] And Cyrenius spoke: "My children, I am satisfied with this rank; therefore just take the marbles and toss!

05] See to it that you frequently come into the child hole; for that is the most appropriate and best place for you!"

06] Thereupon Sixtus promptly tossed and ended up in the child hole and was quite happy about it.

07] Then the eldest girl tossed and again landed in the second mother hole.

08] At this, the girl grumbled again as before and said: "Oh dear, I have to be the mother once again!"

09] The Infant went there, took the marble from the hole, gave it back to the girl and spoke:

10] "There – toss one more time, you discontented girl; however, see to it that you do not become the mother once again!"

11] And the girl tossed again and came again into the same hole and started to cry in annoyance.

12] At this the Infant again went over to the girl and said: "O you tyrannical creature! Truly, the nature of the first woman shows in you!

13] What shall I do with you, you serpent nature, you lion's paw?

14] Just get a mouse quickly; it will really torment you; then you will act differently towards me!"

15] Here the girl instantly knelt down before the Infant, wept and spoke:

16] "My dearest Jesus, I beg you, anything but a mouse or rat; for I am terribly afraid of them!

17] I prefer to be a mother a thousand times than see even one mouse!"

18] The Infant said: "This time I will spare you the mouse;

19] but if you grumble before Me one more time, you will suddenly have ten mice over you, sniffing at your feet!"

20] At this, the girl was completely silent and looked on most patiently as the other children occupied all the other holes,

21] and did not bother, even when another girl occupied the father hole, while she would otherwise always be very annoyed if no boy came into that hole.

22] At the end, the Infant tossed again and came once more into the king hole.

23] The girl bit her lips in secret anger.

24] And the Infant smiled, took a small branch and dabbed all the marbles with it and then breathed over the little holes, and instantly there was a mouse, instead of the marble, in each hole.

25] As the girl saw the little animals, she began to scream and cry out in horror and ran away.

26] This caused Joseph to come out and ask: "What have you, my dear Jesus, once again done to the girl that she is screaming so much?"

27] And the Infant spoke: "She is, as usual, envious; so I have visited her once again with some mice!"

28] Here Joseph smiled and went to the girl to calm her down; the other children quietly continued playing their game, for they did not see the horrible mice at all.

## ***CHAPTER 195. - THE INFANT JESUS' DIALOGUE WITH THE OBSTINATE GIRL***

**27 APRIL 1844**

01] After a while, the girl came back, and the Infant immediately asked her if she wanted to participate in the game again.

02] But the girl said: "I want to watch, but not play; for I get angry very fast, and then you are immediately severe!

03] And so I do not want to play; for I am terribly afraid of You, because you can instantly create mice and rats!"

04] The Infant said: "Yes, but then why are you so foolish and get angry over things with which you have nothing to lose, whatever the outcome?

05] Be content with what your lot brings you in life, and henceforth you will have no mice and rats coming over you!

06] Just look at Me! I always toss last, and I do not grumble, although I deserve precedence!

07] Why then do you grumble, for as a girl, you should be patience personified?"

08] And the girl spoke: "What can I do about it? Why do I have such a disposition? I have not given it to myself; I am as I am, and so cannot be different!

09] And because I know how I am, I do not want to play with you, so that I do not get angry again, and thereby be punished by You with mice!"

10] The Infant turned away and spoke as if to Himself: "See, the children of the world revolt against You, and find fault with Your work, because they do not know You!

11] But – one toss and yet another toss, and the children of the world will think differently about You!" – –

12] Hereupon the Infant turned around again and spoke with the girl: "Whom do you blame for your being so ill-tempered and dissatisfied with your lot?"

13] The girl said: "Really! – When you, my dear Jesus, start asking questions, there is no end to it,

14] and you thereby become a terribly annoying Child! 15] Why should I know who is to blame for me being as I am? You Yourself are a little prophet and a Child Prodigy, who can talk with God!

16] Ask Him, if this is possible, and He will be best able to say why I am like this!"

17] Here the Infant went closer to the girl and spoke: "You girl! If you knew Me, you would speak differently;

18] however, as you do not know Me, you speak with a sharp tongue!

19] Just look up towards the sun! – What do you think it is and who do you think gave it its radiance?"

20] The girl, however, spoke most impatiently: "Why do you have to pick especially on me, and torment me so much with Your questions!

21] Look, there are several others there who you leave in peace; go also to them, and pester them with your endless questions!"

22] And the Infant spoke: "O girl! See, they are healthy and do not need medicine; you, however, are sick in spirit, so I would like to help you, if you were not so stubborn!

23] But as you are so very stubborn, it will be difficult to help you!

24] However, take note: if an angel of heaven would be given the grace to be questioned by Me, as you have been, he would burn with so much bliss that the fire of his love would instantly destroy the entire earth!

25] Go away from Me now; I do not like you anymore, because you are so stubborn!" – Here the girl departed and secretly wept; Jesus, however, continued to direct His playmates as King.



***CHAPTER 196. - NEW DISPUTES IN THE SECOND GAME. THE THIRD TOSS. THE AMBITIOUS GIRL IN THE MINISTER HOLE. THE SMEAR CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE CHILD. THE NEW AND LAST TOSS. EVERYONE COMES INTO THE CHILD HOLE; ONLY THE CHILD COMES INTO THE KING HOLE. HIS MARBLE BEGINS TO GLOW LIKE THE SUN, AND THE CHILD PUTS THE RADIANT MARBLE INTO THE FATHER HOLE. THE BASIC ORDER OF LIFE IS RESTORED.***

***29 APRIL 1844***

- 01] In the course of this second game, some disputes erupted among the players.
- 02] The minister had to be feared, as this was Cyrenius himself; the general, as well the governor and the judge, did not dare to say anything against the minister and secretly sulked at such an arrangement.
- 03] In particular, two girls, who were the governor and the judge, were discontented, because they could not do anything without the minister's consent.
- 04] Only Sixtus in his child hole was fully satisfied.
- 05] The Infant saw this discord and hence called all of them together, redistributed the marbles and allowed everyone to toss again.
- 06] This time Cyrenius came into the king hole and the Infant into the child hole;
- 07] and all the children were highly pleased that for once, the two-years-and-four-months-old Jesus came into the child hole.
- 08] Here even the girl from before came again to the Infant and said to Him: "See, that is the right place for you; I am happy that you too have come once into this boring hole!"
- 09] The Infant, however, spoke: "Look, the minister hole is still unoccupied! Take a marble and toss; perhaps you will get in?"
- 10] Thereupon the girl took the marble again and tossed and landed precisely in the minister hole.
- 11] When she saw herself in the minister hole, she was glowing with happiness that her ambition was at last fulfilled, and spoke in jest:
- 12] "Now, my Jesus, be happy; now I will certainly punish you if you are disobedient!"
- 13] And the Infant said: "Do you know, laws do not apply to children; how do you then want to treat me and what do you want to do with Me?"
- 14] The girl said: "Let the game begin, and you will immediately see if the minister has no power over children!"
- 15] Hereupon Cyrenius, as king, allotted the game, and everyone went to his post and performed their official duty.
- 16] But especially the minister stirred up the priest against the Child, so that the priest would not allow the Child to come to him.
- 17] So even the other positions did not listen to the Child.
- 18] Therefore the Child ran to the king, according to the rules of the game, and complained

about His persecution.

19] And the king spoke: "O Lord, I know too little about these rules!

20] But as confusion has again crept into the game, despite these rules, I will summon the small group again, and if You wish, we can immediately have another toss!"

21] And the Infant spoke: "Yes – Cyrenius, a new one, and forever the last one!

22] And so call the children together that we may do the final test!"

23] And Cyrenius called the children together and distributed the marbles, and the tossing began.

24] But this time all the children, together with Cyrenius, tossed into the child hole; and only Jesus tossed into the king hole.

25] At that moment, the king hole began to glow and His marble began to be as radiant as the sun!

26] And the Infant took the radiant marble and laid it in the father hole and then asked Cyrenius:

27] "Cyrenius! Do you now understand this most significant game?"

28] And Cyrenius spoke: "O Lord, You my Life! – How am I to understand this?"

29] And the Infant spoke: "So listen to Me; I will give a clear and detailed explanation of this to all of you!"

***CHAPTER 197. - THE GAME'S MEANING. THE THREE TOSSES  
SIGNIFYING THE HISTORICAL ERAS FROM ADAM UP TO THE  
INCARNATION. THE NEW AND ETERNALLY LAST TOSS: FROM A CHILD'S  
POSITION, ALL WILL RECOGNIZE THE FATHER. THE FATHER WILL THEN  
BE THE FATHER FOREVER.***

***30 APRIL 1844***

01] And the Child immediately began to speak like a wise teacher from a synagogue and said:

02] "This is the significance of this game: from the time of creation, and before it, God was the Lord from eternity!

03] The first toss: the old spirits awake but do not want to put up with the glory of God, and the game gets out of order.

04] This game lasts from Adam to Noah and from Noah to Moses.

05] The stubborn girl represents the love – and the world, which rejects love.

06] During Noah's time, the world is punished by threats, just like this girl with the mice.

07] But the world does not improve, but gradually falls back again into idolatry and wants altars, visible deities and many rituals.

08] Here the Lord calls for an end to the game under Moses, and a second toss takes place!

09] At the beginning it looks like it will last; but Moses has only to turn his back, and the golden calf is completed!

10] Thus the girl begins to quarrel in earnest, and is then punished with the threat of actual judgment.

11] And so the Flood was much more of a strong threat than an actual judgment.

12] But the judgment of the people in the wilderness was a real judgment, since it occurred through fire, just as it had in the past with Sodom.

13] The game begins with the toss; frankly, it goes well at first, but out of pure fear, for the mother, the love, is missing in this game; the mother departed because she was not allowed to rule.

14] This game of Moses lasted until this time, and wore itself out through revolts and through constant fear.

15] The Lord again calls the small group together; another toss takes place, and the Lord becomes a Child!

16] Then the love comes and expresses a certain delight over the utterly helpless position of the Lord.

17] Love now also makes a toss, and succeeds in reaching the first step of the throne.

18] And there she persecutes the Lord unto death and does not leave Him in peace for almost a thousand and nine hundred years and stirs up everyone against Him!

19] But then it is obvious to the established powers that this will not do anymore.

20] And a final toss takes place: the Lord is once again the Lord of old; His position is full

of glowing fervour and His toss full of grace!

21] And from a child's position, all the people will recognize the Father, when He as such comes increasingly closer to the people with all His loving power!

22] And that will be the last toss, and no further ones will take place! - The Father will then be a Father forever.

23] See, that is the purpose of the game! – Now let us all go back to the house, to see what the awakened Tullia is doing; and so, all of you, follow Me!"

## ***CHAPTER 198. – MARY'S AND EUDOKIA'S EFFORTS TOWARDS THE AWAKENED TULLIA. A PROPHETIC IMAGE OF THE FUTURE WORSHIP OF MARY. THE TRUE LOVERS OF THE LORD.***

**2 May 1844**

- 01] When our group of players came into the house, they were hardly noticed; for all were still fully engaged with the awakened Tullia.
- 02] Some comforted her, others hung around her and observed her and were worried that she might relapse into death.
- 03] Even Mary and Eudokia were busy with her and brought her all sorts of refreshments.
- 04] And Joseph's sons, together with James, were busy with the preparation of the evening meal.
- 05] Only Joseph and Jonathan sat on a straw bench in the side room and spoke to one another about a good many things of the past;
- 06] and as they were the only ones to notice the entering group, they got up and went towards Cyrenius and the Infant and naturally welcomed them in the most friendly manner.
- 07] But the Infant instantly ran towards Joseph and said to him:
- 08] "How much longer will the fools continue to comfort, refresh and strengthen the awakened Tullia?
- 09] She has been well enough since a while and will not die before her time comes; what then do these fools want?!" –
- 10] And Joseph spoke: "Why should we bother about that? Let them have the pleasure; for we do not lose anything by it!"
- 11] Hereupon the Infant said: "That is obviously true, and I will not bother about it too much;
- 12] but I think the following is also true: if the awakened woman receives so much admiration, then the One who awakened her should not be left in the background either! – ?"
- 13] And Joseph spoke: "My little Son, You are perfectly right; but what can one do here?
- 14] If I present You as the infallible Awakener, then it would mean that I betray You before Your time, to those who do not yet know You – and that would be unwise!
- 15] But if You even breathed such miraculous knowledge into their minds, they would be come under judgment!
- 16] So let us leave them as they are; we, however, will secretly remain together in spirit and in truth!
- 17] When they have comforted and looked at the Roman woman ad nauseum, they will no doubt come over and join our company!"
- 18] And the Infant spoke: "You can see another image of the future here!
- 19] Those who profess to belong to our faith, will concern themselves with the dead Roman woman due to worldly considerations,
- 20] and much will be made of Mary among the Romans and by the Roman woman!
- 21] Nevertheless, those who claim our faith will not be our comrades, but rather what they

are now, that is to say, pagans, and will not respect Me, but only Mary!

22] And My real followers will remain hidden and small at all times in the world!

23] Tullia was a blind beggar and regained her sight through My living water

24] and then became a first lady in the great kingdom of the pagans.

25] However, as she became jealous, she also met her death.

26] She was brought back to life; she lives, but she does not want to be aware of Me.

27] Will I need to make her aware of Me through a judgment?

28] But I will wait for some time and see if the Roman woman will get up and come to Me, her Awakener! – Joseph, do you understand this image?" – –

**CHAPTER 199. – JOSEPH'S TYPICALLY HUMAN, SHORT-SIGHTED  
QUESTIONS. THE INFANT'S REPLY. THE UNIVERSAL SIGNIFICANCE OF  
THE LORD'S INCARNATION.**

**3 May 1844**

01] As Joseph heard these words from the Infant, he said:

02] "O my little son of God! – I have certainly understood You in my soul!

03] But I must confess that You have not made an pleasant prediction for me here!

04] For if after You, as it was before You, the majority of men will remain pagans and idol-worshippers, what then is the purpose of your advent on earth?

05] Why such degradation of Your infinite and everlasting Holiness? Do you want to help only a few? – Why not everyone?!"

06] The Infant spoke: "O Joseph, you have a lot of futile questions!

07] Have you never observed the star-studded sky? – Look, every star which you see is a world, an earth which is inhabited, just as it is here, by free human beings!

08] And there are innumerable worlds that no mortal has ever set eyes on; and see, My advent is also meant for them!

09] However, you will see the how and why of it with the greatest clarity only in My Kingdom!

10] Therefore do not be surprised when I make such a prediction about the men on this earth to you;

11] for I have such earths without number and end; and all these countless and endless earths require My advent –

12] and require it because My own eternal order needs it, from which this earth, as well as all the other countless and endless ones have emerged.

13] So what I have predicted to you will indeed happen on earth!

14] That is why the eternal holy purpose of My advent will nevertheless not be in vain! –

15] For see: all the innumerable worlds, suns and earths have their orbits, and these in turn also have countless and endlessly different paths.

16] In every place, there are different laws; and in every place, there is a different order;

17] but in the end, all come together in one – My basic order, and correspond to an important main purpose, similar to the limbs of a body and their actions.

18] And look, in the end this will also be the case with the people on earth, and some day, they will recognize in their spirit that there is only one God, one Lord, one Father and only one perfect life in Him!

19] But how and when? – That remains with Him, who just told you this!

20] But first, a lot of wind has to blow over the earth's surface,

21] and a lot of water has to fall from the heaven and a lot of wood has to be burnt, before one can say:

22] See, now there is one flock and one Shepherd, one God and only one Man from innumerable hosts, one Father and one Son in and from innumerable and endless hosts.

23] This speech caused the hair of Cyrenius, Jonathan, as well as Joseph to stand on end, and Joseph spoke:

24] "O Child! – Your words are becoming increasingly incomprehensible, more amazing – and truly more dreadful!

25] Who can comprehend their infinite depth?! – Therefore speak to us in accordance with our understanding, otherwise we will perish under the profundity of Your speech!"

26] But the Infant smiled and spoke: "Joseph! Look, especially today I am particularly disposed to make such revelations to you all, so that it makes you tremble!

27] And from it you should see in all fullness, that the perfect Lord of eternity really dwells in Me and now lives among you! – And so continue to listen to Me!"



**CHAPTER 200. – PROPHETIC REVELATIONS OF THE INFANT JESUS:  
JESUS' DEATH, HIS TEACHINGS ON ATONEMENT, RESURRECTION AND  
OPENING OF THE GATES OF LIFE FOR ALL**

**4 May 1844**

- 01] And the Infant went on: "Joseph! – What would you say, if the children of the world would one day seize the Lord and kill Him with the help of Satan?
- 02] If they seize Him as if He were a murderer and robber and drag Him before the tribunal of the world, where the spirit of hell rules?
- 03] And this tribunal will have the Lord of all splendour nailed to the cross! – What do you say to this? – ! –
- 04] If the predictions regarding Him made by the prophets, whose words are well known to you, really come true! – What do you say to this?
- 05] When the three men heard such words from the Infant, they were greatly frightened, and Joseph spoke most vehemently:
- 06] "My Jesus, my little son of God, truly, may such things not happen to You!
- 07] May the hand that seizes You be cursed forever, and it's bearer's soul atone eternally for its outrage in the greatest possible torment!"
- 08] And Cyrenius, together with Jonathan, sided with Joseph and said:
- 09] "Yes, if such a thing could ever occur, truly and eternally, I will become the most ruthless tyrant from today onwards!
- 10] I command two hundred thousand of the most proficient soldiers; a single gesture from me could bring death and destruction to the whole world!
- 11] Before an impudent devil of a man lays his satanic hands on this Child, I would rather kill all men on earth!"
- 12] The Infant, however, smiled and spoke: "But then your soldiers will still remain; who then will destroy them?
- 13] See, My dear Cyrenius, whoever knows what he is doing, and does wrong, commits a sin and is an evil-doer!
- 14] But whoever does not know what he does, and does wrong, should be forgiven; for he did not know what he did!
- 15] But – someone who knows full well what he is doing, and does not want to do it because it is wrongful, but does not resist doing it under coercion, is a slave of hell and draws a judgment upon himself!
- 16] For hell knows full well that it is easier to deal with blind instruments than with seeing ones;
- 17] so it continues to keep the blind on its payroll, – and it will be precisely these blind who will nail the Lord of all splendour to the cross!
- 18] But how can you punish a blind man who struck his foot on the road and fell and broke his arms and legs?!
- 19] So just remain calmly at home with your power, which would bring much more damage than good to the earth!

20] And rest assured that He, whose flesh men will kill in their blindness, cannot be killed in spirit and in His strength and

power, but will soon rise again through His own strength and power –

21] and only through this will the path to eternal life for all creatures be opened!"

22] Cyrenius' vehement tone had drawn the attention of the people around Tullia to the small company.

23] But the Infant sent them away and spoke: "Go about your business; for what occurs here is not for you, who are blind!" – Then the group withdrew again.

**CHAPTER 201. – JESUS' SOLEMN WORDS TO MARY. PREDICTION THAT  
THE LORD AND HIS FOLLOWERS WILL BE TREATED WITH DISDAIN IN  
THE WORLD.**

**6 May 1844**

- 01] Mary, Eudokia and James were also among those who were turned away.  
02] Mary nevertheless went inside, and Eudokia and James followed her.  
03] And Mary bowed down before the Infant and spoke: 04] "Listen, my Son! You are terribly strict!  
05] If You turn me away at the door already now, what will you do with me when You become a man?!"  
06] See, you should not be so strict with someone who has carried You under her heart in great fear and much anguish!"  
07] And the Infant looked at Mary with great love and said:  
08] "How can you call Me your Son?! – Do you not remember anymore what the angel said to you?  
09] What were you to call Him who was born of you?  
10] See, the angel said: 'And the One who will be born of you will be called the Son of God, – Son of the Almighty!'  
11] If this is indeed the case, how can you then call Me your Son?!"  
12] If I were your Son, then you would concern yourself more with Me than with Tullia!  
13] However, as I am not your Son, Tullia is nearer to your heart than I am!  
14] If I jump about outside and then come to the door, no one comes towards me with a flaming heart,  
15] and I am just there like the daily bread for servants and maids, and no one stretches out his arms towards Me!  
16] However, when a town gossip comes here, she is immediately received with all honours.  
17] And this is now also the case with the foolish Tullia, who obtained life from Me; you fawn upon her ingratiatingly by the amount of attention you pay to her.  
18] But Me, the giver of life, you hardly take notice of! 19] Now tell me yourself, is this right?!"  
20] Am I not greater than any foolish town gossip and not greater than this Tullia?  
21] O rejoice, all you erstwhile follower-servants; you will fare just as I fare at this moment!  
22] Your benefactors will put you in a corner with the rubbish when they are visited by their gossipy brothers and sisters!" – These words pierced Mary's heart, and thereafter she paid great heed to them.

## ***CHAPTER 202. - JAMES IN CONVERSATION WITH LITTLE JESUS. THE INFANT'S COMPLAINT ABOUT GETTING TOO LITTLE ATTENTION FROM HIS PARENTS AND FELLOW RESIDENTS.***

***7 May 1844***

- 01] At these words James also bowed down before the Infant and spoke to Him:
- 02] "Listen! My beloved Jesus, my gentle little brother, it is almost impossible to bear with you when You are this strict!
- 03] Don't You want to rebuke me also, just as You have rebuked mother Mary?
- 04] You can certainly do so; however, I will then also complain to You that You did not invite me to play, as I would have liked to be there with all my heart!"
- 05] The Infant said: "O do not worry that I will tell you anything;
- 06] for I am aware of your constant attentiveness towards Me!
- 07] Moreover, we often share the same fate, and you experience the same as I do!
- 08] See, when you often go out with Me and then return home with Me from somewhere, sometimes even from the city, when you have something to do there and then take Me along,
- 09] no one comes to meet us! We go away without further accompaniment, and when we return home, not a soul comes to receive us!
- 10] Just as we go out on our own, we also return on our own!
- 11] And on top of it, when we return fifteen minutes late now and then, we are properly rebuked for it.
- 12] And when we are at home, we may not move about too much if we want to avoid a scolding.
- 13] And although there is so much chatter about all sorts of things sometimes, say, are we ever a part of the interesting things that deserve a few words during the day?
- 14] However, when an acquaintance from the town contacts them and says: 'I will visit you on Monday',
- 15] our house looks forward to it already three days in advance and afterwards talks about it for another three days!
- 16] And when the friend comes, all come to meet him, and when he leaves, he is accompanied to his front door.
- 17] However, when we come and go, not even a cat stirs in this house!
- 18] But instead, when an eloquent city gossip comes here, the word is: 'James, be a good boy and go outside with the little One!'
- 19] And then we promptly go outside without accompaniment and may not return, until the gossipmonger decides to leave, again accompanied by the entire house!
- 20] Only when Cyrenius or Jonathan comes are we too given some acknowledgment, unless important considerations come in the way!
- 21] Therefore do not worry that I will say anything to you that could hurt you; for we are treated the same as far as respect and love are concerned!

22] When we do not stir or move about the whole day long, we are considered 'well-behaved'! – And being considered 'well-behaved' is then also our entire reward! – Are you satisfied with this? – I am not!"

23] As Joseph and Mary heard this, both were afraid. – The Infant soothed them and said: "Just change this a little in the future; let bygones be bygones!" – And James wept with great joy in his heart.

**CHAPTER 203. - JOSEPH'S CONFESSION TO THE INFANT. THE  
DISTINCTION BETWEEN MASKING AND BEING WISE. THE LORD KEEPS  
HIMSELF HIDDEN, SO THAT NO JUDGMENT IS BROUGHT UPON THE  
WORLD. THE INFANT'S WARNING TO MARY.**

**8 May 1844**

- 01] Hereupon Joseph called the Infant and spoke to Him:
- 02] "Now listen to me; what I tell you is not for Your sake, but for the sake of those who are present here!
- 03] For I know that you always see through my most secret thoughts, so I do not need to say anything to You; but those here should also know how I feel about You!
- 04] See, it is true that we were outwardly often lukewarm towards You;
- 05] but this indifference was only a mask of our inner respect and love for You, so that You do not become known to this terrible world!
- 06] Who knows the world better than You? – And so You will understand best that our previous outward behaviour towards You was necessary for Your safety.
- 07] So please forgive us the apparent coldness of our hearts that nevertheless always glowed like the red dawn upon seeing You!
- 08] From now on we will conduct ourselves as openly towards You as our inner urge will tell us!"
- 09] After this speech, the Infant said: "Joseph! – You have spoken the truth; but nevertheless there is still a major difference between a mask and wisdom.
- 10] The mask makes the heart cold; but wisdom warms it!
- 11] Why have a mask when wisdom suffices? Why pretend, when one's natural wisdom offers a thousand methods of safeguarding?
- 12] Am I not the Lord, whom the entire infinity must obey at My every gesture, as it is nothing more than a thought captured by Me and exists as a spoken word from My mouth?!
- 13] If I am the only true Lord, how can your emotional masking be more effective to guarantee My protection from the world than a whole world full of My eternal power?!
- 14] See, one breath from My mouth - and the entire visible creation is no more!
- 15] Do you really think that I need your emotional mask to look after Myself and you from the persecutions of the world?
- 16] O no, I do not need it! For I am not hiding Myself from the world for fear of the world,
- 17] but only to avoid a judgment being brought upon the world if it recognized Me in its wickedness.
- 18] Therefore from now on all of you should be wise for the sake of the world;
- 19] but keep the mask away from Me, for it is at best a descent into hell!
- 20] And you, Mary, return to your first love, otherwise you will have to experience deep sorrow in the future for treating Me so coldly by masking your heart because of the world!"
- 21] These words broke Mary's heart, and she seized the Infant with all the power of her

love, and pressed Him to her heart and caressed Him with the most fervent motherly love.

**CHAPTER 204. – MARY'S QUESTION ABOUT LOVE TO THE INFANT. THE  
DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE LOVE OF MAN AND THE LOVE OF GOD.  
"MY ANGER IN ITSELF REPRESENTS MORE LOVE THAN YOUR DEEPEST  
LOVE!" THE PARABLE OF THE KING AS SUITOR, REFERRING TO TULLIA  
AND THE INFANT JESUS.**

**9 May 1844**

- 01] After Mary hugged the Infant for a while, she asked Him very timorously:
- 02] "My Jesus, will You again love me, Your servant, just as Your servant will eternally love You?"
- 03] And the Infant smiled very tenderly at Mary and spoke: 04] "What a feeble question you pose to Me!
- 05] If I did not love you more than you love Me, well – truly, truly! – Would you even exist?
- 06] See, even if you love Me with the warmth of all the suns, such a love would be nothing compared to My love, with which I love the most wicked men even in My anger!
- 07] And My anger in itself is more love than your deepest love!
- 08] What is then My true love that I have for you?!
- 09] How could I have chosen you to be My birth mother, if I did not love you – more than can be grasped in all eternity?!
- 10] See, how feeble your question is! I tell you: Now go and bring Tullia;
- 11] for I have important things to discuss with her!"
- 12] Here Mary at once obeyed and went to fetch Cyrenius' wife.
- 13] As Tullia very timidly entered into the small room in which the Infant lay, the Infant raised Himself and spoke to Tullia:
- 14] "Tullia, you who are awakened, listen! – Once there was a great king who was unmarried and full of male beauty and true divine wisdom.
- 15] This king said to himself: 'I will go and look for a wife in a foreign place where nobody knows me;
- 16] for I want a wife who wants me for myself, and the wife should love me because I am a wise man – and not because I am a great king!'
- 17] And so he left his kingdom and went to a distant, strange land and came to a city, where he quickly got acquainted with the residents of one house.
- 18] The daughter was chosen, and this made her very happy; for she soon recognized great wisdom in the suitor.
- 19] The king thought to himself: 'You love me now, just because you see me and my personality and wisdom captivate you;
- 20] But I want to see if you truly love me! Therefore I will disguise myself as a beggar and will pester you often.
- 21] But you shall not know or find out in any way that it is me in a beggar's disguise.
- 22] The beggar shall carry a testimonial from me, as if he were my close friend, although



as destitute in this foreign place as his friend.

23] And this will show me whether this daughter truly loves me!

24] And the plan was executed just as the great king had worked it out.

25] After a while, when the king was supposed to be away on a journey, the beggar came to the daughter and spoke to her:

26] 'Dear daughter of this rich home, see, I am very poor and know that you possess great wealth!

27] I sat at the gate as your splendid bridegroom left you to go on a journey, and asked him for charity.

28] He stopped and spoke: 'Friend! I do not have anything here that I could give you besides this keepsake from my betrothed, who is very wealthy!

29] Go to her soon, and show her this in my name, and she will surely give you, just as she would give me, what you need!

30] And when I return as early as possible, I will recompense her for everything a thousandfold!

31] As the daughter heard this, she was full of joy and gave something to the beggar.

32] The beggar went but returned in a few days and announced himself to the daughter.

33] The daughter asked him to come another time, as she had visitors at that time.

34] The beggar came again another time and announced himself.

35] He was then told: 'The daughter has gone out with some friends!' – And the beggar returned in sadness.

36] As he came to the house door, the daughter, who was amongst her friends, met him but hardly paid attention to him.

37] He then said: 'Dear bride of my friend, how much do you love him that you do not listen to his friend?'

38] The daughter said: 'I need diversion; when your friend comes, I will surely love him again!'

39] Thereupon the beggar came again on the following day to the daughter and found her very cheerful; for she had rather lively company.

40] And the beggar asked her: 'Do you really love your bridegroom – and are you so happy, when he has gone for business for your sake?'

41] Hereupon the daughter threw the beggar out and spoke: 'That would be asking too much! – Is it not enough that I love him when he is here? Why should I love him when he is absent? – Who knows if he loves me!?''

42] At this, the beggar threw away his torn outer garment and spoke to the astonished daughter:

43] 'See, he who was supposed to be on a journey, was here all the time, so that he could learn about your love!

44] You, however, hardly thought about him, and he, who showed you the token of your vow, was rejected and derided, because you preferred the company of the world.

45] But see, that person is the same as the one who now stands before you, and who is the great king to whom the entire world belongs!

46] And this one now gives everything that you gave him, back to you a thousandfold; however, I will turn my back on you forever and you will never see my face again!

47] Tullia! – Do you know this king and this beggar? – See, I am He, and you are the daughter! – You will be happy in the world;

48] but what comes hereafter, is told in this parable!

49] I gave you life and great happiness, and you did not remember Me!

50] O you born-blind Roman! – I gave you light, and you did not recognize Me!

51] I gave you a man from heaven, and you wanted the affection he has for Me for yourself.

52] You were dead thereat; I brought you back to life, and in return you accepted the homage of the world and ignored me!

53] And now when I have called you, you tremble before me like an adulteress.

54] Tell me! What shall I do with you? 55] Should I continue to beg at your door?

56] No! – I will not do that; however, I will give you your share, and then we will be quits!" –

57] These words filled all in Joseph's house with dread.

58] The Infant, however, wanted to go outside with no one but His James and did not return before late evening.

**CHAPTER 205. – TULLIA'S COMPLAINT. MARY'S CONSOLING WORDS.  
TULLIA'S INTROSPECTION, REPENTANCE AND ATONEMENT. JESUS'  
FAVOURITE FOOD. THE OLD AND THE NEW TULLIA**

**11 May 1844**

01] Only after a while, Tullia recovered from the shock, whereupon she began to weep bitterly and said:

02] "O Lord, why was I once able to see in this house; why am I the wife of Cyrenius, that I now have to suffer so greatly in my supposed happiness?!"

03] Why did you wake up the dead, why did life return to my bosom?!

04] Have I been born only to suffer anguish? – Why me, while thousands and thousands live in peace and happiness and have almost no knowledge of the tears that are squeezed from the eyes in anguish! – ?"

05] Moved by compassion, Mary consoled Tullia with the following words:

06] "Tullia, you must not quarrel with the Lord, your and my God!

07] For look, it is just His way that He severely tests those He particularly loves!

08] Recognize this in your heart, and reawaken your love for Him anew, and He will immediately forget His threat and will receive you anew into His grace!

09] For He has quite often threatened malefactors and, through the prophets, has announced their destruction on the following day and indicated the place at which the dogs should lick up their blood.

10] But when the malefactors repented, He immediately spoke to the prophets: 'Do you not see, that he is doing penance? Therefore I will also not punish him!'

11] When Jonah was called by God to announce the destruction of the Ninevites who were lost in all kinds of sins,

12] he did not want to go there, for he spoke: 'Lord! I know, that You only seldom follow up on the threats that the prophet must make;

13] that is why I do not want to go there, so that I do not disgrace myself as a prophet, when You will surely show them mercy once again!'

14] See, even this prophet had well-founded doubts about God's anger!

15] I advise you: Do what the Ninevites did, and you will again be received into grace!"

16] These words instilled new courage in Tullia, and she began to reflect upon herself, and soon discovered several faults within herself and spoke:

17] "O Mary! Only now do I clearly see why the Lord is thus punishing me!

18] See, my heart is full of sins and full of impurity! – Oh – how shall I ever be able to purify it?!

19] How can I dare to love the Holy of all Holiness with such a highly impure heart?!"

20] And Mary spoke: "It is precisely because of this that you must love Him in your repentant acknowledgment of guilt; for such love alone will purify your heart before Him – the Holy of all Holiness!"

21] And as the Infant returned home late in the evening, He promptly went to Mary and asked for some food. And Mary at once gave Him some butter, bread and honey.

22] Hereupon He said: "I see another food, give Me some of this to eat also! – See, it is Tullia's heart; give it to Me, because you have already prepared it for Me!" – Here Tullia fell down before the Lord and wept.

23] Mary said: "O Lord! Have mercy upon the poor soul, who is suffering so greatly!"

24] And the Infant spoke: "I have already had mercy with her, otherwise I would never have awoken her!

25] It was she herself who took no notice of My mercy and preferred to quarrel with Me in her heart rather than receive Me into it.

26] However, as she has now turned her heart towards Me, I have done the same to her as I did to the Ninevites."

27] After these words the Infant went to Tullia and spoke to her:

28] "Tullia, see, I have now become quite tired. You have once carried Me in your arms, and it did Me good; for you had really soft arms!

29] So get up now also, and take Me in your arms, and feel how sweet it is to have the Lord of life in your arms!"

30] This demand of the Infant fully broke Tullia's heart.

31] With the greatest possible love in her heart she took the Infant in her soft arms and wept and spoke:

32] "O Lord! – How is it possible, that, after Your terrible threat, you are now so merciful towards me?!"

33] And the Infant said: "Because the earlier Tullia, who was repugnant to Me, has moved out and a newer Tullia, esteemed by me, has moved in! – But now be quiet; for now I indeed love you again!" – This scene moved everyone to tears.

**CHAPTER 206. - THE WEEPING TULLIA. A GOSPEL OF TEARS. THE LORD HAS PUT THREE TEARS INTO THE EYES OF MEN: THE TEARS OF JOY, THE TEARS OF PITY, AND THE TEARS THAT ARE CAUSED BY PAIN.**

**13 May 1844**

01] But the longer Tullia carried the little Child in her arms, the more she realized her life's mistakes and wept on account of them from time to time.

02] The Infant sat up and spoke to Tullia: "My dear Tullia! I am not very pleased with your habit of weeping all the time, even while carrying Me in your arms!

03] Be lively and cheerful now; for I take no pleasure in the unnecessary tears of men!

04] Do you perhaps think that your tears will cleanse your heart from all sins before Me?

05] O look, that is foolish! The tears glide over your cheeks and cloud your eyes, which is even harmful to you, –

06] however, the tears do not glide over your heart and also do not cleanse it, but often makes it closed instead, so that neither good nor evil can enter it!

07] And see, that also brings death to the spirit, which dwells in the heart!

08] For a sad person is always an offended person, and such a being is incapable of receiving anything.

09] I have only put three tears in the eyes of men, and these are: the tears of joy, the tears of pity and the tears that are caused by pain.

10] These are the only ones I like to see; but the tears of sorrow, the tears of repentance and the tears of anger that arise through self-pity, are the fruits of one's own ego and are of lesser importance to Me.

11] For the tears of sorrow spring from an offended spirit and demand compensation; if this does not come, then such a spirit can easily transform into secret anger and finally into a desire for revenge.

12] The tears of repentance have a similar origin and only appear after the sin, as long as the sin has drawn a beneficent punishment.

13] But then these are not tears because of the sin, but only tears on account of the punishment and therefore also because of the sin, since the sin was the cause of the punishment.

14] Even these tears do not reform the heart; for men do not avoid sin out of love for Me, but only because of the fear of punishment; and look, that is worse than the sin itself!

15] As far as the tears of anger are concerned, it is not worth My saying a word on this subject; for they are spring water from the foundations of hell!

16] These tears do not moisten the eyes; only the tears of repentance do this.

17] And I tell you: Keep your eyes dry also from these tears; for you see, that I do not take any pleasure in them!"

18] Here Tullia wiped the tears from her eyes and said: "O Lord! – How infinitely wise and good You are!

19] O how cheerful and happy I would be if I were not a sinner!

20] But while in Rome, I have worshipped an idol of the people at the emperor's behest,

and this deed gnaws at my heart like a worm!"

21] And the Infant said: "I have already forgiven you this sin, even before you committed it.

22] But you were jealous of Cyrenius' love for Me; – see, that was a grave sin! – However, I have now completely forgiven you, and you are free of sin, because you love Me again; so be cheerful and happy!"

23] Thereupon, Tullia and the all the others in Joseph's house were again full of good cheer, and all proceeded to have supper.

***CHAPTER 207. – THE INFANT'S SOOTHING WORDS BEFORE THE NIGHT OF THE STORM. EUDOKIA'S GREAT FEAR, AND IF YOU WERE AT THE END OF ALL THE WORLDS, I WOULD STILL BE ABLE TO PROTECT YOU!***

***14 May 1844***

01] After supper, Joseph blessed all the guests, and the Infant also blessed them and said:

02] "Now retire for the night; do not fear, when a little storm breaks over our house during the night;

03] for not a hair on anyone's head will be touched!

04] Remember that the Lord who is living among you is also a Lord of the storms!"

05] After these words, which caused concern among Cyrenius' crew, one of the sailors said:

06] "This Child is a real prophet, for he foretells a bad event!

07] Therefore – we should immediately go to where the ship is loosely tied, pull it in and moor it ashore as far as possible!?"

08] Then Jonathan got up and spoke: "Do not worry about this!

09] For firstly, the Lord will surely be able to protect the ship;

10] and secondly, I have people at home who have more know-how about securing a ship than you, and they will know how to secure the governor's ship. Therefore you can remain calm, along with me!"

11] Thus reassured everyone retired for the night.

12] Mary prepared a really soft bed for the Infant with clean sheets on it, put the Infant in it and placed the cot next to her bed.

13] Mary and Eudokia usually slept in one bed, and they also did this now.

14] But Eudokia, having a great fear of the predicted storm, said to Mary:

15] "Mary, look, I have a great fear of the certainly impending storm!

16] How would it be if we kept the Infant between us tonight? 17] This would certainly keep us safe from all danger!"

18] As the Infant heard Eudokia's concern, He smiled and hereupon said:

19] "O Eudokia! Sometimes you are pretty clever, but then sometimes you are as dumb as a brick!

20] Do you really think that I can only protect you when I am in your lap?!

21] O you are greatly in error! – See, My arm is longer than you think!

22] And even if you were at the end of all the worlds, I would still be able to protect you as well as I can protect you here!

23] Therefore remain calm, and go to sleep as usual, and you will get up healthy tomorrow!" – This soothed Eudokia, and she, together with Mary, immediately lay down to sleep.

***CHAPTER 208. - THE TERROR OF THE NOCTURNAL HURRICANE. THE  
WILD ANIMALS. JOSEPH'S CURSE OVER THE STORM. THE INFANT'S  
REPRIMAND. THE END OF THE STORM.***

***15 May 1844***

- 01] After two hours, when all were asleep, the house was hit by such a powerful hurricane that it shook.
- 02] All who were asleep were awakened by this resounding blast.
- 03] And as the hurricane continued to rage and was accompanied by a thousand bolts of lightning and powerful thunder,
- 04] everyone in Joseph's house began to tremble and quiver.
- 05] The hurricane's rage was accompanied by the howling of a large number of wild and ferocious animals, which further heightened the fear of the guests in Joseph's house.
- 06] Everyone now began to enter the chamber of Joseph, Cyrenius and Jonathan, to seek protection there.
- 07] Joseph, however, got up and illuminated the room and, as best as he could, comforted those who were fearful.
- 08] The giant Jonathan and Cyrenius did likewise.
- 09] But as the storm continued to gain in strength, the comforting efforts of the three men did not help much; in particular, most of the inmates were mortally afraid when some tigers began to thrust their paws through the barred windows, while howling eerily.
- 10] As all this began to be too much even for Joseph, he became agitated and addressed the storm:
- 11] "Fall silent, you monster, in the name of Him, who lives here, a Lord of infinity,
- 12] and never terrify those who need peace and quiet at night! So be it!"
- 13] Joseph uttered these words with such force that all were even more terrified by this than by the raging of the hurricane.
- 14] However, Joseph's words were totally ineffectual, which agitated him even more and he threatened the storm still more severely.
- 15] But even this remained unsuccessful, and the hurricane mocked Joseph.
- 16] Here Joseph became angry at the insubordinate hurricane and he cursed it.
- 17] At this moment the Infant awoke and said to James, who was near the cot:
- 18] "James, go to Joseph and tell him to revoke his curse; for he has cursed that what he does not know!
- 19] However, he will see and recognize the reason for this storm tomorrow; in any case, it will be over in a few minutes."
- 20] Hereupon James at once went to Joseph and conveyed the Infant's words to him.
- 21] Then Joseph plucked up courage, did as James had advised him, and the storm soon ceased; the wild beasts disappeared, and all in Joseph's house went back to sleep. —



## ***CHAPTER 209. – THE BOON AND PURPOSE OF THE NOCTURNAL STORM: THE ANNIHILATION OF THE ROBBERS.***

***17 May 1844***

01] On the following morning, Joseph got up very early as usual and distributed the day's work among his four sons.

02] Their first task was to prepare a good breakfast, and then whatever other duties required to be performed on that day.

03] After distributing the work, he went out and checked the damage caused by the nocturnal storm.

04] As he went back and forth, he soon found a mass of gnawed human bones

05] and came across many places that were stained with human blood.

06] He was greatly horrified by the sight of it and could not comprehend this mystery.

07] As he went onwards he also found a number of daggers and small lances, often stained with blood.

08] At this sight, a new perspective began to dawn on him, and he gradually began to understand the beneficent purpose of the hurricane that caused the animals to appear.

09] Thereupon Joseph quickly went to his four sons and notified them of all this and instructed three of them to collect the bones and the weapons.

10] In one-and-a-half hours there was a huge pile of bones under a tree and, next to it, there was another pile of bloodstained weapons.

11] Only after breakfast did Joseph lead Cyrenius and Jonathan out and showed them the morning's strange find.

12] As Cyrenius saw this, he threw his hands up and spoke: 13] "But for the almighty Lord's sake, – what is this?!"

14] Where do these dead bodies come from, and where do these weapons, dripping with fresh blood, come from?

15] Joseph, brother, friend! Have you no idea that could suggest the reason for this horror?"

16] And Joseph spoke: "Friend and brother, these were either pirates or rebels who pursued your ship!"

17] However, let us first destroy all of this with fire;

18] and only then should we endeavour to get to the bottom of the matter!"

19] Cyrenius was content with this, and all his people were sent to gather wood from all directions.

20] And when around noon a suitably large pile of wood was collected in an open space, the dead bodies, together with the weapons, were thrown onto the great mound of wood and incinerated.

**CHAPTER 210. - THE INFANT'S TRIPLE CIRCUMVENTION OF THE FIRE  
AND HIS PROPHETIC WORDS TO CYRENIUS: 'THE LORD WILL  
CIRCUMVENT THE FIRES OF THE WORLD THRICE, AND NOBODY WILL  
ASK HIM: 'LORD! WHAT ARE YOU DOING?' AND ONLY WHEN HE WILL  
GO AROUND THE THIRD TIME, WILL THE LAST FLASH OF ANGER BE  
TAKEN FROM THE EARTH!'**

**18 May 1844**

01] Only after everything was incinerated in the course of several hours, an event which, in accordance with the Lord's wishes, went unnoticed by all the other guests except Cyrenius' servants,

02] Tullia, Maronius Pilla and the commander and the centurions, together with Mary and James, who led the Infant, went outside the house for the first time on this day.

03] And Maronius Pilla, who had a very keen sense of smell, at once detected a burning smell,

04] and he went to Joseph and said: "Most noble friend, do you not detect the smell of a wildfire?"

05] And Joseph led him to a place just behind the house and pointed out the scene of the fire with his finger.

06] And Maronius asked what was consigned to the flames.

07] And Joseph spoke: "Friend! The objects were consigned to the flames, precisely so that the eyes of the world do not fall on them!

08] However, Cyrenius knows everything; therefore turn to him, and he will tell you what happened; for he witnessed everything!"

09] With this, Maronius, and some of the other inquisitive people around, were to be satisfied.

10] The Infant then requested to go with Joseph, Cyrenius, Jonathan and His James to the scene of the fire, which was still giving off smoke here and there.

11] When they arrived there, the Infant ran three times around the large and conspicuous fire area, took a half-burnt dagger and gave it to Cyrenius, and spoke:

12] "Cyrenius, see, now your enemies have been vanquished, and their steadfastness has burnt to ashes.

13] Here is the last hostile remnant in My hand, and it has become ineffectual!

14] I hand it over to you as a token that you shall not take revenge against those who were against you – and the few who still are!

15] For your anger and the anger in your enemies shall become as useless and slagged as this dagger here!

16] These enemies of yours started from Tyre and wanted to destroy you here.

17] However, I knew of the day and the hour and the moment you were in danger.

18] That is why I let a storm rage during this night at the right time, which drove out the ferocious animals from the mountains

19] and caused great terror, so that the rebels were helpless when the wild beasts attacked them.

20] And look, that is just what will happen in the future: An enormous fire from above will come over the dead bodies of the evil-doers and will consume them until they are dust and ashes!

21] Then the Lord will go thrice around the fires of the world, and nobody will ask Him, 'Lord! What are You doing?'

22] And only when He will go around the third time will the last flash of anger be taken from the earth!" – – –

23] This speech surprised everyone; for none of them understood its meaning. – –

**CHAPTER 211. - JOSEPH'S QUESTION AND THE INFANT'S COMFORTING  
RESPONSE. THE INFANT'S GREAT HUNGER, THE FISH MEAL  
CYRENIUS' QUESTION REGARDING THE MEDITERRANEAN.**

**20 May 1844**

01] After a while, Joseph went to the Infant and asked Him the meaning of what He had said.

02] And the Infant spoke: "Joseph, your investigation is futile!

03] For there are many things that will not be revealed to you as long as you live on the earth.

04] However, he who after his life enters into My kingdom spiritually will be enlightened!

05] Therefore do not ask here about matters that do not concern you now!

06] Let earth be brought now to cover this fire area!"

07] And Joseph turned to Cyrenius, who at once ordered his people to bring earth and cover the area with it.

08] By the time this work was finished, it had become noon, and Joseph's sons had prepared the midday meal and kept it in readiness for the many guests.

09] And the Infant Himself spoke to Joseph: "Dear Joseph! I am rather hungry; three large fishes have been fried, therefore let us eat!"

10] Joseph spoke: "That is quite commendable; but – will the fish suffice for more than a hundred persons?!"

11] And the Infant replied: "But of course! You have seen the large fish; how can you ask such a question?

12] Each fish is a good one hundred pounds; they would in fact suffice for two hundred persons!

13] Therefore let us now go home; for I am already very hungry – and particularly for the good fish from the Mediterranean!"

14] And Joseph immediately called everyone to have the midday meal and proceeded to the villa.

15] On the way, Cyrenius asked the lovely Infant, whether this sea was really a mediterranean sea (mare mediterraneum).

16] And the Infant said: "Whether or not it is right – I must talk to you in your way, so that I can be understood by you!

17] After the meal, you can look it up on the little globe, and you will find whether this term is appropriate!"

18] Thereupon the Infant went ahead with His James, so that He could be at the table soon.

19] And as Joseph came, the Infant smiled at Him across the table, while holding a small piece of fish in His hand.

20] Joseph was very pleased with this in private; but his sense of propriety prompted him to say:

21] "Oh – my dearest Infant, such a big piece! – Will you be able to eat it all?"

22] And the Infant smiled even more and spoke: "Worry about other things; for your fathers have already ensured that My stomach is not easily harmed, – for they have often given Me the worst and largest chunks of food." – Here Joseph well understood the meaning of the Infant's words.

***CHAPTER 212. - THE PUNISHMENT FOR JAMES AND THE INFANT TO  
FAST BECAUSE OF FORGETTING TO SAY GRACE. THE INFANT'S  
QUESTION TO JOSEPH, AS TO WHY AND TO WHOM HE SHOULD PRAY.  
THE CHILD JESUS HURRIES OUT WITH HIS JAMES AND DOES NOT LET  
HIMSELF BE HELD BACK***

***21 May 1844***

- 01] Thereupon Joseph began his usual grace and blessed the food –
- 02] and then asked the Infant, whether He had already prayed. 03] The Infant smiled again and said to James:
- 04] "Well, we are in trouble now! We both have forgotten the prayers of invocation and thanksgiving and have nevertheless partaken of the fish!
- 05] Now say something, to the best of your ability, otherwise we are in for another punishment and may have to go on a little fast!"
- 06] And James, somewhat embarrassed, said: "Dear father Joseph, I ask for your forgiveness; for this time I, together with my Jesus, really forgot to pray!"
- 07] As Joseph heard this from James, he looked stern and said:
- 08] "If you have forgotten to pray, then you can also forget to eat until this evening, and in the meantime, you can go for a little stroll outside!"
- 09] And the Infant smiled to James here and spoke: "Now we really have it! Did I not tell you just now that we will have to fast?!"
- 10] But just wait a little; I want to first say a few words to Joseph!
- 11] Perhaps he may relent a bit with regard to the fast until evening."
- 12] And James spoke in private: "Lord! Do whatever appears best to You, and I will follow Your example."
- 13] And the Infant asked Joseph, saying: "Joseph! Are you really serious about this?!"
- 14] And Joseph spoke: "Yes – of course; for whoever does not pray shall not eat either!"
- 15] And the Infant smiled once again and said: "Now, this is what I call strict!
- 16] Look, if I were as strict, as you are now, then a great many who are eating today but did not pray would have to fast as a penance!
- 17] I want to hear once more from you, why and to whom I am supposed to pray?!"
- 18] And then I want to also hear from you as to whom you actually pray in your prayers and to whom poor James was supposed to pray? –!"
- 19] And Joseph said: "You must pray to the Lord God, Your holy father, because He is holy, most holy!"
- 20] And the Infant spoke: "You are undoubtedly right;
- 21] however, what is decisive in this matter is that you do not know the Most Holy Father to whom you pray!
- 22] And you will not recognize this Father, because your old habitual blindness prevents you from recognizing Him!"

23] Thereupon the Infant spoke to James: "Let us go outside, and you will see that one can get something to eat outside even without prayer!"

24] Then the Infant went out with His James and did not allow Himself to be held back.

## ***CHAPTER 213. – THE REBUKES BY MARY AND CYRENIUS ARE TAKEN TO HEART BY JOSEPH. HE GOES OUT AND CALLS AFTER THE INFANT.***

**22 May 1844**

01] As the Infant and James were outside, Mary said to Joseph:

02] "Listen, my dear husband and father Joseph! Sometimes you are a little too strict with the divine Child!

03] What else can you expect from a natural human child of two years and four months?

04] Who would subject him to such strict discipline?

05] You, however, are extremely strict with the Child of all children, as if he were, heaven knows, of a mature age!

06] See, that appears to me to be most unreasonable! – Even if you love Him exceedingly now and then, you are nevertheless sometimes so strict with Him, as if you had no love for Him!"

07] Cyrenius, Jonathan, Tullia, Eudokia and Maronius Pilla immediately concurred with Mary's sentiments.

08] And Cyrenius also said separately to Joseph: "Friend! I really cannot understand you sometimes!

09] One time you teach me to recognize God, the Supreme Being, in the Infant Himself, –

10] shortly afterwards you expect the Infant to pray to a God!

11] Tell me, does this make any sense? – If the Infant is the Divine entity Himself, how can He then pray to a God? – Does such a demand not appear a little absurd to you?

12] And in the case that the Infant were not that Being whom I now undoubtedly recognize and worship at all times,

13] then, according to me, a true children's friend, your request seems a little foolish to me;

14] for who can expect an austere prayer from a Child two years and four months old?

15] Therefore you must see my point when I, a gentile, tell you:

16] Friend, you must be struck by threefold blindness, if you are not able to respect the Infant for His real worth! –

17] Indeed, this time I too will not eat even one morsel if the Infant with His James are not here next to me!

18] Is it not ridiculous, that you supplicate the Lord God to bless the food and then demand that the same Lord God leaves the table because He has not prayed according to your habitual way?!

19] That is certainly why the Infant asked you, as to whom He should actually pray, and to whom you pray, and also to whom James should pray.

20] In my opinion, you have not realized what the Infant wanted to tell you therewith!"

21] Joseph took these most convincing remarks very much to heart, and he went out to fetch the Infant as well as James.

22] However, he called after James and the Infant in vain, for both of them had quickly gone away; but to where – nobody knew.



**CHAPTER 214. - JOSEPH'S SONS GO IN SEARCH OF THE INFANT. THE SECRET VOICES AND THEIR CONSOLING WORDS TO JOSEPH. JOSEPH FOLLOWS THE APPROACHING INFANT TO THE SUMMIT OF THE MOUNTAIN. A CROSSBEAM MADE OF CEDAR AS A TABLE FOR THE LORD, SET WITH LAMB, WINE AND BREAD. THE MEAL AT THE LORD'S TABLE. - "THE TRUE PRAYER IS THE LOVE FOR ME!"**

**23 May 1844**

01] Hereupon Joseph became afraid, so he called the four eldest sons at once and said to them:

02] "Go and help me search for the Infant and James; for I have sinned against the Infant, and I am extremely frightened!"

03] And the four sons hastily went out in all directions and searched for the Infant for one hour, but they could not find Him anywhere and returned home empty-handed.

04] As Joseph saw that the four sons returned home unaccompanied, he was so full of anguish that he went far away from the villa and wept bitterly over his supposed offence against the Child.

05] As he wept, he heard a voice speaking to Him:

06] "Joseph! Righteous man, do not weep, and do not allow people to disturb your spirit!

07] For I, whom you now seek in fear and in a highly uneasy spirit, am closer to you than you think.

08] Continue in the direction you are facing, and your eyes will see He whom you seek, and who is now speaking to you!"

09] On hearing these wonderful words, Joseph got up comforted and hastily went onward along a country lane for half an hour in the direction he was facing.

10] And he came upon a prominent hill that was one hundred and seventy fathoms in height.

11] He then thought and spoke to himself: "Should I also climb this hill in this intense heat?"

12] And the voice spoke again: "Yes, you must also climb this hill, and only when you are at the summit will you see the Lord whom you did not see, when He sat next to you at the table!"

13] As Joseph heard this, he disregarded the intense heat and hastily climbed the hill.

14] And as he came to the summit, he found it covered in thick fog and was very surprised to see fog during this season on such a small hill; for it was around Easter.

15] And as he was wondering about it, James and the Infant soon appeared out of the fog, and the Infant said:

16] "Joseph! Do not be afraid, and come with happy spirits with Me to the summit of the hill,

17] and there convince yourself that the time has not yet come, in which the Lord should fast because He did not pray!

18] A time will indeed come in which the Lord will fast, but that is still come. – And so follow Me!"

19] And Joseph followed the Infant and soon reached the summit.

20] When he reached the summit, the fog receded, and he saw roasted lamb, a goblet full of delicious wine and a loaf of the finest wheat bread on a finely-polished crossbeam made of cedar.

21] At this Joseph was astonished and spoke: "But from where have you taken all this? – Have the angels brought them to you, or have You, o Lord, created them?"

22] And the Infant looked at the sun and spoke: "Joseph, see, even this luminary of the earth boards at My table!

23] And I tell you: it needs more in one hour than this vast earth, that carries you, amounts to, and see, it has never suffered from hunger and thirst! – And I have innumerable boards of this type and also infinitely greater!

24] Do you suppose then that I would fast, when you send Me away from the table because I do not want to pray like you do at an inopportune time?

25] O look, that is unnecessary for the Lord! – Come now to My table and dine with Me; but this time without the habitual prayer!

26] For the true prayer is love towards Me; if you have this, then you can, at all times, save yourself the trouble of moving your lips!" – And Joseph went there and ate and drank at the real table of the Lord and found the food having a most heavenly taste.

## ***CHAPTER 215. – THE CROSS-BEARING JOSEPH. THE INFANT'S GOSPEL OF THE CROSS.***

**24 May 1844**

01] After this heavenly meal on the small hill, Joseph said to the Infant:

02] "My Lord and my God! I, a poor old man, entreat you to forgive me for having offended You for sure, and to return home with me!

03] For I can never return without You; if I should return without You, then all will turn bitterly against me and will punish me with harsh words!"

04] And the Infant spoke: "Yes, yes, I will indeed come with you; for I do not intend to set up residence and remain here!

05] However, there is one thing I demand of you, which is that you take My table on your shoulders and carry it home ahead of Me!

06] Do not be afraid of its weight; for although it will press you a little, it will not bend you nor exhaust you in the least!"

07] At these words, Joseph took the beautiful cross and James took the leftovers of the meal and set off for the return journey, with the Infant in the middle.

08] After a while, Joseph spoke to the Infant: "Listen, my most beloved Jesus! The cross is indeed rather heavy, – may we not rest awhile?"

09] And the Infant spoke: "Joseph, you have carried heavier burdens as a carpenter, which were not imposed on you by Me;

10] and look, you then did not allow yourself to rest until you had carried the loads to its destination!

11] You are now carrying just a small burden for Me for the first time and you want to take a break already after a thousand paces!?

12] O Joseph! – Carry, carry My light burden without taking a rest, and you will find just reward in My kingdom one day!

13] See, on this cross you will be aware of My burden, and its slight pressure will tell you what I am to you in the world!

14] But if you would leave this world in My arms, then this cross will become a fiery chariot of Elijah, in which you would blissfully ascend before Me!"

15] After these words, the elderly Joseph kissed the rather heavy cross and continued to carry it without stopping on the way;

16] and he did not seem nearly as heavy to him anymore, so he brought it to the villa with ease.

17] All in the villa were waiting in tense anticipation, and full of great anxiety as to from where Joseph, together with the Infant and James, would return.

18] But when Mary, Cyrenius and the others finally saw all three approaching, they were beside themselves!

19] Everyone ran towards them with open arms, and Mary at once seized the Infant and hugged Him with unrestrained love.

20] Cyrenius, however, wondered how Joseph could drag home a gallows, a symbol of the uttermost disgrace and humiliation, on his shoulders.

21] And the Infant raised Himself in the arms of the mother and said to Cyrenius:

22] "Truly, truly! – This symbol of the greatest shame will become the symbol of the greatest glory!

23] If you do not carry it after Me, as Joseph is now doing, you will not enter My kingdom hereafter!" – These words caused Cyrenius to remain silent, and he did not ask further questions about Joseph's burden.

**CHAPTER 216. – COLD FISH WITH OIL AND LEMON JUICE. THE REASON FOR THE MOSAIC DIETARY LAWS. "NOW AND FOR EVERMORE IT WILL BE SAID: THE LORD IS THE BEST COOK!"**

**25 May 1844**

01] Thereupon all returned to the house and went to the table, according to the Infant's will.

02] For none of the principal guests had eaten even one morsel of food; the three large fish lay there practically untouched.

03] However, as several hours were spent in the search for the Infant and it was almost evening,

04] the fish had naturally become cold, in which condition the Jews were usually not permitted to eat them.

05] But as the sun had not yet set, the fish could still be eaten; they were however required to be brought to the fire again to be warmed up.

06] Therefore Joseph called his four cooks and ordered them to roast the fish again.

07] The Infant spoke: "Joseph, do not bother with this work; because from now on, fish can be also eaten cold if they have been previously roasted!"

08] Instead of roasting again, let lemons and good oil be brought,

09] and these fish will taste even better than if they were roasted again!"

10] Joseph followed the Infant's suggestion and had a full basket of lemons and a large pitcher of fresh oil brought in.

11] And all the guests were greedy to taste this new food.

12] Cyrenius was the first to take a rather large piece of fish and he put oil and lemon juice on it.

13] And as he began to eat, he could not give enough praise to the tastiness of the fish prepared in this way.

14] The governor's experience induced even the other guests to help themselves, and all found the food so delicious that they were utterly amazed.

15] As Joseph himself had sampled a rather large piece of fish, he said:

16] "Indeed! If Moses had ever tasted a fish prepared in this way he would surely have included it in his diet!"

17] However, he must have not been as well versed in kitchen matters as You, my most beloved Jesus!"

18] Here the Infant smiled very warmly and spoke most affably:

19] "My dear father Joseph, the reason is due to the following:

20] Under Moses in the desert it was said: Hunger is the best cook! – And the people would have often eaten raw meat in their hunger, much to their ruin;

21] hence Moses stipulated such a diet, and the food had to be consumed fresh and warm.

Now and for evermore it will be said: The Lord is the best cook! – And so one can also

enjoy cold fish with lemon and oil.

23] And that is so because the cold but nevertheless well- roasted fish represents the state of the gentiles, the lemon juice represents the power from Me that unifies and pulls them together, and the oil represents My words to them. – Do you now understand why the fish tastes better?" – These words moved everyone to tears and they all greatly marvelled at the Infant's wisdom.

## ***CHAPTER 217. – WHY THE MIDDLE SEA CAN BE RIGHTLY CALLED THE "MEDITERRANEAN". "... FOR THE TRUE CENTRE IS THERE, WHERE THE LORD IS!"***

***28 May 1844***

01] As all had eaten their fill of the cold fish, they got up, thanked Joseph for this good meal and then went outside; for the sun had not yet fully set.

02] When most of the guests from Cyrenius' entourage were outside, the Infant spoke to him:

03] "Cyrenius! – Do you not remember anymore, what you asked Me outside at the scene of the fire, when I praised the fish of the Mediterranean as being good and delicious?"

04] Cyrenius thought about it a little, but did not recall his question.

05] He therefore spoke to the Infant: "O You my Lord, my Life! – Forgive me, for I must confess that I have completely forgotten it!"

06] Here the Infant smiled again and most kindly said to the somewhat embarrassed Cyrenius:

07] "Did you not ask, whether the Mediterranean is really at the centre of the earth?"

08] I advised you to look this up on the small globe, so that you convince yourself whether this sea is really at the centre of the earth.

09] Look, now is the best possible time to settle this matter!

10] Therefore hold the small globe and get the answer to your question!"

11] And Cyrenius spoke: "Yes – on my poor soul, I would have completely forgotten this, if You, o Lord, had not reminded me of it!"

12] Here James immediately jumped up and brought the small globe to Cyrenius.

13] Cyrenius then searched for the Mediterranean and soon found it.

14] As he indicated the Mediterranean with his finger, the Infant asked him:

15] "Cyrenius, is that really at the centre of the earth? – Or how do you see the matter?"

16] And Cyrenius spoke: "I am quite proficient at figures according to Euclid and Ptolemy (Lagus king in Egypt)

17] and therefore know from planimetry, that on the surface of the globe, any given point can be the centre of the surface, for firstly, it is exactly as far from the central point of the globe as every other point,

18] and because all the outgoing lines up to its antipode are of the same curvature and length.

19] According to this axiom, this sea can be called the Mediterranean.

20] However, I also find, that every sea exists under the same conditions and can be called Mediterranean just as well."

21] And the Infant spoke: "You are undoubtedly right; but nevertheless, the Euclidean principles do not apply here,

22] and this sea still cannot not be exclusively called the Mediterranean,

23] for the true centre is there, where the Lord is!"

24] See, the Lord is now at this sea, and therefore the middle of the sea is also here!

25] See, this is another calculation, which Euclid could not have even dreamt of, and it is more correct than his!"

26] This explanation sparked Cyrenius' interest strongly, and he continued to study it.



**CHAPTER 218. – ALL THAT IS, HAS ITS DIVINELY-ORDAINED TIME  
AND ORDER. TIME AND ETERNITY. FROM FUTILE RESEARCH INTO  
DIVINE DEPTHS AND FROM CHILDLIKE SIMPLICITY AS THE PATH  
TOWARDS TRUE WISDOM.**

**29 May 1844**

01] The Infant remarked to Cyrenius, who had begun to get involved in further studies of the globe:

02] "Cyrenius, you are making further investigations in vain. I gave you a finger and you immediately want the whole hand!

03] Look, that is not possible; for everything has its time and its fixed and unchangeable order!

04] If you see a tree in bloom, you surely also want the ripe fruit.

05] But see, this is not possible; for every tree has its own time and order!

06] However, the time and the order is from Me from eternity, and I cannot go against Myself;

07] and nothing can be taken away from time and from order!

08] Although I really love you with all the fullness of My divine power, I cannot give you even a minute of transient time;

09] for this must continue to flow as a river and is unstoppable and has no rest, until it has reached the great shore of the unchangeable eternity!

10] Therefore your further investigation into My depths is somewhat futile.

11] For until the time is right, you will not come closer to My depths even by a hair's breadth through such methods!

12] Hence desist from such investigations, and do not exert your mind uselessly; for at the right time, all will be freely yours from Me!

13] You now want to comprehend in depth, as to why the centre is where I am?!

14] However, I say to you: You cannot understand such things now; therefore you should, for the time being, have faith, and prove the true humility of your spirit by this faith.

15] Only when your spirit has first reached the proper depths through true humility, you will, from this depth, get a clear insight into My depths.

16] But if you want to raise your spirit through inquiries, then it will increasingly forsake its living depths, and you will thereby distance yourself from My depths instead of coming nearer to them!

17] Yes – I also tell you: From now on, all deep wisdom will be concealed from the wise persons of the world;

18] but it will be put in the hearts of those who are simple- minded, the weak children and orphans!

19] Therefore become like a child in spirit, and then it will be the right time for you to receive the right wisdom!"

20] Cyrenius was greatly astonished at this doctrine and then asked the Infant, saying:

21] "Yes – if that is the case, then no man should ever learn to read or write!?"

22] For if You freely give all this to those who are worthy of it, then why should one take the trouble of laborious studies?"

23] And the Infant spoke: "The field of wisdom is fertilized through right and humble study, and that is also according to My order.

24] However, you must not regard study as a purpose for wisdom, but only as a means!

25] When the field is fertilized, then I will scatter the seeds; only then can the right wisdom germinate! Do you understand this?" – Here Cyrenius remained silent and did not probe further. –

## ***CHAPTER 219. - THE IMPOSED CROSS AS AN EXPRESSION OF GOD'S LOVE TO MANKIND.***

**30 MAY 1844**

- 01] After this highly instructive talk of the Infant with Cyrenius, Joseph turned to the Infant and asked Him what should happen to the cross he brought home.
- 02] And the Infant spoke: "Joseph! – I tell you, it has already found its man and its place!
- 03] Even you tell a merchant: 'You have a good product, and you will not possess it for long;
- 04] for it will soon find a buyer willing to purchase it somewhere!'
- 05] And see, I am also such a merchant! – I have brought a good product for public sale.
- 06] And it has already found a buyer and got itself sold through its love for Me;
- [219.07] and the buyer is Jonathan, the strong fisherman!
- 08] Should he not get anything for the many fish he has so often and so abundantly supplied us with?!
- 09] One hand washes the other. Whoever offers water shall also be offered water.
- 10] Whoever offers oil shall also be offered oil.
- 11] Whoever offers comfort shall also be eternally comforted. 12] Whoever offers love shall also be repaid with love.
- 13] Jonathan has given Me all his love; so I gave him also My love in this cross!
- 14] You too have offered Me love in the water and oil;
- 15] but I say to you: pure love is nevertheless more precious to Me than that with water and oil!
- 16] The cross has now become My pure love!
- 17] Therefore I give it to Jonathan, because he has pure love for Me;
- 18] for he loves Me for Myself alone, and that is pure love!
- 19] He loved Me, without knowing who I am; you however loved Me less, although you knew exactly Who I am.
- 20] And see, that was love diluted with quite a lot of water! – Therefore you shall never suffer water scarcity in this world, namely in your eyes.
- 21] Cyrenius loved Me with oil; therefore he shall be hereafter anointed with the oil of life, just as you are imbued with the water of life.
- 22] However, only those who love Me purely shall live hereafter in My chamber!"
- 23] This speech of the Infant caused great fear in Joseph, and even Cyrenius was very surprised.
- 24] The Infant spoke: "But on that account you should not believe that I will withhold the cross from you, – for whoever has a free heart will also be handed down a free cross!" – This announcement again soothed Joseph's and Cyrenius' spirit.

**CHAPTER 220. – JONATHAN'S TEARS AND HOLY LOVE FOR THE LORD.  
EVERY MAN WILL BE CONSECRATED AND BE NEW-BORN THROUGH  
THE LOVE FOR GOD IN HIS HEART. FOR: "IS THE LOVE FOR ME NOT  
SACRED IN ITSELF, JUST AS I MYSELF AM IN MY DIVINITY?"**

**31 May 1844**

01] At this speech of the Infant, Jonathan, full of fervent love, fell down before the Infant and wept in great joy and gratitude.

02] The Infant spoke to the others: "Do you see how powerful Jonathan's love for Me is? –

03] Truly I say to you, for every tear that springs from his eyes, there shall be a world for him in My kingdom!

04] I have already pointed out to you the value of and the difference between the types of tears; however, I once again tell you:

05] For Me, no tear is greater than that which equals Jonathan's!"

06] At these words of the Infant, the giant Jonathan plucked up courage and said:

07] "O almighty Lord of my Life! How can I – a great sinner

30 be worthy of such infinite mercy and compassion from You?!"

08] The Infant said: "Jonathan, just ask yourself how you can love Me so deeply in your heart, if you are such a great sinner?"

[220.09] Is the love for Me not sacred in itself, just as I myself am in My divinity?

10] How could you bear such holy love in your heart if you were indeed such a great sinner?

11] Is not every man consecrated and new-born through his love for God in his heart?

12] If you are full of this love, say, what is there within yourself that you call sin?

13] See, every man's flesh is a sin in itself; therefore, every man's flesh must die!

14] Yes, I say to you, even the flesh of My body is under the wages of sin and therefore it will also die, just as yours will!

15] However, this sin is not voluntary, but only one under judgment and forms no debt whatsoever for your independent spirit.

16] Therefore your worth is determined not according to your flesh but solely according to your independent love.

17] And hereafter it will not be: How was your body, but – how was your love?!

18] See, when you toss up a stone, it does not remain at the top but soon falls down again on the earth.

19] Why so? – Because the earth's matter, which is in itself full of love, attracts it as a love under judgment.

20] Why then do clouds and stars not fall from the sky? – See, this is because they are attracted by the love of heaven!

21] Now, if your heart is full of love for the eternally living God, what then will this independent and living love draw you to?"

22] This final question filled all present with the highest bliss and they now knew where they stood. — —

## ***CHAPTER 221. – A REMEDY FOR THE PLAGUE OF INSECTS. A COMET.***

***1 JUNE 1844***

01] After things had thus been explained to Jonathan and all the others present, Joseph said:

02] "Friends, the evening is beautiful; how would it be if we would spend an hour outside before we retire for the night?

03] For here in the rooms it is extremely stifling;

04] and if one goes to bed in such stifling heat, then one can neither sleep nor rest!"

05] And the Infant spoke: "Joseph, I agree with you; however, if only so many bothersome insects were not flying about, it would be even more pleasant to be outside in the evenings!"

06] And Joseph said: "Yes, You my Life, you are quite right!

07] If only we had a remedy to get rid of these annoying visitors without opposing Your order, that would be most desirable!"

08] And the Infant said: "Oh, no doubt, such a remedy will be found soon!

09] Go and take a full bowl of warm cow's milk and place it outside, and you will see how these several thousand bothersome little visitors will besiege the bowl – and will leave us in peace!"

10] Joseph instantly ordered his sons to place a bowl of warm milk outside.

11] And Joseph's sons did as Joseph had instructed them to do.

12] And as the bowl of warm milk was put outside, one could see, in the dim twilight, an immense swarm of all kinds of stinging insects over the milk bowl.

13] And all marvelled at this invention, through which millions of flies and mosquitoes converged together towards one point and waged a veritable milk war.

14] And Cyrenius said: "See, how easy and effective this device is!

15] A barely noticeable bowl of warm milk relieves us of the annoying insect plague!

16] Indeed, this should be implemented in Tyre immediately!

17] For also there, millions of such insects harass the people in the evenings."

18] And the Infant spoke: "Although the method is quite good, it cannot be successfully applied everywhere;

19] for the conditions are not the same everywhere, –

20] and the present conditions here will rarely be found anywhere else!

21] Hence this method works so admirably only here. This method will not be effective in places where these conditions are not present.

22] But look up to the sky and you will discover a comet!" – Here Cyrenius looked upwards and at once saw a large comet.

## ***CHAPTER 222 - A DISCUSSION ABOUT COMETS AS HARBINGERS OF MISFORTUNE AND WAR***

***3 JUNE 1844***

01] After Cyrenius carefully observed the large comet, he spoke:

02] "Indeed, a strange star! – It is the first one I have seen;

03] however, I have often heard of these mythical bearers of bad tidings in the sky."

04] At this remark of Cyrenius, even Maronius Pilla came over and said:

05] "Just look over there! The temple of Janus has been closed for barely seven years, and all said:

06] 'Now Rome will attain everlasting peace!', for this temple had never been closed for such a long time in the past!

07] Now we have the dreadful sign in front of our eyes that the Janus temple will be soon reopened,

08] and that it will begin to get rather lively on the great fields on Mars!"

09] Joseph asked Maronius Pilla, whether he seriously regarded such a tail star to be a harbinger of war.

10] And Maronius spoke very seriously: "O friend, that is the unshakeable truth! – I say to you: war upon war!"

11] And Cyrenius added: "Now we have the rights pair together at the same time!

12] Joseph is still greatly devoted to his Moses, and Maronius Pilla cannot get rid of his ancient pagan beliefs!"

13] At this Joseph spoke: "Highly respected brother and friend Cyrenius! I believe that Moses is surely better than the temple of Janus in Rome!"

14] And Cyrenius said: "Certainly! – However, if one has the Lord Jehovah Himself in His fullness, then I believe that Moses as well as the stupid Janus should take a back seat, and that once and for all!

15] According to ancient, unfounded legend, the comet is indeed a bearer of bad tidings;

16] however, I believe that our Lord and most beloved Jesus in His divine fullness will also be the master over this supposed lord of misadventure! Do you not agree with me?"

17] And Joseph spoke: "Yes, certainly; however, that is why Moses cannot be compared to Janus, not even in the presence of the Lord!"

18] And Cyrenius said: "I too do not want to do that; however, if I have the Lord, Moses and Janus are the same to me!"

19] Here the Infant spoke to Cyrenius: "Stand by that!

20] For truly, when dealing with eternity, all dimensions disappear, and naught is as much as a million!"

21] This response of the Infant gave Joseph a little jolt, and thereupon discontinued his introduction of Moses to Cyrenius.

## ***CHAPTER 223. – A VISUAL INSTRUCTION ON THE NATURE OF COMETS, TAKING A MILK BOWL AS AN EXAMPLE.***

***4 JUNE 1844***

01] Jonathan, who always keenly questioned the reasons for everything, now came to Joseph and spoke:

02] "Brother, there is one other thing in which the Lord, as recently during the lunar eclipse, could help clarify our doubts!

03] Do you think that He would explain this to us if we asked Him about it?"

04] And Joseph spoke: "My dear brother Jonathan, it just needs to be put to the test!

05] Whoever firmly trusts the Lord has built on a strong foundation.

06] Go to the Infant who is in Mary's lap, and ask Him,

07] and we shall see what reply you will get to your query!"

08] At these words of Joseph, Jonathan at once went to the Infant with all possible love and humility and wanted to make an inquiry.

09] But the Infant anticipated Jonathan and spoke:

10] "Jonathan, I already know what you want; however, it is not for you!

11] Go to the house and take a small torch,

12] light it, and then go with the burning torch to the milk bowl that is placed there for the flies and the mosquitoes,

13] and I tell you, you will also see a comet in conjunction with its fundamental nature there!"

14] Jonathan immediately did as the Infant had advised him to do.

15] And see, as he approached the milk bowl holding the burning torch, over which millions of midges, flies and mosquitoes were buzzing around,

16] he actually saw a glimmering tail, several fathoms long that, naturally, consisted of the flying insects,

17] and of which the milk bowl formed the head.

18] This phenomenon was also observed by several other people,

19] and all marvelled at the similarity of this appearance with the comet in the sky.

20] And Jonathan went to the Infant and asked Him what he should make of this.

21] And the Infant said: "For the time being, just as you have seen it! But not all may learn of the secret;

22] therefore be content with this in the meantime! Tomorrow will be another day."



## ***CHAPTER 224. - ANALOGICAL AND EXPLANATORY HINTS ABOUT THE NATURE OF COMETS.***

***5 JUNE 1844***

01] Here Jonathan began to think deeply but was totally unable to come up with a sensible idea.

02] Naturally, the Infant realized at once that Jonathan could not see the correlation between the heavenly comet and the milk bowl comet.

03] He therefore sat up and spoke to Jonathan:

04] "My dear Jonathan! See, what is occurring within you is the same as that which you saw in the image of the milk bowl comet!

05] A big bowl full of milk represents your heart, whereby the milk represents your love.

06] But there is now an enormous swarm of midges, flies and mosquitoes just above that milk bowl.

07] And the shape of this swarm gives rise to your highly ridiculous thoughts on the similar nature of the two comets.

08] Oh – friend Jonathan! – Who could seriously consider the core of a heavenly comet to be a milk bowl and the tail a swarm of flies?!

09] These are only analogies but not completely natural similarities!

10] Do you really know what an analogy is? – What is a bowl, what is the milk inside the bowl and what is the swarm of flies and mosquitoes?

11] See, you do not understand this; so listen to me, and I will tell you something about it!

12] The bowl represents a vessel to receive substances that are linked to the nourishing life force from Me.

13] Milk is a substance that can carry the nourishing life force within itself to an extremely high degree.

14] The life force in the midges, flies and mosquitoes is freely active;

15] but if they are not nourished with a reasonably nourishing life force, they soon get weak and cannot develop towards a higher and more perfect level.

16] Now look, the heavenly comet is nothing more than a newly-created developing world!

17] The core is the vessel to receive the nourishing life force from Me.

18] This life force is warmed up by a fire, which is also created from the life force given by Me, thereby dissolving into nourishing vapour.

19] However, so that this vapour with a more developed life force does not evaporate, thereby depriving the new celestial body of this life force,

20] they are absorbed into innumerable monads (tiny ether animals) and carried by these to the newly-forming celestial body towards a more perfect development.

21] Look, that is the corresponding similarity between the heavenly comet and our milk bowl comet!

22] Do not investigate further into this matter, so that your love will not be weakened by your investigation!"

23] Many others also heard this explanation, but none understood it; however, many believed that it must be so.

## ***CHAPTER 225. – WHY THE EXCESSIVE INVESTIGATIONS INTO THE DEPTHS OF GOD'S CREATIONS IS DETRIMENTAL TO GOD'S CHILDREN.***

***7 JUNE 1844***

01] Cyrenius asked the Infant and said: "O You my Life! – Why may or why should one not investigate deeper into Your works?"

02] Why are such investigations into Your sayings detrimental to the love for you?

03] I believe in just the opposite: When one understands Your works in an increasingly deeper and clearer way, then the love for You would obviously increase and not get weaker!

04] For this is also the case among us human beings; that a man is always more precious, the more perfections we detect in him.

05] And how much more would this apply to You, the Lord and Creator of all greatness and perfection and magnificence, the deeper we understand You!

06] Therefore I would like to request You Yourself, You my Life, to give me further explanations about this strange star!

07] For my heart tells me, that I will be able to love You completely only when I know You ever deeper in Your almighty and wisest miraculous works.

08] No one can love you as the united God and Lord, if he did not know You beforehand, –

09] that is, our soul's recognition of You is the main reason for our love for You!

10] Just as I also needed to know my wife before I could become very attached to her! If I had never known her, then I would surely never have married her!"

11] Here the Infant smiled and said: "O My dear Cyrenius! If you would more often impart such wise teachings to Me, I might still turn out to become a clever human being in the end!

12] See, you have told Me genuinely new things;

13] but now think about this: just now you were My teacher, for you tried to prove to Me that, contrary to My warning that

excessive investigation in My works is harmful to the soul of man in the sphere of his love for Me, such investigation is the right thing to do.

14] So how should I, now a student of yours, instruct you about things that are unknown to you?!

15] If you know better reasons than those given to you by your God and your Creator, how can you then beg for deeper instruction from Him?

16] Or do you really think that God would allow Himself to be moved by rational considerations made by man, as if He were a judge according to the laws of the world?

17] O Cyrenius! You are gravely in error here!

18] Look, I alone know My eternal order, which is the mother of all things!

19] Even you come forth from this order! – The love of your spirit for Me is your very own life.

20] If you now want to avert your love for Me and bestow it on My creatures, so that you could then love Me more powerfully, when in fact you have Me in the flesh right here

before you,

21] say, is there any reason for this foolish increase in love?

22] Yes – he who does not know me and does not have Me in him, may well rise towards Me by your method;

23] but to the one who already has Me in his lap, of what use would your gradual approach be?"

24] Here Cyrenius was completely taken aback, took it deeply to heart, and nobody asked anything further about the comet.

***CHAPTER 226. - THE WITHDRAWAL OF THE DIVINITY IN THE CHILD.  
THE INFANT'S LAST INSTRUCTIONS FOR JOSEPH AND CYRENIUS. THE  
NIGHT'S SLEEP. JAMES' SPECIAL GRACE FROM THE CHILD JESUS.***

***8 JUNE 1844***

- 01] After the matter of the comet was settled, the Infant said to Joseph:
- 02] "Joseph, throughout these two days I was the formal head of the household, and all of you obeyed Me;
- 03] however, from now on I again hand over this position of head of the household to you, and whatever you order will be done!
- 04] From now on I will again become like any other human child – and it must be so; for even My body has to grow for the salvation of you all.
- 05] Therefore do not expect any evident miracles in this land from Me, either now or in the future!
- 06] Nevertheless, do not allow your faith and trust to doubt My power and authority;
- 07] for I am, I have always been and always will be, for eternity!
- 08] Thus never fear the world, which is nothing before Me; but be afraid of yourself doubting Me, – for that would be the death of your souls!
- 09] With this, reassume the responsibility for the house, Joseph, and manage it properly and righteously in the name of My Father, Amen.
- 10] You too, Cyrenius, should travel in happy spirits to Tyre tomorrow, where important business awaits you already!
- 11] My love and mercy are with you, and so you may be at peace. Everything else should be decided by Joseph; for he is now the head of the household!"
- 12] Thereupon the Infant called James and spoke to him:
- 13] "James! – Between us, the first relationship prevails, as you already know!
- 14] And this is how everything has to remain in this land, Amen!"
- 15] Joseph was extremely sad about this and implored the Infant to remain in His divinity.
- 16] The Infant, however, now spoke in a most childish manner and no trace of divinity could be detected in his speech.
- 17] He was also soon sleepy, and James had to bring Him to bed.
- 18] The company sat together deep into the night and discussed about the reasons for such a change in the Infant;
- 19] but no one said anything conclusive and instead each asked the other, –
- 20] but no one could come up with a valid response.
- 21] And Joseph finally spoke: "We know, what we need, and what we have to do, and we should be satisfied with that!
- 22] It is now already late in the night; so I think it would be best if we retired."
- 23] In this all agreed with Joseph and proceeded to the house to have a good rest.

## ***CHAPTER 227. - JOSEPH'S WORRY ABOUT THE MORNING MEAL THE EMPTY PANTRY. JONATHAN'S HELP WITH A VALUABLE LOAD OF FISH.***

**10 JUNE 1844**

01] On the next day, Joseph was, as usual, up and about much earlier than anyone else, and went outside to see what sort of a day it was going to be.

02] He saw all the signs of a fine day and then went back into the house and woke up his sons, so that they could prepare a good breakfast for the guests.

03] And the sons quickly got up and went to check the supplies in the pantry.

04] And after they had examined the pantry, they instantly went to Joseph and said:

05] "Listen, dear father, your assignment would be absolutely no problem;

06] if only our pantry was not so emptied over the past few days, so that it is now completely impossible for us to prepare a meal even for just ten people.

07] Therefore advise us from where we should take the food, and the meal will be ready in an hour!"

08] Here Joseph scratched his ear a little and went himself to the pantry, only to have his sons' statements confirmed, which only increased his embarrassment.

09] His thoughts went back and forth but he could not think of anything to lessen his embarrassment.

10] As Joseph stood there pondering in the outer house, Jonathan came from his bedchamber, greeted and kissed his old friend and asked him why he stood there so sad and pensive.

11] And Joseph promptly showed Jonathan the reason for his embarrassment, namely, the empty pantry.

12] As Jonathan saw this, he said to Joseph:

13] "O my dearest friend, you should not worry about this!

14] See, my pantries are still very full; I still possess about two thousand hundredweights of smoked fish!

15] Therefore let your sons immediately come with me and, in one-and-a-half hours, your pantry will look quite different!"

16] This offer really soothed Joseph's heart, and he readily accepted it.

17] In less than one-and-a-half hours, Jonathan and the four sons arrived with a huge load of fish.

18] The sons brought almost four hundredweights of smoked fish, and Jonathan brought three casks full of fresh fish and ten large loaves of wheat bread.

19] As Joseph saw the approaching persons so loaded, he was full of joy and thanked and praised God for this, and then embraced and kissed Jonathan.

20] Thereupon the kitchen was soon bursting with activity.

21] The sons cheerfully bustled around; Mary and Eudokia themselves came out of their bedchamber and went to milk the cows.

22] And so, in half an hour, a bounteous morning meal was prepared for more than a hundred guests.

**CHAPTER 228. – A CONTEST OF LOVE BETWEEN JOSEPH AND  
CYRENIUS. JOSEPH'S UNSELFISHNESS. HOW TO RECOGNIZE THE TRUE  
FROM THE FALSE SERVANTS OF GOD.**

**11 JUNE 1844**

01] As the morning meal was prepared in this way and all the guests were up and about, Joseph went to Cyrenius and asked him if he was ready to have his morning meal.

02] And Cyrenius said to Joseph: "O most exalted friend and brother! I am certainly ready, together with my entire entourage;

03] but I also know, that you do not have the necessary supplies to cater to more than a hundred people for several days in a row.

04] I will therefore send my servants into the city this morning, so that they can buy foodstuffs for me and you!"

05] As Joseph heard this, he said:

06] "O dear friend and brother, you can do this for your ship;

07] but there is absolutely no need to go through such trouble for my sake.

08] For look, firstly, the morning meal is already prepared, and secondly, there is more food in my pantry than can be consumed by all of you in eight days.

09] Therefore do not worry about me; for I am well taken care of!"

10] And Cyrenius spoke: "Truly, truly, even if I would not have any other testimonial of your supreme calling, this would give me testimonial of your most incredible unselfishness!

11] Yes, that is how we can always accurately distinguish the true from the false servants of God:

12] The true servants are unselfish to a high degree, and the false ones are exactly the opposite;

13] for the true servants serve God in their hearts and also receive the supreme and eternal reward, –

14] the false ones, however, serve a God in the world who is modelled after their wicked nature – for the sake of the world;

15] therefore, they also seek the reward of the world and see to it that they are excessively paid at every turn.

16] For, as a born heathen, I very well know how the Roman priests indefinitely demand payment at every turn.

17] Indeed, I myself had to once pay a high priest a hundred pounds of gold for advice!

18] Question: Was he a true servant of a true God?

19] You, on the other hand, have hosted me for three days already, not to mention the teachings I received in your house, – and you still do not accept anything!

20] You have not accepted anything even for my eight children! – This should clearly show what the genuine and true servants of God look like?!"

21] Joseph however said: "Brother, do not talk further on this subject, for even such talk is too much for me,

22] instead come and sit down at the table, and the morning meal will be served right away!" – And Cyrenius did as Joseph wished and sat down at the table.



**CHAPTER 229. – THE CHEERFUL MORNING MEAL. JOSEPH SPEAKS ON  
THE GOODNESS OF THE LORD. THE INFANT AT THE TABLE.  
DELIGHTFUL SCENES BETWEEN LITTLE JESUS AND CYRENIUS.**

**12 JUNE 1844**

- 01] As all were now seated at the dining table, the deliciously prepared fish was placed on the table,
- 02] and Cyrenius greatly wondered how Joseph could obtain such a quantity of fresh fish so early in the morning!
- 03] And Joseph pointed here to the huge Jonathan and spoke somewhat jokingly:
- 04] "See, if one has such a great fishing expert as friend, then one does not need to grasp far – and the fish are there!"
- 05] Here Cyrenius smiled and said: "Yes, you are undoubtedly right!
- 06] Truly, under such circumstances, one can always have fresh fish, and particularly when one also has Someone in his house!"
- 07] And hereupon Joseph raised his hand and spoke with a deeply touched heart:
- 08] "Yes, brother Cyrenius, – and particularly Someone, whom we will never be worthy of!
- 09] May He bless this good morning meal for us all, that it truly strengthens our bodies and our love for Him - the most holy One!"
- 10] This exclamation of Joseph's brought all the guests to tears and everyone praised the great God in the still sleeping Infant.
- 11] As they began to eat the fish at the end of the eulogy, the Infant awoke;
- 12] and the pleasant aroma of the fish at once told Him what was on the table.
- 13] He therefore quickly got out of His low cot, ran naked towards the table at which Mary sat, and asked for something to eat.
- 14] Mary immediately took Him in her lap and said to James: 15] "Hurry, and bring me a clean shirt from the room!"
- 16] And James at once did as Mary wished and brought a clean shirt.
- 17] On this occasion, however, the Infant did not want to be dressed.
- 18] This made Mary a little indignant and she said: "Look, my Child, sitting naked at the table is not proper;
- 19] hence I will be quite angry, if you do not allow yourself to be dressed!"
- 20] Cyrenius, moved to tears by the sight of the tender Infant, said to Mary:
- 21] "O dear, fairest mother, give me the Infant so that I can once more hold and cuddle Him completely naked!
- 22] Who knows if such infinite happiness will ever again be bestowed on me in this world!?"
- 23] And the Infant smiled at Cyrenius and demanded to go to him.
- 24] And Mary handed Him over to Cyrenius, who wept in joy and bliss, as the healthy Infant kicked about energetically in his lap.

25] And Cyrenius immediately asked Him, which piece of the fish He wanted to eat.

26] And the Infant spoke in a most childlike manner: "Give Me that white piece, which has no bones in it!"

27] And Cyrenius at once gave the Infant the best and perfect piece into His hands, and the Infant ate it happily and in utter contentment.

28] After He had eaten His full, He said: "That was good! – Now dress Me!

29] For when I am hungry, I want to eat first and wear clothes only afterwards!" – Thereupon the Infant did not say anything further and had Cyrenius quietly dress Him.

**CHAPTER 230. – CONTINUATION OF THE CHILDLY TABLE SCENE.**  
**MARY IS STRICT WITH ME ONLY OUT OF HER GREAT LOVE FOR ME!**

**13 JUNE 1844**

- 01] After the Infant was dressed, He again asked Cyrenius for another good piece of fish.
- 02] The Infant spoke in His way: "I certainly want a small piece;
- 03] but I do not dare to take it, because I do not want another scolding from mother!"
- 04] And Cyrenius spoke: "O my infinitely dearest Child! If I offer it to You, then the mother will not say anything!"
- 05] The Infant spoke naively to Cyrenius: "Yes, as long as you are there, she will certainly not say anything;
- 06] but when you are gone, I will get it twofold.
- 07] O you cannot believe how cross My mother can be when I do things against her will!"
- 08] Cyrenius smiled at this and then said to the Infant: "What would You say if I scolded Your strict mother for that; would she then not become more lenient towards You?"
- 09] And the Infant spoke: "I request you not to do such thing; for when you would be gone, I would a get a scolding that would be hard to match!"
- 10] Here Cyrenius asked the Infant further and spoke:
- 11] "O You my life, You my most heavenly Child! – If Your mother is that strict, how can you then still love her so greatly?"
- 12] And the Infant replied: "Because she is strict out of great love for Me; for she is constantly afraid that something bad could happen to Me.
- 13] And see, that is why I love her so much! Even if she is sometimes strict without reason, she still means well, and therefore surely deserves My love!
- 14] See, she would be strict with Me if I ate another piece of fish, because she believes it could be harmful to Me.
- 15] It would certainly not harm Me; however, I Myself do not want to sin against the good intentions of My mother.
- 16] Oh – I can also deny Myself and can adhere to My mother's rules, if it is necessary;
- 17] but when it is not necessary, then I can also do what I want.
- 18] And then it does not bother Me, when My mother scolds Me a little.
- 19] However, it is not absolutely necessary for Me to have another piece of fish; therefore I will deny Myself, so that mother will be unable to get at Me, when you are gone."
- 20] Here Cyrenius again asked the Infant and said with all possible love:
- 21] "Yes, You my Life! – If You have this much respect for Your earthly mother, then why did You not allow her to dress You?
- 22] Will she not scold You for this, when I am gone?"
- 23] And the Infant spoke: "Certainly; but I will not bother about it too much!
- 24] For, as I told you earlier, sometimes I do whatever I want, and do not ask whether My mother considers it right or not.
- 25] However, My mother can still scold Me for that, for besides, she has a good opinion

and good intentions."

26] Here Mary smiled and jokingly said: "Well, You just wait until we are alone,

27] and I will give You a proper scolding for accusing me in this manner to Cyrenius!"

28] And the Infant smiled and said: "Oh – you do not really mean it! I easily notice when you are really angry, – for your face gets quite red; however, now you are as white as Me, and then you are never angry."

29] Everyone laughed at this remark, and the Infant also smiled. Mary fervently held the Infant and hugged Him beyond all measure.

## ***CHAPTER 231. – CYRENIUS' GRATITUDE, GIFT AND WORDS OF FAREWELL – CYRENIUS STAYS ONE MORE DAY.***

***14 JUNE 1844***

01] After this childly scene, the morning meal ended.

02] And as Joseph finished the thanksgiving prayer, Cyrenius at once went over to Joseph and said:

03] "My dearest friend! Your services to me, as also to my brother Julius Augustus Quirinus Caesar in Rome, have been so crucial, that I could never adequately repay you for them.

04] But to leave you completely unrecompensed – see, that is really impossible for me!

05] I know that you will not accept a princely reward from me;

06] therefore I thought to myself: It looks as if you will have a meagre grain harvest this year;

07] and your house has nevertheless quite a large number of people living in it.

08] In any case, nine persons belong to me, and you and yours total eight persons; making seventeen persons altogether.

09] And now I believe that your flour containers are empty and so is your pantry,

10] and that you already have insufficient fodder in stock for your cows, goats and donkeys. –

11] Look, I am also very aware of the fact that you have almost nothing to wear.

12] Therefore – my dearest brother, you must at least accept from me what you need for the time being.

13] Of course I am well aware that it is extremely ridiculous for an earthly man to presume to support the Lord of infinity, for Whom it is easy to create myriad worlds with one word.

14] But I also know that this holy Lord of infinity does not always want to work miracles contrary to His eternal miracle order, because for us created beings, this always comes with a judgment attached.

15] For this reason, you should at least accept that what you need,

16] and not refuse my gift this time, as you are wont to do!"

17] And Joseph said: "Yes – brother! – This time you may be almost right!

18] But – I must ask the Lord before I accept anything from you."

19] Here the Infant, who was with James, quickly came over to Joseph and said:

20] "Joseph, accept that what Cyrenius wants to give you, so that you have food in the house!"

21] Thereupon Joseph agreed to accept Cyrenius' offer.

22] And Cyrenius at once handed over a sum of one thousand pounds of silver and seventy pounds of gold to Joseph.

23] Joseph thanked Cyrenius and accepted the large amount.

24] This made Cyrenius extremely cheerful and he said: "Brother! – Now my heart is lighter by a thousand hundredweights! However, I will not leave here today, but tomorrow; for my great love for you does not allow me to leave this place!" – And Joseph was very

happy about this.

## ***CHAPTER 232. - JOSEPH'S MONEY BOX AND WORRIES ABOUT THIEVES. THE INFANT'S GOOD ADVICE TO JOSEPH.***

***15 JUNE 1844***

- 01] Joseph did not have a chest in which to keep the large amount of money.
- 02] So he immediately ordered his servants to go to the city and buy a chest, regardless of the cost!
- 03] And the servants went and in the course of two hours, brought a rather beautiful chest made of cedar, which had cost ten pounds of silver.
- 04] This chest was brought into Joseph's bedchamber, and his sons placed the heavy and large quantity of money into this strong and beautiful chest.
- 05] After the money was put away in this manner, Joseph spoke:
- 06] "Seen from the earthly point of view, this is the first time in my whole life that I am rich;
- 07] for I have never seen so much money, let alone possessed so much of it!
- 08] Until now my house had no worries about thieves or robbers;
- 09] however, from now on we will not have enough eyes or time to protect this money from thieves and robbers!"
- 10] But Jonathan said: "Brother, do not worry about it! 11] I know for certain whom the thieves and robbers seek out. 12] Look, they only seek out those who are stingy and mean!
- 13] You are not like that, – therefore you can remain calm; for everyone anyway gets three times more than he demands from you!
- 14] Thus, I think, you will have to deal with a lot of beggars, but definitely not with thieves and robbers!"
- 15] Here even Mary came over and spoke to Joseph:
- 16] "Listen, dear father, you know that we received a large amount of gold from the three wise men from Persia, when we were in the town of our father David;
- 17] and look, we do not have anything left of this gold, not even the size of a grain of sand, although we were not robbed of it!
- 18] So I believe that the same will happen again: before a year is up, there will be nothing left, and this without any encounters with thieves and robbers.
- 19] So just be very calm! – For in a house, in which the Lord dwells, gold has no standing, and besides, the robbers and thieves will not want to have dealings with the house of the Lord!
- 20] For they know as well as you and me, that it would be ominous to misappropriate treasures that are, as it were, in God's chest."
- 21] As Mary finished speaking, the Infant also came over and spoke:
- 22] "Faithful Joseph! You should not look so fearfully at that chest, in which My brothers have put the money!
- 23] If you look so frightened, I could think that you were unwell.
- 24] And see, I do not want you to be unwell!

25] This money will not burden you for long. Now buy a lot of flour and other foodstuff and some clothes and distribute the rest of the money,

26] and the chest will soon be empty again!" – These childlike words had such a soothing effect on Joseph that he was promptly in very good spirits.



## ***CHAPTER 233. - JOSEPH AND HIS FAMILY. DOMESTIC WORRIES AND DUTIES. JONATHAN'S TREMENDOUS HELP THROUGH HIS TRUST IN GOD.***

***17 JUNE 1844***

01] Afterwards, Joseph called his four sons and said to them:

02] "Take this pound of silver and go to the city and buy flour and whatever else is needed in the kitchen,

03] and come and prepare a good midday meal, as Cyrenius is giving me the honour of his presence today also!"

04] And the sons went and did as the father had instructed them to do.

05] Mary also came to Joseph and remarked privately to him, that the firewood stockpile had diminished to such an extent, that not even one meal could be prepared from the insignificant bit that remained.

06] Then Joseph called Jonathan and told him about his dilemma.

07] And Jonathan spoke: "Brother, give me your big and strong axe and I will go to the woods there on the mountain;

08] indeed, you will have a large quantity of wood in three hours!"

09] And Joseph gave Jonathan a strong axe, who went to the woods on the nearest mountain that belonged to the villa, and soon felled a powerful cedar tree, tied the trunk with a thick rope and dragged the whole mighty tree to the front of Joseph's house.

10] As he arrived with his felled tree, all were amazed at Jonathan's immense strength.

11] And several of Cyrenius' servants together tried to drag the tree further, but their efforts were in vain;

12] for the thirty of them could not move the tree even by a hair's breath, as it weighed about a hundred hundredweights in all.

13] Jonathan said to Cyrenius' servants:

14] "Instead of this vain attempt, take big and small axes and help me quickly cut the tree into small pieces!

15] This effort will please the host better than if you try to measure my tremendous strength by your vain effort!"

16] And straightaway, all the servants lent a hand, and with Jonathan's powerful participation, the whole tree was split into small pieces in half an hour.

17] Joseph was full of joy at this and said: "O this is excellent!

18] Indeed, it would have meant three days of work for me, if I had to cut such a tree into pieces,

19] and you needed less than three hours altogether!"

20] Hereupon Jonathan said: "O brother! Great body strength is indeed a useful thing;

21] but what is it against the strength of Him, who lives with you, and by whose breath the entire infinity trembles?!"

22] Here the Infant came to Jonathan and said to him: "Be silent, Jonathan, and do not reveal My secret; for I know when I have to show Myself!"

23] However, if My power had not been with you just now, you would not have been able to prevail over this tree. – But be silent and do not say anything about it!" – So Jonathan did not speak further and only now understood how he had conquered this tree so effortlessly.

—

**CHAPTER 234. – THE GOVERNOR'S EMBARRASSMENT DUE TO A  
DEPUTATION OF THE FOREMOST AND NOBLEST CITIZENS OF THE CITY.  
CYRENIUS INVITES THE DEPUTATION TO A MEAL THE CURSE OF  
MONEY.**

**18 JUNE 1844**

- 01] As Joseph's house was thus supplied with wood in this way and Joseph's sons were energetically preparing the midday meal,
- 02] a glittering delegation of prominent citizens came from the city to greet the supreme governor.
- 03] For this time no one in the city had learnt of Cyrenius' presence, as he wanted to be here strictly incognito.
- 04] However, people saw the familiar servants, as well as Joseph's sons, in the city in the morning, and hence assumed the presence of the governor.
- 05] They therefore assembled in the city and came out in all splendour, which was, on this occasion, most inconvenient to Cyrenius.
- 06] The commander and the familiar captain were naturally at the head of the large company comprising the foremost and noblest citizens of the city of Ostracine.
- 07] The commander profusely apologized for his late knowledge, and that only by a lucky coincidence, of the Imperial Consular Highness' supreme presence honouring this region.
- 08] Cyrenius, however, almost turned back in his secret annoyance at this for him highly untimely visit.
- 09] He nevertheless had to put on a brave front out of political considerations and therefore responded to his greetings with equally pleasant words.
- 10] After a while, however, he said to the commander: "Dear friend, being great men of the world has unpleasant consequences sometimes!
- 11] A common man can go wherever he wants and he will remain incognito;
- 12] we, however, only need to take a step onto the threshold, and our incognito is torn to shreds.
- 13] I heartily accept your stately greeting in the name of my brother;
- 14] but it should not detract from the fact that I am strictly incognito here!
- 15] That is to say in other words, my presence here is unofficial and should not be reported to Rome under any circumstances!
- 16] If I should learn that someone has dared to report my presence here to Rome, indeed, he will fare badly! – For bear in mind that I am here in strict incognito for the world!
- 17] Why? – I know the reason, and no one needs to ask me about it.
- 18] Now go home and change to ordinary clothes, and come out here again for the midday meal that will take place in approximately three hours before sunset!"
- 19] Here the deputation bowed before the governor and departed.
- 20] Thereupon Joseph went over to Cyrenius and said:
- 21] "See, this is already the first consequence of the money that you gave me in such

abundance!

22] Your servants had to buy a chest for it, and they were recognized – and your presence here was betrayed.

23] As I always say: Gold and silver still bear the ancient curse of God!"

24] The Infant, who was close to Joseph, added with a smile:

25] "Therefore, one cannot heap greater insult on the proud gold and the conceited silver than by distributing it fairly among the beggars.

26] You however, my dear Joseph, do this all the time; hence the old curse will do you, as well as Cyrenius, little harm.

27] Oh, I am not at all anxious about this gold; for here it is already in the right place!"

28] These words once again soothed Joseph and Cyrenius, and they now awaited the invited guests in very happy spirits. –

**CHAPTER 235. - THE NOBLE COMPANY AT THE MEAL. JOSEPH'S  
ADVICE REGARDING THE SOCIAL CONSIDERATIONS IN THE SEATING  
ARRANGEMENT. THE INFANT'S ANNOYANCE AT THE BADLY ARRANGED  
SIDE TABLE. A PROPHETIC PREDICTION.**

**19 JUNE 1844**

01] The deputation, after a change in clothes, returned from the city at the predetermined time, greeted all in Joseph's house and proceeded with Cyrenius to the already prepared meal.

02] However, as the actual number of guests exceeded the expected number, Joseph's table was too small to also accommodate his own family at the same table.

03] The Infant therefore surreptitiously said to Joseph: "Father Joseph, let a small table be set for us in the adjoining room!

04] And tell Cyrenius that he should not be offended by this, 05] and tell him that I will go to him after the meal!" 06] And Joseph did as the Infant had instructed him to do.

07] Cyrenius, however, said to Joseph: "This is not possible! – The Lord of infinity is among us; surely we cannot seat him at the little table!

08] O that would really be the strangest order of the world!

09] I tell you, of all people, He and you should sit at the head!"

10] And Joseph spoke: "Dearest brother, this is not possible this time;

11] for look, there are now many pagans from the city here, and the Lord's proximity might be detrimental to them; therefore the Infant's will should be respected here, as everywhere and at all times."

12] And the Infant joined them and said: "Cyrenius! Joseph is right, just do what he says!"

13] Thus Cyrenius' objected no more and he proceeded with his entourage, as well as the deputation from the city, to the midday meal.

14] And Joseph promptly ordered a good and serviceable table to be placed in the adjoining room, at which he, Mary, the Infant with His James,

15] Jonathan, Eudokia and Cyrenius' eight children took their seats.

16] Naturally, the foods served at the guest table were of higher quantity and quality than the ones at the house table.

17] And the Infant spoke: "O you blot on the face of the earth!

– Must you then bring forth that which is the worse for none other than your own Lord!?

18] O you now fertile land between Asia and Africa, you will be struck with great barrenness for ever!

19] In truth, truth! – If our table did not have some fish, there would be absolutely nothing edible for Me!

20] Here is a milk dish with a little honey, which I do not like, and there a roasted sea onion, and there a small melon, and there some stale bread and next to it, some butter and honey, –

21] that is our entire meal; nothing but foods that I do not like, except for the few fish!

22] Although I do not want that the guests are worse off than us;

23] it is also not right that we are so much worse off than the guests!"

24] Joseph said: "O dear Jesus, do not sulk in this manner, for look, we are all in the same boat!"

25] And the Infant spoke: "Give Me some of the fish, and then it is well for now. But it must be different on other occasions; for I cannot always be content with this everyday food!" – Joseph kept this in mind and gave the Infant some fish to eat.

## ***CHAPTER 236. – A DOMESTIC KITCHEN SCENE AND ITS SERIOUS CONSEQUENCES. THE BASIC GOSPEL OF INCARNATION.***

**20 JUNE 1844**

01] While eating the fish, the Infant asked Jonathan: "Jonathan, is this the best kind of fish?

[236.02] For I must tell you that I do not find this fish tasty! 03] For firstly it is tough, and secondly it is as dry as straw.

04] Truly, it cannot be a good species of fish, and this low quality of fish can also be deduced by its great number of annoying fish bones!"

05] And Jonathan replied: "Yes, O You my Lord and my God! It is indeed fish of the lowest quality!

06] O if only Joseph had told me earlier, I would have gladly run to and fro ten times and got the very best fish for You!"

07] Here even Joseph was angry at his sons for the bad food on the table.

08] The Infant, however, spoke: "Joseph, we should not get angry about this;

09] but it is still strange that My brothers keep the best food in the kitchen for themselves, and serve us the worst of all the foods.

10] May all that they eat be blessed; however, their action is neither nice nor commendable! –

11] See, you have given Me the best piece of fish; but still I can't eat it all, although I am rather hungry, –

12] and that is certainly the surest sign that the fish is bad!

13] Here – try this piece, and you will be convinced that I am right!"

14] Here Joseph tasted the fish and found the Infant's assertion fully confirmed.

15] He promptly stood up and went to the kitchen and discovered the four sons eating their fill of a choice tuna fish.

16] At this, Joseph was beside himself, and he began to give the four cooks a severe scolding.

17] They said: "Father! – See, we have to do all the hard work, why should we not sometimes eat a better piece than what is eaten by those who do not work?!

18] Besides, the fish we have put on your table is really not bad.

19] It is only because of the Infant, who is highly pampered by you and sometimes too full of caprices, and nothing is then right or good enough for Him!"

20] This angered Joseph and he said: "Good, as you have confronted me with such words, you will never again prepare the food for my table!

21] From now on, Mary will be my cook, you, however, can cook whatever you like for yourselves; but, in future, none of you may ever sit at my table!"

22] Here Joseph left the kitchen and returned highly agitated via the side door to his table companions.

23] The Infant was sad and began to cry in full earnest and sobbed violently.

24] At once Mary, Joseph and James anxiously asked Him what the trouble was, whether He was suffering any pain –

25] or what could have happened to make Him so sad and wretched all of a sudden?

26] The Infant sighed heavily and spoke in a most melancholic tone to Joseph:

27] "Joseph! – Is it then so pleasant to show the poor and the weak one's own splendour and to condemn them because of a minor offence?!

28] Just look at Me, how many miserable cooks have I in the world, who would have let Me, as a Father of all Fathers, starve to death long ago, if it were possible to do that to Me!

29] I tell you, cooks, who do not want to have anything more to do with Me and also do not want to learn or hear anymore from Me!

30] And look, I still do not go out to judge them in my righteous anger!

31] Is it then so pleasant to be a master? – See, I am the only Lord of infinity, and beside Me, there is eternally no other!

32] And see, I, your Creator and Father for everything, wanted to be a weak human child and fully restrain My eternal and infinite Divine splendour,

33] so that through this example, humble above all, you should come to feel revulsion at your past tyrannical spirit!

34] But no! Precisely at this time, of all times, in which the Lord of all splendour has humbled Himself among all men, so that He can win them in such lowliness, men mostly want to master and rule over others!

35] I know very well, that you have judged the four cooks primarily because of Me;

36] but if you recognize Me as the Lord, why did you anticipate Me in this matter?

37] See, we all are not unhappy because we were served with a poor fish; for we can instantly prepare a better one!

38] The four brothers are now the saddest persons on the earth, because you as their father have judged them;

39] and see, it was no just punishment for such a minor offence!

40] Where would you human beings be, if I did to you, what you do to each other; if I were so short-tempered and impatient as you are?!

41] You do not know why we have been served so meagrely; but I do.

42] Therefore I tell you this, go there and revoke your judgment, and James will reveal the reason for the poor meal to you!"

43] Here Joseph went and called his four sons, so that they could confess their error and be forgiven.



## ***CHAPTER 237. – A HUMBLE AND HEARTFELT SPEECH OF THE FOUR BROTHERS TO THE INSULTED INFANT. HIS DIVINE REPLY TO HIS BROTHERS.***

**21 JUNE 1844**

- 01] And the four sons of Joseph came to Joseph's dining room, immediately knelt down, acknowledged their guilt and then asked their old father Joseph for his forgiveness.
- 02] Hereupon Joseph forgave them and revoked his judgment.
- 03] He then said to the four sons: "I have certainly forgiven you;
- 04] but I was the one who was least insulted by you.
- 05] But here is the Infant, about whom you stated, to my great anger,
- 06] that He is really pampered and that he is therefore often too full of caprices, and then nothing is right or good enough for Him.
- 07] You have thereby grossly insulted Him!
- 08] Go over to Him and particularly ask him for his forgiveness, otherwise you might fare badly!"
- 09] Then the four of them went before the Infant and spoke to Him:
- 10] "O our dear little Brother! Look, we have unjustly insulted you to our father,
- 11] and thereby so greatly infuriated him that he almost put a curse on us.
- 12] We have committed a grave sin against You and the good father Joseph.
- 13] O will You, dear little Brother, ever be able to forgive us our grave sin? – Will You again claim us as Your brothers?"
- 14] Here the Infant smiled most affably at the four supplicants, stretched out his tender arms and spoke with tears in His divine eyes:
- 15] "O rise, My dear brothers, and come here, so that I can kiss and bless you!
- 16] For truly, whoever comes to Me as you have done, will be forgiven, even if he has committed more sins than there are grains of sands in the seas and blades of grass on the earth!
- 17] Truly, truly! – Even before this earth was created, I saw this sin in you and have forgiven you of this and of many other transgressions, before you even existed!
- 18] O My dear brothers! Do not be afraid because of Me; for I love you all so dearly, that I will die one day in My body out of love for you!
- 19] So do not have fear of Me; for truly, even if you had cursed Me, I would have still not judged you, but wept because of the hardness of your hearts!
- 20] So come here, My dear brothers, that I may bless you, although you insulted Me a little!"
- 21] This infinite goodness of the Infant broke the hearts of the four brothers, and they cried like little children.
- 22] Even the others at the table were so deeply moved that they could not restrain themselves from weeping.
- 23] The Infant sat up, went over to the four and blessed and kissed them and then said to

them:

24] "Now, dear brothers, you must surely realize that I have completely forgiven you!? –

25] I request you now to go into the kitchen and bring a better fish for us all!

26] For truly, I am still quite hungry but just cannot eat the fish that you prepared for us earlier!"

27] Here the four brothers promptly rose, kissed the extremely good-hearted Infant and then hastened to the kitchen and prepared the best fish for Joseph's table within the shortest possible time.

**CHAPTER 238. - ANALOGICAL MEANING OF THE MEAL THE PHASES  
OF SPIRITUAL STATES ON EARTH: 1. GENERAL 2. JUDAISM. 3. THE  
GREEK CHURCH. 4. THE ROMAN CHURCH. 5. THE CHRISTIAN SECTS.**

**22 JUNE 1844**

01] When the well-prepared fish was brought to Joseph's table and after all had had their fill

02] and the meal was over, Joseph asked James if he could give the perhaps prophetic reason for the at first scanty, and eventually delicious meal?

03] And James spoke with the greatest humility and modesty:

04] "O yes, dear father Joseph, insofar as the Lord grants it to me, I will reveal the significance of this meal.

05] And so I request you to listen to me carefully!"

06] All now directed their attention towards James, and he began to speak as follows:

07] "The meagre and poor meal signifies that future time, in which the Lord's word will be distorted.

08] At that time, His servants will keep the best part for themselves and will give the leftovers to their congregations, just as the gentiles feed their pigs.

09] The Jews will be like the roasted sea onion;

10] for although it is a root that grows rampantly in the ocean of the divine grace and will be fully roasted in the fire of the divine love,

11] it is nevertheless poor food and will be at the Lord's table as a most inferior dish, and no one will reach for it! –

12] The Greeks will be like this inane milk mush; these will preserve the purity of the Lord's word more than anyone else!

13] However, as they will lead only an outer life but not an inner life according to the Lord's word, they will be as indifferent and inane as this milk mush, which may carry the best lifeblood within itself, but cuts a poor figure on the Lord's table because it is cold and not properly cooked! –

14] For it does not have a pleasant smell and moreover, being raw, does not have a pleasant taste for the Lord's palate.

15] The melon is Rome. This fruit grows on a creeper whose stalk turns to all directions,

16] on which many empty blossoms emerge; but only a few of them become fruits.

17] And when the fruit is there and has ripened, it has a rather strong aroma, –

18] but when it is cut and you eat the inner flesh, you will notice that the taste is greatly inferior to the smell.

19] If you add unflavoured honey to it and eat the fruit, it can make you feel nauseous,

20] indeed you can easily eat yourself to death on such a fruit!

21] This is how Rome will be for a fairly long time, and many will eat themselves to death on this food! – And this fruit will also be on the Lord's table as an inferior dish and will not be touched by Him! –

22] We still have butter, bread and some honey and several poor fish here.

23] These foods are naturally a little better and are set apart from the others and still have a favourable reputation;

24] but they have no warmth in them, and are not spiced by the fire, the main ingredient, hence they are also here on the Lord's table and are not praised.

25] Although the fish were on the fire, they were too lean, so they dried up like straw, and the Lord cannot eat them either.

26] These foods represent certain sects, which will separate themselves from the former and will keep faith;

27] but one will feel no or very little love for them, and therefore they too are disagreeable to the Lord! – –

28] That is briefly the significance of this meal. I have revealed all I received; and since I received no more I shall say no more." – This explanation caused a sensation, but no one understood it.

***CHAPTER 239. - THE LAST GOOD FISH SIGNIFIES THE LORD'S LOVE  
AND HIS GREAT MERCY OF LATE. THE SUN'S INHABITANTS ARE ALSO  
DESTINED TO BE THE CHILDREN OF GOD. A FLOCK UNDER THE ONE  
GOOD SHEPHERD.***

***25 JUNE 1844***

01] Thereupon Joseph said to James: "You have spoken in the fullest sense about great and wise things in the Name of the Lord, although I, as all the rest of us, am unable to understand what you said.

02] As I nevertheless recognize the wisdom of God in you,

03] and as we all got a wonderful and extremely delicious and well-prepared fish on our table in the end,

04] I want to discuss with you what this fine and good fish finally signifies.

05] Surely the Lord will also reveal to you what is good,

06] as He has just revealed to you, what is and will be bad for the world!"

07] Thereupon James spoke: "Dear father Joseph, that does not depend on me, but only on the Lord!

08] I am just a weak tool of the Lord and can only speak when the Lord loosens my tongue.

09] Therefore do not ask from me what I do not have and thus cannot give you,

10] but turn to the Lord in this matter; when He gives it to me, you will instantly and perfectly receive it as He gives it!"

11] Here Joseph promptly and secretly turned to the Infant and said:

12] "My Jesus, let me also be told the significance of the good fish!"

13] The Infant, however, spoke: "Joseph, you can see that I am not fully finished with My fish; so wait a little!

14] Cyrenius also needs time to finish his meal; hence we have another half an hour,

15] and in this time a lot can be agreed upon, advised and concluded."

16] Then the Infant turned to James and spoke to him:

17] "James, while I eat My piece of fish, you can say whatever comes through your mouth."

18] Hereupon the Infant ate His fish, and James began to speak:

19] "This last good fish signifies the Lord's love and His great mercy with which He will bless mankind at the time when all the world will stand on the abyss of eternal death.

20] But beforehand, the cooks will have to withstand a strong judgment!

21] Only after this judgment will the time come as foretold by the prophet Isaiah.

22] And this time will then remain on earth and will not be taken away from it in the future; and then the earth will merge with the sun,

23] and its inhabitants will reside in the great and bright realms of the sun and will shine like the sun.

24] And the Lord will be the sole Lord, and He Himself will be the shepherd, and all the shining inhabitants will be a herd!

25] And thus this earth will exist forever, and its inhabitants will exist forever, and the Lord will be forever among them – an eternal Father to His children!

26] Then there will be no more death; whoever lives there will live forever, and will never face death, Amen!" –

27] Here James again fell silent. The entire company was struck dumb with amazement at the profound wisdom of James, – whereupon the Infant finally spoke: "And I have also finished eating My fish; hence even to that Amen." –

**CHAPTER 240. – THE GUESTS BECOME AWARE OF THE INFANT.  
CYRENIUS' DISCLOSURE. A NEIGHBOUR'S JUDGMENT OF JOSEPH AND  
HIS FAMILY.**

**26 JUNE 1844**

01] Thereupon the company quickly got up from the table and thanked God for the physical as well as spiritual nourishment and then most of them went outside.

02] Only Joseph, Mary and the Infant with James went to the large dining room, where Cyrenius was still sitting at the table with his guests.

03] Cyrenius welcomed his dearest friends very warmly and wanted to stand up at once and prepare a place for them.

04] The Infant said: "O My dear Cyrenius, stay, stay where you are!

05] I am content as long as I have the right place in your heart!

06] As far as a place at the table is concerned, it is of no importance to Me!

07] I am now going outside with My family; come after Me later, when you have finished your meal!"

08] Hereupon the Infant with His James quickly went outside and amused himself with James and the other children.

09] Some guests noticed how intelligent and intimate the Infant addressed Cyrenius,

10] and they inquired about the Infant's age;

11] for he spoke already like a grown man and appeared to be on very familiar terms with the governor.

12] Cyrenius said: "What is it to you that I am very fond of children?

13] You have all seen that this Infant is extremely ingenious!

14] But as to how he has attained this clarity of mind at barely three-and-a-half years of age,

15] well, you will have to ask His parents, who will no doubt be able to explain this to you!

16] Personally I am very surprised that although being the nearest neighbours, you still do not know this house and its inhabitants any better!"

17] Thereupon some of them spoke: "Well – how can we get to know this family better?

18] For firstly, they never go anywhere, and secondly, we also have too little time to visit this singular Jewish family, who are so difficult to understand in any case;

19] for they have such a singular mystical air about them that one does not know just what to make of it.

20] As far as we could find out from other ordinary people, this family is most peace-loving and does a lot of good to the poor;

21] but there are also people who say that they have often observed this house in bright flames, which was then extinguished as fast as one can say 'yes' or 'no', – and other such incidents.

22] Hence we also lack the courage to visit this family;

23] for the old man is and will remain a Jewish chief magician.

24] And it is not good to have dealings with such persons!" –

25] Here Cyrenius laughed and spoke: "Well – if that is the case – then stick with that; for then this house is safe from you!" – And the guests looked baffled, and did not know what to make of Cyrenius' words. –



## ***CHAPTER 241. - THE MALICIOUS PLAN OF THE JEALOUS GUESTS. THE GREAT FIRE IN OSTRACINE.***

**24 JUNE 1844**

01] But hereupon a prominent citizen of Ostracine asked what the governor meant by that, and said:

241,02] "How can this house be safe when one, perhaps by mistake, holds this old Jew for an arch sorcerer?"

241,03] And Cyrenius answered: "Because a frail human being cannot accomplish anything where the power of the eternal Deity holds His protective hand.

04] And this house, like no other in the whole wide world, stands under the most powerful protection of such a Deity - therefore it cannot be conquered!

05] Try to put your hands with malicious intent on this house and you will immediately see in whose hand it is!

06] All the guests from the city were taken aback at this and said to each other:

07] "The governor only wants to scare us, because he has no force with him.

08] If we would really lay our hands on this house and his body, surely, he would soon use a different language!

09] Therefore let us rise from the table and go to the city and then return in the evening with a strong military force,

10] and then we will see, whether the governor will still use the same language!"

11] After that the whole company rose from the table and went outside.

12] Then the citizens and the commander took their leave from Cyrenius and began their journey back to the city.

13] But Joseph turned to the group and said:

14] "Why do you already want to leave now, when the sun will shine for at least another hour?

15] Stay here until the evening and then everybody can escort Cyrenius to his ship as it is fitting,

16] for he will depart for Tyre tonight itself, and will therefore prepare and board his ship today."

17] But they excused themselves and said: "We still have some important business to do, therefore excuse us to your most intimate friend!"

18] At this moment the Infant came running up and said to Joseph:

19] "Just let them go into the town, for their business is of a nature that will serve to glorify My name!"

20] Joseph let the guests from the city go their way and went with the Infant to Cyrenius and told him, how they had excused themselves and what the Infant had said.

241,21] And Cyrenius said: "O my dearest brother, I know this kind!

22] Because I have visited your house and abandoned them, they are jealous and so full of bitterness that they do not know what to do with themselves.

23] But I am not worried about you, because I know under whose protection you are!

24] And the Infant spoke: "Oh, the parched road shall become hot for them!

25] They want to destroy our house, and that with fire!

26] But they shall not have time for that, for soon they will be very busy at home!"

27] The Infant had hardly finished talking, when half the city had turned into a sea of flames - and nobody thought about destroying Joseph's house anymore.

**CHAPTER 242. - CYRENIUS' WORRY ABOUT THE VICTIMS OF THE FIRE.**  
**"WHOSO DIGGETH A PIT SHALL FALL THEREIN." GOD IS "THE FAIREST**  
**JUDGE" TO ALL.**

**28 JUNE 1844**

01] Everybody was horrified when they suddenly watched the enormous plumes of smoke and flames rising in the sky.

02] And Cyrenius asked Joseph, whether one should not come to the rescue of all these terribly hard-pressed people.

03] But Joseph spoke: "I think, we should leave it!

04] For we cannot stop the fire anyway with our natural human powers;

05] but as regards the victims, they will meet us soon enough and at the right time.

06] Therefore let us be undisturbed here; whoever is in need shall come!"

242,07] And the Child spoke to Joseph: "Dear Joseph, look, this will also make your chest filled with gold and silver quite a bit lighter!

08] You too, Cyrenius, shall come away a few pounds of gold and silver lighter even before your departure today;

09] for those who have been here and secretly threatened us with the destruction of our house, will come back soon as greatly humbled friends and will ask you for your support.

10] So be prepared for that! But do not think that it was Me who, through My power, set fire to those houses;

11] for I do not do such things; and any kind of revenge is foreign to Me!

12] But I say to you: This was done to them by their servants;

13] for they bore an old grudge against them, because they were treated too harshly and miserably.

14] Today they found the right moment to take revenge on their masters,

15] so they set fire to all their mansions.

16] And so, without any of My interference, these lords of the world just fell into the pit they had dug for us!"

17] When Cyrenius had heard this from the Child, he immediately asked Him, whether these wicked servants should not be pursued.

18] And the Infant spoke: "O let it be! For firstly, they have done a good thing to their hard-hearted masters,

19] and secondly, they are already long gone over hill and dale with the stolen treasure, -

20] and thirdly, they will not escape their deserved punishment because they took the law into their own hands out of evil revenge!

21] Therefore our concern should be directed first at those who need our help!

22] But as far as the arsonists are concerned, they will be taken care of.

23] For look, God watches them wherever they are and knows their ways very well!

24] Therefore He can seize them anywhere, wherever they might be.

25] God is a fairest judge to all, therefore He will give them the proper reward for their deed!" –

26] Now an anxious Mary appeared and pointed Joseph to a host of armed warriors who were rapidly approaching the villa.

27] But the Infant spoke: "Do not be afraid; this is Cyrenius' defence guard, which the commander is now sending from the city for your protection!

28] Soon they will be followed by many citizens.

29] Therefore take care only of their shelter; everything else will be arranged!" –

30] And it was as the Infant had spoken: Cyrenius received his guard and they were soon followed by many fire victims.

**CHAPTER 243. – PRIDE GOES BEFORE A FALL. JOSEPH'S DIGNIFIED  
TREATMENT OF THE FIRE VICTIMS. CYRENIUS' NOBLE-MINDEDNESS  
TOWARDS THE VICTIMS. CYRENIUS AT JONATHAN'S.**

**1 July 1844**

- 01] When the fire victims arrived at Joseph's house, he recognized them as the lords who had recently been his guests, and asked them:
- 02] "Yes – my most respected lords, what has happened to the important business matters for which you had to hurry back not so long ago?
- 03] Did it consist of setting fire to your city?
- 04] Or did it consist of something completely different, something that must be kept secret from me?"
- 05] But the fire victims spoke: " Dear friend of humanity! – Do not tempt us miserable ones; for you see that we are the poorest beggars now!
- 06] But if you can support us in any way, please do so and we shall be your serfs for the rest of our lives!"
- 07] But Joseph spoke: "Only Rome's powerful patricians have a way with slaves and serfs,
- 08] but I have a way only with brothers, who are my equals – be it lords or beggars!
- 09] Therefore I shall give you as much support as possible.
- 10] But when you have recovered, please refrain from such business as you had planned for today!
- 11] For as painful as it must be for you, that your servants have shamefully robbed you and have set fire to your houses,
- 12] if you had done the same to me, it would have been equally and even more painful for me! "
- 13] Joseph now went to Cyrenius and asked him what one should give to these unfortunate people at once.
- 14] And Cyrenius spoke: "Just wait a little! My porters, which I had sent to my ship for my cash box, should arrive soon!
- 15] When I will have my bigger cash box, we will see how much can be given to those who are here, and those who will arrive."
- 16] Within one hour, the messengers brought a thousand bags of gold and silver.
- 17] Each bag, weighing ten pounds, consisted of two pounds of gold and eight pounds of silver.
- 18] Then Cyrenius spoke to Joseph: "Please distribute these bags among the fire victims, whereby each one receives one bag!
- 19] Keep the rest for those who will still arrive!
- 20] But I don't want to be present at the distribution, so I won't be recognized by all the people who will come here!
- 21] I shall go now with Jonathan to his house and hope to see you in the evening."
- 22] Joseph agreed to this and took over the distribution together with his sons; and

Cyrenius secretly left with his whole entourage and with Jonathan. — —

***CHAPTER 244. - JOSEPH'S ACTIVE CHARITY. A REAL CONSOLATION IN  
TIMES OF SERIOUS TROUBLE. AN EVENING VISIT AND DINNER AT  
JONATHAN'S.***

***2 July 1844***

- 01] Joseph was busy with the distribution until sunset
- 02] and instructed those without a shelter where they could spend the night;
- 03] for only a few dared to sleep in the city, partly because of the heavy smell of smoke,
- 04] and partly because of the uncertainty; because one still had to fear that the fire would catch some of the still unaffected houses.
- 05] When Joseph had finished his work, he secretly asked the Infant, whether it would now be safe to leave the house and go to Jonathan.
- 06] And the Infant spoke: "Why do you care about the house and its content?
- 07] The house, as well as its contents, belongs not to us but to the one who bought it.
- 08] Therefore just let us go to Jonathan, who surely has prepared some good fish for us!"
- 09] And Joseph spoke: "Of course, you are right;
- 10] but consider that we have a chest full of gold and silver, and cows, goats and donkeys!
- 11] Could these not be looted by our very many guests?"
- 12] And the Infant spoke: "Joseph, that is beyond Me now!
- 13] Talk about it with James, who understands these things much better than I do!" –
- 14] And Joseph promptly asked James the same question.
- 15] And James spoke: "Father, – Even if we would lose everything, but the Lord would remain with us, what would we have really lost then? –
- 16] Now the Lord walks with us to Jonathan's; what then should we fear to lose here in the governor's house?!
- 17] Let the whole world be stolen from you and keep the Lord, and you have more than if all the heavens and the earths were your useful property!
- 18] And so go, you honest man, without fear or worry, with the Lord to Jonathan, and you will be convinced, that we will not lose anything!"
- 19] These words of the Lord out of James' mouth calmed Joseph so much, that he immediately set off with his whole company for Jonathan's house.
- 20] There Joseph's arrival was already eagerly awaited by all.
- 21] And when they saw him, they ran towards him like children to their father, with Cyrenius also among them.
- 22] And as soon as Joseph and his family were thus accompanied into Jonathan's house, the well-prepared fish was quickly served and all had their dinner.

***CHAPTER 245. - CYRENIUS PREPARES HIS SHIP FOR DEPARTURE.  
JAMES REMINDS HIM OF THE GLOBE. JOSEPH'S ADVICE TO CYRENIUS:  
ACT FREE - ACCORDING TO THE WILL OF THE LORD. CYRENIUS TAKES  
THE THREE BOYS ALONG WITH HIM.***

***3 July 1844***

01] After dinner, Cyrenius gave order to his sailors to prepare the ship for departure.

02] And they went and quickly brought the ship in the best order.

03] James now approached Cyrenius and asked him whether, in his hurry, he had not forgotten the wonderful globe which he received as a present from the Infant a few days earlier.

04] At this question Cyrenius literally tore his hair and wanted to go after it immediately.

05] But James said: "O Cyrenius, do not bother about that; 06] for I have remembered what you had forgotten!

07] Look, here in this corner, wrapped in a cloth, is the globe and you need not hurry back to our house!"

08] Cyrenius was delighted at this; he took the treasure himself, carried it to the ship and gave it to the skipper for safekeeping.

09] When this matter was attended to, Cyrenius went over to Joseph and said:

10] "Listen to me, my most noble friend and brother, for I now have a good idea which should be put into action!

11] See, you now have a lot of people in your house and many of them will remain with you!

12] My children give you quite a lot of trouble and, as I have noticed, especially the three boys.

13] That is why I have decided for myself to take at least the three boys with me and to leave only the five girls with you."

14] And Joseph spoke: "Dearest brother, do what you think is best for you and it will be all right with me!

15] Act only according to the advice of the Lord and all will be well!

16] Therefore ask the Lord in this matter also, and do what He tells you!"

17] Cyrenius immediately turned to the Infant with the greatest love and respect and asked Him about Joseph's advice.

18] And the Infant spoke: "Yes, yes, take these three naughty boys with you, it is all right with Me!

19] I would not mind about Sixtus, but he too is fickle and does not accept anything from Me.

20] Therefore take him also with you and be very strict with them, otherwise they will grow into real worldly men!

21] You can leave the girls here; I like them much more than the boys, because they like Me much more!



22] But I do not like them more because they are girls but only because of their greater love to Me."

23] After this remark of the Infant, Cyrenius took the three boys and thanked Him for this splendid advice and had them brought on board the ship immediately.

**CHAPTER 246. – CYRENIUS' REQUEST FOR BLESSINGS AND THE  
INFANT'S DIVINE ANSWER, CYRENIUS' FAREWELL PRAYER, THE  
INFANT BLESSES THE DEPARTING PERSONS AND SOOTHES THEM  
WITH THE WORDS: WHERE YOUR HEART IS, THERE IS YOUR  
TREASURE, ALSO.**

**4 July 1844**

- 01] When the ship was ready for departure, Cyrenius went to the Infant, knelt before Him, and asked for His blessings with the following words:
- 02] "O Lord, great God and Creator and Father for all eternity,
- 03] who, after His eternal verdict, walks with us here on this dust, which we call earth and world, as a weak human child in our form,
- 04] You, my almighty Lord, a small sign of You makes all powers of infinity tremble,
- 05] o look merciful at me, a poor mite before You in the dust of my utter nothingness,
- 06] and You, Holy of all Holies, honour me, the most unworthy mite in the dust before You, with Your infinite and holy blessings!
- 07] Oh You my life, let Your most holy name be all my strength and power!
- 08] O You my most beloved Jesus, You ancient King of my heart, be merciful and compassionate towards me, a poor, weak sinner, and grant that my love for You grows continuously!
- 09] O you, my eternally beloved Jesus, take my love as a small token of gratitude for Your infinite grace and mercy which You grant me with every breath!"
- 10] Cyrenius' heart was breaking out of love and he wept from joy and could no longer speak.
- 11] But the Infant cheerfully jumped up to Cyrenius, embraced and kissed him many times and spoke to him:
- 12] "O do not weep, My dearest Cyrenius, just see how much I love you!
- 13] In My love for you lies My greatest blessing!
- 14] And I say to you, when you remain who you are, you will be Mine forever and your soul shall never feel nor taste death for all eternity!
- 15] But as you have asked Me now for this blessing, I will also ask you to never betray Me!
- 16] And I ask you not for My sake, but for the sake of the world;
- 17] for death would fall upon it if it would recognise Me before My time!"
- 18] After these words, the Infant embraced Cyrenius once again and kissed him.
- 19] Then Cyrenius spread out his arms and said with the most moving voice:
- 20] O God, – my God, – my great God! – Who am I, that You kiss me with the mouth, out of which the whole creation emerged?!
- 21] O You shining heavens, and You earth and You powers of the heavens! – Look, look here!
- 22] The One who has created You and me, is here in front of me and blesses me with His

omnipotent hand!

23] When, when o earth will you realise it, – grasp the great grace of this time, in which the feet of your Creator and Lord are touching your soil?!

24] O you most holy soil, carrying the Lord, will you ever realise the greatness of such grace in gratitude and utter humility?

25] O you consecrated ground, how difficult it is to leave you!" –

26] At this moment the Infant lifted Cyrenius up and did not let him kneel down again.

27] Thereupon Tullia and Maronius Pilla also came over, and the Infant blessed them all, and all of them wept, because they had to part again.

28] But the Infant spoke: "Oh, oh, we do not part! – For where your heart is, there is your treasure, also!

29] At this they calmed down and raised themselves from the ground. –

**CHAPTER 247. - JOSEPH BLESSES CYRENIUS. JESUS' FAREWELL  
WORDS TO CYRENIUS: "HAVING BECOME ONE IN LOVE WE SHALL  
ALWAYS AND ETERNALLY BE TOGETHER IN SPIRIT!" CYRENIUS'  
DEPARTURE. JOSEPH AT JONATHAN'S.**

**5 July 1844**

01] Thereupon Joseph went to Cyrenius and blessed him and his whole house.

02] Mary went over as well and blessed Tullia and her companions.

03] And Joseph spoke to Cyrenius: "Brother, with this blessing I am also expressing my heart's desire, which is:

04] Let the five girls remain with me, so that I can be their father!

05] For eventually you will have children of your own anyway and they might have a hard time to get along with these girls later on.

06] With me no disharmony will ever arise about it; the reasons are well known to me and you."

07] And Cyrenius happily granted Joseph's wish and entrusted the five girls to him;

08] for he loved the girls, because they were so receptive and obedient, with well-built bodies and charming personalities.

09] When they had agreed upon this, Cyrenius embraced Joseph and spoke:

10] "Brother, if it is the will of the Lord I hope to see you again soon."

11] And the Infant, standing next to Joseph spoke: "Amen, say I! – If not here, then surely in My kingdom!

12] For I say to you, we shall not stay much longer in this country, because we are too well-known.

13] But if we move out, we will retreat in seclusion, so that no man will come under judgment.

14] However – having become one in love, we shall always and eternally be together in spirit!

15] Where your treasure is, that is where you will be with your heart, in which the main treasure resides.

16] When I have become a costly treasure in your heart, – truly, you shall never lose Me;

17] for where I live in love, there I am truly at home and will never move out of such an abode!

18] So let Me live constantly in your heart and I will not be secluded from you!

19] For love alone can bear my presence, like one fire can bear the other!

20] And everything else that is not fire, will be destroyed and devoured by it.

21] Therefore I withdraw from the world, so that My fire will not seize and destroy it!

22] But never ask: 'Lord, where are you?' – Then I will not tell you: 'Here I am!'

247,23] Instead, ask your heart carefully, whether it loves Me and in your heart, which loves Me, I will call out to you:

24] 'Here I am at home in all the fullness of My love, grace and compassion!'

25] Now board your ship confidently and a good wind shall carry you to Tyre – Amen." –

26] Now governor Cyrenius said goodbye to Joseph for the last time and boarded his ship.

27] And immediately a strong wind came and hurried away with the ship.

28] Thereupon Joseph went with his family to Jonathan's house and stayed there overnight.

## ***CHAPTER 248. – WHILE FISHING IN THE MORNING, JOSEPH AND JONATHAN NOTICE AN ENDANGERED SHIP AND RESCUE IT.***

***8 July 1844***

01] On the morning of the next day, Joseph was, as usual, the first to get up and soon woke up his family as well.

02] But Jonathan, who just stepped out of his room to see how the day was going to be for his business, spoke to Joseph:

03] "But dear friend and brother! What are you doing already so early in the morning urging your loved ones to get up?"

04] Should you not better wait until the Lord rises from His sleep?

05] Would this not be the best time to arise in the morning?!

06] So I ask you, at least let your family sleep a few hours more!

07] And you, instead, come with me and my men on board my boat and we will go for a morning fishing trip!"

08] Joseph was pleased with this offer and let his family sleep longer, and boarded a big fishing boat together with Jonathan.

09] Jonathan's fishermen arranged the nets and then strongly wielded the oars,

10] and already in one hour, the fishermen reached a spot with fish aplenty.

11] When they had arrived at this fishing spot and the sun was almost rising,

12] Jonathan noticed a Roman ship located about an hour's distance away, and did not know what to make of it!

13] Therefore he spoke to Joseph: "Brother, I know the sea there;

14] it is shallow and full of sandbanks, and a Roman seafarer can easily get stuck there.

15] Therefore we should come to his rescue immediately!?"

16] Joseph agreed to this; they immediately rowed towards the ship and reached it within half an hour.

248,17] And indeed, it was a big Roman ship, carrying an envoy to Cyrenius.

18] They took him on board and he asked Jonathan, to do everything possible to rescue the ship.

19] Jonathan took the towrope of the big ship and had his men on his boat row energetically.

20] And in less than half an hour, the ship was set afloat.

21] The Roman emissary showered Jonathan with presents and then sailed on toward the morning.

22] But Jonathan returned home with gold and silver instead of fish and stopped the fishing for this morning.

**CHAPTER 249. – THE INFANT'S QUESTION ABOUT TODAY'S CATCH. THE  
FISH-LOVING CHILD'S RESPONSE TO JOSEPH'S REPRIMAND: "I AM AT  
HOME WHEREVER I AM LOVED!" THE BIG CATCH AT THE INFANT'S  
BEHEST.**

**9 July 1844**

01] When after about three hours, Jonathan returned with his catch of gold and silver, everybody was already up and looked at the still burning city.

02] Only the Infant and James ran towards Joseph and Jonathan as they were approaching the shore.

03] And as they stepped ashore, He greeted and kissed both of them and asked Jonathan whether he had already made a good catch of fish.

04] And, while embracing the Infant most lovingly, he spoke:

05] "O You my life and my love! – The fishing was quite a different matter today!

06] But with Your almighty help, I have rescued a stranded Roman ship, which carried an envoy to Cyrenius.

07] A lot of gold and silver fish fell into my net there and I stopped the fishing for today."

08] And the Infant spoke: "That is all very well;

09] but as I was looking forward to some fresh fish today, I would have appreciated it much more if you had brought real fish instead of your gold and silver fish!"

10] But Jonathan spoke: "O You my life, look, suspended along the shore there are a lot of cisterns full of the best fish, so we will get some very fresh fish from there!"

11] And the Infant smiled and spoke: "Yes, if it is like that, then you may keep your gold and silver fish from today!

12] But I am already quite hungry; will it take a long time until a fish can be prepared?"

13] And Jonathan spoke: "O no, You my life, in half an hour we will sit at the table!"

14] But Joseph said to the Infant: " You are really a little beggar!

15] Look, we are not at home here, therefore we should not act as if we were at home!

16] So be patient, something to eat will emerge, but begging for it is inappropriate in a strange house!"

17] But the Infant spoke: "So what! – I am at home wherever I am loved.

18] So wherever I am at home, I can do and speak as I like.

19] Yet Jonathan should not empty his cisterns without reward,

20] so let him throw out a net into the sea and he will promptly make a big catch for us! – Jonathan, do it!"

21] And Jonathan immediately threw a big net into the sea and caught an unbelievable amount of the best fish.

22] Then the Infant said to Joseph: "Look, if this is within My power, I should be able to ask Jonathan for some good fish, shouldn't I?" – At this moment Joseph became silent and Jonathan could not help himself out of sheer gratitude.

***CHAPTER 250. – JOSEPH RETURNS HOME WITH JONATHAN. THE HOUSE IS FOUND EMPTY AND RANSACKED. JOSEPH GETS VERY ANGRY ABOUT THIS. A MEMORABLE STATEMENT BY THE INFANT.***

***10 July 1844***

01] And Jonathan now took ten of the best fish and handed them over to his cook for immediate preparation.

02] Then he helped his assistants with putting the fish partly in casks and partly in the smokehouse.

03] Within a quarter of an hour, the fish was prepared and all of Joseph's relatives went for the morning meal.

04] When they had finished the meal, it was almost noon already, and Joseph spoke:

05] "But now it is time for us to go home!

06] And you, brother Jonathan shall accompany me and stay with me today!"

07] And Jonathan spoke, his heart full of joy:

08] "O brother! – That is what I like to do most; for you know my infinite and boundless love for you!"

09] Then Jonathan again took three large casks of the best fish and went, together with Joseph and his family, in a most cheerful mood to the villa.

10] On arrival, they were astonished to find none of the people who had lost their houses in the fire,

11] and the house was totally empty and all the rooms were left open.

12] While looking at his house, Joseph said: "That is not a good sign;

13] for this is the work of thieves! – Only they are the sort that escapes after robbing a house, while the honest man stays!

14] Please, my sons, go inside and check whether there is anything left in the house and then come and tell me!"

15] And the four sons went and examined the house and found it completely looted except for the cattle in the stable.

16] The pantry was also empty and there was not a penny in the money box.

17] When the four sons saw all this, they became very sad and went back and told Joseph everything.

18] Upon hearing this, Joseph became very angry about the wickedness of men, repaying their beneficiaries with such gratitude!

19] And he spoke full of wrath: "Truly, if it would be in my power to punish such disgraceful people, I would have had fire rain from heaven on the head of such thieves!"

20] At this moment the Infant went to Joseph and spoke: "Look – father Joseph, you are in a bad mood today!

21] The thieves have still left Me to you; how could you be so angry with them?

22] Look, the thieves have actually done a great service to your house by cleaning it so thoroughly!



23] For truly, wherever a house (the heart of man) is not going to be cleaned like that in the future, I will not move in!

24] This house is cleaned now from all the impurities of the world and it pleases Me well!

25] For in the first place, it is open in all its rooms and drawers,

26] and secondly, it is completely purified and therefore quite suited for Me to move in! – Therefore do not be angry at the thieves, so that their sins may not become greater!"

27] Joseph and all the others took these words to heart, – and the little Child finally said:

28] "Look, I am treated by all men just like these fire victims have treated your house, and yet I will not let fire rain from heaven!

29] So do not curse those who do evil for good and you shall be the true children of the one Father in heaven!" – With these words, Joseph calmed down completely and he happily went back into his house.

***CHAPTER 251. – MARY CRIES ABOUT THE THEFT OF ALL HER CLOTHES INCLUDING ALL THE TABLE AND BED LINEN. JONATHAN'S CONSOLATION AND NOBLE GESTURE. O MOTHER, ACCEPT IT FROM MY HEART AND FROM MY HAND!" THE INFANT BLESSES JONATHAN.***

***11 July 1844***

- 01] When they had all entered the house and Mary found out that even her and Eudokia's wardrobe had been completely looted,
- 02] her eyes filled with tears, and so did Eudokia's, and she spoke to Joseph:
- 03] "Look at that, even the dress I was wearing in the temple has been taken by these wicked people!
- 04] Truly, this hits me really hard and causes pain in my heart!
- 05] We only have the absolute minimum of clothes anyhow and yet we have to lose even these most essential ones!
- 06] Everything may be offered to the Lord, but yet is it is painful for me, because it was the only dress I had for a necessary change of clothes!
- 07] Now I only have this worn, common dress and not a penny to buy myself something to change!
- 08] Truly, this is very painful! But still more painful is that these wicked thieves have even stolen the clothes of the little Child!
- 09] Now He only has the shirt He wears on his body; how will I be able to buy Him a second one?
- 10] O You my poor child, look, look, now I cannot dress You anymore in a fresh shirt everyday, which You liked so much!"
- 11] At this moment Jonathan came to them, deeply moved, and he spoke: "O you most noble and holy mother of my Lord! – Do not grieve; for I have gold and silver now!
- 12] I will give it all to you with the greatest joy, and you may use it according to your needs!
- 13] I do know very well, that the Lord of all splendours and glories does not need my gold and silver; but He, who dresses all animals and trees and the whole world so magnificently, will not allow His mother's body to be unclothed!
- 14] But just the same, for the sake of my soul's happiness, I would like to offer you all my treasures!
- 15] O mother, please accept it from my heart and from my hand!"
- 16] Mary looked at Jonathan in a most friendly manner and spoke:
- 17] "O Jonathan, how great and noble you are! – For me, your will counts as the act!
- 18] And if it pleases the Lord, then I would like to ask you for some support for the little Child.
- 19] But should it not please the Lord, then I have already received all from your heart and will never cease to be grateful to you for that!"
- Now the Infant joined them and spoke to Jonathan: "Dear Jonathan, do what the mother asks of you and you should be greatly rewarded in the future!

21] For look, we are really poor now and that even more so, because for the sake of mankind I must not perform miracles anymore!"

22] Thereupon Jonathan ran back to his house full of joy and brought all his gold and silver and laid it at Mary's feet.

23] When Mary and Joseph saw this, they both wept from joy.

24] But Jonathan wept with them and could not be thankful enough to God, that he was worthy of such grace from the Lord in coming to Mary's aid.

25] And the Infant blessed Jonathan and spoke to Mary: "Look, that will provide us with a fresh shirt; therefore be cheerful again!" – And all became cheerful and happy.

**CHAPTER 252 - THE BLESSING OF THE LORD IN THE HOUSE OF  
JOSEPH. THE FAMILY'S AMAZEMENT AND GRATITUDE. JAMES TALKS  
ABOUT THE MIRACLE OF THE WHEAT GRAIN.**

**12 July 1844**

01] During this talk, Joseph's sons took care of the cattle, milked the cows and the goats and obtained an unusual amount of the fattest milk.

02] When they had finished with that, two of them went to a field with already fully ripened wheat, cut several sheaves and rubbed them until they soon had a big basket full of the purest wheat.

03] And the two other brothers took the basket with the pure wheat, brought these to the two hand mills which Joseph himself had made and ground up the grain within a short time.

04] And through the blessing of the Lord, they obtained twice as much flour as there had been grain in the basket before.

05] And all this work was finished in three hours. And when the flour stood there in the sun in two baskets,

06] Joseph came out and asked the sons from where they had taken this wonderful flour.

07] And when the sons told him how they had obtained this flour, he looked at the rubbed sheaves and spoke:

08] "How is this possible? – I only see ten sheaves! Should the two big baskets of flour have been filled up with these?"

09] And the sons spoke: "Yes father, so it is! Through the grace of God we have obtained this flour within a very short time out of the ten sheaves;

10] and God's blessings were upon the sheaves and upon us, – hence this abundant yield!"

11] And with his heart utterly moved, Joseph thanked God, and went inside the house again to tell it to everyone.

12] And everybody went outside and looked at the flour and they all said:

13] "This is impossible, completely impossible by natural means!"

14] On an inner impulse, James picked up one of the wheat grains lying on the ground and spoke:

15] "This is astonishing for all of you, that so much flour came out of ten sheaves!

16] But who of us has ever been surprised when after sowing a small grain into the earth we saw an ear of corn with a hundred grains arising out of that one grain?

17] And yet this everyday wonder is much greater than this double increase in flour, because it increases one grain a hundred times!

18] If the ten sheaves would have given only one basket of flour, no one would have been surprised about that although one basket is as good a miraculous gift from God as two baskets.

19] Nobody is surprised also about an ear of corn with a hundred grains because one is already used to this miracle.

20] But I ask you, is it right, to admire God only when He does something extraordinary although the ordered, ordinary occurrence is of a far greater significance, because it bears witness to the same infinite grace, omnipotence, love and wisdom of God all the time?"

21] This speech of James caused quite a stir. And everybody praised the Lord that He had given such wisdom to men. – Then the sons took the flour and started to prepare a good lunch.

**CHAPTER 253. – THE LUNCH OF FISH AND HONEY BREAD. THE  
WILFUL THEFT OF THE HOUSEHOLD EQUIPMENT AND THE LITTLE BOWL  
OF THE INFANT. THE RELENTLESSNESS OF THE LITTLE CHILD AGAINST  
THOSE WITH MALICIOUS INTENT.**

**13 July 1844**

01] Within an hour, a good lunch was prepared consisting of five well cooked fish and fourteen honey breads;

02] for the honey was the only thing in the pantry left by the thieves.

03] A good drink had also been served on the table which Joseph and Mary had prepared themselves with water and lemon juice added with a little honey.

04] It was only when the meal was ready and on the table, that Joseph's sons thought about the cutlery, such as spoons, forks and knives, which, in Joseph's house, were generally made of wood.

05] But even these things of low value had not been spared by the thieves!

06] And so Joseph had food on the table but not even the most basic cutlery.

07] Here Joseph went into the kitchen and asked the sons what sort of table setting this was;

08] how one can put food on the table without cutlery!

09] But the sons spoke: "Father, look, one grill and two pots and a single, miserable cooking spoon, one knife and one wooden fork is what they have left us with, –

10] everything else has been taken away from us; therefore we also have to put the milk in one single milk container, because all the milk pots are gone!"

11] When Joseph had seen all this, he went with the only spoon and the only knife and fork into the dining room and spoke to Jonathan:

12] "There – brother! – See, this is all the cutlery that is left! – Truly, this is wantonness and it should be punished!

13] I can put up with a theft of valuable things and a theft out of dire need!

14] But neither is applicable in this theft;

15] instead, this is pure wantonness and this should be punished by the Lord!"

16] After this reasoning, all sat down at the table and Joseph divided the fish with the one knife and used the one fork to place a portion on each plate and divided the honey bread in the same way.

17] But when the Infant did not have His little bowl in front of him, He asked Joseph whether it was stolen as well.

18] And Mary spoke: "Surely, my beloved son of God, for otherwise it would be in front of You!"

19] And the Infant spoke: "Truly, Joseph is right; that was wantonness and it shall be punished forever and eternally!

20] Whoever does evil and does not know it shall be taught, and so shall he who does so when in need!

21] But whoever knows what is good but still does evil out of sheer satanic wantonness, is a devil from the foundation of hell and has to be punished with fire!"

22] Thereupon each ate his portion with his bare hands.

23] But when they had hardly finished their meal, one could hear a terrible howling from outside.

24] What was it? – It was the thieves, who had wantonly stolen Joseph's household equipment in order to destroy it.

25] Each one of them was coiled around a glowing serpent and cried out for help; but the Infant did not lend his ear to them, and drove them into the sea by His almighty power, where they all perished. – This was the only time that the Infant had shown Himself unrelenting.

## ***CHAPTER 254. - THE HOWLING CLOTHES THIEVES IN FRONT OF JOSEPH'S DOOR. THE SERIOUS SPEECH OF THE INFANT TO THE THIEVES. THE RETURN OF THE CLOTHES.***

***15 July 1844***

01] After a short time one could hear a howling from a distance again as if it came from the city and a huge crowd of people could be seen moving towards Joseph's villa.

02] "What is it now?" Joseph asked the astonished Jonathan.

03] And he replied: "Brother! Like everything else, the Lord will surely know this much better than we do!"

04] And James said to both of them: "Do not worry, for these are the clothes-thieves!

05] The Lord's power has caught up with them; they are now paying for their desecration against the holy clothes;

06] for he who will wear or touch them will be seized by an inner fire and turned to ashes.

07] Therefore they now run about howling and moaning and will beg us to take these clothes ourselves out of their half-burned houses in the city, –

08] which we want to do indeed; but the Lord will take care of these evil-doers first!"

09] When James had just spoken these words, the howling clothes-thieves were already in front of Joseph's door.

10] And they cried for help and for rescue. And Joseph went outside with Jonathan.

11] When he came outside, thirty despairing men were crying out to him:

12] "Almighty God Jupiter, help us and rescue us, for we have committed an outrage against you since we did not recognise you!

13] But now we have recognised you; we therefore beg you, kill us or take the clothes that belong to your house out of our houses!"

14] At this moment the Infant came outside and spoke: "Listen, you wicked thieves!

15] As you have taken the clothes, you also bring them back here again!

16] If you don't, death shall be your lot!" 17] When the thieves heard this, they said:

18] "That is the young God, we must follow Him otherwise we are lost!"

19] And all of them suddenly ran away and brought back all the stolen clothes on iron rods.

20] For no one could touch these clothes with their bare hands.

21] When the clothes had been returned, the Infant dismissed the thieves and did not punish them any further. – And Joseph happily took the clothes back and carried them inside the house.



***CHAPTER 255. – MARY'S INNER NOBILITY AND BEAUTY. HER PITY FOR THE THIEVES. TO BE GOOD TO YOUR ENEMIES AND BLESS THEM IS PURE GODLINESS. "BECAUSE YOU (MARY) HAVE ACTED LIKE GOD DOES, YOU ARE SO BEAUTIFUL NOW. FOR GOD IS THE HIGHEST BEAUTY, SINCE HE IS THE HIGHEST LOVE!"***

***16 July 1844***

- 01] When Mary saw her clothes again, she became quite happy, yet she felt pity for those who had brought them back.
- 02] For she thought by herself: 'Surely these people have not received anything from the gold, and therefore took these poor clothes in their desperation.
- 03] Now they will probably suffer greatly.
- 04] O if they were still here, I would happily give them the clothes or at least enough money to buy some clothes for themselves!
- 05] At this moment the Infant came to His mother and spoke:
- 06] "But mother, – you are so beautiful today! – If you knew how beautiful you were, you would become vain right away!"
- 07] Mary smiled and said to the Little one, who caressed her:
- 08] "O my dearest Jesus! – Am I not beautiful everyday?"
- 09] And the Infant spoke: "O yes, you are very beautiful, but sometimes even more so.
- 10] And tonight you are especially beautiful! – Truly, you are now surrounded by a thousand archangels and each one wants to be next to you!"
- 11] But Mary did not understand the words of the Infant and kept on looking around to see whether any archangels were to be seen.
- 12] But she only saw what was inside her room and therefore asked the Infant:
- 13] " Well then, where are those thousand archangels, since I am not able to see even one?"
- 14] Here the Infant said: "You are not allowed to see one, otherwise you would become vain!
- 15] But you are so beautiful before all the archangels of the heavens, because so much mercifulness has arisen within your heart, almost equal to Mine!
- 16] For look, to bring your enemies to a just and humane penance is right and agreeable to God, and so it should be on the earth;
- 17] but to forgive your enemies for their sins with all your heart and then even to do good to them and bless them, - see, that is purely divine!
- 18] That creates the infinite power of divine love; 19] for human love is too weak for that!
- 20] And because you have acted in the same way as God does, you are so beautiful! – For God is the highest beauty, since He is the highest love!" –
- 21] But go now and do what your heart desires, and My kingdom of love shall be yours and you shall forever be the queen therein!"

22] Here Mary immediately sent Jonathan after the thieves. When he had brought them back, Mary showered upon them the money that Jonathan had given to her and to Joseph.

***CHAPTER 256. - THE POWER OF LOVE. JOSEPH'S HOUSE BECOMES KNOWN. JOSEPH'S WISDOM EMBARRASSES THE FAMOUS AND RICH PEOPLE OF THE CITY. THE POSITIVE AFTERMATH.***

***17 July 1844***

01] But this divine gift made the thieves fall on their faces and they cried out:

02] "Such kindness, such generosity, it does not exist anymore among men; only the immortal gods can reward their enemies still!

03] We deserve only punishment here for committing a great sin against you high gods!

04] Yet instead of giving us our well-deserved punishment, you pay us and bless us for our wicked deeds!

05] Are you not gods therefore? – Yes, you are certainly the highest lords of the heavens; for this is shown by your actions, never witnessed before by men like us! –

06] Therefore honour, praise and glory to you from all men on earth!

07] And the thrones of the princes of the earth and all her crowns shall bow down forever in front of your great glory!"–

08] At this moment the thieves rose to their feet and went away full of awe and gratitude –

09] and then made it known in the whole city; and all the residents were shaking due to such closeness of the gods and went furtively about and did not dare to work from sheer awe.

10] But soon the prominent citizens of the city came to see Joseph and asked him if it was really true what the mob in the half- burnt down city was shouting about.

11] And Joseph spoke: "Concerning the good deed done for them, their shouting is appropriate,

12] for my wife has indeed treated them so!

13] But that they consider us gods, is a bad testimony for you - you famous and rich people;

14] for through that, the mob reveals your great hardheartedness, because it does not see anything godlike in you!

15] Do as my wife has done, and what my whole house is doing and the mob will soon stop considering the occupants of my house as gods!"

16] When the famous and rich citizens of the city heard Joseph's speech, they were shocked and embarrassed and went away.

17] And they were convinced that Joseph was merely a good and wise man, but certainly no god.

18] From then onwards, Joseph's house was left in peace.

19] And his family still lived there undisturbed for another half year and was respected and esteemed by everyone.

20] The Infant also did not perform any miracles during this time and everything went its natural way. But Jonathan spent more time with Joseph than at home; for here he felt most blessed in his soul. – –

**CHAPTER 257. - HEROD'S DEATH; HIS SON ARCHELAUS SUCCEEDS HIM IN THE GOVERNMENT. - THE ANGEL OF THE LORD ORDERS JOSEPH TO RETURN TO ISRAEL - THE WONDERFUL PREPARATION FOR THE JOURNEY. - JOSEPH HANDS OVER EVERYTHING TO JONATHAN AND ASKS HIM TO COME AFTER HIM. - THE FAREWELL**

**18 July 1844**

01] Around that time, Herod, the murderer of the innocents, died and his son Archelaus succeeded him to the throne.

02] During this time, James told this to Joseph and Mary.

03] But Joseph spoke to James: "I quite believe you, but what difference should it make for me?"

04] And James spoke: "Father! – The Lord has not told me about that!

05] But as the Lord always spoke to you through the mouth of an angel about what you must do, so He will do it also now.

06] For it would not be according to the divine order, if a son would tell his father what he has to do!"

07] Joseph spoke: "Do you really think that the Lord will does this with me?"

08] And James spoke: "Father! – I have heard it within me now:

09] 'Tonight itself, I will send you My angel in a lucid dream, who will announce My will to you!

10] And when he will announce it to you, you shall act immediately according to his words!'

11] When Joseph had heard such from James, he went outside and prayed to God and thanked Him for such a premonition through the mouth of his son.

12] Joseph prayed for a long time and only after three hours did he go back into his house and take rest.

13] But as he was sleeping on his bed, giving his tired limbs a rest from work, an angel of the Lord appeared in his dream and spoke to him:

14] "Get up, take the little Child and His mother and go to the land of Israel; for those who wanted to kill the Child are dead!"

15] When Joseph had heard this, he quickly got up and told it to Mary.

16] And she spoke: "Let the Lord's will be done, always and forever!

17] But are you only talking of the three of us? Should your children remain here then?"

18] And Joseph spoke: "O no; for what the angel has said to me applies to my whole house!

19] The Lord often spoke to the prophets in this way, as if He was dealing only with them;

20] but the speech of the Lord was always meant for the whole house of Jacob."

21] This speech was understood by all and the sons went outside in order to prepare everything for the departure.

22] But they came back astonished, because everything was already prepared for the

departure and for each person there was a donkey, fully packed with all the essential needs for the journey.

23] Joseph handed over all the remaining items to Jonathan, who had spent the night here, blessed him and told him to follow him to Nazareth in a year's time.

24] And the Infant also blessed and kissed him. Jonathan wept at this sudden departure.

25] And before sunrise, Joseph mounted the donkeys and headed inland. –

***CHAPTER 258. - THE HOLY FAMILY REACHES THEIR NATIVE  
COUNTRY AFTER AN ARDUOUS JOURNEY. JOSEPH'S FEAR AND MARY'S  
ENCOURAGEMENT. THE LORD'S ORDER TO MOVE TO NAZARETH.  
ARRIVAL IN NAZARETH.***

***19 July 1844***

- 01] After ten arduous days of travel, Joseph arrived happily in Israel with his family and rested on a mountain with some people, who earned their livelihood there by raising cattle.
- 02] Here Joseph made detailed inquiries about the situation in his native country.
- 03] But as he heard from the people there, that Archelaus, a son of Herod, now reigned after succeeding his father,
- 04] and that he appeared to be even more cruel than his predecessor, Joseph and his family became very scared.
- 05] And he thought about turning back and moving to Egypt again, or instead, to Tyre.
- 06] For although, while in Egypt, he had heard through James that Archelaus now reigned in Jerusalem,
- 07] he had not heard that this king exceeded his father in cruelty.
- 08] And this new information made Joseph so fearful, that he wanted to turn back at once.
- 09] But Mary spoke to him and said:
- 10] "Joseph, the Lord has given us the order to move, then why do we fear the human king Archelaus more than the Lord?"
- 11] And Joseph replied: "O Mary, my beloved wife, your question is right;
- 12] but look, I know that the ways of the Lord are incomprehensible and I know that the Lord often leads his people through death, right from the time of Abel.
- 13] Therefore, I fear now that the Lord will lead me also through death!
- 14] And the more I think about the cruelties of the new king in Jerusalem, the greater my suspicion.
- 15] Therefore I have now decided to turn back early tomorrow morning.
- 16] Truly, if the Lord wants to send us to our deaths, He should rather send lions, tigers and hyenas than this Archelaus!"
- 17] So Joseph firmly decided to turn back.
- 18] But during the night, the Lord's Spirit Himself came to Joseph in a lucid dream.
- 19] And Joseph received the order from God Himself to move to Nazareth.
- 20] Thereupon Joseph quickly got up and went very early.
- 21] And on the same day, he arrived in the villages of Galilee.
- 22] And still on the same day, he reached the city of Nazareth and took up permanent residence there, so that prophet's words would be fulfilled: "He shall be called a Nazarene!" -

## ***CHAPTER 259. – A DELIGHTFUL EVENING SCENE ON SALOME'S ROOF. CORNELIUS DISCOVERS THE SMALL CARAVAN.***

***20 July 1844***

01] But where in Nazareth was Joseph's accommodation? – Where did he dismount, and where did he enter?

02] In the early chapters, when there was talk about Joseph's departure from Bethlehem to Egypt, it has been said that Joseph had requested the wealthy Salome in Bethlehem to lease his farmstead near Nazareth for him.

03] Had Salome done that? – Yes – she not only did what Joseph had asked, but she had bought the farmstead for herself with this double intent:

04] So that in case Joseph or one of his children would ever return, this farm could be handed over to him as his full property;

05] otherwise she would keep this farm, so sacred to her, for herself, in memory of this most noble family.

06] She regarded this farm as such a sacred place, that she did not dare to live there, even less put tenants in it.

07] But in order to be able to live close to this property, she bought a plot in the neighbourhood and built a nice little house on it, and lived there with her servants, and was visited once in a while by Cornelius.

08] And it so happened that Cornelius visited Salome on his way back from some duties, when Joseph returned to Nazareth again.

09] It was a lovely evening, the moon was full and not a star in the sky was dimmed by a cloud.

10] This beautiful evening, Salome went with Cornelius to the roof of her house, which was quite close to the main street and faced Joseph's farm to the east, at a distance of around seventy fathoms.

11] Both of them looked often in the direction of the former house of the noble family and Cornelius spoke, as many times before, to Salome:

12] "I can still see the apparition in Bethlehem vividly before me, like in a beautiful and exalted dream, and this farm reminds me of it all the time.

13] But the apparition in Bethlehem was of such a sublime beauty, that it becomes more of a mystery to me, the more I think about it!"

14] And Salome answered: " Yes - friend Cornelius! – I can also not grasp it, how I could have stayed alive at the magnificence of that occurrence!

15] But that is the difference between you and me, that I cannot help myself, as you know, and must pray to the Child in my heart all the time;

16] while you perceive the whole incident more as a sublime story.

17] And so I had this image in my mind: if this family would ever come back here, I could not live for happiness!

18] If they would live over there at the farm – o God! – What a feeling would it be for me!

19] Truly, all the heavens would be joined together on this roof!"

20] And Cornelius spoke: "Yes, you are right, that would be a most sublime event for me

as well!

21] But what would we do, in case this most sublime family of gods would pass by here and we would recognize them from a distance?"

259,22] And Salome spoke: "O friend! – Do not speak about that, – that would kill me out of sheer bliss!"

23] When the two had their talk on the roof in a manner pleasing to God, and it had become quite late,

24] Cornelius suddenly noticed something that appeared like a little caravan, at a distance of about two hundred fathoms and said to Salome:

25] "Look there, some people wandering late at night! – Are they Jews or Greeks?"

26] Salome, what would you do now if it was the most sublime family?"

27] And Salome became really frightened now and spoke: "But please, do not always talk about it and do not always awaken new wishes in me that cannot be fulfilled!

28] What would you do then on such a blissful occasion?"

29] Truly, I would also fare badly! – But look, the caravan has halted and I see a man hurrying straight towards us! – Come, let us see who it is!?"

30] And both of them went to meet the man. And the man was a son of Joseph, who came with a jar to get some water from the house.

31] But the two did not recognize him; for it was the will of the Lord, for the sake of their well-being.



**CHAPTER 260. - JOEL AS MESSENGER INQUIRES ABOUT THE  
DISTANCE TO THEIR HOME TOWN. JOSEPH WANTS TO SLEEP IN THE  
OPEN WITH HIS FAMILY. JOSEPH'S SONS MEET SALOME DURING THEIR  
SEARCH FOR WOOD AND FIRE.**

**22 July 1844**

01] When Joel had drawn the water, he asked both of them how far it still was to Nazareth.

02] And Cornelius spoke: "My friend, just look over there, and you will already see the walls of the city!

03] A child will easily reach them in a quarter of an hour and as such you are already almost in Nazareth itself."

04] Joel thanked them for this information and carried his water back to his group.

05] When he arrived there, Joseph asked him what kind of information he received at the little house.

06] And Joel spoke: "A woman and a man approached me very warmly, gave me water and told me that this is Nazareth already!

07] And I thought, if this is the city then we are not far any more from our farm either."

08] And Joseph spoke: "My dear son, you are absolutely right;

09] but do you also know to whom it belongs now after three years?

10] Can we move into our former house?

11] Look, we therefore have to sleep in the open again and then we shall see tomorrow where we can find a permanent place to live!

12] But go now with your brothers and get some wood and fire from somewhere!

13] For it is a bit cool here on the hill of this mountain valley; therefore we must make a small fire to warm ourselves a bit!"

14] Thereupon the four sons went to the same little house and found the two still there.

15] And they told Salome about their needs and asked for some wood and fire.

16] Now Salome and Cornelius inquired about the whole gathering, who they were and whether they could be trusted.

17] And the sons spoke: "We are coming from Egypt and are the most honest people in the world!

18] And we intend to buy some property here in Nazareth;

19] for while we are basically Nazarenes ourselves, a certain necessity forced us into exile in Egypt for three years.

20] But since our exile has been resolved now, we are back again to find us a new place to live."

21] After Salome and Cornelius had listened to the four, they promptly gave them sufficient wood and fire and the sons carried it back to Joseph.

22] Joseph immediately prepared a fire with the wood and all warmed themselves by it. –

***CHAPTER 261. – THE SUSPICIONS OF SALOME AND CORNELIUS ABOUT THE SMALL CARAVAN. SALOME AND CORNELIUS HAVE A LOOK AT THE GATHERING AND RECOGNIZE THE HOLY FAMILY.***

***23 July 1844***

01] Now Salome and Cornelius were wondering a lot about these people from Egypt and who they could be.

02] Cornelius spoke: "In my view, these four men, who appear to be quite young, closely resemble the sons of that wonderful man we both dealt with in Bethlehem.

03] And their language also had a typical Nazarene tone to it.

04] You – my most respected friend! – This remarkable man, called Joseph, most probably had emigrated to Egypt, as I have read in the letter from my brother in Tyre.

05] How – if this were the same Joseph?

06] Should we not go to these people and have a look at them? And if it would be so,

07] should we not do our utmost to feed these noble people immediately and give them the best of care?"

08] When Salome had heard this, she almost fainted with bliss and spoke:

09] "Oh friend! – You are surely right, it will be like this; this is the Holy Family for sure!

10] Therefore let me wake up my servants and let them come with us to the resting place of the Holy Family!"

11] Thereupon Salome went and woke up all her servants.

12] And within half an hour all in Salome's house were on their feet.

13] When everything was ready, Cornelius said to Salome: 14] "Now let us go and see who this family is!"

15] Then Salome called everybody in the house together and the whole group went to the place where Joseph rested around a low fire.

16] When they arrived there, Cornelius said to Salome:

17] "Look there! There next to the fire, – is that not young Mary, Joseph's wife, with her child?

18] And that old man, – say, is that not Joseph, that wonderful man, whom we came to know in Bethlehem?"

19] Salome opened her eyes wide, stared at them and slowly recognized the group that Cornelius had pointed out to her.

20] Now Salome was beside herself; she sank down and fainted and Cornelius had to bring his companion on her feet again.

## ***CHAPTER 262 - CORNELIUS AND SALOME WELCOME THE HOLY FAMILY. THE TIRED TRAVELLERS TAKE UP RESIDENCE IN THEIR OLD HOME.***

***24 July 1844***

01] When Salome had recovered from her fainting fit, she said to Cornelius: "O friend, that is too much for a frail human being!

02] Give me a little time to recover and then I will go there and tell this Holy Family that I have maintained their farmstead!"

03] Cornelius said: "You know what, I have a better idea since you feel too weak; let me go over there on your behalf and I will give the good news to the family about what you have done for them!

04] For look, there is not much time to lose! They will be very tired and need a good place to rest as soon as possible; therefore I will go there in your place."

05] When Salome heard this from Cornelius, she spoke:

06] "O friend! You are right, but I have pulled myself together now and I want to come along with you."

07] After this resolve, both of them went over to the family.

08] And Cornelius began to speak: "God, the Lord of Israel is with you as well as with me and my companion Salome!

09] I was able to recognize you and I no longer doubt that you, old and honest man, are the same Joseph with his young wife Mary, who moved to Egypt three years ago in order to escape the Herod's persecution.

10] Therefore I was in a hurry to come here, to welcome you and introduce you to your property."

11] After hearing this from Cornelius, Joseph got up and asked him:

12] "Good man, who are you then, that you can tell me this?

13] Tell me your name and I will follow you at once!"

14] And Cornelius spoke: "Most noble old man! See, I am the governor of Jerusalem,

15] and my name is Cornelius, and I am the same who gave you a small token of friendship in Bethlehem!

16] Therefore do not worry about anything, for look, my friend Salome from Bethlehem has faithfully carried out your request!"

17] Here Salome fell to Joseph's feet and spoke with a trembling voice:

18] "What joy for a poor sinner like me that my unworthy eyes can see you again!

19] O come, please come into your house! For my house does not deserve such grace!"

20] Joseph was moved to tears and spoke:

21] "O great God, Father! – How good You are! You always lead the tired traveller to the best destination!"

22] After that he embraced Cornelius and Salome and immediately moved into his farmstead with them.

***CHAPTER 263. – SALOME HANDS OVER THE HOUSE AND THE FARM  
TO JOSEPH IN THE BEST CONDITION. JOSEPH'S EMBARRASSMENT. THE  
HUMILITY AND LOVE OF SALOME. HER MARVELLOUS TESTIMONIAL OF  
THE LORD. A WORD FROM THE LORD ABOUT LOVE.***

***25 July 1844***

01] Salome's servants, Cornelius' entourage and Cornelius and Salome themselves helped in putting in all of Joseph's luggage.

02] And Salome led the family into the living quarters' well- equipped rooms.

03] And Joseph was amazed about how clean his house had been kept.

04] All the beds were new and the old ones cleaned; also the stable was most suitably equipped.

05] And Joseph saw for himself, how perfectly Salome had taken care of him.

06] And he asked Salome: "O dear friend, you see that I am poor and have no means whatsoever! – How will I ever be able to repay you?"

07] When Salome had heard this question from Joseph, she answered in tears:

08] "O my most noble friend! What do I have in this world, that I did not receive from Him, who is resting now in the arms of His tender mother?!

09] And I have received it truly and eternally from Him, who is with you; so how could I call mine what belongs to Him in all eternity? –

10] O – the Lord, holy for all eternity, did not come from abroad to us poor sinners,

11] but instead He came into His eternal property; therefore we cannot give Him anything, pretending that we own something;

12] we only bring back to Him what belongs to Him with the power He has given to us.

13] And therefore any remark from your side about being in my debt is forever invalid; for I am rewarded already for all eternity by the grace of this infinitely high duty to take care of you,

14] and that all the more as I feel in the depths of my soul that I am certainly most unworthy of this holy duty!"

15] Now Salome could not talk anymore; therefore she kept silent and wept for love and bliss.

16] The Infant became awake and lively at this moment.

17] When He had raised Himself cheerfully on Mary's lap, He looked very lovingly towards Salome and Cornelius and spoke:

18] "O Salome, and you too, My Cornelius! – Look, I slept, but your great love has awakened Me!

19] Truly, that is sweet and pleasant; therefore it should remain forever!

20] From now on I want to sleep in My divine essential being for everybody, but for those who come to Me with their love I will awaken forever!

21] Salome, go to bed now, but bring Me a good breakfast tomorrow!"

22] Salome was highly delighted now that she had heard the Lord speaking for the first time. And everyone praised God and went to bed.

**CHAPTER 264. – SALOME INVITES JOSEPH'S FAMILY FOR BREAKFAST.  
THE FAVOURITE FOOD OF THE CHILD JESUS. LOVE AND JOY OF THE  
INFANT AND SALOME. "O LORD! – WHO CAN LOOK AT YOU WITHOUT  
TEARS IN THE EYES?"**

**26 July 1844**

01] Early next morning everybody was already up in both houses and Salome was busy in her kitchen with the preparation of a good breakfast, consisting of honey bread, a good fish soup and several fish of the best quality,

02] the best of which were trout, that were often caught in the mountain streams in the area.

03] When breakfast was ready, Salome rushed to Joseph's house and invited Joseph and his household for breakfast.

04] And Joseph spoke: "But look, my dear friend, why do you go through so much trouble just because of me?"

05] Look, my sons are also busy in the kitchen with the preparation of breakfast;

06] therefore you should not have bothered so much with your hospitality towards us!"

07] But Salome spoke: "O my most noble friend! Please do not disdain the work of your maid and come!"

08] Joseph was very touched, called everybody in his house together, and went with Salome to her house for breakfast.

09] They were received by Cornelius at the doorstep, who welcomed all of them most heartily.

10] And Joseph was full of delight when he recognised his friend Cornelius in the sunlight.

11] Then they all went into the beautiful dining room, where the breakfast was served for the guests.

12] And when the Infant saw the fish on the table, He smiled and ran to Salome and said to her:

13] "But who told you that I like to eat fish so much?"

14] You have made Me very happy with this, for look, this is above all My favourite food!

15] I also like to eat honey cakes and fish soup with wheat bread;

16] but fish is My favourite food of all.

17] You have taken such good care of Me and therefore I've really grown fond of you!"

18] This praise from the Infant again caused Salome to be beside herself with joy, and she wept.

19] The Infant spoke: "Salome, look, you are always weeping when you rejoice at something!"

20] But look, I do not like weeping, therefore you must not always weep when you are joyful, then I will like you even more!

21] Look, I would like to sit on your lap when I am eating My fish;

22] but I do not dare it, because you might weep too much out of sheer joy!"

23] Salome pulled herself together as much as she could and said to the Infant:

24] "O Lord! – Who can look at you without tears in the eyes?"

25] And the Infant spoke: "Just look at My brothers, they see Me every day and yet they do not weep when they see Me!"

26] Thereupon Salome calmed down again and all went to the table, and the Infant sat in Salome's lap.

## ***CHAPTER 265. - CORNELIUS REASSURES AN ANXIOUS JOSEPH WHEN THE LATTER ASKS QUESTIONS ABOUT THE NEW AND CRUEL KING ARCHELAUS.***

***27 July 1844***

- 01] After breakfast, Joseph talked with Cornelius about king Archelaus and made detailed inquiries about what kind of man he was and how he ruled.
- 02] And Cornelius said to Joseph: "Most noble man and friend! If my brother Cyrenius and I would not control him, he would be ten times more cruel than his father was.
- 03] But with good reason we have restricted his power and so he is only allowed to collect his taxes, and that too only according to our judgment!
- 04] And in case a taxpayer refuses to pay his taxes for any reason, he is obliged to consult us;
- 05] failing which we can at any moment serve him the emperor's certificate of deposition, which I always keep in my hands, with which he could be declared outlawed before all people.
- 06] Therefore you do not have to be afraid of this king in the least;
- 07] for it would be not advisable for him to act against the existing rules,
- 08] otherwise tomorrow he is not a king anymore, but an ostracized, outlawed slave of Rome!
- 09] Friend! I think, you do not need much more for your reassurance.
- 10] I am the governor of Jerusalem now, and my brother Cyrenius is more or less the vice-emperor of Asia and Africa and we are your friends!
- 11] I think, in a worldly sense, there cannot be any better guarantee than this for anyone, anywhere.
- 12] And the greatest guarantee for your security and peace lives in this house!
- 13] Therefore be calm now and carry out your work, well known to me, without fear!
- 14] And during the assessment of your taxes I will select a category for you that will not hurt you!"
- 15] When Joseph heard this from Cornelius, he became very happy and calm again.
- 16] Cornelius discovered Cyrenius' five girls and Eudokia, who seemed to be well known to him, but whom he did not recognise here.
- 17] Therefore he asked Joseph some further details about these individuals.
- 18] And Joseph told him the whole truth without any reserve.
- 19] And when Cornelius came to know how humane and unselfish Joseph had behaved towards his brother Cyrenius, Cornelius was beside himself also.
- 20] He was absolutely delighted and kissed Joseph a hundred times and called his brother's children and caressed and kissed them as well.
- 21] And he said to Joseph: "When your relation with my brother is such, you shall be tax-exempted for all times like every citizen of Rome; and today I will fix the imperial letter of privilege to your house myself!" – Joseph was moved to tears at this and everybody wept with him for joy.



## ***CHAPTER 266. - CORNELIUS ASKS IF CYRENIUS IS AWARE OF JOSEPH'S DEPARTURE. JOSEPH'S ANSWER. CORNELIUS EXPLAINS THE SECRET ROMAN LETTERS.***

***29 July 1844***

01] Afterwards Cornelius asked Joseph, whether Cyrenius already knew that Joseph had left Egypt.

02] And in case he would not know, if one should inform him immediately out of political considerations.

03] And Joseph said: "Friend, do as you wish as regards your brother;

04] but I request you to tell him that he should not come here too soon!

05] And when he wants to come at all, he should come under cover of darkness, so that nobody notices his appearance here,

06] and no unnecessary attention is attracted, which could be harmful for me and the Child and disturb the divine peace in my house!"

07] When Cornelius heard this from Joseph he said:

08] "O my most noble friend, do not worry! – For as far as approaching someone incognito is concerned, we Romans are masters!

09] And when I come to Jerusalem tomorrow, it shall be my first business to quietly inform my brother through a secret letter about your presence here.

10] I would, if need be, send Archelaus himself to my brother with such a letter, and he would not know what is written in it, even with the letter unsealed in his hands!"

11] But Joseph asked Cornelius, how such a secret letter would be possible.

12] And Cornelius spoke: "O most noble friend! Nothing easier than that!

13] Look, you take a long strip of parchment, about a finger wide.

14] Then you wrap this strip like a snail shell around a round stick, so that the edges touch each other nicely.

15] When the strip is wound over the round stick, one writes his secret lengthwise across the windings of the parchment strip.

16] And Cyrenius has a stick of exactly the same thickness as mine.

17] When I have finished the letter, it will be unwound from the stick and sent safely and openly to my brother through someone, –

18] and without the same stick, no one will be able to decipher the content of such a letter even vaguely;

19] for on the strip he discovers nothing but single characters or at the most, syllables, from which he can never deduct what is written on the strip! – Joseph, did you understand me?"

20] And Joseph spoke: "Absolutely, dearest brother!

21] Thus you may write to your brother; because no one will likely decipher the secret!"

22] After that Cornelius turned to Eudokia and discussed various things with her.

**CHAPTER 267. – CORNELIUS ASKS ABOUT THE MIRACLES OF THE  
INFANT. JOSEPH'S REFERENCE TO HIS SPEECHES. THE IMPORTANT  
WORDS OF THE INFANT TO CORNELIUS.**

**30 July 1844**

01] When Cornelius had talked at length with Eudokia about everything he needed to know,

02] and he had gathered from her statement that everything was exactly in accordance with the letter of his brother,

03] he turned to Joseph again and spoke to him:

04] "Most noble man! – Now I am clear about everything.

05] I do not want to ask you anymore how and why you had left Egypt again when you were taken care of well there;

06] for I know, that you will only do what your God commands you to do.

07] And as you act according to the will of your God, your action is always good and just before God and the whole world that thinks and wants and acts according to the law as I do.

08] But there is one thing that I would like to ask you before my departure to Jerusalem,

09] and that is: see, I still have a vivid picture in front of my eyes of all these miraculous apparitions of your Child around the time of His birth!

10] But now I see this miraculously born child in front of me and this miraculous quality seems to have left Him! – Say, how is this to be understood?"

11] And Joseph spoke: "O friend, how can you ask such a strange question?!

12] Have you not heard the Child talking to Salome earlier?

13] Do all children of this age talk with such depth of wisdom?

14] Is not such speech from the mouth of a three-year-old child as miraculous as any of those birth manifestations in Bethlehem?"

15] Cornelius said: "You are right, but as far as such a miracle is concerned, it is nothing new to me.

16] For look, in Rome I have heard children at the age of one talk properly, to everyone's astonishment; and their birth was absolutely natural!

17] For this reason your extraordinary Child has not satisfied my high expectations."

18] Now the Infant Himself came to Cornelius and spoke to him:

19] "Cornelius, be happy with the burden I have put on your shoulders;

20] for look, you would have to turn into a mountain of granite, if you wanted to carry a bigger load of My will on your shoulders!

21] Therefore do not ask more of Me until the time has come!

22] And at the right time I will surely do enough for you and the whole world!"

23] When Cornelius heard this, he did not investigate further and had his luggage arranged for his departure.

## ***CHAPTER 268. - CORNELIUS AFFIXES ROME'S LETTER OF PRIVILEGE TO JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE ROMAN TAX CODE. THE INFANT'S PROMISE TO CORNELIUS.***

***31 July 1844***

01] In a few hours, Cornelius was ready to depart, but before that he went with Joseph to the latter's house and affixed - as promised - a small iron plate with the emperor's image and signature to the door.

02] And this small plate was the imperial sign of privilege or rather a letter of privilege according to which the tenure king of that particular country could not exercise any rights over such a house.

03] When Cornelius had finished this work, he took his pencil and, under the small plate on the door, he wrote in the Roman language:

04] Tabulam hanc libertatis Romanae secundum iudicium Caesaris Augusti suamque voluntatem affigit Cornelius Archidux Hierosolymae in plena potestate urbis Romae. ('This Roman letter of privilege was issued by Cornelius, commander of Jerusalem, by the grace and command of Caesar Augustus, in full power of the city of Rome.')

05] When Cornelius had also finished this inscription, he said to Joseph:

06] "Now, dearest friend, your house and trade is exempted from any tax which Archelaus may levy upon you.

07] You only have to make the small yearly tax payment to Rome, which, hopefully, you can easily spare!

08] You can pay this small amount either in Jerusalem itself or here at the Imperial office in Nazareth, against a receipt.

09] And so you are now secured against all persecutions from the side of the tenure king; but put a little grill on top of your plate, so that nobody can steal it or spoil my signature!"

10] Joseph thanked the Lord God in his heart for so much grace and he blessed Cornelius many times.

11] And the Infant also came to Cornelius and spoke to him:

12] "Now listen to Me a little! For I also want to tell you something as a great reward!

13] Look, you have done a great service to the house of Joseph;

14] and in the future, I shall do the same for your whole house!

15] Even if this house is not owned by My foster father, but only the property of Salome because she has bought it,

16] I will compensate your whole house manifold for what you have done to this house of Salome!

17] You have fixed the imperial sign of privilege with your own hand to the door and have added your signature.

18] Therefore I Myself will spread My spirit over your whole house in the future, through which you will receive the eternal freedom of the heavens of God and within it the eternal, immortal life in My kingdom!"

19] Cornelius lifted up the Infant, kissed Him and smiled at this strange promise;

20] for how could he have grasped what the Infant had said to him in such divine depth of wisdom!

21] And the Infant spoke: "You will only understand that when My spirit will come upon you!" – Then the Infant ran to His James again. Cornelius now got ready for his departure, and Joseph started to arrange everything in the house according to his needs.

***CHAPTER 269. – JOSEPH BRINGS THE WHOLE HOUSE IN ORDER AND  
TALKS WITH MARY ABOUT A VISIT TO FRIENDS AND RELATIVES. THE  
STRANGE BEHAVIOUR AND PECULIAR WORDS OF THE INFANT.***

***1 AUGUST 1844***

- 01] When Joseph, with the active help of Salome, had brought his whole house in order, he thanked God and was full of joy that he had been received so well again in the land of his fathers.
- 02] On the next day he spoke to Mary, after he had handed over the care of the house to his four elder sons for the day:
- 03] "Mary, my most loyal wife! – Look, we have many relatives and good friends around here;
- 04] go and take the Infant, James and, if you want, Eudokia with the five girls a well,
- 05] and let us reserve today for a visit to all the relatives, friends and acquaintances which live in Nazareth and the near vicinity,
- 06] so that also those who have missed me for a long time can enjoy our company again!
- 07] And on this occasion I might be able to get some work assignments again, so that I can earn enough to feed all of you."
- 08] Mary agreed happily to this suggestion and arranged everything for this purpose.
- 09] Only the Infant initially did not want to go. But when His mother coaxed him, He let Himself be dressed and taken along nevertheless.
- 10] But He spoke: "I will walk with you; but nobody should carry Me!
- 11] But – while I walk, I want to walk in between you, everywhere you want to go!
- 12] Now do not ask Me why I want it in this way, for I do not just speak out about why I want something in this or that way!"
- 13] And Mary spoke to the Infant: "Oh, you will like to be carried when you become tired!"
- 14] And the Infant spoke: "Oh, do not worry! I will never become tired, when I do not want to;
- 15] but when I want it, I will become tired, – but then My tiredness is a judgment for men!
- 16] For only the sin of men can bring Me to a point where I want to be tired because of the sin of men!
- 17] But above all I tell you, that no one of you should betray Me!
- 18] For it is enough, that you know that I am the Lord!
- 19] You know it without judgment; for your hearts are from the heavens.
- 20] But if men on earth would know it before the right time, they would be judged and would have to die!
- 21] That is why I did want to come along initially.
- 22] I had to tell you this beforehand; and now that you know it, I will come with you.
- 23] But do understand that I will only walk and not be carried, so that the earth will know by My steps, Who is stepping on her ground!"

24] All kept these words carefully in mind and then promptly set out on their visit to the relatives, friends and acquaintances.

***CHAPTER 270. – THE EARTHQUAKE UNDER JESUS' FEET FRIGHTENS  
JOSEPH UND MARY. REFUGEES FROM THE CITY WARN JOSEPH NOT  
TO GO FURTHER. JOSEPH, CALMED DOWN BY JAMES, ENTERS THE  
TOWN WITHOUT FEAR.***

**2 AUGUST 1844**

01] When Joseph set off with his people with the Infant walking in between Joseph and Mary, they all noticed a distinct shaking of the earth at each step of the Infant.

02] Joseph noticed this phenomenon quite markedly at times and said to Mary:

03] "Wife! Do you feel how the earth is reeling and trembling?"

04] And Mary said: "O I feel it very strongly;

05] I hope we are not caught on the way or in the city by a big storm which often likes to set in after an earthquake!

06] And look, the earthquake continues, which I have never seen before!

07] Oh – surely, a terrible storm will follow!"

08] And Joseph said: "I do not see a cloud in the sky anywhere,

09] but nevertheless you may still be right!

10] If this earthquake does not stop very soon, it will not be advisable to move to the city!"

11] But as they were approaching the city, they quickly encountered a large number of refugees, who warned them not to go there.

12] For they said: "Friends, wherever you come from, do not go into the city!

270,13] For half an hour ago a terrible earthquake occurred, and the houses are about to collapse any minute!"

14] Joseph himself was in doubt about what to do now, – should he go on walking or should he return?

15] But James went to Joseph and told him secretly:

16] "Father, – do not be afraid; this earthquake will not harm anyone in the least, neither in the city nor in the surroundings!"

17] Joseph immediately understood where the earthquake came from.

18] And therefore he promptly encouraged all the members of his family to go into the city.

19] But when the refugees from the city saw that the old man was making his way towards the city,

20] they spoke among themselves: "What kind of man is this, who has no fear of the earthquake?"

21] And they pondered back and forth; but nobody recognised him.

22] And then they wanted to move back into the city as well;

23] but when the Infant walked on and the earth started to shake again, they continued to flee. – But Joseph fearlessly went into the city with his family.

***CHAPTER 271. - REPENTANT PEOPLE UNWITTINGLY BEAR TRUE WITNESS. JOSEPH'S WORDS TO THEM: THE LORD DOES NOT LOOK AT A TORN HAIR SHIRT, "BUT ONLY AT THE STATE OF THE HEART, AND THE CONDITION IT IS IN!" JOSEPH IS WARMLY WELCOMED IN THE CITY BY HIS FRIEND.***

**3 AUGUST 1844**

01] As Joseph entered the city, he saw the people running about in great fear and confusion,

02] and everybody cried: "God, the Lord of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, has brought retribution upon us!

03] Tear your clothes, cover your heads with ashes and do penance, so that the Lord may have mercy on us again!"

04] Some of them pushed their way to Joseph and asked him if he too would not tear his clothes.

05] But Joseph spoke: "O brothers, if you want to do penance, do it in your hearts, not in your clothes!

06] For the Lord looks neither at the colour of the clothes nor whether they are whole or torn;

07] the Lord looks only upon the heart, to see in which state it is!

08] For bad things can dwell in the heart, like evil thoughts, desires, a bad will;

09] indecency, whoring, adultery and similar things.

10] It is better to tear such things out of your hearts, if they exist, than to tear your clothes and put ashes on your head!"

11] When the despondent Nazarenes heard this, they stepped back and talked among themselves:

12] "Look! – Who is this man, who talks like this, as if he were a great prophet?!"

13] But the Infant tugged at Joseph and said smilingly:

14] "You have talked well; that was just what these blind ones needed!

15] But now the earth shall be at rest again, so we can walk on without disturbance!"

16] Thereupon the family went to a friend of Joseph, who was a doctor in Nazareth.

17] When he saw Joseph, he rushed towards him, flung his arms around his neck and shouted:

18] "O Joseph, Joseph, my dearest friend and brother! How - yes - how is it that you come here now at this difficult hour?!"

19] Where have you been for three long years?

20] Where do you come from now? What angel of God has brought you here?"

21] But Joseph spoke: "Brother, lead us to your house and give us water to clean our feet,

22] then you shall know everything, where I have been and where I came from!" – And the doctor immediately fulfilled Joseph's request.



***CHAPTER 272. - JOSEPH TELLS HIS DOCTOR FRIEND ABOUT HIS EXPERIENCES. THE DOCTOR'S GREAT SYMPATHY AND HIS OWN EXPERIENCES. JOSEPH'S ANGER ABOUT ARCHELAUS. JOSEPH IS CALMED DOWN BY THE INFANT.***

***5 AUGUST 1844***

01] When Joseph and his family had cleaned their feet and came into the doctor's living room where several patients were being treated, Joseph and his family members sat down and he gave the doctor a brief outline of his flight and reasons behind it.

02] After hearing all this, the doctor became very angry about Herod, but even more so about his living son, Archelaus.

03] He described him as even more ruthless than his father.

04] And Joseph spoke to him: "Friend, what you have told me about Archelaus is something I have already heard on my journey here.

05] But look, the Lord has taken care of me!

06] I live in my own free house now and I am equal to a citizen of Rome and therefore I have nothing to do with this tyrant!"

07] And the doctor spoke: "O friend, look, this is my house, it also had the imperial letter of privilege;

08] but recently Archelaus' tax collectors came, tore the small plate from the door and seized me the very next day.

09] A similar thing can happen to you; therefore be on guard!

10] For I tell you: Nothing is sacred to this devil of a king; who he does not rob, is robbed by his lessees, and his most despicable collectors!"

11] After hearing this from the doctor, Joseph became very angry about Archelaus and spoke:

12] "Let him only try it, and I tell you, this ruthless tyrant will have a rough time!

13] For I have the governor's word that Archelaus will be treated as a traitor, if he will not respect the privileges of Rome!"

14] And the doctor spoke: "O brother! Do not put too much faith in such privileges;

15] for no fox can wriggle itself out of a trap more cleverly than this Greek beast!

16] See, what did he do in my case, when I complained about it in the Roman court?

17] He immediately accused the solicitor of acting arbitrarily and had him thrown into prison.

18] And when I came to claim damages, I was dismissed with the reply:

19] 'The king, as has been proven, has taken no part in this crime, so it is only the culprit, who can be held liable as he acted on his own accord.

20] But nothing had been found on him; so the damages were to be borne by the landlord, as in the case of a common theft!' – And see, with this I was dismissed!

21] The small plates were fixed again on the door of my house; but only Archelaus knows best for how long that will be!"

22] When Joseph heard this, he became very angry and did not know what to say. But the Infant spoke:

23] "O do not get annoyed about this powerless one; for look, there is still a Lord, who is capable of much more than anyone in Rome!" – Thereupon Joseph became calm. But the doctor was surprised; for he did not yet know the Child.

***CHAPTER 273. – THE DOCTOR'S SURPRISE AND PREDICTION ABOUT  
THE WISE LITTLE CHILD. THE INFANT'S REPLY TO JOSEPH. THE  
DOCTOR'S HOPE FOR THE MESSIAH AND THE INFANT'S CORRECTION.***

**6 AUGUST 1844**

01] After a while, the doctor started to talk again and spoke to Joseph:

02] "But friend, in the name of the Lord, what kind of Child do you have there, who talks as wisely as a high priest in the temple of the Lord, when he stands in front of the inner sanctum attired with the Thumim und Urim?"

03] Truly, He spoke only a few words and they cut right through me!

04] You have of course told me in your narration, how the Child was the reason for your flight to Egypt and you have vaguely mentioned some exceptional events during His birth,

05] from which I guessed, that a great prophet could develop out of this Child, if He would go through the Essenes' school of the prophets.

06] But as I have heard Him speak just now, He does not need the school of the Essenes;

07] for He is already a prophet of the first class equal to Samuel and like Elijah and Isaiah!"

08] Joseph became a bit embarrassed and did not immediately know how to respond to his friend.

09] Then the Infant came over to Joseph again and told him:

10] "Leave the doctor to his faith; for he too is called to God's kingdom, but he shall not know too much at one time!"

11] When the doctor overheard these words, he spoke full of surprise:

12] "Yes, yes, brother Joseph, I was right!

13] That Child is already a prophet, who will announce the imminent coming of the Messiah, who is promised to us;

14] for He just spoke clearly of the kingdom of God, for which I am supposed to be called as well!

15] Only now I realize why this little Samuel has just consoled you with a Lord who is mightier than Rome!

16] Yes, when the Messiah comes, then of course the same will happen to Rome as has happened once to the city of Jericho at the time of Joshua!"

17] But the Infant spoke: "Oh friend, – What are you talking about? Do you not know what is written: 'no prophet will come from Galilee'!?"

18] And if so, who would be the One, who comes from the tribe of David?!

19] I tell you, when the Messiah comes, He will not draw His sword against Rome,

20] but will only announce His spiritual kingdom through His messengers on earth!" –

21] Here the doctor was taken aback and after a while he spoke: "Truly! Through you, God has visited His people!" –

22] And Joseph agreed with the doctor, but didn't add any further explanation.

**CHAPTER 274. - THE INFANT TESTS THE CONFIDENCE OF THE SICK  
PEOPLE AND HEALS THE FIRMLY BELIEVING GIRL WHO SUFFERS  
FROM GOUT.**

**7 AUGUST 1844**

01] After this discussion, the Infant ran cheerfully about and asked the sick, who were afflicted with all kinds of ailments, what was wrong with them and how they had fallen ill.

02] And the sick said: "You cheerful little Boy, we have told that already to our doctor, who will cure us after some time.

03] But now in front of all the guests, it would be impolite to confess our sins which surely are the cause of all our ailments;

04] therefore go to the doctor, and he will tell if it is appropriate for You to know!"

05] Here the Infant smiled and spoke to the sick:

06] "Would you not tell Me the reason for your ailments, if I were most definitely able to help you?"

07] And the sick spoke: "O yes, in that case, of course;

08] but for that you would still have to learn a lot! It will take a while before you become a doctor."

09] And the Infant spoke: "O not at all! I am already an experienced doctor and My skills are such that I can heal you instantaneously.

10] And I say to you: Whoever among you who will confide in Me first, shall be healed first!"

11] Among them was a girl of about twelve years old, afflicted with gout, who liked the Child and said to Him:

12] "Come here You little doctor, I want to be healed by You!"

13] At this moment the Infant ran to the girl and told her:

14] "Because you have called Me first, you shall be healed first!

15] Look, I know the reason for your ailment, it is caused by those who have conceived you;

16] but you are without sin, and therefore I say to you: 17] Get up, walk freely and remember Me!

18] But do not tell anybody that I have healed you!"

19] And behold, the twelve-year-old girl instantly got up and walked freely.

20] And when the other sick people saw that, they wanted to be healed as well.

21] But the Infant did not go to their beds, because they had not asked for it before.

**CHAPTER 275. – THE DOCTOR'S AMAZEMENT AND HIS HUMBLE  
CONFESSION. THE INFANT CALMS THE DOCTOR AND TELLS HIM THE  
BEST (HIS) HEALING METHOD. THE DOCTOR HAS FAITH AND BECOMES  
FAMOUS FAR AND WIDE THROUGH HIS HEALING WORK. JOSEPH TAKES  
THE HEALED GIRL INTO HIS HOUSE.**

**8 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] And when the doctor saw the miraculous healing of the young girl, who he had previously declared to be entirely incurable, he was beside himself.
- 02] He could hardly breath from amazement and spoke to Joseph:
- 03] "O brother, I implore you, move away from here; 04] for now my heart is really in my mouth!
- 05] See, I am a sinful creature and obviously, your Child carries the spirit of the Lord within Him!
- 06] But how can a poor wretch exist before the omnipotent spirit of the Almighty?!"
- 07] At this moment the Infant went to the doctor and spoke to him:
- 08] "Man! – Why do you become foolish now and frightened of Me?
- 09] What evil did I do to you that you are scared of Me?
- 10] Do you think by any chance that the healing of the girl was a miracle?
- 11] O I tell you – not at all; you only have to try to heal the other sick people in this way and they will get better!
- 12] Go there, awaken their belief, put your hands on them and they will be cured instantaneously!
- 13] But first you yourself have to firmly believe that you can help them, that you can cure them without fail!"
- 14] After hearing this from the Infant, he decided to have firm faith, went to the sick and did what the Infant had told him.
- 15] And look, all the sick people got cured, paid their fees to the doctor and praised God, that He had given such power to men!
- 16] In this way, the image of a miracle Child before the eyes of the world was fortunately taken away as well.
- 17] But the doctor became very famous after that,
- 18] and many sick people came to him from far and wide and were cured.
- 19] And when the twelve-year-old girl saw that the doctor healed so miraculously as well, she thought, 'the Child has accomplished it through the doctor', and praised the doctor's wisdom from then onwards.
- 20] The Infant did not complain, for He had empowered the doctor precisely in order to dispel suspicion.
- 21] Only Joseph spoke to the girl: "Girl, remember that all power comes from above!
- 22] And since you are not in anyone's employment right now, come into my house and you

shall be taken care of!" – And the girl immediately joined Joseph and went with him.

**CHAPTER 276. - THE HOLY FAMILY VISITS THE TEACHER DUMAS.  
JOSEPH NARRATES HIS STORY. THE LITTLE CHILD WITH THE SCHOOL  
CHILDREN.**

**9 AUGUST 1844**

01] After a few private talks about pending carpentry work, the doctor accompanied Joseph to see another friend, a school teacher in Nazareth by the name of Dumas.

02] Upon arrival, the doctor returned home and Joseph went inside Dumas' house.

03] But after all these years, Dumas did not immediately recognise his old friend Joseph.

04] Joseph asked him, whether he really didn't recognise him anymore.

05] And Dumas scratched his head and said:

06] "There is indeed a striking resemblance between you and a certain Joseph, who had problems here because of a temple prostitute three years ago;

07] this otherwise very honest man had to go to Bethlehem to be registered and that with his whole entourage.

08] I do not know what happened to him afterwards.

09] And look, there is a great resemblance between you and this dear man, – but surely, you would not be that man?"

10] And Joseph said: "But what if I were indeed him, would you not give me any work in my old profession as a carpenter?"

11] For look, I live in my old farmstead again!" 12] After Dumas heard this from Joseph, he said:

13] "Yes, now it is clear, it is you indeed, my old friend and brother Joseph!

14] But for Heaven's sake, where are you coming from now?"

15] And Joseph said to him: "Brother, first give me a wet cloth, so that I can clean my feet from the dust, then you shall hear everything that should be said!"

16] And Dumas immediately sent for a wet cloth and a jug of water and Joseph's whole entourage cleaned their feet and went into Dumas' school building.

17] Here Joseph briefly told his story of the past three years.

18] Meanwhile the Infant spent some time with a few school children, who happened to be there and were learning to read and write.

19] One of the school children read something to the Infant, but made a few mistakes.

20] The Infant just smiled and quickly corrected the reader's mistakes.

21] This was soon noticed by all the children and they asked Him when and where He had acquired such reading skills.

22] And the Infant spoke: "O I was born with it!"

23] All the children started to laugh and went to Dumas and told him all about it; now he became aware of the Child and began to ask Joseph about the Child's abilities.

**CHAPTER 277. – DUMAS' AMAZEMENT AND QUESTIONS CONCERNING  
THE CHILD. JOSEPH'S SOCRATIC-PHILOSOPHICAL ANSWER. DUMAS'  
PRAISE OF THE PHILOSOPHERS. THE INFANT'S SPEECH TO DUMAS  
ABOUT PROPHETS AND PHILOSOPHERS.**

**10 AUGUST 1844**

01] And Joseph, observing how Dumas troubled himself to understand whence the little Child had obtained such wonderful skills, said to him:

02] "Brother, I remember very well that you have studied the wisdom of the Greeks and have often recited to me the wise principles of Socrates.

03] And there it was said: Man does not need to learn anything, for he only needs to awaken his spirit by way of remembrance.

04] And then man will have what he needs for all eternity.

05] See, you have often told me this as a wise teacher of youth!

06] Now look, when your principle is thus correct, what more is needed?!

07] Here you see nothing else than a living confirmation of your Socratic principle.

08] My Child's spirit has been awakened early on by a process inherent to His nature and therefore this Child-man has enough for all eternity,

09] so we do not need to give Him anything in addition to what He already has within Himself!

10] Do you not consider this true, as true as one and one is two?"

11] At this Dumas clutched his brows and spoke with a certain pathos:

12] "Yes, so it is! – And so it was me, who got something of this wisdom across to these Jewish fools!

13] But of course you are not one of those; for you are virtually the only one with whom I can have an intelligible discussion about the divine Socrates, Aristotle, Plato and others.

14] Surely, we also have some great men, such as the prophets and the first great kings of this people;

15] but in practical matters, they are not as useful as the old wise men of Greece.

16] For our prophets spoke a language that they perhaps understood as little as we do now.

17] In contrast, the old Greeks are something else really;

18] for they say clearly and precisely what they want and are therefore of the highest value to practical people.

19] That is surely due to the fact that they were teachers of the people, just like me."

20] Joseph smiled on this occasion; for he saw his old worshipper of the Greeks, unchanged as ever, and a self-adulator at the same time.

21] He agreed with him on this, in order to avoid bringing his Child under suspicion.

22] But the Infant Himself went over to Dumas and said to him:

23] "But friend! – You are still very ignorant and blurry in your mind, if you place the Jewish



wise men second to the philosophers of the Greek;

24] for the former spoke from God, – but these are speaking from the world!

25] And as you are still full of the spirit of the world, and empty of the spirit of God, you understand worldly matters better than divine matters!"

26] To Dumas, this felt like a jolt in the ribs. He yawned in an erudite manner and merely said to Joseph in Latin: "Dixit – puer ille! Ego autem intellego eius ironiam quam acerbam. Dixi!" (The Boy has spoken! But I can see how sharp-witted He is! – I have spoken!). Thereupon he disappeared, and Joseph, being left alone, also continued on his way. –

**CHAPTER 278. - JOSEPH CONSIDERS GOING HOME. MARY'S NOBLE  
AND WOMANLY WORDS. THE INFANT'S ADVICE AND JOSEPH'S RETURN.  
THE QUARREL WITH THE SERVANTS OF ARCHELAUS.**

**12 AUGUST 1844**

01] When Joseph had left the house of Dumas behind, he said to his people:

02] "It is most likely that we will get the same reception everywhere, –

03] so let us not spend too much time visiting our former friends, acquaintances and relatives;

04] for I have seen now with Dumas, how people react when you get a little too close to them!

05] Therefore, I intend to return home again. – What do you have to say to this, my faithful wife?"

06] And Mary spoke: "Joseph, dearest husband, you know that your will is forever my will, and must be so according to the divine order of the Lord;

07] but I do think that we should also ask the Lord Himself, who walks in our midst, for His advice on this!"

08] And Joseph spoke: "Mary, my faithful wife, you are absolutely right;

09] I will do that immediately and we will know exactly what is the best thing to do!"

10] And at this moment the Infant spoke without being asked: "Even if everything went well everywhere, it would be better to be at home.

11] For look, My time has not yet come; – but wherever I go with you, I cannot hide My full Divinity in such a way that it will not be noticed by those surrounding Me.

12] For Me, it is best to be at home now; for there it will be least noticed what is inside Me!

13] If you, Joseph, will go out to get some work in the near future, you can go there with your other children;

14] but let Me stay nicely at home; in this way, you will have the least trouble because of Me!"

15] Thereupon Joseph went home again. And when he arrived, he was astounded to see his four sons fighting with some of Archelaus' inspectors.

16] The blowflies quickly smelt that somebody has moved in here;

17] that is why they immediately tried to extort the tribute.

18] But when Joseph's sons were showing them Rome's letter of privilege on the door, they became angry and tried to rip it off.

19] Just at that moment, Joseph arrived and immediately asked the robbers under whose authority they were acting.

20] And they spoke: "We are the servants of the king and act according to the authority of the king!"

21] But Joseph said: "And I am a servant of God the Almighty and send you away from here according to His law!" - Upon hearing this, the offenders were seized by a mighty fear and ran away in a great hurry. After that the house was left in peace from similar offenders.

***CHAPTER 279. - THE TWO-YEAR DISCONTINUANCE OF THE INFANT'S  
MIRACLES. JONATHAN'S ARRIVAL FROM EGYPT. THE GREAT JOY IN  
JOSEPH'S HOUSE AND THE INFANT'S ADVICE TO JONATHAN. JONATHAN  
AS A FISHERMAN AT THE SEA OF GALILEE.***

***13 AUGUST 1844***

- 01] Two years went by and nothing extraordinary occurred in the house of Joseph.
- 02] Although Cyrenius received the news about Joseph's relocation, he could not visit him, because he was too busy with Roman state affairs.
- 03] And Cornelius was not much better off either;
- 04] because as much as he wanted to take time off to visit his Salome and his friend Joseph, he too had many urgent matters to take care of.
- 05] This had all been prearranged by the Lord, so that the little Child could grow up in Nazareth almost unnoticed.
- 06] Hence, in Nazareth, the people were totally unaware of the nature of the Child.
- 07] Only the doctor drew a lot of attention to himself because of his miraculous cures;
- 08] and what they said to the sick had almost become a proverb:
- 09] "If Nazareth can not cure you, then the whole world can not cure you either - not even Siloha!"
- 10] But Salome always made an effort to be of service to Joseph's family, and the Infant spent a lot of time in her house.
- 11] Finally after two years, Jonathan came back from Egypt and visited Joseph.
- 12] Joseph was overjoyed to meet his friend again and the Infant also jumped joyfully around His great fisherman.
- 13] When Jonathan had spent three weeks in Joseph's house all alone, as his whole family had died of yellow fever in Egypt,
- 14] he asked Joseph, whether he could help him to start some fishing trade here near Nazareth.
- 15] Here the Infant stood up and said to Jonathan:
- 16] "You must know, dear Jonathan, people around here are mostly wicked and very egoistic,
- 17] you will not have much success here! But you should go to the Sea of Galilee, that is not too far from here and the fishing trade there is still open to all!
- 18] You will quickly find a good spot there and always catch the best fish without much effort.
- 19] You can then take these fish to the market in Nazareth and you will have good sales there!"
- 20] Jonathan promptly followed this advice, and see, he found a widow there who had a small house by the Sea of Galilee.
- 21] And this widow quickly fell in love with Jonathan, took him in her house and soon married him.

22] And so Jonathan again became an excellent fisherman in the Sea of Galilee, and had good sales because of his very reasonable prices.

23] But he always took the utmost care to present Joseph und Salome every week with a good load of the best fish. —

24] And since two years, this was the only memorable event, as nothing else happened that would warrant a comment.

**CHAPTER 280. – THE NOW FIVE-YEAR-OLD CHILD PLAYS NEAR THE  
BROOK, THE TWELVE SMALL HOLES AND THE TWELVE CLAY  
SPARROWS. THE EXPLANATION OF THE IMAGE. THE STRICT JEW'S  
OFFENCE AND THE CHILD'S MIRACLE.**

**14 AUGUST 1844**

01] One Sabbath, when the Child had turned five, He went to a brook that flowed near Joseph's farmstead.

02] It was a lovely day and several children accompanied lively little Jesus on the way there;

03] for all the children of the neighbourhood loved Jesus very much, because he was always cheerful and knew how to play a lot of children's games.

04] That is why the neighbourhood kids followed him happily.

05] When the small group arrived at the brook, the Child asked His fellow playmates, if it would be allowed to play on a Sabbath.

06] And the children spoke: "Children below six years are not under the law and all of us here have hardly reached the age of six yet;

07] and therefore we can play on a Sabbath; for our parents have never forbidden us!"

08] And the Child Jesus replied: "Well spoken! So let us play a game!

09] But to avoid offending anyone, I will show you something quite remarkable just among ourselves.

10] But you all have to stay very quiet while I show you!"

11] Thereupon all the children sat down on the grassy ground and kept very still and quiet.

12] The Child then took a small pocket knife and cut out twelve small holes by the well-trodden path beside the brook and filled it with water from the brook.

13] Then He took some soft clay from the ground beside the brook and in no time moulded twelve small birds in the shape of

sparrows and placed one sparrow next to each of the water-filled holes.

14] And when the clay sparrows had been placed, the Child asked His playmates if they understood the meaning of this.

15] And they spoke: "What else, then what it is? – Twelve small holes and twelve clay sparrows beside them!"

16] But the Child spoke: "That is certain; but this image also represents something completely different!

17] Listen, I will explain it to you! The twelve small holes signify the twelve tribes of Israel.

18] The pure water in it is the Word of God, which is the same everywhere.

19] And the dead clay sparrows represent the people, the way they are today.

20] They stand beside the living water of the word of God, but because they are too earthy, like these sparrows, they also stand dead beside the pools of life, which are brimming with life;

21] but they do not want to and cannot see this, because they are dead due to their sins.

280,22] Therefore the Lord God Sabaoth now comes in this time of great distress, and puts new life into these dead people, and they will again be able to fly up to the clouds of heaven!"

23] But this children's game was noticed by a strict Jew who passed by, one who knew Joseph very well. He ran immediately to the house and made a big fuss in front of Joseph, asking him why he defiled the Sabbath, by allowing his children to play like this!?

Josep24] Joseph immediately went over to the children with him, and made a scene there, but only for the sake of the stranger.

25] Here the Child spoke: "That also is a great affliction and thus I will give life to you clay sparrows! – And now you may fly away!"

26] And suddenly the clay sparrows started to move and flew away. At this, all were seized by feverish amazement and the strict Jew did not say anything further after that. – And this was the first miracle of the Child when He was five years old. – –

**CHAPTER 281. – THE ONRUSH OF THOSE, CURIOUS ABOUT THE  
MIRACLE. THE PAMPERED AND QUARRELSOME NEIGHBOUR'S SON IS  
PUNISHED BY JESUS. THE CHIEF JUSTICE COMES TO JUDGE JOSEPH, IS  
THREATENED BY THE CHILD, AND SUDDENLY TURNS BACK**

**16 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] On this occasion, several Jews came to the place where this miracle had taken place,  
02] and they inquisitively asked Joseph what had happened here.
- 03] Even the neighbouring parents of a certain very quarrelsome boy, who, as the only child, was extremely spoilt by his parents, had come over.
- 04] The Child Jesus had often rebuked this seven-year-old boy for his contentiousness, –  
05] but this did not help much; for as soon as an opportunity arose, he immediately started another quarrel and destroyed some toy.
- 06] This boy, who was also among the group of children, became excited shortly after seeing this miracle, and took a willow branch and said:
- 07] "It's a good thing, that these clay sparrows have flown away;  
08] Now I will also make the water fly away with this branch!"
- 09] After uttering these words, the boy, who was called Annas, began to lash the water to let it out of the hole.
- 10] At this the Godchild lost His patience, and He spoke in a very serious tone:
- 11] "O you wilful, foolish boy, you – a Satan barely covered with flesh, want to destroy what I have created!?"
- 12] O you wretched boy! – You, who I can destroy with the subtlest breath, wants to anger Me and defy Me at all times?!
- 13] Behold, so that your foolishness and wickedness may become clear, may you wither up for three years, just like the branch with which you drove out My water!"
- 14] At these words of the Godchild, the wicked boy immediately collapsed and withered away to such an extent, that one could see nothing but skin and bones on him –  
15] and he became so weak that he could neither stand nor walk.
- 16] With a heavy heart, the parents took their shrivelled child and carried him to their house while weeping.
- 17] Soon afterwards they came to Joseph's house and prosecuted him through a chief justice because of what his Child had done –  
18] and because Joseph did not permit them to punish his Godchild for this deed.
- 19] When the chief justice came, the Child ran towards him and asked him:
- 20] "Why have you come here? Do you want to judge Me?!"
- 21] And the chief justice said: "Not you, but Your father!"
- 22] And the Child spoke: "Turn back soon, otherwise your judgment will fall upon you!"
- 23] And the chief justice became so frightened at this that he suddenly turned back and did not want to hear anything more on this matter.

24] And that was the second miracle that the Child had performed at that same time. — —



**CHAPTER 282. - JOSEPH TAKES THE CHILD WITH HIM ON HIS  
COUNTRY TRIP. LITTLE JESUS IS MALICIOUSLY ASSAULTED. THE  
SHEPHERD BOY'S TERRIBLE REWARD.**

**17 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] As the chief justice did not pursue the complaint against Joseph, the situation in Joseph's house was again in order,
- 02] when ten days later an occasion arose for Joseph to go to a nearby village to inspect a work site there.
- 03] The Child wanted to go with Joseph, who took Him along most gladly.
- 04] But the parents of the withered boy felt intense anger against Joseph and his Child.
- 05] In order to go to the village, Joseph had to pass the house of the boy's parents.
- 06] As Joseph and the Child came towards the house, they were noticed,
- 07] and the angry neighbour said to one of his most bratty servant boys, who usually tended his sheep:
- 08] "Look, the carpenter and his pestilential brat are coming up the footpath!
- 09] Go, and run down this path with all your might!
- 10] And when you reach the boy next to the carpenter, knock him over with all possible force, so that he drops down dead!
- 11] After that, the old scoundrel can prosecute me, – and I will then show him the law which states that children under twelve years cannot be held responsible in worldly matters!"
- 12] When the shepherd boy had heard this from his master, and as the latter had promised him a handsome reward if he killed the Child,
- 13] he suddenly went out of the room and ran towards Joseph in great haste.
- 14] At this moment, Anna's withered son, who was lying in bed, said to his father:
- 15] "O see, how quickly the shepherd boy is running to his death! – And what deep sorrow it will cause his parents!?"
- 16] O father! – You should not have done that, for I tell you how I see it now: Joseph is righteous, and his Child is holy!"
- 17] Hereupon the brittle boy was silent, and his father pondered on his words.
- 18] At that moment, the shepherd boy reached the Child and knocked Him hard against the shoulder.
- 19] But the Child did not fall and spoke in great agitation to the shepherd boy:
- 20] "You did that for the sake of the reward! Now every worker is worthy of his wages, and – as the work, so the pay!
- 21] Your work was – to kill Me! – Well – so let death also be your reward!" –
- 22] Here the shepherd boy suddenly fell down and died.
- 23] Joseph was greatly horrified at this; but the Child spoke: "Joseph, do not be frightened for Me; for what happened to the boy here, will happen to the whole world, if they push us!" – Thereupon Joseph continued on his way and left the dead boy on the path,

according to the Child's will.

**CHAPTER 283. – JOSEPH'S SENSE OF PROPRIETY. THE ANGRY  
NEIGHBOUR FALLS SILENT. THE REQUEST OF THE SHEPHERD BOY'S  
FATHER – AND THE CHILD'S REPLY.**

**19 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] But as Joseph came into the village and inspected the work,  
02] he could hear the uproar emanating from the village, and particularly from the father of the shrivelled boy.  
03] And the father immediately went in search of the parents of the killed boy and stirred them up against Joseph.  
04] And these in turn ran in haste and desperation towards Joseph and shouted:  
05] "Go away from here with your terrible Child. Everything he says happens instantly!  
06] For children should always be a blessing from above to man;  
07] your Child, however, is only come to be a curse upon us!  
08] Therefore go away from here, you bringer of misfortune!"  
09] Here the Child said: "If that is the case, what then are you towards Me?  
10] Have you, father of Annas, not told the shepherd boy to kill me!?  
11] Have you not in fact promised him a good reward if he killed Me, which he certainly would have done, for he cannot be prosecuted due to his age?  
12] And see, My early-awakened spirit caused Me to think:  
13] I too am still far from being under the law; therefore I can immediately give the boy his well-deserved reward!  
14] And if you take Me, or father Joseph to court on My account, then we will also know how to explain the law to you!  
15] Look, I have thought just as you did – and also acted upon it! We have followed your own course of action. Why then do you consider it unreasonable?  
16] At this speech of the Child, the father of the shrivelled boy was gripped with fear;  
17] for he clearly inferred from it that this Child knew the thoughts and the secret decisions of men,  
18] and that one should therefore beware of him.  
19] Hereupon all the loudmouths left Joseph and the Child.  
20] Only the father of the killed boy remained in front of Joseph and wept for his boy and said: "Killing is not an art; but giving life certainly is!  
21] Therefore nobody should kill who cannot give life!"  
22] And the Child spoke: "I could also do that if I wanted to; but the boy was wicked, that is why I will not!" – At these words,  
the father pleaded with the boy. But the Child said: "Tomorrow, but not today!" – –

**CHAPTER 284. - JOSEPH'S ADVICE TO THE FATHER OF THE DEAD SHEPHERD BOY. THE HOMECOMING OF JOSEPH AND THE CHILD. THE CHILD'S MARVELLOUS PROMISE. "IN THE FUTURE, WHOEVER ACCEPTS ME IN HIS HEART AS YOU (SALOME) HAVE DONE, WILL ALSO BE EQUAL TO MY MOTHER, MY BROTHERS AND MY SISTERS!"**

**20 AUGUST 1844**

01] But the father of the dead boy did not want to move away from the Child's side, as he had heard that the Child could bring his son back to life.

02] Then Joseph said to him: "Friend! I tell you, do not be obtrusive; for the Child has His order, according to which He acts,

03] and you will not be able to extort anything from him, however much you cry out!

04] Go and bring your boy to your house and lay him on a good bed as if he were sick, and tomorrow things will be better with him!"

05] After this speech, the father of the dead boy finally left Joseph and followed his advice.

06] Only then did Joseph have the peace and time to complete the work agreement with the builder.

07] Thereupon Joseph returned home and narrated all that had occurred to him during this short journey to the approaching Mary, Eudokia and Salome.

08] All three of them were astonished at such wickedness in men.

09] But the Child spoke: "O do not wonder about the wickedness of men; for if you want to do this, there are very many things in the world to be astonished about!"

10] Then Salome said to Mary: "O my exalted sister! I just cannot comprehend Him!

11] The Child of God has only to open His holy mouth, and wisdom just gushes forth!

12] How immeasurably farsighted these wise words were again!

13] O you most fortunate mother of such a Child!"

14] And the Child spoke: "And – o you fortunate Salome, who bought a house for your Lord –

15] and now witness how He bodily dwells in this house!

16] What difference is there really between the one, who carried Me in her body for a short time,

17] and My true homemaker, who always shelters Me in her house?!

18] And when a mother carries a child in her body, what does she furthermore do to give it life, make it grow, and enters into the world?

19] Is all this not a work of God, where the will of man is inconsequential?

20] And if someone admits a child into his house and always provides him with shelter, care, and board – say, is that not greater?!

21] Truly I say to you, those who will spiritually accept Me into their hearts as you do, will also be equal to My mother, My brothers and My sisters!"

22] All engraved these words deep in their hearts and then quietly and thoughtfully

returned home. --

**CHAPTER 285. - THE DEAD SHEPHERD BOY BROUGHT BACK TO LIFE,  
AND HIS FEAR OF THE HOLY CHILD. THE FATHER SETS HIM RIGHT  
AND GIVES JOSEPH AND THE CHILD A PROPER TESTIMONIAL THE  
CHILD'S LOVE. "MY LOVE IS YOUR LIFE IN ALL ETERNITY!"**

**21 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] On the next day, at around the same time the boy had hit the Child, the boy was alive again, and he stood up and asked, just as if he had come out of a dream, what the matter was, and how he had ended up in this bed.
- 02] And his father told him everything that had happened and how came to be there.
- 03] At this, the boy became very afraid and said: "O father, that is a terrible child;
- 04] and every man, who values his life, should avoid him!
- 05] O put me into service far away from here, so that I never run into this terrible child on any occasion anywhere;
- 06] for he could again kill me in an instant!
- 07] However, I will not go back to my earlier master; for he led me to do an evil thing!"
- 08] And the father spoke: "My son, I thank God that I now have you back!
- 09] That is why you should not enter into any service anymore,
- 10] and I will keep you with me instead, as long as I live!
- 11] However, we need not fear Joseph's Child as much as you think we should;
- 12] for see, it is precisely this Child who apparently brought you back to life at the predicted time!
- 13] If that is the case, how can Joseph's child be as terrible as you imagine?
- 14] Look, my son, whoever kills and cannot restore life, is terrible;
- 15] but whoever can kill without spilling blood and then bring the dead person back to life, is not as terrible as you think!
- 16] And now we have something better to do,— we should go there and thank the carpenter for the your awakening!
- 17] For I know since a long time that the carpenter is an extremely righteous and god-fearing man."
- 18] At this speech of his father, the boy got rid of his fear and went with his father to see Joseph.
- 19] But they already met Joseph in the village, where he had returned, together with his four older sons and with the Child.
- 20] When the boy saw the Child, he felt very faint; 21] for he thought that he would now die again.
- 22] But the Child Himself instantly came to the timorous boy and spoke to him:
- 23] "Joras! – Do not be afraid of Me; for I love you more than the whole world!
- 24] For if I did not love you so immensely, you would not have regained life;
- 25] for look, My love is your life in all eternity!"

26] When the boy heard these words of the Child, he quickly felt better and stayed around the whole day, playing with the Child.

27] And the Child then showed the boy many meaningful games, which made the boy exceedingly happy.

**CHAPTER 286. - THE FALSE JUDGMENT ON JESUS BY THE DECEITFUL  
VILLAGE JUDGE. JOSEPH'S INTREPID RESPONSE. THE FALSE  
WITNESSES. JOSEPH REBUKES THE PEOPLE ON ACCOUNT OF JESUS.  
"JOSEPH, THE WORDS THAT YOU HAVE JUST UTTERED, DO NOT COME  
FROM ME, BUT FROM YOU!" THE JUDGMENT OF THE ETERNAL JUDGE.  
THE BRIBED JUDGE INSTANTLY TURNS BLIND. THE CHILD TO THE  
EXCITED JOSEPH: "WHY DO YOU WANT TO VEX ME, FOR I AM  
YOURS!?"**

**22 AUGUST 1844**

01] When Joseph, together with his four older sons, went to the village for work on the following day, with the Child accompanying him,

02] a village judge came to him and said:

03] "Listen, carpenter! – It is not commendable that you always bring along your little son;

04] for firstly, He has a poisonous emanation, and secondly, the children who touch Him soon get ill,

05] or they soon die, or become blind or deaf!"

06] When Joseph heard such lies, he put his tools aside and spoke to the judge:

07] "Bring a witness here, who suffered such an evil through my highly innocent Child Jesus,

08] and I will go with them to the temple and settle the matter with them before the high priest of God!"

09] However, this judge was bribed by the father of the shrivelled boy

10] and thus searched for a way to cast as much suspicion as possible on Joseph's child.

11] After this speech of Joseph, the judge went away and, in a short time, collected several terribly diseased children of the village and led them to Joseph.

12] And when he arrived there, he spoke to Joseph: "Just look here, we have to thank your vicious child for all these cases!

13] See, these children have often visited your child and have played with Him;

14] and look, this is the glorious result of all this! – Therefore spare our village, and at the same time, keep your pest at home!"

15] When Joseph heard these words from the judge, he became annoyed, took the Child aside, and appeared to appeal to His conscience, saying:

16] "Why do You do such things? – See, they suffer therefrom and hence they hate and persecute us!"

17] But the Child objected and spoke: "The words that you have just uttered do not come from Me, but from you;

18] for you have now spoken the words of the judge, who is a liar, and not My words, which are eternally true!



19] However, I will remain silent against you and will not reprimand you for your adopted speech;

20] but this bribed judge must accept his just punishment because of his accusation!"

21] At that moment, the judge became stone-blind. – All who were with the judge were aghast at this deed.

22] Several among them were bewildered and cried:

23] "Let us quickly flee from here! For every word from the mouth of this Child comes to pass!"

24] But as Joseph now saw that the judge had gone blind and that the latter would surely cause him a lot of trouble for that,

25] he himself got upset about the Child, and, for the sake of the people, took Him by the ears to chastise Him.

26] This agitated the Child and He spoke very earnestly to Joseph:

27] "Let it be enough for you that they seek and do not find what they are seeking!

28] But you have not acted wisely this time! – Do you then not know that I am yours!?

29] Why do you want to vex Me, for I am yours!? – O do not vex Me henceforth, for I am yours!" –

30] Joseph soon saw his mistake, took the Child and hugged Him. – But all the bystanders quickly dispersed in tremendous fear of the Child.

**CHAPTER 287. – LUSTING FOR GLORY, THE TEACHER PIRAS  
ZACCHAEUS WISHES TO HAVE THE MIRACULOUS CHILD IN HIS  
SCHOOL. JOSEPH ADVISES THE TEACHER TO MAKE A TEST. JESUS  
EMBARRASSES THE HYPOCRITICAL TEACHER.**

**23 AUGUST 1844**

01] After about three months, when Joseph had completed the work in the village, a certain Piras Zacchaeus from the city came to Joseph and for the first time made his acquaintance with the Child, about whom he had heard a great deal.

02] So, surreptitiously, he came solely for the sake of the Child.

03] For Piras Zacchaeus was a substitute teacher with little to do but he nevertheless thought very highly of his wisdom.

04] But why did he then secretly visit Joseph on account of the Child?

05] Because he thought: 'This must be a highly talented boy;

06] I will bring this boy into my school, and his rapid progress will enhance the reputation of my school beyond that of my rival!'

07] He spent most of his time with the Boy Jesus, asked him about a good many things and always got the most convincing answers, which greatly astonished him.

08] When he had thus examined the Child, he (Piras Zacchaeus) turned to Joseph and spoke to him:

09] "Brother! The Child has an extraordinary understanding for His age. Truly, you have an extremely bright little Boy!

10] Only it is a pity that he cannot read or write the alphabet!

11] Do you not want to send him to my school, so that he can learn how to read and write the alphabet with me?

12] And I will then also teach him the other sciences, so that he learns to greet the elders and honour them as grandfathers and fathers!

13] And – you know, so He may also learn to love his playmates, whom he has often dealt with in a most ruthless manner!

14] And so He may finally learn the Law of Moses, understand the history of God's people and the wisdom of God in the prophets!"

15] And Joseph said to the teacher: "Good, my friend and brother! – But before you take my Child into your school, make a small test in front of several witnesses who are here with me today!

16] Tell Him all the letters and clearly explain them to Him; then examine Him,

17] and you will definitely be able to judge His talent by the amount the Boy has learnt from your explanation!"

18] And the teacher promptly did this. He clearly recited the letters from Alpha to Omega and also explained the characters as best as he could.

19] But Jesus looked at the teacher in surprise, and when the latter examined Him thereafter, He said to him:

20] "O you hypocritical teacher! – How can you teach the Beta to the students, when you have never understood the meaning of the Alpha?"

21] Explain to Me the true knowledge according to Alpha, and I will then believe what you say about the Beta!

22] So that you now learn that I do not need to be taught the alphabet, with their structure and their meaning, from you, I will explain and show you the alphabet's true meaning!"

23] Here little Jesus began to give a detailed explanation of the entire alphabet to the baffled teacher and, at the same time, diligently questioned the teacher to see whether he had understood it.

24] Every answer of the teacher was so foolish and so sketchy that it caused all those present to burst into laughter.

25] As the teacher discovered the Child's remarkable wisdom, and realized how he had disgraced himself here, he stood up and spoke to those present:

26] "O woe betide poor me, I am now in complete bewilderment! – I have brought shame, ridicule and harm upon myself, because I wanted to bring this little Boy into my school.

27] O brother Joseph! Take this boy away from me; for I can never again bear His severe countenance and His piercing speech!

28] Truly! This little Boy is no earthly born! – With his wisdom, he must surely know how to tame fire and water!

29] I will be a fool for eternity, if this boy was not born a long time before the creation of the world! – Jehovah will know whose womb carried the Child, and whose bosom fed Him!

30] Woe betide me! – I am already a fool; I came to enlist a student, and see, I have found a teacher, whose spirit I can never emulate! – O friends, consider my shame! – An old man has been made a fool of by a little boy, – that is surely my death!

31] Therefore, o Joseph, take away your boy from me; for he must be a great power, either a god or an angel!"

32] All those present now began to console the teacher; for he continued lamenting in his great distress. –

***CHAPTER 288. - JESUS GIVES PIRAS ZACCHAEUS A RAY OF HOPE  
ABOUT HIS MISSION. THE SALUTARY EFFECT AND PIRAS ZACCHAEUS'  
INVESTIGATIONS. JESUS AS 'PROFESSOR OF NATURAL HISTORY':  
"WHERE IS ABOVE AND WHERE IS BELOW?" "SEE, I HAVE COME  
DOWN FROM ABOVE!" WHERE THERE IS LIGHT - IS ABOVE, BUT  
WHERE THERE IS NIGHT - IS BELOW!***

***24 AUGUST 1844***

- 01] When Jesus heard Piras Zacchaeus' lamentations, He smiled and spoke:
- 02] "Now let your foolishness bear fruit, and let those who were blind in heart receive their sight!
- 03] And so listen, you fool, who are carrying Dumas like a mote in your eye!
- 04] See, I am here from above so that I may judge men according to the world in them;
- 05] but then I call them to higher things, according to the command given by Him, who is in Me and over Me and you,
- 06] who sent Me from Himself in Me, so that you may be saved!"
- 07] After this speech of the Child Jesus, all those in the entire surrounding area who suffered from any sort of ailment were healed.
- 08] Thus all those who had occasionally come under the judgment of little Jesus were healed; all except the shrivelled boy.
- 09] This boy had to spend the three pre-determined years under the judgment of the Child on account of his father. –
- 10] Piras Zacchaeus got up and went outside with Joseph and said to him there:
- 11] "Brother, we are now outside and no one can hear us!
- 12] So I ask you, dearest brother, to reveal to me the story behind your Child;
- 13] for He is, as I mentioned earlier, definitely not a natural child!"
- 14] But Joseph said to Piras Zacchaeus: "Friend, look, if I wanted to speak to you about the nature of my little Son, I would not be finished even after several days.
- 15] Moreover, the Child does not allow me to tell tales out of school whenever I feel like it.
- 16] See, just now the little Boy is coming directly towards us!
- 17] Gather up courage and love for Him, and He will reveal everything to you that is salutary for you!"
- 18] And the teacher soon gathered up courage and love for the Child. And when the Child was near Him, he asked Him:
- 19] "My loveliest, most wonderful Boy! Do you not want to reveal the power within You which allows You to do all the things I have now seen and also heard from You?"
- 20] And the little Boy smiled and spoke: "Do you know, learned man, where is above and where is below?
- 21] For look, the earth is round like a ball, and there are human beings and creatures living

all around it!

22] Who lives below, and who lives above? And the earth daily rotates around its axis, and you are carried around approximately four thousand miles daily, – say, when are you above, and when below?"

23] Here the teacher was taken aback on hearing such unheard-of things and did not know how he should respond to them.

24] However, the little Boy laughed at the foolish expression on Piras Zacchaeus' face and said to him:

25] "O you scholar! What then do you want to teach, if you do not know that it is only the light that is the deciding factor!?"

26] Where there is light – is above; but where there is night – is below!

27] It is still night for you, therefore you are below. I, however, have always been in the highest light; hence you will be as incapable of grasping My light nature in your night as the people on the opposite side of the earth, who now have night!" – Hereupon the Child walked away.

28] Piras Zacchaeus then said to Joseph: "Well, we have it now! Now I know as much as I did earlier. A strange speech by the Boy! – Leave me alone now, I want to think it over!" and Joseph left the teacher alone in the garden.

**CHAPTER 289. – THE TEACHER'S THOUGHTS ON THE BOY. JESUS  
WARNS THE TEACHER, JESUS, A LIGHT TO THE HEATHEN AND A  
JUDGMENT TO THE JEWS! THE TEACHER FLEES.**

**26 AUGUST 1844**

01] Piras Zacchaeus pondered over the Boy's words for a full hour, but could not find a clue in them.

02] "What can this Boy be?" he often asked himself. 03] "Is He perhaps Elijah, who was supposed to return?! 04] Or is He Samuel or any other great prophet reincarnated?

05] He was born in Bethlehem, and no prophet ever came from there!

06] However, the Messiah was supposed to come from there! 07] Could this boy be the Messiah Himself?!

08] The Messiah is supposed to come from the house of David! – Joseph is a true descendant of David,

09] though admittedly without credible and irrefutable proof.

10] The matter would seem to have much in its favour;

11] but who can accept and believe this as a well established fact without historical proof?!

12] And still one is almost forced to accept this because of the Boy.

13] However, the Roman Charter is completely contradictory to this;

14] for the Messiah will have to be the most bitter enemy of the Romans!

15] But how can he be that, considering his friendship with the Romans, who have made him one of their citizens?! –

16] In time, this could enable Him to become a great general of Rome, a Messiah of the heathen;

17] but for us He would be a double-edged sword, which could ruin us!

18] If I notify the high priests of this, – Truly, it could be most profitable for me!?"

19] Here the Child, together with James, came again into the garden, went over to the teacher and said to him:

20] "Piras Zacchaeus! – Get rid of your desire to reveal Me prematurely to the high priests;

21] for then your third step would bring about your death!

22] You have tested My power; therefore let this serve as a good warning to you!

23] What you have been saying to yourself about a Messiah for the heathen, has its reason!

24] For thus it shall be: a light to the heathen and a judgment to the Jews and all the children of Israel!"

25] This annoyed the teacher and he said: "If that is the case, then leave us and go to the heathen!"

26] But the Child spoke: "I am a Lord and I do what I want; you are not a lord, so you have no say in this!

27] Therefore remain silent and leave this place, otherwise you will compel Me to strike

you!"

28] When Piras Zacchaeus heard the Child's words, he quickly got up and fled to the city.

29] And thereby Joseph was rid of an annoying guest, and he again returned to his work. —

***CHAPTER 290. - JOSEPH'S NEIGHBOURS AND THEIR CHILDREN ENJOY THE COSY ATMOSPHERE IN JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE CHILDREN ON THE TERRACE. ZENO BREAKS HIS NECK IN HIS DARE-DEVIL ACT. HIS PARENTS' ANGER. THE REVIVAL OF THE DEAD BOY. ZENO'S TESTIMONIAL OF JESUS. JESUS CAUTIONS ZENO: "REFRAIN FROM SUCH GAMES THAT CAN LEAD TO DEATH!" A PROPHETIC REFERENCE TO THE LATER JUDAS ISCARIOT.***

**27 AUGUST 1844**

01] After some time, the love of the neighbours' children, as well as that of their parents, drew them to Joseph again, –

02] particularly so on the pre-Sabbath days (Fridays), especially during the afternoons, when little or no work was done.

03] On such pre-Sabbath day, several neighbours came to Joseph's house along with their children.

04] The girls found the company of Cyrenius' five daughters to be most delightful, as they were friendly and beautiful and industrious and had extensive knowledge of all things.

05] But the boys considered the charming and cheerful Boy Jesus above everyone else;

06] for firstly, He showed them many meaningful games, which greatly entertained the boys;

07] and secondly, he often narrated such moving stories in the form of parables to them that the young children were all eyes and ears.

08] And this time, as the ground was a little damp due to a preceding thunderstorm, the roof terrace (the flat and roofless upper surface of the house, enclosed with a parapet) was chosen as the playground.

09] For a while, all was calm; for Jesus was narrating several most fascinating little stories.

10] But towards evening, it was more lively on the terrace; for Jesus had arranged for a little game of dice, which frequently led to some jumping around.

11] A certain Zeno was among the twelve boys present; he was a real leader in placing bets and, with his dare-devil acts, always tried to win all the savings his playmates had brought along.

12] He also tried as such on this occasion, and placed a bet of eleven pennies, and this against the will of the Lord Jesus,

13] that he could walk around the parapet three times without losing his balance.

14] Should he manage to round it successfully three times, the other children around would have to give him eleven pennies each;

15] but if he lost his balance and fell, he would lose his eleven pennies.

16] The other children agreed to this, and Zeno promptly sprang onto the parapet, but instantly become a bit dizzy, lost his balance, fell down to the ground, broke his neck and was dead on the spot.



17] At this the parents of the dead boy, filled with sorrow and anger, went up to the terrace, took hold of Jesus and wanted to ill- treat Him.

18] But Jesus tore Himself away from them, ran down to the dead boy and called out loudly:

19] "Zeno! Stand up and testify on My behalf to your blind parents whether I threw you down and killed you?!"

20] At this the dead boy instantly got up and said:

21] "O Lord! You have not thrown me down and killed me, 22] only my greediness and shameful haste is to blame!

23] But as my sin killed me, You, o Lord, came to me and revived me!"

24] When Zeno's parents heard this testimonial, they promptly fell down before Jesus and prayed to the power of God in the Child Jesus.

25] And Jesus said to Zeno: "Let this be a lesson to you and henceforth refrain from such playacting that can lead to death, and bear in mind that I had dissuaded you from it!"

26] The parents and Zeno wept from sheer gratitude and then went home.

27] (Incidentally, this was a prophetic intimation of Judas Iscariot, as can be recognized easily.) – –

**CHAPTER 291. – THE NEIGHBOURS SEEK ADVICE FROM JOSEPH AS CORNELIUS' FRIEND. JESUS WARNS JOSEPH AGAINST IMPRUDENCE. INSIGHT INTO THE DIVINE WORLD GOVERNMENT: AS THE PEOPLE – SO THE GOVERNMENT! "I AM THE LORD ALSO OVER ROME!"**

**28 AUGUST 1844**

- 01] On another occasion, again on a pre-Sabbath day, several neighbours came to Joseph together with their children to discuss some pressing matters with him;
- 02] for these neighbours knew that Joseph had very good relations with the governor.
- 03] At this time, Joseph received a letter from Cyrenius in Tyre, in which he inquired, immediately upon his arrival in Tyre from Rome, about Joseph's and more particularly, about little Jesus' health.
- 04] However, the neighbours did not know about this letter,
- 05] just as they did not know that Joseph was such a great friend of the governor Cyrenius.
- 06] So Joseph wanted to show them this letter and give them assured consolation,
- 07] by indicating to them how effectively he could use his own influence with the governor against the ethnarch, –
- 08] and this with guaranteed success, because Eudokia as well as the five maids belonged wholly to Cyrenius.
- 09] But the Child leapt up towards Joseph and said most vehemently:
- 10] "Joseph, Joseph! Never do that, for I am the Lord!
- 11] If you show the letter, I will strike the earth; for it is I – and not Cyrenius, and not Augustus Caesar – who is the Lord also over Rome! –
- 12] I say to you, if the people were better than the ethnarch, I then would know how to deal with Archelaus!
- 13] However, as the people are not one jot better, they will just have to carry their own burden in the ethnarch, who is a miser, like the entire people!
- 14] Is it not said: an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, and so on? – So it is also said: miserliness for miserliness and envy for envy!
- 15] Thus Archelaus is a true doctor to these hard-hearted people; and he shall remain as he is, until his end!"
- 16] This speech annoyed the neighbours and they spoke: 17] "What a rare fellow of a Messiah that would be for us! 18] He chides us and instead praises the heathen Archelaus!" 19] The Child stamped his heel onto the ground and spoke:
- 20] "Earth! Tremble, so that your blind children can learn that I am your Lord!"
- 21] And fire suddenly shot out of the stamped spot and the ground trembled violently.
- 22] All those present were frightened and spoke: "What is this Child really?! For the earth trembles before Him!
- 23] Let us flee from here; for it is not good to be near this Child!" – And soon all left Joseph and hurried away. – And thus Joseph was again saved from grave danger.

**CHAPTER 292 - THE SIX-YEAR-OLD JESUS REVIVES SALOME'S  
SERVANT WHO WAS KILLED IN AN ACCIDENT. JESUS' INSTRUCTION FOR  
THE SERVANT. JESUS SHUNS THE PRAISE OF THE PEOPLE.**

**29 AUGUST 1844**

01] When Jesus was a little over six years old, Salome had a decayed tree felled and then cut and split into small pieces by her servants, so that they could be used as firewood.

02] On that occasion, a young servant, who thought highly of his own capabilities, spoke to his three fellow-servants:

03] "Leave the work of splitting the wood to me alone, and I will be finished with the whole tree in the same time all three of you would need for this work!"

04] And the fellow-servants gladly accorded him the honour.

05] Then he took his sharp axe and diligently began to split the wood.

06] But in his zeal he once made a mishit, and instead of hitting the wood, he brought the axe down onto his right foot and split it from the toes to the heel.

07] He collapsed onto the ground and cried for help; and everyone crowded around him, but no one had anything that could be used as a bandage for his foot.

08] And so the young man soon bled to death.

09] Then Joseph's house also became aware of this by the lamentations and shouts that emanated from the nearby house of Salome.

10] And Jesus quickly ran there and forced His way through the crowd standing around the dead servant.

11] When he reached the dead boy, he quickly seized the split foot, pressed it together firmly and healed him in an instant.

12] When the foot had healed in this way, Jesus seized the boy's hand and said:

13] "Listen, you vain young man! – I say to you, stand up and continue chopping the wood!

14] But in future, get rid of your vanity and do not pretend to have more strength than you possess,

15] and you will easily spare yourself similar accidents in future!

16] For your fellow-servants also have their capacity for work from God, and you should not bring them to shame, anytime or anywhere!

17] But if any of your fellow-servants is intentionally lazy and indolent, the Lord will surely find him, –

18] but you should never set yourself up as a judge on his behalf, with your excessive and vain diligence!"

19] Here the young servant got up with full vigour and continued to chop the wood.

20] All those present kneeled down before the Boy Jesus and spoke:

21] "All praise and honour to the power of God in You; for even at your early age, the Lord has filled You with all the divine power!"

22] But Jesus ran home quickly, for He did not want the men's praise. – –

***CHAPTER 293. – MARY'S HOLY JUG IS BROKEN BY JESUS. THE GIRL'S ANXIETY ABOUT THAT. JESUS BRINGS THE WATER FOR HIS MOTHER IN HIS SMALL RED CLOAK. THIS RELIC OF MARY WAS A THORN IN JESUS' SIDE.***

**31 AUGUST 1844**

01] Mary still had the jug, in which she had fetched water when the angel delivered the most holy message to her.

02] She thought highly of this jug, – indeed, it was nothing less than a sacred relic for her.

03] She did not even like anyone taking it and drinking from it.

04] And one day, about eight days after the miracle in Salome's house, Mary was alone at home with Jesus.

05] She was busy washing clothes and needed clean water for this.

06] So she went to Jesus and said to him: "Please fetch me a jug of clean water;

07] and for that you may even use the jug that has been sanctified through You!"

08] Jesus took the jug and went with it to the well, where Joseph and the other children were engaged in some duties.

09] Then Jesus banged the jug a little hard on a stone, and it broke into many fragments on the ground.

10] A girl saw this and said: "O dear, oh, oh, oh! Imagine how this will look; now the house mistress' holy jug is broken! – But dear Jesus, why were You not more careful?"

11] Oh no, – the mother will certainly complain; oh no, oh no, you can look forward to that!"

12] Jesus seemed a little annoyed at this and He said to the girl:

13] "What I do is none of your business! – Just see to it that you finish your weaving!

14] I will bring Mary the right amount of clean water in spite of the broken jug!"

15] And the girl spoke: "I would like to see how one can bring water into the house without a jug!"

16] Here Jesus quickly took his small, red cloak, held the ends together and poured water into it and then carried it home to Mary without spilling even a single drop!

17] All followed Him home because of this miracle.

18] When Mary saw this, she was horrified and said: "But Child, what happened to the jug?"

19] And Jesus spoke: "See, it was a thorn in My side since a long time! Therefore I tested its miraculous powers on a stone, –

20] and see, there was nothing miraculous about it; it immediately broke into fragments!

21] Now, I think that wherever I am, I should count for more than such a silly jug, which is not the least bit better than any other jug!"

22] At these words, Mary did not say anything further and engraved them deep in her heart.

23] And the girl did not say any more either; for she was fond of Jesus.

24] And Jesus spoke to her: "See, you please Me more when you are like this, than when you move your tongue needlessly!" – And the girl was content with the mild scolding and thereupon continued to spin her thread diligently.

***CHAPTER 294. - A TWO-YEAR PERIOD WITHOUT MIRACLES. RISING PRICES IN PALESTINE. JOSEPH SOWS SEEDS EVEN DURING THE SEVENTH MONTH. THE EIGHT-YEAR-OLD JESUS HIMSELF PUTS THE SEEDS IN THE SOIL. THE WONDERFUL BLESSING. JOSEPH'S GRATITUDE. LOVE IS BETTER THAN PRAISE! THE HEALING OF THE SHRIVELLED BOY.***

***31 AUGUST 1844***

01] After this miracle, Jesus' lived calmly for two years and He obeyed Joseph and Mary in all things.

02] But when he was eight years old, a bad harvest year occurred; for there was a severe drought, and all the crops had withered.

03] It was already the seventh month, and nothing green could be seen; numerous livestock had to be slaughtered, or one had to pay good money to procure fodder and grain from Egypt and Asia Minor.

04] Joseph himself mostly lived on the fish that Jonathan sent him weekly, and fed his animals with reed grass, also sent by Jonathan.

05] Clouds appeared for the first time only during the seventh month, and it began to rain scantily from time to time.

06] Then Joseph said to his older sons: "Harness the oxen to the plough, and, in the name of the Lord, we will sow wheat in the field.

07] Who knows, perhaps the Lord will still bless the crop, for we may consider Him, who He sent into the world, as our Son and Brother!

08] To be sure, He has not shown any signs of Himself through our Son and Brother for two years now, so that we have literally forgotten His magnificence!

09] But who knows if this bad year is not a consequence of our forgetfulness toward Him, who came to us so divinely from above?"

10] Here the eight-year-old Jesus went up to Joseph and spoke: "Good, father Joseph! – You have never forgotten the One who is in Me; therefore I will go with you to sow the wheat in the furrows!"

11] Joseph was exceedingly happy to hear this; and Mary and all the others in the house said:

12] "Yes, yes, wherever dear Jesus sows, a rich harvest will surely come!"

13] And Jesus spoke smilingly: "I agree with you – truly, no seed sowed by Me will ever fall on the ground in vain!"

14] Hereupon the ploughing and sowing began. Joseph sowed on the left of the plough, and Jesus on the right.

15] And so the field was optimally cultivated in half a day.

16] Shortly thereafter there was abundant rain, and the wheat firmly settled and sprouted, and within three months, the summer crop matured nicely.

17] But the ears of wheat that were sowed by the Boy Jesus on the right side, had five

hundred grains throughout, while the wheat sowed by Joseph had only thirty to forty grains.

18] All wondered greatly about this, and only after the grain was threshed on the threshing floor was the full extent of God's blessing apparent;

19] for from each measure (seventy units) of wheat that was sown, exactly a thousand measures were harvested – a harvest which no one had ever experienced!

20] As Joseph now had so much surplus, he kept seventy measures of wheat for himself and distributed nine-hundred-and- thirty measures among his neighbours.

21] And thus an entire neighbourhood was helped by this miraculous harvest.

22] And many neighbours came and praised the power of God in the Boy Jesus.

23] But the latter admonished them to love God and their neighbour and spoke to everyone: "Love is better than praise, and true godliness is worth more than burnt offerings!" – In the meantime, the shrivelled boy also regained his health. –

***CHAPTER 295. - JOSEPH AND MARY STILL WANT TO ENTRUST THE ALMOST TEN-YEAR-OLD JESUS TO A TEACHER. PROBLEMS DURING LESSONS. THE TEACHER BEATS THE CHILD AND THEREUPON BECOMES DUMB AND FOOLISH. THE BOY JESUS RETURNS HOME.***

***2 SEPTEMBER 1844***

01] From then onwards, the Boy Jesus did not work any miracles, but behaved like any other human child!

02] He was happy to be with Joseph, whenever the latter was making equipment, such as: ploughs, yokes, chairs, tables, beds and the like, and Joseph always succeeded in getting things right.

03] But as the little Boy was already in His tenth year and didn't seem to differ in any way from the other children, –

04] Joseph spoke to Mary: "See, the people around disparage us for allowing Jesus to grow up without any schooling, because He has such marvellous abilities and aptitudes!

05] I know well, that Jesus does not need the lessons of an earthly school;

06] but in order to silence the neighbours I would nonetheless like to entrust Him to a teacher.

07] And as two new schools have been established in the city, with both of them having teachers who are supposed to be very competent, I would like to give one or the other a try!"

08] Mary agreed to this; for even she saw the apparent necessity of such schooling.

09] And Joseph took Jesus and brought him to the first teacher.

10] This teacher immediately accepted the little Boy and spoke to Joseph: "To begin with, he should learn Greek because of the many Greeks among us, and only then Hebrew!

11] I am well aware of the strange characteristics of this child and am a little afraid of him.

12] However, I will do what is right; but you must entrust the child to me completely!"

13] Joseph agreed to this and wholly entrusted him to the teacher's house.

14] For three days, Jesus enjoyed the usual freedom here; the teacher took Him to school only on the fourth day.

15] On arrival there, the teacher led Him to the board and wrote the entire alphabet in front of Him and began to explain what he had written.

16] After he had explained this a few times, he asked Jesus what He had learnt from this.

17] But Jesus pretended to know nothing of what had been explained, and gave the teacher no reply.

18] And the teacher tormented the Child and himself for three days but never got a response.

19] But on the fourth day, he became indignant and ordered the Child Jesus, under threat of a severe punishment, to answer him.

20] So the Child spoke to him: "If you are really a teacher, and if you really know the alphabet, then show Me the true and basic meaning of the Alpha, and I will reveal the



same to you about the Beta!"

21] At this, the teacher became angry and hit Jesus on the head with the pointer.

22] This hurt the Boy, and He spoke to the teacher: "Is this the right way to do away with your ignorance?"

23] Truly, I am not with you for the purpose of getting beaten, and this is not the way to teach and educate human beings!

24] Now you shall become dumb and foolish, because you hit Me instead of giving Me a proper explanation!"

25] And the teacher sank down, and due to his raving, was bound and brought into another room.

26] And Jesus immediately returned home to Joseph where He said:

27] "In future, I request a teacher who does not come to school carrying a cane; however, this one is now atoning for his outrage against Me!"

28] Then Joseph knew what surely had happened again, and spoke to Mary: "We should never again part with Jesus; for He punishes everyone who does not act according to His own mindset!"

29] And Mary agreed to this; and no one dared to reproach Jesus. –

**CHAPTER 296. - THE SECOND TEACHER AT JOSEPH'S HOUSE. THE  
TEACHERS' GENTLE OBLIGINGNESS. JESUS GIVES THE TEACHER A  
TEST: HE READS AND EXPLAINS ABOUT DANIEL THE TEACHER'S  
GOOD TESTIMONIAL OF JESUS. AS A REWARD FOR THE TEACHER'S  
SINCERITY, JESUS HEALS THE FIRST TEACHER.**

01] After several weeks, the second new teacher came to Joseph to pay him a friendly visit;

02] for Joseph had made him several new benches and chairs, as well as a table for his schoolroom, and on this occasion, had made friends with this most honest teacher.

03] This teacher now made his acquaintance with the Boy Jesus and was delighted by His serious, but nevertheless humble and cheerful nature.

04] He therefore asked Joseph whether the Boy had already learnt to read in any school.

05] Joseph spoke: "Brother! I have already tried to do this with a couple of teachers, but neither of them could get anywhere with Him;

06] for a strange power resides in this Boy!

07] Any teacher appearing to Him as a little coarse is already lost,

08] for the Boy only has to say a word, and the teacher is punished in a dreadful way!

09] This was recently the case with the first teacher, who is an idiot even to this hour."

10] And the teacher spoke: "Yes, yes, I know this well; but that teacher was also a tyrant to all his students!

11] If I would be the Boy's teacher, truly – I would not be afraid of being punished by him!"

12] Then the Boy Jesus, who was present, spoke: "And what exactly would you like to teach Me?"

13] And the teacher lovingly pulled Him towards himself, cuddled Him and then spoke to Him:

14] "I would like to teach reading and writing and then explain the letters to You in a more friendly way!"

15] And the Boy spoke: "Good, – if you have something of the scriptures with you, give it to Me, and I will test you!"

16] Here the teacher promptly pulled out a scroll – it was about Daniel – and gave it to the Boy.

17] The Boy immediately began to read the scroll and explain it in a way that exceedingly astonished all those present, including the teacher, who was completely baffled.

18] When the teacher heard the Boy, he spoke:

19] "O Lord! Be merciful to me, a poor sinner; for this Boy is no earthly being!

20] O brother Joseph, I now clearly comprehend why no teacher can stand up to this Boy!

21] In any case, the Boy knows more than all the teachers in the whole world put together! – O keep Him at home for sure!"

22] The Boy was pleased with this testimonial, and He spoke: "Because of your honesty,

may the other teacher recover for your sake; so be it! –

23] But you must remain as faithful in your heart, as you are now, and you will always be a true teacher, Amen." –

24] Hereupon the Boy Jesus departed; the teacher took his leave of Joseph and went home, immersed in deep thought. – And at this hour, the first teacher started to get better.

– –

**CHAPTER 297. - THE ELEVEN-YEAR-OLD JESUS AND JAMES GO OUT TO COLLECT WOOD. JAMES IS BITTEN BY A VIPER AND SHOWS SIGNS OF DEATH. JAMES IS BROUGHT BACK TO LIFE BY JESUS. A GOSPEL OF LABOUR. BE DILIGENT IN SPIRITUAL GOODS! RESUSCITATION OF THE DEAD BOY KEPHAS AND THE DEAD JOURNEYMAN CARPENTER MALLAS. THE DOCTRINE: "ENVY ALWAYS ENDS IN DEATH!"**

**4 SEPTEMBER 1844**

- 01] From then onwards, the Child Jesus stayed quietly and obediently at home and helped out with small jobs.
- 02] He worked no further miracles during one whole year until He turned eleven.
- 03] In His eleventh year, He again performed three remarkable miracles, and these are narrated below.
- 04] In the spring, Joseph's stockpile of firewood was only enough to last a few days.
- 05] As James and Jesus had the most time at their disposal, he sent the two to a nearby forest to collect brushwood.
- 06] Both of them went and diligently did as Joseph had asked.
- 07] James romped around very actively, so little remained for Jesus to collect; for James anticipated Jesus in every location.
- 08] But when James, in his eagerness, reached for some thick brushwood, he encountered a poisonous viper underneath.
- 09] The viper bit James in the hand, and James fell down in pain and horror. His hand suddenly swelled up, and James arched backwards and showed signs of death.
- 10] Then Jesus sprang to him and blew on the wound, and James instantly recovered.
- 11] The viper, instead, started to bloat horribly and burst into a thousand pieces!
- 12] Afterwards Jesus said to James: "More haste, less speed! – All worldly labour ends in death if done too hastily!
- 13] So, on every occasion, it is better to be lazy for the world, but all the more diligent for the spirit!
- 14] Thus those who are too industrious in the world will always find the death of their souls in their eagerness for earthly things!
- 15] For I will search for the idlers of the world and will take them into My service forever; and I will give those who have worked only one hour of the day the same wages as those who diligently worked the whole day through!
- 16] Blessed are those who are lazy for the world; but woe betide any man who is zealous for the affairs of the world! The former will be My friend – and the latter My foe!" – –
- 17] James made a mental note of these words and lived according to them thereafter, and did not mind even when he was often given the title "the lazy and indolent one";
- 18] but from then on, his heart was all the more diligently engaged with Jesus and gained infinitely thereby. –

19] Two days after this incident, a neighbour's only son died; and this neighbour, who was a widow, wept bitterly for her loss.

20] Then Jesus, with His James, also went there to see the dead boy.

21] When He saw the violently weeping widow, He seized the dead boy by the hand and spoke: "Kephas! – I say to you, stand up, and never again grieve your mother's heart!"

22] At this the boy suddenly got up and smilingly greeted all those present.

23] The widow was beside herself, and she said: "O who then is this Son of Joseph, that He can wake up the dead with a single word?! – Is he a God, or an angel?!"

24] But Jesus spoke to the widow: "Do not question further, but give some milk to Kephas, so that he recovers fully!"

25] And the widow immediately went and brought warm milk for the boy, – and he thereupon recovered completely.

26] Then all wanted to pray to Jesus; but He left quickly, met other children and played with them in a very wise manner. –

27] When he was playing, a man in another house that was being repaired by a few carpenters from the city, fell down, broke his neck and was dead on the spot.

28] Immediately, a crowd of people gathered and mourned the unfortunate man, and there was a great commotion.

29] When Jesus heard this clamour, He, together with James, forced His way through the crowd until He reached the dead man, and said to him:

30] "Mallas! – I say to you, get up again and go to work! But secure your batten better, otherwise you will fall again!"

31] For the important thing is not how much you have worked, but how you have worked! – For envy always ends in death!"

32] Then Jesus departed quickly, and the dead man stood up in good health and continued to work vigorously, as if nothing had happened to him. But he kept Jesus' words in his heart. – –

33] Due to these three miracles, which took place in quick succession, all wanted to worship Jesus.

34] But Jesus forbade them to do so and did not appear in the village for several weeks.

35] And those in Joseph's house certainly took note of these three wonders, and talked about them a great deal. – –

**CHAPTER 298. - BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE TEMPLE SCENE OF THE  
TWELVE-YEAR-OLD JESUS BY HIS BROTHER JAMES. JESUS  
WITHDRAWS HIMSELF COMPLETELY UNTIL THE WEDDING IN CANA.**

01] From then onwards, Jesus withdrew Himself and did not openly perform further miracles until the time of the wedding in Cana in Galilee.

02] As is mentioned in the Gospel, it was only in His twelfth year that the Boy Jesus, who went to the temple in Jerusalem for the holidays, performed a miracle through His wisdom among the scholars there.

03] This miracle was later narrated to me, James, by the Lord Himself, as I was not present there, and is briefly described below:

04] Joseph and Mary lost Jesus in the temple crowd and thought, as He was not with them, that He must surely be on his way home with Salome or another relative or acquaintance.

05] And so both of them went after the Nazarene caravan and only caught up with it in the evening, at the Inn between Nazareth and Jerusalem.

06] When they could not find Jesus there, they were greatly distressed, and they took some companions and returned to Jerusalem in the night.

07] Upon arrival, Joseph promptly went to the governor Cornelius, who still governed in Jerusalem at that time.

08] Joseph immediately revealed what had happened to him to the exceedingly friendly and helpful Cornelius,

09] and the latter promptly gave Joseph a Roman sentry to enable Joseph to search all the houses.

10] So Joseph searched almost the whole of Jerusalem for three days but could not find Jesus anywhere.

11] Then both of them became extremely afraid; they returned the sentry to Cornelius in great sadness and could not be consoled by him.

12] As it was already evening, Cornelius wanted to keep them with him.

13] But Joseph said: "O noble friend, I do want to stay with you tonight, but first I must go up to the temple and make an offering from and in my sorrowful heart to the Lord God!"

14] Then Cornelius let Joseph and Mary go up to the temple.

15] And see, they found Jesus there, sitting among the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. Everyone who heard Him was amazed at His understanding and His answers;

16] for He explained to them the most secret passages from the Prophets, and taught them about the stars, their orbits, their principal light, as well as their second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh light.

17] He also described to them the nature of the worlds and showed them the physical, mental and spiritual correlation of matter –

18] and proved the immortality of the soul in such an unheard- of manner, that they all said:

19] "Truly, such things have never been heard of! There is more wisdom in one finger of

this twelve-year-old Boy than in all of us together!"

20] Joseph and Mary went up to Jesus and said to Him:

21] "But why did You do this to us?! – See, we have searched for you in great pain for three days and could not find You!"

22] But Jesus said: "Why did you do this? (Namely, the search outside, with the help of the soldiers.)

23] Did you then not know about My Father's house, and that I had to do there what is My Father's?!"

24] Although neither of them understood His words, Jesus promptly and willingly followed them home, after staying with them overnight at Cornelius' house.

25] The teachers praised Mary as being most fortunate for having such a Child.

26] From then onwards, Jesus withdrew Himself and did not perform any more miracles until His thirtieth year, and lived and worked just like any other man. – –

## ***CHAPTER 299. - JESUS, THE DIVINE BEING. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE HUMANITY AND DIVINITY WITHIN HIMSELF.***

**9 SEPTEMBER 1844**

- 01] As it is written in the scriptures: He gained in grace and wisdom before God and man and remained submissive and obedient to His parents, until He began his teachings.
- 02] Question: How could Jesus, as the sole eternal Divine entity, gain in grace and wisdom before God and man, when He Himself was God from eternity?
- 03] And, in particular, before man, as He was, after all, the infinite and most perfect Being?
- 04] To understand this correctly, one should not regard Jesus exclusively as the one and only God;
- 05] but one must see Him as a man, in whom the exclusive and eternal Divinity is confined in a seemingly dormant manner within Himself, just as every man's spirit is imprisoned in his being.
- 06] And that what every man has to do according to the Divine order to free his spirit,
- 07] also had to be done earnestly by Jesus, the human being, to free the Divinity within Himself, so that He could become one with the Spirit.
- 08] However, every man has to carry certain weaknesses within himself, which are the common bonds of the spirit, which confine him as in a hard shell.
- 09] The bonds can only be shattered when the soul, which is entwined with the flesh, has been strengthened by righteous self- denial, so that it is resolute enough to grasp and hold the free spirit.
- 10] For this reason, man can only be aware of his weaknesses through all sorts of temptations, and discover how and where his spirit is tied up.
- 11] If he then, in these very matters, denies himself in his soul, he will thereby unshackle the chains from his spirit and bind his soul therewith.
- 12] If at the right time, the soul is strengthened with all its former spiritual bonds, the fully unshackled spirit most naturally unites with the entire, powerful soul,
- 13] and the latter thereby enters into all the heavenly authority of the spirit and becomes eternally and completely one with it.
- 14] By taking off the bonds one at a time, the soul can increase its spiritual power, which is the Wisdom and the Grace.
- 15] Wisdom is the lucid observation of the eternal order of God, and grace is the light of love, which illuminates all the endless and countless infinite and eternal things, their conditions and their paths!
- 16] And what applied to human beings also applied to the Divine Being Jesus.
- 17] His soul was like the soul of every other human being and was all the more afflicted with weaknesses, because the almighty Divine Spirit had to put the most powerful bonds on Himself so that He could be contained within His soul.
- 18] Thus also Jesus' soul had to withstand the greatest temptations by denying itself, in order to remove the bonds around its Divine Spirit, and therewith increase its strength for the infinite freedom of the Spirit of all Spirits, and thus become wholly one with Him.
- 19] And in this did the increase in wisdom and grace of Jesus' soul before God and man



consist, and that to such an extent, that the Divine Spirit gradually and increasingly became one with His undoubtedly divine soul, which was the true Son.

**CHAPTER 300. - JESUS' LIFE AND INNER STRUGGLES FROM HIS  
TWELFTH TO HIS THIRTIETH YEAR. HINTS AND EXAMPLES TO  
ACHIEVE REINCARNATION AS THE CONDITION FOR ETERNAL AND  
BLESSED LIFE. CONCLUDING REMARK AND BLESSING OF THE LORD.**

**9 SEPTEMBER 1844**

- 01] Just how did Jesus, the Lord, live from his twelfth to His thirtieth year?
- 02] He constantly felt the presence of the almighty God within Himself as a living Power; He knew in His soul, that everything contained in the infinity was and would always be subject to His slightest gesture.
- 03] In addition, however, He had the most powerful urge in His soul to rule over everything.
- 04] Pride, lust for power, complete freedom, inclination towards pleasure, desire for women and the like, as well as anger, were the principal weaknesses of His soul.
- 05] But He fought against all these powerful and deadly driving forces of His soul from his soul's will.
- 06] He humbled his pride through poverty; but how hard a method it was for Him, to Whom everything belonged, for He could not call anything 'His'!
- 07] He subdued the lust for power by subservience and by the most willing obedience to those, who were, just like all men, nothing before Him!
- 08] Although infinitely difficult, He assailed His eternal supreme freedom by surrendering Himself to men to do the lowliest tasks like a slave-like servant.
- 09] By frequent fasts, He fought against the most powerful urge to live a life of pleasure – out of poverty, and also out of the free will of His soul.
- 10] He fought the desire for women through repeated hard work, scant food, prayer and the company of wise men.
- 11] Indeed – He had to endure a tremendous amount on this point, because His personal appearance and the tone of His speech were highly captivating,
- 12] and this caused all the five exceedingly beautiful daughters of Cyrenius to fall madly in love with Him and vie among themselves to please Him.
- 13] Although he certainly enjoyed such love, He always had to say "Noli me tangere" (Do not touch me) to each of them!
- 14] Moreover, as He could see through the wickedness of men at a glance – and saw their deceit and hypocrisy, mischievousness and their selfishness,
- 15] it is also understandable that He was very excitable and could easily feel offended and enraged;
- 16] but He restrained His divine nature through His love, and compassion following thereupon.
- 17] He thus practised the most difficult self-denial throughout His life to restore the disrupted eternal order!
- 18] And therefore it can be easily deduced how it was that Jesus as a man spent eighteen years facing and fighting against constant temptations. –
- 19] And as it is now explained for the benefit of everyone, there is nothing more to say,

except for the three-day debate with the wise men and scholars in the temple, which, however, like several other events, cannot be explained here.

20] Therefore be content with this for now, and the rest will follow when you say to the servant:

21] 'Come to us, brother, in the name of the Lord, and stay and live with us!' – –

22] Thus this work also comes to an end, and may My blessing and My mercy be with you forever! Amen, Amen, Amen.

## Table of Contents

Preface.....	2
As revealed by the Lord Himself as the introduction for the story of His childhood between July 22, 1843 and May 9, 1851, through the same spokesperson whom He selected as the instrument for this work.....	2
Chapter 1. – Joseph the carpenter. The casting of lots for Mary in the temple. God's testimonial of Joseph. Joseph's prayer. Mary in the house of Joseph.....	4
Chapter 2. – The new curtain in the temple. Mary's work on the curtain.....	7
Chapter 3. - The announcement of the Lord's birth by an angel. Mary's humble devotion...	9
Chapter 4. – Mary's childlike-innocent conversation with God and the response from above.....	10
Chapter 5. – The handing over of Mary's completed temple work. Mary and the High Priest. Mary visits her relative Elizabeth.....	11
Chapter 6. – The wonderful reception of Mary by Elizabeth. Humility and wisdom of Mary. Mary returning home to Joseph.....	12
Chapter 7. - Joseph's premonitions and prophecies. Mary's consolation. The blessed supper. The visibility of Mary's pregnancy.....	15
Chapter 8. – The doctor's view. Joseph interrogates Mary. Mary's explanation.....	16
Chapter 9. – Mary's narration of the mysterious holy occurrences. Joseph's distress and worry and his decision to secretly remove Mary. An angel of the Lord appears to Joseph in a dream. Mary remains in the house of Joseph.....	18
Chapter 10. – The Roman census. Joseph's non-participation in the council in Jerusalem. The traitor Annas.....	20
Chapter 11. – The high priest's doubt concerning Mary's condition. The interrogation of Mary and Joseph in the temple. Joseph's lament and quarrel with God. The death sentence of Joseph and Mary and their defence through a decree of God. Mary becomes Joseph's wife.....	22
Chapter 12. – Augustus' commandment for the assessment and census of all inhabitants. New sorrow and consolation.....	25
Chapter 13. – An old friend fortifies and blesses Joseph. Joseph's travel arrangements for his five sons. The consoling testament from above. The happy departure.....	26
Chapter 14.- Mary's vision of the two peoples. The first signs of labour. Shelter in a nearby cave.....	28
Chapter 15. – Mary in the cave. Joseph searching for a midwife in Bethlehem. Joseph's wonderful experiences. Nature's testimonial. Joseph's meeting with the midwife.....	29
Chapter 16. – The visions near the cave. The midwife's dream and her prophetic words. The midwife with Mary and the Child. Salome, her sister, doubts Mary's virginity.....	31
Chapter 17. – The doubting Salome's request to Mary. Salome's testimonial of Mary's untouched virginity. God's Judgment. The angel's instructions to Salome. Salome's recovery.....	33
Chapter 18. – The Holy Family's night's sleep in the cave. The angel's songs of praise in the morning. The adoration of the shepherds. The angel's words of explanation to Joseph. ....	35

Chapter 19. – Joseph's concerns about the registration. The midwife's report to the Roman captain Cornelius. The captain's visit to the cave. Joseph and Cornelius. Cornelius' peace and joy being near the Child Jesus.....	38
Chapter 20. – Cornelius' questions about the Messiah. Joseph's embarrassment. The captain's questions to Mary, Salome and the midwife. The angels' warning of the betrayal of the Divine Secret. Cornelius' premonition of the Divinity of the Child Jesus.....	40
Chapter 21. – Joseph's words on the free will of man and his advice to Cornelius. The captain's care of the Holy Family.....	42
Chapter 22. – Cornelius with the Holy Family in the cave. The shepherds and the captain. The new eternal spiritual sun. Cornelius' farewell. Joseph's word of thanks on the goodness of the heathen captain.....	43
Chapter 23. – Cornelius' affectionate care. The angel's instructions to Joseph regarding the departure to Jerusalem and the presentation in the temple. Mary's dream. The sentry in front of the cave.....	45
Chapter 24. – The circumcision and naming of the Infant and Mary's purification. The presentation of the Child in the temple by the mother. The devout Simeon and the Child Jesus.....	47
Chapter 25. - The prophetess Hannah in the temple and her testimonial of the Child Jesus. Hannah's warning to Mary. The provisional accommodation of the Holy Family with a rich Israelite.....	49
Chapter 26. – The rebuke of the inn proprietor Nicodemus. Joseph's justification speech. The testimonial of the midwife. A sign of clemency for Nicodemus, who recognizes the Lord.....	51
Chapter 27. - The return of the Holy Family to Bethlehem. The warm reception in the cave by those who had stayed behind. A manger as the Infant's cot. A good rest in the frosty night.....	53
Chapter 28. - Joseph wants to leave for Nazareth. The captain's advice to wait. The news about the Persian caravan and of Herod's search for the Child. Mary's fearlessness and trust in God.....	55
Chapter 29. – The frightened Joseph's petition to the Lord. The Persian caravan in front of the cave. The astonished captain. The testimonial of the Child by the three wise men: a King of Kings, a Lord of Lords, the Everlasting Lord! Their warning against Herod.....	57
Chapter 30. – The star of the three wise men and the old prophecy of the Persian astronomers. The adoration of the Lord, the Creator of infinity and eternity, in the Child by the three wise men. Their names: Caspar, Melchior and Balthazar. The accompanying spirits: Adam, Cain and Abraham. They pay homage to the Lord and offer him gifts.....	59
Chapter 31. – Mary indicates God's guidance of mercy. Joseph's honesty and loyalty. The three blessed gifts of God: His holy will, His mercy and His love. Mary's, the captain's and the Infant's finest testimonial for Joseph.....	61
Chapter 32. – The angel as adviser of the three wise men. The departure of the wise men to the Orient. Joseph's impatience. Cornelius' soothing words to Joseph. Joseph's hints on the power and goodness of God.....	63
Chapter 33. – The preparation for the flight to Egypt. The provisions of the Lord. Joseph discusses with Cornelius.....	65
Chapter 34. – The departure for the flight. Joseph's request to Salome. The farewell from the captain. The departure. The letter of safe-conduct given by Cornelius to Cyrenius.	

Joseph's itinerary. The adventure with the robbers. Joseph's arrival in Tyre at Cyrenius' residence. Cyrenius' words of consolation and his help.....	67
Chapter 35. – The Holy Family in Cyrenius' house. Joseph's conversation with Cyrenius. Cyrenius, the children's friend, and the Child Jesus. Inner and outer empirical testimonial of the divinity of the Child Jesus.....	70
Chapter 36. – Joseph in a sharp interrogation and his report on the nature and the birth of the Child Jesus. Cornelius' letter. Joseph's advice to keep silent. Contradictions and doubts. Joseph's vehement justification before the 'public prosecutor'.....	72
Chapter 37. – Cyrenius' gentler explanation and Joseph's response. The honour, the treasure of the poor. The reconciliation meal. Good advice from Joseph. Cyrenius' punished curiosity. The story of the Infant's conception. Cyrenius' worship of the Infant and the affirmation of the truth.....	75
Chapter 38. – Cyrenius' pagan suggestion to bring the Infant Prodigy to the imperial court in Rome. Joseph's fine response with reference to the Lord's humbleness. Prophetic words of the spiritual sun of life.....	77
Chapter 39. – Cyrenius' moderation in food and drink. Joseph's expression of thanks and his positive impact on Cyrenius. Joseph's words on death and everlasting life. The nature and value of mercy.....	79
Chapter 40. – Cyrenius' deep respect for Mary. The greatly comforting words of Mary. Cyrenius' congratulations to Joseph. Joseph's words on the real truth.....	81
Chapter 41. – Joseph's predictions about the massacre of the children. Cyrenius' wrath against Herod. The happy sea voyage to Egypt. Joseph's blessings as payment for the ferry to the sailors and to Cyrenius.....	82
Chapter 42. – The effect of the blessing of mercy on Cyrenius. Joseph's humble confession and his advice to Cyrenius. The arrival in Ostracine (Egypt).....	84
Chapter 43. – The purchase of a country house for the Holy Family by Cyrenius.....	86
Chapter 44. – Joseph with the Holy Family in the new home. Cyrenius as a guest. Joseph's and Mary's gratitude.....	88
Chapter 45. – The inspection of the new home. Mary's and Joseph's words of gratitude. Cyrenius' interest in the history of Israel.....	89
Chapter 46. – The common supper and Joseph's narration about the story of creation, humanity and the Jewish people. Cyrenius' cautious report to the emperor and its positive effect.....	89
Chapter 47. – Cyrenius' departure and his care for the Holy Family. The terrible news brought by the witnesses of the massacre of the innocents. A letter of Cyrenius to Herod. ....	91
Chapter 48. – The effect and outcome of this letter. The ploy of Herod. Cyrenius' second letter to Herod.....	92
Chapter 49. – The effect of the second letter. The arrival of Herod and the governor in Tyre. The reception by Cyrenius. The excitement of the frightened people. Maronius Pilla in front of Cyrenius.....	94
Chapter 50.– The interrogation of the governor by Cyrenius. The governor's plea to be excused. Cyrenius' question of conscience to Maronius and his confession and conviction. ....	96
Chapter 51. – The confession of Maronius Pilla. Cyrenius as the wise judge.....	98

Chapter 52. – Cyrenius' journey to Egypt and his arrival in Ostracine. Joseph and Mary's decision to welcome Cyrenius. The first words of the Infant.....	99
Chapter 53. – Joseph and Mary's fear and thoughts of escape at the parade ground. The meeting of Cyrenius and Maronius Pilla. The end of the military parade and the return home of the Holy Family accompanied by Cyrenius.....	100
Chapter 54. – Joseph's anxious question to Cyrenius about the presence of Maronius Pilla. Cyrenius soothing answer. The arrival at Joseph's villa.....	102
Chapter 55. – The banquet in Joseph's villa. Mary's humility and affectionate quarrel with Cyrenius. The divine, counter- philosophical wisdom of the Holy Child.....	103
Chapter 56. – Maronius' high opinion of the Infant and Cyrenius' contentment with Maronius.....	105
Chapter 57. – The closing of the banquet. The interrogation of Maronius Pilla by the Holy Family through Cyrenius. Maronius' admission of his white lie.....	106
Chapter 58. – Maronius Pilla's defence and good decision. Joseph as arbitrator. Cyrenius' noble verdict.....	107
Chapter 59. – Joseph's question about Herod. Maronius Pilla's answer. The crown of suffering and the terrible end of Herod.....	108
Chapter 60. – Cyrenius' wrath at Herod and the soothing words of the Child Jesus. The Child's question: "Who has the longest arm?".....	110
Chapter 61. – Maronius Pilla's shock and Joseph's question. Maronius' pagan confession. Joseph's simple explanation. Cyrenius' warning to be careful.....	112
Chapter 62. – Cyrenius and Joseph in a loving competition about the welfare of a human soul. Joseph's words on human and brotherly love. Why a human being has two eyes, two ears but only one mouth.....	113
Chapter 63. – James acting as a nursemaid at the cradle of the Infant; his curiosity and his reprimand by the Child. James' foreboding about the Infant's inner being.....	114
Chapter 64. – Joseph's speech about the love for God and the love for the world. His references to David, Solomon and Cyrenius. The strong emotions of Joseph's sons and the blessing by the Infant Jesus.....	115
Chapter 65. – Joseph calls for peace at night. The Child's wake- up call because of an approaching storm. The outbreak of the storm. The arrival of the fleeing Cyrenius.....	117
Chapter 66. – The raging storm. The sleeping Child. Cyrenius' concern. The Infant: "Storms are necessary...". A gospel of nature and the faith in God.....	118
Chapter 67. – The terrible message of the special messengers. The bloody demand of the pagan priests. Cyrenius divided between heart and world. The Infant's advice.....	119
Chapter 68. – Cyrenius' answer to the messengers. The three bloodthirsty are bent on a sacrifice. Cyrenius' wise decision. The torment of the two thousand victims.....	120
Chapter 69. – The fearful night of the young human victims. The three fiendish servants of God. An outraged Cyrenius brings in his verdict: Freedom to the victims, death to the three priests!.....	121
Chapter 70. – Joseph's attempt at mitigation. Cyrenius' wrath at the three condemned priests. The plea for mercy by the condemned.....	123
Chapter 71. – Joseph's gentle objection to Cyrenius referring to the court of the Lord. Cyrenius' yielding. The apparent sentence to die on the cross for the three priests, as a means of correcting their life.....	125

Chapter 72. – Mary's doubts about the omnipotence of the Child Jesus. Joseph's reassuring narration. Why the mighty lion of Judea fled from Herod. The bliss of the murdered children. Pilla's maturity.....	127
Chapter 73. – Cyrenius' decree: cancellation of the military exercises. Departure for the city and the Child Jesus' plea in favour of the convicted three.....	129
Chapter 74. – Cyrenius at the crossroads. The Infant's advice. Maronius as expert on Roman law. The pardon for the three priests at the place of sacrifice, their death from joy and their reawakening through the Child Jesus.....	131
Chapter 75. – The tour of the city after the storm. The positive impact of the hurricane. Cyrenius' foolish intention to throw away his sword. The Holy Child's wise words about the sword as a shepherd's staff.....	133
Chapter 76. – The astonishment of the three priests about the wisdom of the Child and of Joseph. Joseph's mythology of the gods.....	134
Chapter 77. – Cyrenius and the three priests. The excavation of those buried alive. The Child's marvellous cooperation. The reawakening of the seven apparently dead catacomb guides.....	136
Chapter 78. – A work of compassion. The intelligent storm. Cyrenius' foreboding. The visit to the harbour.....	138
Chapter 79. – The limited damage at the harbour. The return home. The detour on the advice of the Infant. The reason for it.....	139
Chapter 80. – Joseph's domestic precautions. The Infant's joy about James. "Those whom I love, I can tease and pinch and tug!" James' happy and enviable mission.....	141
Chapter 81. – Cyrenius' desire to be tweaked and pinched by the Holy Infant. The Infant's reply. A promise for Rome. Mary urges them to keep the Infant's misunderstood words in the heart.....	142
Chapter 82. – Cyrenius' question to Joseph and his reply concerning the lifting of the veil of Isis. Maronius' good explanation. The meal. The respect of the three priests.....	144
Chapter 83. – The three idolatrous priests' blindness, awe and impulse to flee. The Infant Jesus' wise rules of behaviour for Joseph and Cyrenius.....	145
Chapter 84. – The legend of the origin of the town of Ostracine. Cyrenius' gloomy perspective on the temple of the gods.....	147
Chapter 85. – Joseph's advice about trust in God and the prophecy of the end of Ostracine.....	148
Chapter 86. – Cyrenius' return to Ostracine with his servants. Mary in prayer. Joseph's consoling words.....	149
Chapter 87. – Mary as a model of female humility. The song of praise and thanks by Joseph and his sons. The positive effect on the three idolatrous priests.....	150
Chapter 88. – The golden daybreak. Joseph and his sons at work in the field. Joel struck down by a poisonous snake bite. The homecoming and the hysteria in Joseph's house. The Infant's words of consolation. Joel's reawakening.....	152
Chapter 89. – Joseph's sacrificial vow. The objection of the Infant Jesus and His advice on the sacrifice most pleasing to God. Joseph's objection and his weakening by the Infant.....	154
Chapter 90. – The morning meal. The custom of ablution. The three priests' resistance to Joseph's instructions and the Infant's lesson in obedience. The priests' significant question and Joseph's embarrassment.....	155



Chapter 91. – Love as the true prayer to God. Jesus as the Son of God. The pagan thoughts of the three priests and the Child's riposte.....	157
Chapter 92. – The disclosure of the blindness and folly of the three priests. About building temples in one's heart and the true service to God.....	158
Chapter 93. – The all-round positive effect of this lecture. The domestic life of the Holy Family. The blind beggar and her dream. The healing of the blind through the Child's bathwater.....	160
Chapter 94.– The healed woman's thanks and her request to be accepted in Joseph's house. James' testimonial of Mary's character. The girl's prophecy of the adoration of Mary. Mary's humility. Joseph's return.....	162
Chapter 95. – Joseph takes in the healed woman. Her moving life story. Joseph consoles the poor orphan.....	164
Chapter 96. – The orphan's question about the puzzling words from Joseph. Joseph's answer.....	166
Chapter 97. – Joseph's words regarding the three fasting priests. The humility of the new resident and her acceptance by Joseph as his daughter. The blessing and the joy of the Infant Jesus.....	167
Chapter 98. – The lovely interaction between the girl and the Infant. The dangers of the holy secret. The salvation and effusive happiness of the girl.....	169
Chapter 99. – The arrival of Cyrenius and Pilla. Joseph's report about the girl. Cyrenius' courting of Joseph's adopted daughter.....	170
Chapter 100. – Cyrenius reports about the reawakening of the two hundred apparent corpses. – His increasing interest in the exotic girl. Joseph's doubts. The triple matrimonial law of ancient Rome.....	171
Chapter 101. – Tullia meets Cyrenius. A miraculous discovery: Tullia, the cousin and childhood sweetheart of Cyrenius. Cyrenius is moved.....	173
Chapter 102. – Cyrenius pays court to Tullia. Tullia tests him. A gospel of marriage.....	175
Chapter 103. – The divine Child explains the living marriage law. The love of the mind and the love of the heart. The union of the two lovers through the Infant. Tullia's commitment to the Infant's Divinity.....	177
Chapter 104. – Cyrenius' request for the Infant's blessing. The Infant's demand to Cyrenius to renounce Eudokia for Tullia's sake. Cyrenius' inner struggle. The Infant's strong will. Eudokia is brought to Joseph's house.....	179
Chapter 105. – Cyrenius' second plea to keep Eudokia. The Infant's refusal. Eudokia's rebellion. The victory of the spirit in Cyrenius. Mary's consoling words to Eudokia.....	181
Chapter 106. – Eudokia wants to be enlightened about the Child. Mary urges her to be patient. The Infant Jesus in Eudokia's arms and in discussion with her.....	183
Chapter 107. – Cyrenius' gratitude. The magnanimity and the wisdom of the humble Joseph. Cyrenius hands over eight poor children to be raised by Joseph.....	184
Chapter 108. – Cyrenius' doubts about the consecration of the marriage through a high priest of Hymen. Joseph's good advice and Cyrenius' great joy.....	186
Chapter 109. – The priests' misgivings. Cyrenius takes over the responsibility. A poor testimonial of Rome and its greed. Cyrenius' marriage to Tullia.....	187
Chapter 110. – Tullia in royal robes. Eudokia's pain. The Infant consoles Eudokia. Eudokia's tears of joy. Mary's participation.....	189

Chapter 111. – Cyrenius' expression of gratitude to the Infant. The Infant's words of blessing to the bridal couple. Joseph's invitation to the wedding feast. Cyrenius' return to the city.....	191
Chapter 112. – A novel surprise at Joseph's house: foreign white-attired youths as helpers in the house.....	193
Chapter 113. – Mary's astonishment about the incessant visitations. Joseph's consolation. The angel's awe of the Infant and his words to the archangel. The shared supper.....	195
Chapter 114. – Mary's conversations with Zuriel and Gabriel. The Infant's advice on the new order in heaven and on earth. Eudokia's curiosity regarding the 'arch-heralds'.....	197
Chapter 115. – Joseph calls for peace at night. The youths' disclosure about the nightly attack by three hundred robbers. The attack. The victory of the angels.....	199
Chapter 116. - The preparations for Cyrenius' wedding banquet. The reverence of the angels before the bathing Infant. The reawakening of the murderers' corpses through the Infant's bathwater.....	201
Chapter 117. - Cyrenius' annoyance at the traitors. Joseph's indication of the Lord's help. Cyrenius and the angels. The powerful miracle of the angels.....	203
Chapter 118. - The difference between the power of the Lord and the power of His servants. Cyrenius' question about the purpose of angels. The parable of the loving Father and his children.....	205
Chapter 119. - Joseph's instructions for the wedding banquet. The dressing up for the occasion. The dazzling festive dress of the angels. The uneasiness of Cyrenius and the others. The removal of the festive dresses.....	207
Chapter 120. - Joseph worried about the correct celebration of Easter. The reassuring words of the angels. Joseph's fresh worries because of the many pagans present. The Infant's reply.....	209
Chapter 121. – Joseph, invited for Easter by Cyrenius in his fortress, in distress about celebrating Easter. The Infant's soothing words. "Wherever I am, that is where the real Easter is!".....	211
Chapter 122. – Joseph's queries on the clearing of the temple rubble, on the fate of the rebels and the lesser priests, and on the eight children. Cyrenius' response.....	213
Chapter 123. – The procession to the holy mountain. The encounter with the wild animals. The taming of the wild beasts by the two celestial youths.....	215
Chapter 124. – Fainting of Eudokia and Tullia. The poisonous snakes at the summit. The purification of the place by Mary and the Child. The amazement of Cyrenius' entourage. ....	217
Chapter 125. – The dangerous temple. The swarm of black flies. The temple collapses. The company under the fig tree.....	219
Chapter 126. – The snack in the open with the youths. The fire at the imperial palace. Cyrenius' agitation and anger. Joseph's composure and the calm response to the agitated Cyrenius.....	220
Chapter 127. – Cyrenius tries to pacify Joseph through Tullia. Joseph's friendly words. The extinction of the fire through the willpower of the two youths.....	222
Chapter 128. – Cyrenius is instructed in the promised tugging of the Lord. Joseph explains the wonderful phenomena in nature.....	224
Chapter 129. – Cyrenius' question about the amazing speaking skills of the three-month-	

old Infant Jesus. The profoundly wise answer of the angel about the mysterious nature of the Infant.....	225
Chapter 130. – Cyrenius professes his ignorance in spiritual matters. His request for enlightenment. The angel's response and a splendid and clear testimonial of the Lord's nature and incarnation. The Infant's blessings on Cyrenius.....	227
Chapter 131. – An approaching thunderstorm. Joseph's advice. The lion's foreboding and their flight into the woods.....	229
Chapter 132. – The mountain top wrapped in mist. The gentiles' fear of the gods. Cyrenius' courage tested in the raging of the thunderstorm. The sudden silencing of the thunderstorm at the Infant Jesus' command.....	231
Chapter 133. – The curiosity of the now pensive Roman commander and his conversation with Cyrenius about the laws of nature and their lawgiver. The return home from the mountain.....	233
Chapter 134. – The reception in Joseph's house by those left behind. Joel's narration. The three lions as Cyrenius' bodyguards.....	234
Chapter 135. – The meal in Joseph's house. The Infant's disclosure of the forthcoming assassination attempt on Cyrenius. Cyrenius' homecoming. The lions as night watch. The attack. God's judgment on the assassins.....	236
Chapter 136. – Cyrenius' interrogation of the servants. The servants' fear of the three judges. The detection of the traitor. The lion's exemplary tribunal.....	238
Chapter 137. – Tullia awakens from deep sleep. Cyrenius relates what happened. The reunion with the Holy Family.....	240
Chapter 138. – Cyrenius' report and Joseph's criticism. Love and compassion are better than the most stringent justice. Cyrenius' gratitude. The company in Cyrenius' large bedroom.....	242
Chapter 139. – The traitor's repentance. The compassion of the three lions for the repentant servant. Joseph's good advice. Cyrenius' generosity and the marvellous effect on the repentant servant.....	244
Chapter 140. – Cyrenius' brotherly words to the penitent servant. His inclusion in the company. The envious servants and Cyrenius' response to them.....	246
Chapter 141. – The preparations and the invitation to the morning feast by Cyrenius. The Infant's consecration speech. The invitation and feeding of the poor.....	248
Chapter 142. – Joseph's thanksgiving and humility. Cyrenius' affectionate quarrel with Joseph on account of the placement. Joseph's intelligent advice.....	250
Chapter 143. – The inquisitive God-seeking captain. The priest on mythology, his avowal of the one and only true God. Joseph to the questioning captain: there is a time for everything!.....	252
Chapter 144. – Joseph's and Cyrenius' intention to look at the replicated Holy of Holies. The Infant's objection. Joseph's embarrassment. Mary's enlightening words and the Infant's approval. The subsequent instruction of the captain.....	253
Chapter 145. – The captain asks about the coming of the Messiah. Joseph on the nature of the Messiah. The lesser priest's prophetic words on the destruction of the pagan temple. From the living temple in human hearts.....	255
Chapter 146. – Further queries by the captain. Joseph on the nature of the Messiah. Love as the principal key to the truth. The company in the replicated Holy of Holies. The poor	

blind persons regain their eyesight.....	257
Chapter 147. – The loud appeals from the sick people to Mary. Her reference to the Child Jesus. The healing of the sick. Their instruction through the angels. The captain searches for the miracle worker.....	259
Chapter 148. – The rivalry between the captain and Cyrenius in performing good works. The perplexed captain and his instruction by Joseph.....	261
Chapter 149. – The question of the reparation of the old Carthaginian ship on the Sabbath. The Infant's speech on performing good works on the Sabbath. The disobedience of the law-abiding Joseph. The miraculous reparation of the ship by the angels.....	263
Chapter 150. – The visit to the harbour. The valuable ship. Cyrenius' expression of gratitude to Joseph. The Infant's reply and advice on doing good to the poor.....	265
Chapter 151. – The midday meal in the fortress. The captain goes in search of the poor in the city, his return and Cyrenius' praise. The Infant's words of blessing.....	267
Chapter 152. – The Infant Jesus' speech to Cyrenius during the handing over of the poor people. Cyrenius as precursor of Paul. A prediction on the fall of Jerusalem by the Roman sword.....	268
Chapter 153. – Cyrenius' query on the divine nature of the Child. Joseph's explanation on the living word of God in the prophets. The correction by the Child Jesus.....	270
Chapter 154. – The official questions of the captain. Cyrenius' negative reply. The conversation between the inquisitive captain and the beautiful angel.....	272
Chapter 155. – Cyrenius' worry about the ship. The angel's advice. Cyrenius' gratitude to Joseph and the Infant. Joseph's prediction of Cyrenius' adventure during the voyage....	274
Chapter 156. – The gratitude of Maronius, the three priests and Tullia. Joseph's command to keep silent.....	276
Chapter 157. – The Infant Jesus' affectionate conversation with James. The burden and heaviness of the Lord for those, who carry Him in their hearts. The sudden inability to speak of the hitherto eloquent Child Jesus.....	277
Chapter 158. – The miraculous tending of Joseph's domestic animals by the angels. Joseph's zeal for observing the Sabbath. Gabriel's advice on the activity of nature on the Sabbath. The disappearance of the angels.....	279
Chapter 159. – Eudokia's astonishment and restlessness due to the sudden disappearance of the youths. Mary's soothing words. The night's sleep. Eudokia's longing for Gabriel, his sudden appearance and his advice.....	280
Chapter 160. – James' childlike-merry game with the Infant. Joseph's reprimand and James' outstanding reply. Eudokia's dream and marvellous testimonial of the Lord.....	282
Chapter 161. – Mary's and Joseph's worry because of the Infant's abrupt muteness. Their doubts about the genuineness of the Child. Mary's futile attempt to heal a blind person with the Infant's healing bathwater. "Do you not know that God should not be tested?" (James). The healing of the blind man through James at the inner behest of the Infant Jesus.....	284
Chapter 162. – Joseph's investigation into the source of James' healing power. James' interrogation by Joseph. Joseph's doubts. James' wise reply from the Lord. Joseph's amazement at his son's wisdom.....	286
Chapter 163. – The duties of Joseph's sons. Mary's skill. Eudokia's diligence. The arrival of the eight children from Tyre. Joseph's noble message to Cyrenius. Mary as teacher to the eight children.....	288

Chapter 164. – A quiet year in Joseph's house. The miraculous healing of the Negro family's possessed boy through James at the Infant Jesus' behest.....	289
Chapter 165. – The one-and-a-half-year discontinuance of miracles. Jesus as a lively little boy. James' visit to the fisher Jonathan. St. Christopher or the Infant's weight of the world. The homecoming accompanied by Jonathan.....	290
Chapter 166. – Jonathan at the house of Joseph, a friend of his youth. Jonathan's narration and question about Joseph's strange Child. Joseph's report on the Child. Jonathan's humility and love for the Child and his prayer.....	292
Chapter 167. – Joseph's convivial invitation to Jonathan. Jonathan's misgivings and confession of his sins. Joseph's advice. The Infant's favourite food: Jonathan's heart. Jesus' testimonial of Jonathan.....	294
Chapter 168. – Joel's badly-prepared mush. Mary's and Joseph's reprimand. The Infant's leniency towards Joel. Suggestions for upbringing.....	296
Chapter 169. – The fish meal. The Infant's warning to Joseph because he was not served, and Joseph's negative reply. The Infant Jesus' significant reply and prediction of Mary's deification. The humble Infant's words of blessing.....	298
Chapter 170. – Jonathan's question about Joseph's inner position on the Infant and Joseph's reply.....	300
Chapter 171. – The evening on Joseph's favourite hill. James feeding bread, butter and honey to little Jesus. The flies in the honey pot. Jesus' profoundly wise words on Isaiah chap. 7:15.....	302
Chapter 172. – Jonathan's excessive reverence and humility before the Infant Jesus. Joseph's good advice and the Infant's affectionate words of consolation. Jonathan's stay. ....	304
Chapter 173. – The Child Jesus as light as a feather. Jonathan's astonishment. The Infant's profoundly wise words on the burden of the Law of Moses. Moses had established the entire law in the love for God. The law has remained, but the love has died away. "... I will make the life of those who adhere to the letter of the law as restricted as the eye of a needle.".....	306
Chapter 174. – The evening on the hill. Joseph's and Jonathan's viewing of the full moon. The Infant's hint on vast knowledge in contrast to vast love. The 'face' of God. The nature of the moon.....	308
Chapter 175. – Mary and the Infant Jesus in a heartfelt and jesting conversation on the hill. Joseph and Jonathan during their 'moon meal'. The sudden lunar eclipse.....	310
Chapter 176. – Continuation of Joseph's and Jonathan's contemplation of the moon. A light over the shaded moon.....	312
Chapter 177. – Jonathan's astonishment about the spherical shape of the earth. Jesus as 'professor of natural sciences'. Preparations for the evening meal.....	314
Chapter 178. – The supper. Jonathan's request to return home, and his secret plan. The Infant's successful alternative suggestion. Jonathan's obedience and homecoming.....	315
Chapter 179. – Jonathan well received by his people. Jonathan's departure to the high seas. The rescue of the shipwrecked Cyrenius and his people.....	317
Chapter 180. – The happy disembarkation. Jonathan's delight. Cyrenius' gratitude. The shipwrecked persons at rest. The salvage of the run-aground ship. The shared breakfast. Jonathan's humility. The arrival of Joseph and his family.....	319

Chapter 181. – Jonathan and Cyrenius in conversation. Joseph's astonishment about the foreign ship and Jonathan's explanation. The rescuer's superstitious caution and his instruction. The moving reunion of the Infant and Cyrenius.....	322
Chapter 182. – The bending of the heart instead of the knee. Cyrenius' greeting of Joseph. The blessing of the cross and the triumph of the trust in God. Cyrenius' joy about the proximity of Ostracine.....	324
Chapter 183. – Cyrenius' journey and his request to Joseph for enlightenment. Joseph's elusive answer. The dissatisfied Cyrenius and his enlightenment by the Infant. The general departure to Joseph's villa.....	326
Chapter 184. – The refreshing get-together in the shady arbour of the hill. Joseph's wise interpretation of Cyrenius' sea voyage. How the Lord leads His people.....	328
Chapter 185. – Cyrenius' gratitude to the Infant for the merciful guidance. How to pray in a manner pleasing to God. The main reason for the Lord's incarnation. Cyrenius' amazement at the progress made by the eight children.....	330
Chapter 186. – The boy Sixtus' 'return present' to his father Cyrenius: a lecture on the nature and the shape of the earth. The corroboration by the Child Jesus.....	332
Chapter 187. – Cyrenius' delight in receiving the globe as a gift and his request concerning Augustus. The Infant's profoundly wise response with reference to the divine order.....	334
Chapter 188. – Cyrenius affirms his love for the Lord. The test: Tullia's death. Cyrenius' profound grief. The justified rebuke of the disappointed Infant and its effect on Cyrenius. ....	336
Chapter 189. – Joseph invites Cyrenius for a meal. Cyrenius' declination referring to his satiation by the Lord. The Infant's praise for Cyrenius.....	339
Chapter 190. – The Infant's request to Cyrenius to eat and play with Him. Maronius' and Mary's objection. The Infant's invalidating response. The awakening of Tullia.....	341
Chapter 191. – Jesus' race against Cyrenius. How Cyrenius also becomes a master. Hint on the mastery of life.....	343
Chapter 192. – The instructive hole-game. The holes of life and their order.....	345
Chapter 193. – The hole-game – a game of the human drive. The rules given by the Infant as king of the game.....	347
Chapter 194. – Cyrenius in the minister hole. The girl's discontentment. The 'King's' effective means of intimidation. The mice miracle.....	349
Chapter 195. – The Infant Jesus' dialogue with the obstinate girl.....	351
Chapter 196. – New disputes in the second game. The third toss. The ambitious girl in the minister hole. The smear campaign against the Child. The new and last toss. Everyone comes into the child hole; only the Child comes into the king hole. His marble begins to glow like the sun, and the Child puts the radiant marble into the father hole. The basic order of life is restored.....	353
Chapter 197. – The game's meaning. The three tosses signifying the historical eras from Adam up to the incarnation. The new and eternally last toss: from a child's position, all will recognize the Father. The Father will then be the Father forever.....	355
Chapter 198. – Mary's and Eudokia's efforts towards the awakened Tullia. A prophetic image of the future worship of Mary. The true lovers of the Lord.....	357
Chapter 199. – Joseph's typically human, short-sighted questions. The Infant's reply. The universal significance of the Lord's incarnation.....	359

Chapter 200. – Prophetic revelations of the Infant Jesus: Jesus' death, His teachings on atonement, resurrection and opening of the gates of life for all.....	361
Chapter 201. – Jesus' solemn words to Mary. Prediction that the Lord and his followers will be treated with disdain in the world.....	363
Chapter 202. – James in conversation with little Jesus. The Infant's complaint about getting too little attention from His parents and fellow residents.....	364
Chapter 203. – Joseph's confession to the Infant. The distinction between masking and being wise. The Lord keeps Himself hidden, so that no judgment is brought upon the world. The Infant's warning to Mary.....	366
Chapter 204. – Mary's question about love to the Infant. The difference between the love of man and the love of God. "My anger in itself represents more love than your deepest love!" The parable of the king as suitor, referring to Tullia and the Infant Jesus.....	368
Chapter 205. – Tullia's complaint. Mary's consoling words. Tullia's introspection, repentance and atonement. Jesus' favourite food. The old and the new Tullia.....	371
Chapter 206. – The weeping Tullia. A gospel of tears. The Lord has put three tears into the eyes of men: the tears of joy, the tears of pity, and the tears that are caused by pain.....	373
Chapter 207. – The Infant's soothing words before the night of the storm. Eudokia's great fear. And if you were at the end of all the worlds, I would still be able to protect you!.....	375
Chapter 208. – The terror of the nocturnal hurricane. The wild animals. Joseph's curse over the storm. The Infant's reprimand. The end of the storm.....	376
Chapter 209. – The boon and purpose of the nocturnal storm: the annihilation of the robbers.....	377
Chapter 210. – The Infant's triple circumvention of the fire and His prophetic words to Cyrenius: "The Lord will circumvent the fires of the world thrice, and nobody will ask Him: 'Lord! What are you doing?' And only when He will go around the third time, will the last flash of anger be taken from the earth!".....	378
Chapter 211. – Joseph's question and the Infant's comforting response. The Infant's great hunger. The fish meal. Cyrenius' question regarding the Mediterranean.....	380
Chapter 212. – The punishment for James and the Infant to fast because of forgetting to say grace. The Infant's question to Joseph, as to why and to whom He should pray. The Child Jesus hurries out with His James and does not let Himself be held back.....	382
Chapter 213. – The rebukes by Mary and Cyrenius are taken to heart by Joseph. He goes out and calls after the Infant.....	384
Chapter 214. – Joseph's sons go in search of the Infant. The secret voices and their consoling words to Joseph. Joseph follows the approaching Infant to the summit of the mountain. A crossbeam made of cedar as a table for the Lord, set with lamb, wine and bread. The meal at the Lord's table. – "The true prayer is the love for Me!".....	385
Chapter 215. – The cross-bearing Joseph. The Infant's gospel of the cross.....	387
Chapter 216. – Cold fish with oil and lemon juice. The reason for the Mosaic dietary laws. "Now and for evermore it will be said: The Lord is the best cook!".....	389
Chapter 217. – Why the middle sea can be rightly called the "Mediterranean". "... for the true centre is there, where the Lord is!".....	391
Chapter 218. – All that is, has its divinely-ordained time and order. Time and eternity. From futile research into divine depths and from childlike simplicity as the path towards true wisdom.....	393

Chapter 219. – The imposed cross as an expression of God's love to mankind.....	395
Chapter 220. – Jonathan's tears and holy love for the Lord. Every man will be consecrated and be new-born through the love for God in his heart. For: "Is the love for Me not sacred in itself, just as I myself am in My divinity?".....	396
Chapter 221. – A remedy for the plague of insects. A comet.....	398
Chapter 222. – A discussion about comets as harbingers of misfortune and war.....	399
Chapter 223. – A visual instruction on the nature of comets, taking a milk bowl as an example.....	400
Chapter 224. – Analogical and explanatory hints about the nature of comets.....	401
Chapter 225. – Why the excessive investigations into the depths of God's creations is detrimental to God's children.....	403
Chapter 226. – The withdrawal of the divinity in the Child. The Infant's last instructions for Joseph and Cyrenius. The night's sleep. James' special grace from the Child Jesus.....	405
Chapter 227. – Joseph's worry about the morning meal. The empty pantry. Jonathan's help with a valuable load of fish.....	406
Chapter 228. – A contest of love between Joseph and Cyrenius. Joseph's unselfishness. How to recognize the true from the false servants of God.....	407
Chapter 229. – The cheerful morning meal. Joseph speaks on the goodness of the Lord. The Infant at the table. Delightful scenes between little Jesus and Cyrenius.....	409
Chapter 230. – Continuation of the childly table scene. Mary is strict with Me only out of her great love for Me!.....	411
Chapter 231. – Cyrenius' gratitude, gift and words of farewell. – Cyrenius stays one more day.....	413
Chapter 232. – Joseph's money box and worries about thieves. The Infant's good advice to Joseph.....	415
Chapter 233. – Joseph and his family. Domestic worries and duties. Jonathan's tremendous help through his trust in God.....	417
Chapter 234. – The governor's embarrassment due to a deputation of the foremost and noblest citizens of the city. Cyrenius invites the deputation to a meal. The curse of money. ....	419
Chapter 235. – The noble company at the meal. Joseph's advice regarding the social considerations in the seating arrangement. The Infant's annoyance at the badly arranged side table. A prophetic prediction.....	421
Chapter 236. – A domestic kitchen scene and its serious consequences. The basic gospel of incarnation.....	423
Chapter 237. – A humble and heartfelt speech of the four brothers to the insulted Infant. His divine reply to His brothers.....	425
Chapter 238. – Analogical meaning of the meal. The phases of spiritual states on earth: 1. General. 2. Judaism. 3. The Greek Church. 4. The Roman Church. 5. The Christian sects. ....	427
Chapter 239. – The last good fish signifies the Lord's love and His great mercy of late. The sun's inhabitants are also destined to be the children of God. A flock under the One good Shepherd.....	429
Chapter 240. – The guests become aware of the Infant. Cyrenius' disclosure. A	



neighbour's judgment of Joseph and his family.....	431
Chapter 241. – The malicious plan of the jealous guests. The great fire in Ostracine.....	433
Chapter 242. – Cyrenius' worry about the victims of the fire. "Whoso diggeth a pit shall fall therein." God is "the fairest judge" to all.....	435
Chapter 243. – Pride goes before a fall. Joseph's dignified treatment of the fire victims. Cyrenius' noble-mindedness towards the victims. Cyrenius at Jonathan's.....	437
Chapter 244. – Joseph's active charity. A real consolation in times of serious trouble. An evening visit and dinner at Jonathan's.....	439
Chapter 245. – Cyrenius prepares his ship for departure. James reminds him of the globe. Joseph's advice to Cyrenius: Act free – according to the will of the Lord. Cyrenius takes the three boys along with him.....	440
Chapter 246. - Cyrenius' request for blessings and the Infant's divine answer. Cyrenius' farewell prayer. The Infant blesses the departing persons and soothes them with the words: Where your heart is, there is your treasure, also.....	442
Chapter 247. – Joseph blesses Cyrenius. Jesus' farewell words to Cyrenius: "Having become one in love we shall always and eternally be together in spirit!" Cyrenius' departure. Joseph at Jonathan's.....	444
Chapter 248. – While fishing in the morning, Joseph and Jonathan notice an endangered ship and rescue it.....	446
Chapter 249. – The Infant's question about today's catch. The fish-loving Child's response to Joseph's reprimand: "I am at home wherever I am loved!" The big catch at the Infant's behest.....	447
Chapter 250. – Joseph returns home with Jonathan. The house is found empty and ransacked. Joseph gets very angry about this. A memorable statement by the Infant.....	448
Chapter 251. – Mary cries about the theft of all her clothes including all the table and bed linen. Jonathan's consolation and noble gesture. O mother, accept it from my heart and from my hand!" The Infant blesses Jonathan.....	450
Chapter 252. – The blessing of the Lord in the house of Joseph. The family's amazement and gratitude. James talks about the miracle of the wheat grain.....	452
Chapter 253. – The lunch of fish and honey bread. The wilful theft of the household equipment and the little bowl of the Infant. The relentlessness of the little Child against those with malicious intent.....	454
Chapter 254. – The howling clothes thieves in front of Joseph's door. The serious speech of the Infant to the thieves. The return of the clothes.....	456
Chapter 255. – Mary's inner nobility and beauty. Her pity for the thieves. To be good to your enemies and bless them is pure godliness. "Because you (Mary) have acted like God does, you are so beautiful now. For God is the highest beauty, since He is the highest love!" .....	457
Chapter 256. – The power of love. Joseph's house becomes known. Joseph's wisdom embarrasses the famous and rich people of the city. The positive aftermath.....	459
Chapter 257. – Herod's death; his son Archelaus succeeds him in the government. – The angel of the Lord orders Joseph to return to Israel. – The wonderful preparation for the journey. – Joseph hands over everything to Jonathan and asks him to come after him. – The farewell.....	460
Chapter 258. – The Holy Family reaches their native country after an arduous journey.	

Joseph's fear and Mary's encouragement. The Lord's order to move to Nazareth. Arrival in Nazareth.....	462
Chapter 259. – A delightful evening scene on Salome's roof. Cornelius discovers the small caravan.....	463
Chapter 260. – Joel as messenger inquires about the distance to their home town. Joseph wants to sleep in the open with his family. Joseph's sons meet Salome during their search for wood and fire.....	465
Chapter 261. – The suspicions of Salome and Cornelius about the small caravan. Salome and Cornelius have a look at the gathering and recognize the Holy Family.....	466
Chapter 262. – Cornelius and Salome welcome the Holy Family. The tired travellers take up residence in their old home.....	467
Chapter 263. – Salome hands over the house and the farm to Joseph in the best condition. Joseph's embarrassment. The humility and love of Salome. Her marvellous testimonial of the Lord. A word from the Lord about love.....	468
Chapter 264. – Salome invites Joseph's family for breakfast. The favourite food of the Child Jesus. Love and joy of the Infant and Salome. "O Lord! – Who can look at you without tears in the eyes?".....	470
Chapter 265. – Cornelius reassures an anxious Joseph when the latter asks questions about the new and cruel king Archelaus.....	472
Chapter 266. – Cornelius asks if Cyrenius is aware of Joseph's departure. Joseph's answer. Cornelius explains the secret Roman letters.....	473
Chapter 267. – Cornelius asks about the miracles of the Infant. Joseph's reference to His speeches. The important words of the Infant to Cornelius.....	474
Chapter 268. – Cornelius affixes Rome's letter of privilege to Joseph's house. The Roman tax code. The Infant's promise to Cornelius.....	475
Chapter 269. – Joseph brings the whole house in order and talks with Mary about a visit to friends and relatives. The strange behaviour and peculiar words of the Infant.....	477
Chapter 270. – The earthquake under Jesus' feet frightens Joseph und Mary. Refugees from the city warn Joseph not to go further. Joseph, calmed down by James, enters the town without fear.....	479
Chapter 271. – Repentant people unwittingly bear true witness. Joseph's words to them: The Lord does not look at a torn hair shirt, "but only at the state of the heart, and the condition it is in!" Joseph is warmly welcomed in the city by his friend.....	480
Chapter 272. – Joseph tells his doctor friend about his experiences. The doctor's great sympathy and his own experiences. Joseph's anger about Archelaus. Joseph is calmed down by the Infant.....	481
Chapter 273. – The doctor's surprise and prediction about the wise little Child. The Infant's reply to Joseph. The doctor's hope for the Messiah and the Infant's correction.....	483
Chapter 274. – The Infant tests the confidence of the sick people and heals the firmly believing girl who suffers from gout.....	484
Chapter 275. – The doctor's amazement and his humble confession. The Infant calms the doctor and tells him the best (His) healing method. The doctor has faith and becomes famous far and wide through his healing work. Joseph takes the healed girl into his house. ....	485
Chapter 276. – The Holy Family visits the teacher Dumas. Joseph narrates his story. The	

little Child with the school children.....	487
Chapter 277. – Dumas' amazement and questions concerning the Child. Joseph's Socratic-philosophical answer. Dumas' praise of the philosophers. The Infant's speech to Dumas about prophets and philosophers.....	488
Chapter 278. – Joseph considers going home. Mary's noble and womanly words. The Infant's advice and Joseph's return. The quarrel with the servants of Archelaus.....	490
Chapter 279. – The two-year discontinuance of the Infant's miracles. Jonathan's arrival from Egypt. The great joy in Joseph's house and the Infant's advice to Jonathan. Jonathan as a fisherman at the Sea of Galilee.....	491
Chapter 280. - The now five-year-old Child plays near the brook. The twelve small holes and the twelve clay sparrows. The explanation of the image. The strict Jew's offence and the Child's miracle.....	493
Chapter 281. – The onrush of those, curious about the miracle. The pampered and quarrelsome neighbour's son is punished by Jesus. The chief justice comes to judge Joseph, is threatened by the Child, and suddenly turns back.....	495
Chapter 282. – Joseph takes the Child with him on his country trip. Little Jesus is maliciously assaulted. The shepherd boy's terrible reward.....	497
Chapter 283. – Joseph's sense of propriety. The angry neighbour falls silent. The request of the shepherd boy's father – and the Child's reply.....	499
Chapter 284. – Joseph's advice to the father of the dead shepherd boy. The homecoming of Joseph and the Child. The Child's marvellous promise. "In the future, whoever accepts Me in his heart as you (Salome) have done, will also be equal to My mother, My brothers and My sisters!".....	500
Chapter 285. – The dead shepherd boy brought back to life, and his fear of the Holy Child. The father sets him right and gives Joseph and the Child a proper testimonial. The Child's love. "My love is your life in all eternity!".....	502
Chapter 286. – The false judgment on Jesus by the deceitful village judge. Joseph's intrepid response. The false witnesses. Joseph rebukes the people on account of Jesus. "Joseph, the words that you have just uttered, do not come from Me, but from you!" The judgment of the eternal Judge. The bribed judge instantly turns blind. The Child to the excited Joseph: "Why do you want to vex Me, for I am yours!?".....	504
Chapter 287. – Lusting for glory, the teacher Piras Zacchaeus wishes to have the miraculous Child in his school. Joseph advises the teacher to make a test. Jesus embarrasses the hypocritical teacher.....	506
Chapter 288. – Jesus gives Piras Zacchaeus a ray of hope about His mission. The salutary effect and Piras Zacchaeus' investigations. Jesus as 'professor of natural history': "Where is above and where is below?" "See, I have come down from above!" Where there is light - is above, but where there is night - is below!.....	508
Chapter 289. – The teacher's thoughts on the Boy. Jesus warns the teacher. Jesus, a light to the heathen and a judgment to the Jews! The teacher flees.....	510
Chapter 290. – Joseph's neighbours and their children enjoy the cosy atmosphere in Joseph's house. The children on the terrace. Zeno breaks his neck in his dare-devil act. His parents' anger. The revival of the dead boy. Zeno's testimonial of Jesus. Jesus cautions Zeno: "Refrain from such games that can lead to death!" A prophetic reference to the later Judas Iscariot.....	512
Chapter 291. – The neighbours seek advice from Joseph as Cornelius' friend. Jesus warns	

Joseph against imprudence. Insight into the divine world government: as the people - so the government! "I am the Lord also over Rome!" .....	514
Chapter 292. – The six-year-old Jesus revives Salome's servant who was killed in an accident. Jesus' instruction for the servant. Jesus shuns the praise of the people.....	515
Chapter 293. – Mary's holy jug is broken by Jesus. The girl's anxiety about that. Jesus brings the water for his mother in His small red cloak. This relic of Mary was a thorn in Jesus' side.....	516
Chapter 294. – A two-year period without miracles. Rising prices in Palestine. Joseph sows seeds even during the seventh month. The eight-year-old Jesus Himself puts the seeds in the soil. The wonderful blessing. Joseph's gratitude. Love is better than praise! The healing of the shrivelled boy.....	518
Chapter 295. – Joseph and Mary still want to entrust the almost ten-year-old Jesus to a teacher. Problems during lessons. The teacher beats the Child and thereupon becomes dumb and foolish. The Boy Jesus returns home.....	520
Chapter 296. – The second teacher at Joseph's house. The teachers' gentle obligingness. Jesus gives the teacher a test: He reads and explains about Daniel. The teacher's good testimonial of Jesus. As a reward for the teacher's sincerity, Jesus heals the first teacher. ....	522
Chapter 297. – The eleven-year-old Jesus and James go out to collect wood. James is bitten by a viper and shows signs of death. James is brought back to life by Jesus. A gospel of labour. Be diligent in spiritual goods! Resuscitation of the dead boy Kephaz and the dead journeyman carpenter Mallas. The doctrine: "Envy always ends in death!" .....	524
Chapter 298. – Brief description of the temple scene of the twelve-year-old Jesus by His brother James. Jesus withdraws Himself completely until the wedding in Cana.....	526
Chapter 299. – Jesus, the divine being. The relationship between the humanity and divinity within Himself.....	528
Chapter 300. – Jesus' life and inner struggles from His twelfth to His thirtieth year. Hints and examples to achieve reincarnation as the condition for eternal and blessed life. Concluding remark and blessing of the Lord.....	530